

New Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors




معك
Ma3ak App
تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلي

 **EL-MORASSER**
GUIDE

1st
Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ
 إِنَّ الدِّينَ أَمْرٌ وَعَمَلٌ وَالصَّالِحِينَ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا
 صَلَواتُنا العظيمة

بطاقة فهرسة

فهرسة أثناء النشر إعداد الهيئة العامة
 لدار الكتب والوثائق القومية

El Moasser Guide based on New Hello!
 A Group of Supervisors
 Cairo : GPS For Printing, Publishing &
 Distribution, 2022 - 2023
 3 vols ; 24 cm.
 For 1st sec. - first term.

I.S.B.N : 978 - 977- 475 - 862 - 5

English language - study and teaching

428

رقم الإيداع : ٢٠٢٢ / ٩٥٠٣



Manage Your Term

قم بإدارة فصلك الدراسي (منهجك)

Plan A

1 6 Units

18

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part One: Lessons 1&2	الأولى
Part Two: Lessons 3&4	الثانية
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises	الثالثة

Or Plan B

2 6 Units

12

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part One: Lessons 1&2	الأولى
Part Two: Lessons 3&4	الثانية

3

2

Lectures

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises الوحدات ٣.٣.١	الأولى
Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises الوحدات ٦.٥.٤	الثانية

Total

وبذلك تكون قد انتهت من دراسة المنهج بالكامل كالتالي:

المحتوى	المحاضرة
Plan A	٨ محاضرة
Plan B	٤ محاضرة

تنويه: تختلف الخطة الزمنية بحسب طريقة وأسلوب كل معلم وطالب والوقت المتاح له.

Guidebook

دليل الكتاب



1 Part One: Lessons 1&2

عرض جديد للدرس الأول والثاني يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات والتعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر والملاحظات اللغوية ونصوص القراءة والاستماع والقواعد اللغوية.

2 Part Two: Lessons 3&4

عرض جديد للدرس الثالث والرابع يشتمل على المفردات اللغوية الأساسية والمفردات اللغوية الواردة في كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات والتعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر والملاحظات اللغوية ونصوص القراءة والاستماع والقواعد اللغوية.



3 Part Three: Story vocabulary, Skills & Advanced exercises

عرض جديد يشتمل على أهم المفردات اللغوية للدرس الخامس والسادس والمهارات اللغوية وجزء خاص للمتفوقين.

4 Listening - Reading

عرض شامل لـ (Listening - Reading) مع التنويه عن المفردات اللغوية بلون وترجمتها على جانب الجدول.



5 Vocabulary Study

عرض جديد للمتلازمات اللفظية والمترادفات ومتضادات ومشتقات المفردات الرئيسية الخ.

6 Language

شرح مفصل للقواعد اللغوية مع تدريبات تطبيقية على كل جزئية.



7 Just for Advanced Level

للمستويات العليا يتضمن شرح متبوعاً بتدريبات.

8 Language Skills

جزء خاص للمهارات اللغوية.



موقع التفوق ALTfwok.com

CONTENTS

MODULE 1 Community

UNIT 1	Getting away	page 12
UNIT 2	Supporting the community	page 86
UNIT 3	Improving lives	page 148
Revision 1		page 206

MODULE 2 Communication

UNIT 4	Making new friends	page 211
UNIT 5	Communication	page 273
UNIT 6	Learning from literature	page 330
Revision 2		page 382

STORY	on Treasure Island	page 388
-------	--------------------	----------

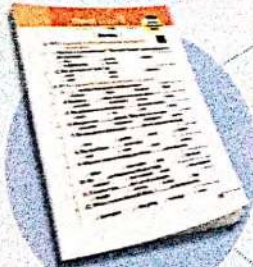


9 Mini Test

اختبار مصغر لتطبيق مباشر علي الشرح

10 Grammatical Hints

ملاحظات لغوية بين السطور من نصوص القراءة والاستماع.



11 Test on Unit

اختبار شامل علي الوحدة كما يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونياً.

12 Story: Treasure Island

عرض جديد للقصة المقررة وتدريبات تقيس مدى استيعاب الطالب لها.



UNIT 1

Getting away

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 88 : 93

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Reading :

An article about ecotourism, two blogs about the summer holidays

Writing :

An essay on ecotourism

Listening :

A story about travelling and what happened when something went wrong

Speaking :

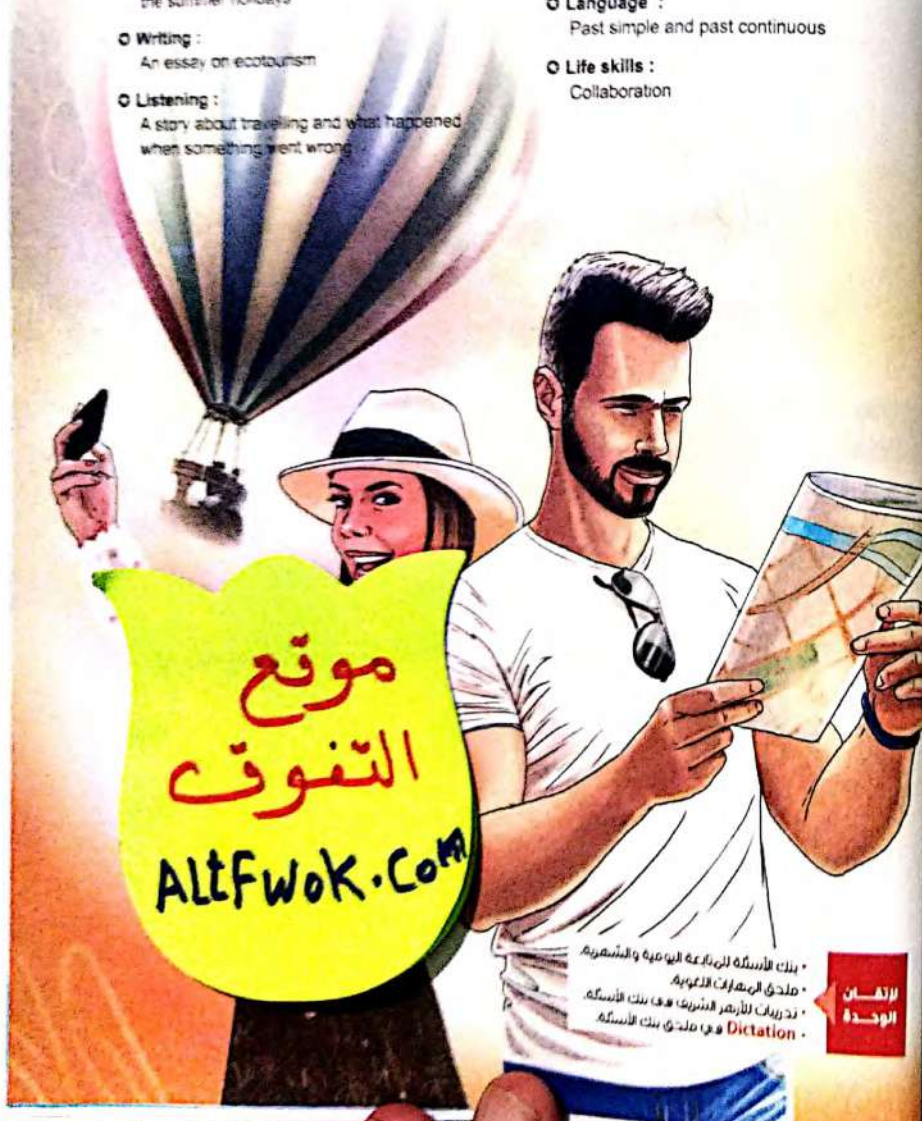
Describe an event

Language :

Past simple and past continuous

Life skills :

Collaboration



• تلك الأنشطة للترفيه البهجة والشهوية
• ملحق المصروف الإلكتروني
• زيارات لأماكن الترفيه هي تلك الأنشطة
• Dictation هي ملحق تلك الأنشطة

الإفهام
الوحدة

PART ONE LESSONS 1 & 2



SB pages 6 : 9 WB pages 88 & 89

Part I

Vocabulary

تدوينة • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولية فصول في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

conservation (n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	isolated (adj)	بعيد / نائي - مُتفرِّق
conservationist (n)	من أنصار حماية البيئة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	ينحني / يميل - يَنكَب
ecosystem (n)	النظام البيئي	material (n - adj)	مادة خام - قماش - مادي
eco-tourism (n)	السياحة البيئية	spicy (adj)	حار - مثقَل بالبهارات
eco-tourist (n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	sustainable (adj)	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
endangered (adj)	مُعَرَّض للخطر - مُهدِّد بالانقراض	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	بتورم - بتضخم - بتزايد
environment (n)	البيئة	trek(ked) (n - v)	رحلة طويلة (سيراً) - يسير لمسافة طويلة
environmentally (adv)	بيئياً	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / مُتميِّز
impact(ed) (n - v)	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر		
isolate(d) (v)	يُغزِل		

تدوينة • من الفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary

المفردات الهامة

advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	giant (adj - n)	عسلائق
annoyed (adj)	متضايق - متزعج	harm(ed) (n - v)	ضرب - يضر به
attractions (n)	عوامل الجذب	historic (adj)	تاريخي
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	including (prep)	بما في ذلك - مُتضمِّناً
beauty (n)	الجمال	internal (adj)	داخلي
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	introduce(d) (v)	يُطرح - يُقدِّم - يُشِير
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عَضَّة - بعض	Lemur (n)	قرود الليمور
blow - blew - blown (v)	نَهَب - ينفخ - يُظْفِر	limited (adj)	محدود
carnival (n)	احتفال / مَهْرَجَان	local (adj)	محلي
colourful (adj)	زاهي الألوان	locals (n)	السكان المحليين
community (n)	مجتمع - طائفة	luggage (n)	أمتعة المسافر
considerate (of) (adj)	مُتفهم - مُراعي لـ	orangutan (n)	انبيان الغاب - الكسان
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	otherwise (adv)	وإلا

UNIT 1

council (n)	مجلس	path (n)	طريق مشاة - ممر
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر - يوجد	plaza (n)	ساحة / فناء
crowded (adj)	مزدحم - مكتظ	popular (adj)	مشهور - محبوب
damage(d) (v - n)	يُخلف - تلف / خرد	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة سفر	properly (adv)	بشكل ملائم - على أكمل وجه
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمر	provide(d) (v)	يوفر - يزود بـ
develop(ed) (v)	يُنشئ / يُطوّر - ينمو / يتطور	public (adj)	عام - شعبي
disaster (n)	كارثة - مُصيبة	rebuild - rebuilt (v)	يعيد بناء
disconnected (adj)	منفصل / منعزل	remote (adj)	بعيد / نائي
dragon (n)	تنين	resident (n)	ساكن / نزيل
eco- (prefix)	بيئي ...	site (n)	موقع
eco-hotel (n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	solution (n)	حل
eco-trip (n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية - تذكّار
educate(d) (v)	يُعلّم	sunbathe(d) (v)	يأخذ حَمّام شمس - يتعرض للشمس
else (adv)	أيضاً - آخر	transport (n)	وسائل النقل المواصلات
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	victim (n)	ضحية
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد / يتواجد	volunteer(ed) (n/v)	مُتطوّع - يتطوّع
fly (n)	ذبابة	voluntourist (n)	سائح مُتطوّع
fussy eater (n)	شخص صعب الإرضاء في الطعام	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

3 Definitions تعريفات

توليه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جدًا.

Memorise	Understand
conservationist (n) من حُماة البيئة	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals, forests, etc.
ecotourism (n) السياحة البيئية	a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment
endangered (adj) مُعرّض للخطر	in danger of disappearing للأبد forever الإختفاء
impact (n) أثر / تأثير	the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something
isolated (adj) منعزل	disconnected from other people and places منفصل عن
lean (v) ينحني	to be in a sloping position وضع مائل

materials (n)	مواد (خام)	the things that are used for making or doing something
spicy (adj)	مُثلّ بالبهارات	containing chilli or other spices that give a burning feeling with pleasantly strong taste
sustainable (adj)	صديق للبيئة - مستدام	able to continue without causing damage to the environment
swell (up) (v)	يتورم / يلتهب	to get bigger and rounder أكثر إستدارة than normal
trek (n)	رحلة طويلة (سيرًا)	a hike / walk on a difficult journey
unique (adj)	فريد - مُميّز	special or the only one of its type or quality

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Pollution can have disastrous effects on the delicately balanced
(إدارة الطبيعة الحديدة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. industry b. culture c. civilization **d. ecosystem**
- As an, you should travel in a way that shows respect to nature.
(إدارة الطبيعة - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. ecotourism **b. ecotourist** c. ecosystem d. eco-friendly

- The tourist industry has had a big on the local town.
(كوم امو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. compact b. respect c. empathy **d. impact** = effect

- The explorers spent the day through forests and over mountains.
 a. diving **b. trekking** c. developing d. raising
- Tourism is when we protect our touristic places.
(إدارة الطبيعة والتقطير ٢٠٢٢)
a. sustainable b. crowded c. unique d. noisy

- Put some ice on your knee before it up.
(التاريخية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. treks **b. swells** c. leans d. isolates

- There are many animals in the world, which we need to save.
(إدارة البيئة ٢٠٢٢)
a. endangered b. isolated c. insulated d. popular

ملاحظة بالخطر

8. I like food, especially that with hot pepper.
 a fussy b internal **c spicy** d disconnected
9. The Great Pyramid is a/an monument أثر.
 a isolated **b unique** c considerate d crowded
10. helps to protect natural environment.
 a Community b Material c Destination **d Ecotourism**
11. Don't over the balcony, Sama. You might fall.
 a volunteer **b harm** c avoid **d lean**
12. The of the environment is very important.
 a population b attraction **c conservation** d path
13. We bought some for the curtains الستائر.
 a community **b material** c destination d ecotourism
14. A child needs a good to grow up and become a good citizen مواطن.
 a disaster b council **c environment** d eco-hotel
15. It is not good to keep a child from other children.
a isolated b unique c considerate d giant
16. Eco-hotels are friendly, they have little bad effect on nature.
 a spicy b properly **c environmentally** d. path
17. As a/an, his job is to look after the environment.
 a. volunteer **b. conservationist** c. resident d. voluntourist

2 Important Vocabulary

18. Your arm can swell up when a mosquito you.
a bites b. welcomes c. helps d. greets
19. I to look after my baby sister when my mother goes out.
a volunteer b. harm c. avoid d. lean
20. Luxor is an important tourist,
 a population **b attraction** c. conservation d. path
21. I am travelling to Aswan in three days. It is my next,
 a community b. material **c destination** **d ecotourism**
22. In prison, criminals are from the outside world.
 a. fussy b. internal c. spicy **d disconnected**
23. Try to be of other people's feelings.
a isolated b. unique **c considerate** d. giant

24. When the food is prepared, it is both healthy and tasty.
~~a spicy~~ **b properly** = well c. otherwise d. environmentally
25. work for a charity جمعية خيرية and get no money.
a. Volunteers b Conservationists c. Residents d. Voluntourists
26. "....." means related to the environment.
 a. Re- b. Ex- **c. Eco-** d. In-
27. Some work in the tourist industry.
 a. include b. including c. local **d locals**
28. The tourists lay on the beach to,
 a. introduce **b. blow** **c. sunbathe** d. exist
29. Pollution the environment.
 a. volunteers **b harms** c. avoids d. leans
30. You should walk along the in the garden. Don't walk on the wet grass.
 a. population b. attraction c. conservation **d path**
31. Air pollution is really a/an,
a. disaster b. council c. environment d. eco-hotel
32. The heart is one of the organs.
 a. fussy **b. internal** c. spicy d. disconnected
33. One of the in the hotel is an important man from Canada.
 a. solutions **b. attractions** **c. residents** d. victims
34. A enjoys themselves without damaging the environment.
 a. volunteer **b. conservationist** c. resident d. eco-tourist
35. I paid for everything, the drinks.
 a. include **b. including** c. never d. ever
36. A good team member new ideas and finds solutions to work problems.
a. introduces b. blows c. sunbathes **d exists**
37. People usually going out when it is raining.
 a. volunteer b. harm **c. avoid** d. lean
38. Try to be a good member of your,
a. community **b. material** c. destination d. ecotourism

39. You have to arrive early. you won't be allowed in. يُسمح لك بالدخول.
- a. spicy
b. properly
c. otherwise
d. environmentally
40. Some ancient Egyptian statues still in the temple.
- a. introduce
b. blow
c. sunbathe
d. exist
41. I stayed in a/an ; it does not cause harm to nature.
- a. disaster
b. council
c. environment
d. eco-hotel
42. This city has a/an of about three million people.
- a. population
b. attraction
c. conservation
d. path
43. The Pacific is a/an ocean, larger than all continents. القارات
- a. isolated
b. unique
c. considerate
d. harmful
44. Some children are eaters. Mothers find it difficult to know what they like.
- a. fussy
b. internal
c. spicy
d. disconnected
45. He was elected as a member of city
- a. Disaster
b. Council
c. Environment
d. Eco-tourism

3 Definitions

46. means special or the only one.
- a. Exotic
b. Sustainable
c. Unique
d. Material
47. is a type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment.
- a. Ecotourism
b. Eco-trip
c. Ecosystem
d. Eco-hotel
48. means in danger of disappearing forever. للأبد
- a. Crowded
b. Endangered
c. Lean
d. Relaxing
49. A means something that is used for making or doing something.
- a. castle
b. path
c. material
d. coral
50. means that an activity can be repeated because it does not harm the environment.
- a. Exotic
b. Spicy
c. Crowded
d. Sustainable
51. A / An is the effect that an action or a person has on someone or something.
- a. impact
b. advantage
c. lettuce
d. load

Part II Vocabulary Study

تلميح ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وجد تدريباته

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات	go	diving	يمارس رياضة الغوص
cause	problems	يسبب مشكلات	have	a holiday	يحصل على اجازة
catch	a flight (to)	يسافر بالطائرة (إلى)	make	an impact (on)	له أثر (على)
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف ل	provide	notes	يُوزن ملاحظات
do	something different	يفعل شيئاً مختلفاً	start	a holiday (to)	ينظم رحلات (إلى)
find	a solution (to)	يجد حلاً (ل)	take	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
get	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق		a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advantage	merit, upside
crowded	congested
giant	gigantic
isolated	remote, faraway
material	fabric
spicy	hot
trek	hike
unique	special, unusually good

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage, demerit, downside	عيب - سلبية
crowded	مزدحم - مكتظ	empty, free	فارغ
isolated	بعيد / ناء	close, nearby, neighbouring	قريب - مجاور
isolated	مُنعزل / انطوائي	sociable	اجتماعي
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة	unsustainable	غير مستدام

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

conservation	
conserve (d) (v) يحفظ - يحمي	- It is important to conserve the environment.
conservation (n) الحفاضة	- The conservation of the environment is important.
conservationist (n) من حفاضة البيئة	- Conservationists work hard to protect the environment.
conservative (adj) تقليدي - محافظ على التقاليد	- My father is a conservative person.
endangered	
danger (n) الخطر	- A careless driver puts his life in danger.
endanger(ed) (v) يُعرض للخطر - يخاطر به	- A careless driver endangers his life.
endangered (adj) مُعرض للخطر	- The life of a careless driver is endangered.
dangerous (adj) خطير	- It is dangerous to travel with a careless driver.
environment	
environment (n) البيئة	- We all must protect the environment.
environmentalist (n) خبير بيئي	- Some environmentalists have talked to us about how to protect the environment.
environmental (adj) بيئي	- Pollution is an environmental problem.
environmentally (adv) بيئيًا	- Cars that run on electricity are environmentally friendly.
isolated	
isolate(d) (v) يعزل - يعصّل	- It is important to isolate coronavirus patients.
isolation (n) العزلة - الفصل	- The isolation of coronavirus patients is important.
isolated (adj) منعزل - منفصل	- Coronavirus patients must be isolated from other people.

material	
material (n) مادة (خام)	- Wood is a hard material.
material (n) قماش	- This shirt is made of soft material.
material (adj) مادي - ملموس	- The police have material evidence that he is a thief.
lean	
lean(ed) - leant (v) يميل / ينحني - يتكى	- Don't lean on this dirty wall.
lean (adj) نحيف / منحوت الجسد	- He was lean, tall, and muscular ذو عضلات.
lean (adj) خالي من الدهون	- My children like lean meat.
leaning (adj) مائل	- Don't go near this leaning wall.
spicy	
spice(d) (v) يُثبّل (يضع توابل)	- Mum has spiced the fish.
spice (n) تابل (مفرد توابل)	- Mum has put spices into the fish.
spicy (adj) حريف - حار - مثبّل بالبهارات	- I like spicy food.
sustainable	
sustain(ed) (v) يحافظ على - يبقى	- A speaker should sustain the listener's interest.
sustainability (n) استمرارية / استدامة	- Conservationists are interested in environmental sustainability.
sustainable (adj) دائم - صديق للبيئة	- Cycling is a sustainable activity.
volunteer	
volunteer(ed) (v) يتطوع	- Sama and her friends volunteered to help the old woman.
volunteer (n) مُتطوع	- Sama and her friends were the volunteers who helped the old woman.
voluntary (adj) تطوعي	- We thanked Sama and her friends for their voluntary work.

ALFFWOK.COM موقع المتفوق

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

at least	على الأقل	go on holiday	يأخذ إجازة
close to	قريب من	in progress	مستمر
environmentally friendly	قريب من	keep ... safe	يُبقى ... في أمان
except for	بما عدا	make sure	يتأكد - يتحقق
famous for	مشهور بـ	riding on boats	ركوب العراكب
first of all,	قبل كل شيء	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
for example,	على سبيل المثال	the local council	المجلس المحلي
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالم	tourist destinations	أماكن يقصدها السياح
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	introduce ... to	يُعرف ... بـ/ على
blow ... off	تُفقد - تُطير	keep ... as	يحتفظ بـ ... كـ
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر	lean ... on / against	يستند ... على
disappear from	يختفي من	lean on / against	يتكئ على
educate ... about	يُعلم ... عن	lean out of	ينحني إلى خارج
find out (about)	يكشف/يعرف (عن)	manage to	يتمكن أن
get ... back	يسترد - يستعيد	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
get to	يصل إلى	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go back (to)	يُعود/يُرجع (إلى)		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

arrive - reach - get to

- arrive (v) **يُصل (فعل لازم لا يتبعه مفعول)**
- My father hasn't arrived yet.
- arrive at (v) **يُصل إلى (مكان صغير نسبياً مثل المدرسة/المطار/المحطة ...)**
- Rodayna arrived at Cairo Airport at 9:00.
- arrive in (v) **يُصل إلى (مكان كبير نسبياً مثل مدينة/دولة ...)**
- Rodayna arrived in Cairo at 9:00.
- get to (v) **يُصل إلى (مكان كبير أو صغير)**
- Rodayna got to Cairo Airport at 9:00.
- Rodayna got to Cairo at 9:00.

- reach (v) **يصل إلى (بدون حرف جر)**
- Rodayna reached Cairo Airport at 9:00.

coloured - colourful

- coloured (adj) **مُلوّن / ذو ألوان متعددة**
- I have no coloured photographs for my grandfather. They all are black and white.
- colourful (adj) **زاهي الألوان - مشير / متنوع**
- Little children like colourful clothes.
- My uncle has had a colourful life. He has worked and lived in different countries.

contain - include - consist of

- ... contain + (شيء موجود بداخله) **يحتوي على**
- This bag contains some books and pens.
- ... include + (بعض مكونات الشيء) **يتضمن / يشمل على**
- The program of the trip includes a visit to the High Dam.
- ... consist of + (كل مكونات الشيء) **يتكون من**
- My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, a kitchen and two bathrooms.

destination - location

- destination (n) **جهة الوصول/الوجهة (المكان المقصود)**
- I am travelling abroad next Friday. London is my destination.
- location (n) **موقع/مكان**
- GPS helps us find locations.

educate - teach - learn - bring up

- educate + (v) **يُعلم/يُدّرس لـ (غالباً في مدرسة أو جامعة) شخص/أشخاص**
- This school educates disabled children.
- teach (v) **يُدّرس/يعلم بالتدريس (بدون مفعول)**
- Mr Nasser teaches at a secondary school.

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

- **teach + المادة/الموضوع (v)** يُدرِّس (+ مفعول)
 - Mr Nasser **teaches** English at a secondary school.
- **teach + شخص + to/how to +inf. (v)** يُعلِّم ... كيف ..
 - Mr Nasser **teaches** students **to speak** English.
 - Mr Nasser **teaches** students **how to speak** English.
- **learn + المادة/الموضوع (v)** يتعلَّم (+ مفعول)
 - Ahmed **learns** English at a secondary school.
- **learn + to/how to +inf. (v)** يتعلَّم كيف ...
 - Ahmed **learns to speak** English at a secondary school.
 - Ahmed **learns how to speak** English at a secondary school.
- **bring up + شخص/أشخاص = raise (v)** يُربِّي / يهذب (+مفعول)
 - This great woman has **brought up** her children alone.
 - This great woman has **raised** her children alone.

else

- ١- تُستخدم **(else)** بعد أدوات الإستفهام بمعنى (أيضاً):
 - **Q.W.** ...أيضاً **else** + أداة استفهام
 - What **else** do you want? - Where **else** will you go?
- ٢- تُستخدم **(else)** بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية:

Someone | somebody | something | somewhere | anyone | anybody
 anything | anywhere | everyone | everybody | everything
 everywhere | no one | nobody | nothing | nowhere

- Ahmed didn't take your camera. Someone **else** took it.
- Do you want to eat something **else** ?

endangered / dangerous

- **endangered (adj)** مُعرَّض للخطر
 - The workers in the cave الكهف are **endangered**.
- **dangerous (adj)** خطير
 - The scorpion العقرب is very **dangerous**.

national - international - local

- **national (adj)** قومي / وطني
 - Salah is the captain of the **national** team.
 - October 6th is a **national** holiday.
- **international (adj)** دولي / عالمي
 - The Suez Canal is important for **international** trade. التجارة.
- **local (adj)** إقليمي / محلي
 - He works in the **local** council.
- **local (adj)** مكاني / موضعي
 - There is a **local** pain ألم in my leg.
- **local (n)** من السكان المحليين (من أهل المنطقة)
 - One of the **locals** guided us to the bank.

isolate - insulate

- **isolate (v)** يعزل / يفصل (عن الآخرين)
 - Coronavirus patients are **isolated** from other people.
- **insulate (v)** يعزل (باستخدام مادة عازلة)
 - Electric wires are **insulated** with plastic.

unique - special - private

- **unique (adj) = unusually good or special** مميز جداً
 - I had a **unique** offer to spend two weeks in Paris.
- **unique (adj) = the only one of its kind** فريد من نوعه
 - Each person has **unique** fingerprints. بصمات أصابع.
- **special (adj)** مميز / خاص
 - She has **special** language skills.
- **private (adj)** خاص (= شخصي)
 - Mr Ashraf has a **private** car.

ALTFWOK.com موقع التفوق

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given!

1. He lives in an isolated village. The synonym of the word 'isolated' is

- a. remote
- b. unusual
- c. faraway
- d. near
- e. close

2. "Egypt does many giant projects nowadays." The synonyms of the word 'giant' are

- a. huge
- b. generous
- c. delighted
- d. gigantic
- e. modern

3. Pollution _____ so many problems.

- a. brings
- b. does
- c. goes
- d. causes
- e. takes

4. You can say that someone has a/an _____

- a. lost
- b. ecosystem
- c. holiday
- d. low
- e. impact

5. "He lives in an isolated village." In this sentence, 'isolated' is antonymous with _____

- a. gigantic
- b. remote
- c. close
- d. faraway
- e. nearby

6. The old man sat down and leant _____ the wall to rest.

- a. on
- b. of
- c. against
- d. from
- e. in

7. When I was young, I liked very much to trek _____ the countryside.

- a. cross
- b. across
- c. though
- d. although
- e. through

8. Voluntary work is of great importance. The antonyms of "voluntary" are _____

- a. optional
- b. exceptional
- c. obligatory
- d. compulsory
- e. customary

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Plastic is used to _____ electric wires.

- a. isolate
- b. insulate
- c. burn
- d. break

2. Generous people are always ready to _____ voluntary work.

- a. do
- b. make
- c. give
- d. take

3. The museum is opened daily _____ for Fridays.

- a. except
- b. accept
- c. expectedly
- d. exist

4. Scientists work hard to _____ a solution to this health problem.

- a. make
- b. tell
- c. go
- d. find

5. My brother _____ university last year.

- a. went
- b. started
- c. took
- d. brought

6. When I first visited Cairo, I _____ lost.

- a. had
- b. introduced
- c. got
- d. found

7. "I went trekking along the beach." The word 'trekking' here is a synonym of _____

- a. fishing
- b. hiking
- c. losing
- d. fabricating

8. The village benefited _____ the new canal.

- a. from
- b. of
- c. to
- d. about

9. The tourist _____ is very important.

- a. factory
- b. ecotourism
- c. ecosystem
- d. industry

10. When the fan was turned on, its air blew the paper _____

- a. off
- b. of
- c. to
- d. at

11. He is a good father who is close _____ his children.

- a. to
- b. of
- c. for
- d. a & b

12. Children are usually _____ about the games at the amusement park.

- a. exciting
- b. excited
- c. excitement
- d. b & c

13. The games at the amusement park are usually _____ to children.

- a. exciting
- b. excited
- c. excitement
- d. b & c

14. Lions are _____ animals. They can attack people.

- a. coloured
- b. colourful
- c. endangered
- d. dangerous

فصل اول، انا نفضل OFF

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التمرين

15. Lions are animals. They may die out **تفرض** soon.
 a coloured b colourful
 c endangered d dangerous
16. Don't ask Aliaa for help. Ask somebody ..
 a also b else c too d b & c
17. We have to electricity to avoid paying much money.
 a conserve b conservation
 c conservationist d conservative
18. He/she/it does the least harm to the environment.
 a Ecotourists b Ecotourism
 c Ecology d Ecosystem
19. do no harm to the environment.
 a Ecotourists b Ecotourism c Ecology d Ecosystem
20. Never put your life in
 a endanger b endangered c danger d dangerous
21. Never your life.
 a endanger b endangered c danger d dangerous
22. He is an who works hard to stop damaging nature.
 a environment b environmental
 c environmentalist d environmentally
23. It is necessary **ضروري** to keep your children in from bad company **اضحية**.
 a isolate b isolated c isolating d isolation
24. I refused to park my car next to the wall that looked as if it was going to fall.
 a lean b leant c leaning d leans
25. Unlike me, my children like to eat food which has the flavour of
 a spice's b spices c a spiced d spicy
26. A/An enjoys themselves and does charity work.
 a voluntourism b ecotourism
 c voluntourist d ecotourist

1 Reading Texts

Ecotourism - Is this the future?

(58 page 6)

1. What is ecotourism ?

Ecotourism⁽¹⁾ is about providing⁽²⁾ holidays to places which are often endangered⁽³⁾ and isolated⁽⁴⁾. The holidays are designed to have a limited⁽⁵⁾ impact⁽⁶⁾ on the local environment and to educate⁽⁷⁾ tourists about conservation⁽⁸⁾.



Egypt is developing⁽⁹⁾ ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast⁽¹⁰⁾. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly⁽¹¹⁾ natural⁽¹²⁾ materials⁽¹³⁾. When tourists go diving⁽¹⁴⁾, they are taught how to avoid⁽¹⁵⁾ damaging⁽¹⁶⁾ the fish and keeping the special coral reefs⁽¹⁷⁾ safe.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem⁽¹⁸⁾ (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist⁽¹⁹⁾ anywhere else⁽²⁰⁾ in the world. Lemurs⁽²¹⁾, for example, only live in Madagascar.

The Galapagos Islands⁽²²⁾ in Ecuador are famous for the unique⁽²³⁾ animals, such as the giant⁽²⁴⁾ turtles⁽²⁵⁾ which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is sustainable⁽²⁶⁾. Only a limited number of people can visit the islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

The Komodo National Park⁽²⁷⁾ in Indonesia is a popular⁽²⁸⁾ ecotourism destination⁽²⁹⁾. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife⁽³⁰⁾, including⁽³¹⁾ the Komodo dragon⁽³²⁾, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) السياحة البيئية
- (2) توفر
- (3) معرض للخطر
- (4) منعزل
- (5) محدود
- (6) أثر
- (7) يتعلم
- (8) حماية البيئة
- (9) تنمي
- (10) ساحل
- (11) صديق للبيئة
- (12) طبيعي
- (13) مواد
- (14) الغوص
- (15) يتجنب
- (16) إتلاف
- (17) الشعب المرجانية
- (18) النظام البيئي
- (19) يوجد
- (20) آخر
- (21) قرود الليمور
- (22) جزر
- (23) فريد
- (24) عملاق
- (25) سلحفاة مائية
- (26) ملائم للبيئة
- (27) الحديقة الوطنية
- (28) مشهور
- (29) مقصد
- (30) الحياة البرية
- (31) بما في ذلك
- (32) التنين

2. Working Together

(SB page 9)

Last year, I went to the Faroe Islands for a few days as a **voluntourist**⁽¹⁾ – I was both a **tourist**⁽²⁾ and a **volunteer**⁽³⁾. I helped the **locals**⁽⁴⁾ to rebuild **paths**⁽⁵⁾ and **walls**⁽⁶⁾. It was very hard work, but great **fun**⁽⁷⁾ and I met other volunteers from all around the world.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مسالحو متطوع
- (2) مسالحو
- (3) متطوع
- (4) السكان المحليين
- (5) ممرات
- (6) أسوار
- (7) متعة
- (8) بعيد / نالو
- (9) يتسلق
- (10) تَل
- (11) طيرت
- (12) لحسن الحظ
- (13) أدفا
- (14) تذكار

While I was working on the islands, I talked to the people who live there about life in such a **remote**⁽⁸⁾ place. On the second day, I **climbed**⁽⁹⁾ to the top of a **hill**⁽¹⁰⁾ when the wind **blew**⁽¹¹⁾ my hat off. **Fortunately**⁽¹²⁾, the family I was staying with gave me another, much **warmer**⁽¹³⁾ hat which I kept as a **souvenir**⁽¹⁴⁾!

2 Listening Texts



Luca : Last summer I decided not to **go on holiday**⁽¹⁾ to Greece with my friends, but do something different.



Klara : So, where did you go ?

Luca : Well, as I'm studying **Biology**⁽²⁾ I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the **orangutans**⁽³⁾ there. So, I booked a holiday with an **ecotourism**⁽⁴⁾ company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like ?

Luca : A bit of a **disaster**⁽⁵⁾ although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an **internal flight**⁽⁶⁾ to Borneo, but my **luggage**⁽⁷⁾ never arrived so, I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was **leaning**⁽⁸⁾ out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يذهب في إجازة
- (2) علم الأحياء
- (3) إنسان الغابة
- (4) السياحة البيئية
- (5) كارثة
- (6) رحلة جوية داخلية
- (7) أمتعة
- (8) منحنى

Klara : Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back ?

Luca : No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very **annoyed**⁽⁹⁾, but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the **conservationists**⁽¹⁰⁾ are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide **introduced**⁽¹¹⁾ us to the people working there and then we had dinner.

Klara : What was the food like ?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very **spicy**⁽¹²⁾. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a **fussy eater**⁽¹³⁾ anymore. What did you do every day ?

Luca : We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then **trekked**⁽¹⁴⁾ into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.

Klara : Did you feed them ?

Luca : No, they're wild animals, not pets. We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a **spider**⁽¹⁵⁾ bit me while I was sleeping and my arm **swelled up**⁽¹⁶⁾.

Klara : So, what happened ?

Luca : I had to go to hospital-but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish **properly**⁽¹⁷⁾ and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

- (9) متضايق
- (10) حماة البيئة
- (11) يقدم
- (12) متبل بالبهارات
- (13) شخص صعب إرضائه فيما يخص الأكل
- (14) يسير في رحلة
- (15) عنكبوت
- (16) يتورم
- (17) بشكل صحيح

ALFFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

3 Workbook Texts

A popular problem!

(WB page 88)

Venice is famous for being a city with many canals, **colourful**⁽¹⁾ **carnivals**⁽²⁾, amazing **plazas**⁽³⁾ and **historic**⁽⁴⁾ buildings. However, the city is a **victim**⁽⁵⁾ of its own **beauty**⁽⁶⁾. Venice has a **population**⁽⁷⁾ of only 55,000.



but the city is visited by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism **creates**⁽⁸⁾ a lot of jobs for the local population, but it also **causes**⁽⁹⁾ many problems.

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day enjoy riding on boats along the canals, but the large **cruise ships**⁽¹⁰⁾ can **damage**⁽¹¹⁾ the historic buildings. The **narrow**⁽¹²⁾ streets can be very **crowded**⁽¹³⁾ and it is difficult for local people to **move**⁽¹⁴⁾ around the city.

The **local council**⁽¹⁵⁾ are trying to find a **solution**⁽¹⁶⁾ which keeps both the tourists and local **residents**⁽¹⁷⁾ happy. They are also trying to **encourage**⁽¹⁸⁾ tourists to visit other beautiful **sites**⁽¹⁹⁾ around Venice.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مثيرة / ملونة
- (2) احتفالات
- (3) اسواق - ساحات
- (4) تاريخي
- (5) ضحية
- (6) الجمال
- (7) السكان
- (8) تخلق
- (9) تسبب
- (10) مراكب سياحية
- (11) يُتلف
- (12) ضيق
- (13) مزدحم
- (14) يتحرك
- (15) مجلس محلي
- (16) حل
- (17) سكان
- (18) يشجع
- (19) معالم / مناظر

Salma's email

(WB page 89)

To : Hania
Subject : My funny holiday!
Hi Hania,

How are you? I hope you had a great summer! I remember you talked about going to the beach with your family. Did you have a good time? What did you do?

My summer was great! I did so many different things. First of all, we went to the village where my father was born. In the car, on the way there, my brother **leant**⁽¹⁾ out of the window with his mouth open and he ate two **flies**⁽²⁾. We all **laughed**⁽³⁾ **except for**⁽⁴⁾ my brother, of course!

Well, that's all for now. I'll tell you more when I see you.
Best wishes,
Salma

Check Vocabulary

- (1) انكأ / سند
- (2) ذباب
- (3) ضحكنا
- (4) ماعدا / باستثناء

4 Video script section

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact they have on the place they're visiting ?

The tourist offices in cities which are popular with tourists think about how tourism affects their cities. They consider the advantages⁽¹⁾ and disadvantages⁽²⁾. They try to help local⁽³⁾ people cope with lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money advertising⁽⁴⁾ the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community⁽⁵⁾ of 1.5 million local people.

In future, people should think more about the environment⁽⁶⁾ and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport⁽⁷⁾ if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considerate⁽⁸⁾ of each other !

اطلب من الطالب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. How do tourist offices help local people ?
2. Why doesn't the tourism office in Amsterdam advertise its city today ?
3. How and when should tourists travel around a country ?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مزاي
- (2) عيوب
- (3) محلي
- (4) يعلن عن
- (5) مجتمع
- (6) البيئة
- (7) المواصلات العامة
- (8) مراع لشعور الآخرين

Part IV Language



Remember

1 Conjugation of regular verbs : تصرفات الأفعال المنتظمة :

بالنسبة للأفعال المنتظمة يكون التصريف الثاني (**past simple**) هو نفسه التصريف الثالث (**past participle**). ويتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة كالتالي:

1 مُعظم الأفعال المنتظمة يتم إضافة (**ed**) لنهاية الفعل :

- visit: visited - visited
- help: helped - helped
- clean: cleaned - cleaned
- wash: washed - washed

2 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (**e**) يتم إضافة (**d**) فقط لنهاية الفعل :

- decide: decided - decided
- like: liked - liked
- live: lived - lived
- hate: hated - hated

1 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (y) مسبق بحرف ساكن يتم حذف (y) وإضافة (ed) لنهاية الفعل .

- carry : carried - carried
- try : tried - tried
- deny : denied - denied
- apply : applied - applied

2 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (y) مسبق بحرف متحرك يبقى حرف (y) كما هو مع إضافة (ed) لنهاية الفعل .

- stay : stayed - stayed
- play : played - played

3 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف ساكن واحد مسبق بحرف متحرك واحد يُصاحف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة (ed) :

- drop : dropped
- stop : stopped

لا تنطبق هذه القاعدة على الأفعال التي يكون المقطع الأخير فيها منخفض في النطق (unstressed) :

- open - opening (Not: openning)
- listen - listening (Not: listenning)
- develop - developing (Not: developping)

4 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (c) يتم إضافة (ked) لنهاية الفعل :

- panic : panicked - panicked
- picnic : picnicked - picnicked

2 Conjugation of irregular verbs : تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

بالنسبة للأفعال غير المنتظمة لا توجد قاعدة ثابتة للتصريفات وينبغي حفظ الفعل بتصريفاته. فهناك أفعال لا تتغير مثل :

- cut : cut - cut
- hit : hit - hit
- cost : cost - cost
- shut : shut - shut

وهناك أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريفين الثاني والثالث مثل :

- sit : sat - sat
- bring : brought - brought

وهناك أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريفين الأول والثالث مثل :

- come : came - come
- run : ran - run

وهناك أفعال يختلف تصريفها الأول عن الثاني وعن الثالث :

- write : wrote - written
- begin : began - begun

3 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط :

1 يتكون الماضي البسيط في الجمل الخبرية من :

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل .

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

2 عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + did not / didn't + inf.

ex. - Ahmed did not (didn't) visit his friends yesterday.
- They did not (didn't) see a show last night.

3 عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + Subject فاعل + inf. ?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did Omar do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

4 عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject. + inf. ?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ?
- Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

5 يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

Object مفعول + was/were + P.P. التصريف الثالث .

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

6 كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس | ago منذ | once ذات مرة
last ... الماضي ... | the other day مؤخرًا | in the past في الماضي
once upon a time ذات مرة | previously فيما سبق | in 2011 ... etc

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.
تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية مع عادات الماضي البسيط :

always - usually - sometimes - never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A week ago, I ~~planted~~ an apple tree in my garden.
 - a. plant
 - b. have planted
 - c. planted
 - d. had planted
- A week ago, an apple tree in my garden.
 - a. plant
 - b. were planted
 - c. planted
 - d. was planted
- They their animals yesterday.
 - a. didn't feed
 - b. haven't fed
 - c. don't feed
 - d. hadn't fed
- Their animals yesterday.
 - a. didn't feed
 - b. weren't fed
 - c. don't feed
 - d. aren't fed
- that film at the cinema?
 - a. You watched
 - b. Did you watch
 - c. You were watched
 - d. Were you watched
- at the cinema?
 - a. That film watched
 - b. Did that film watch
 - c. That film was watched
 - d. Was that film watched
- Who the door?
 - a. you opened
 - b. did you open
 - c. opened
 - d. were you opened
- Who ?
 - a. was the door opened by
 - b. did you open the door
 - c. was opened the door
 - d. were you opened the door
- Ahmed read an interesting story
 - a. everyday
 - b. ago
 - c. now
 - d. the other day
- a lorry hit a motorbike.
 - a. Yesterday
 - b. In the future
 - c. Ago
 - d. Now

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) لا تستخدم الفعل المساعد (did) وتستخدم (not) في النفي وفي السؤال تبدأ بـ (was / were) :

- He **was** at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He **wasn't** at school yesterday. (نفي)
- **Was** he at school yesterday? (سؤال به 'هل')
- Where **was** he yesterday? (سؤال به أداة إستفهام)

في زمن الماضي البسيط، إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) فمن الأصح أن تستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال :

- She **had** lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She **didn't have** lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)
- **Did** she **have** lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال به 'هل')
- When **did** she **have** lunch? (سؤال به أداة إستفهام)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Hassan at school yesterday.
 - a. isn't
 - b. doesn't be
 - c. wasn't
 - d. didn't be
- at school yesterday?
 - a. Was Hassan
 - b. Did Hassan be
 - c. Had Hassan
 - d. Did Hassan have
- Where yesterday?
 - a. was Hassan
 - b. does Hassan be
 - c. were Hassan
 - d. was Hassan
- I lunch at home yesterday.
 - a. haven't
 - b. hadn't
 - c. don't have
 - d. didn't have
- lunch at home yesterday?
 - a. Had you
 - b. Did you have
 - c. You had
 - d. Do you have

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم الماضي البسيط في حالات كثيرة منها :

- التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي (عادة مع تعبير زمني ماضي) :
 - ex. - I **visited** my grandmother last Friday.
 - My father **built** this house ten years ago.
- سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :
 - ex. The baby **was** called Oliver Twist. He **was sent** to the orphanage.
- بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :
 - ex. - If I **studied** hard, I'd pass this exam.

ALFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Past Habits عادات الماضي

- 1 يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر
1. Subj. + used to + inf. ---
 ex. - He used to swim in the sea.
 - She didn't use to wear glasses.
 2. It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit عادة + to + inf. ---
 ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.
 3. Subj. + had + the habit of + n. / inf. + ing ---
 ex. - He had the habit of swimming in the sea.
 4. Subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n. / inf. + ing ---
 ex. - He was in the habit of swimming in the sea.
 5. It was + habitual معتاد + for + someone / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. ---
 ex. - It was habitual for him to swim in the sea.
- 2 يمكن استخدام (was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing) للتعبير عن ان شيء ما كان معتاداً بالنسبة للفاعل :
 ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
 - I was used to (eating) salty food.
- 3 يمكن استخدام (ing + n. / inf. + used to + got / became) للتعبير عن التعود
 ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.
 - I became used to working on a farm.

Mini Test 3

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. If we _____ by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.
 a. live **b. lived** c. is lived d. was lived
 2. When I was a student, I _____ up early.
 a. get b. used to getting
 c. was used to get **d. was used to getting**
 3. _____ go for a walk every week?
a. Was he used to b. Did he use **c. Did he use to** d. He used to

Notes for Advanced Level ملاحظات للناطقين

- 1 يمكن استخدام (did + inf) في الدخيل المثلثة للتوكيد :
 - You **did see** who stole the money yesterday.
 - Ahmed **did break** my tablet an hour ago.
- 2 لاحظ استخدام جملة الماضي البسيط في الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في المضارع :
 1. I wish + subject + past simple
 - I wish Sama **had** enough time to help me.
 = Salma **can't help** me because she **doesn't have** enough time.
2. It is + (about/almost/high) + time + subject + past simple
 - It is high time you **returned** home.
 = You **are** still out.
3. Subj. فاعل + would + rather/sooner + الفاعل الأول + past simple
 - I'd rather you **arrived** on time.
 = You **don't arrive** on time.
 أما إذا كان فاعل (would rather/sooner) هو نفس الفاعل بعدها فهاتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر ويكون هذا أسلوب تعبير عن التفضيل :
 - Subj. فاعل + would + rather/sooner + inf. ...
 - I'd rather **go** shopping in the afternoon.
 = I think it is better for me to go shopping in the afternoon.
- 4 في حالة وجود تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي بعد (I wish / I'd rather / It's (about / almost) time) استخدم بعدها الماضي البسيط :
 ex. - I'd rather she **had arrived** home earlier **yesterday**.
 ملاحظة هامة : في حالة منم وجرد فاعل بعد (would rather) فإننا نستخدم بعدها الفعل في المصدر.
 ex. - I'd rather have fish. (Not: had)
- 5 عند استخدام ظروف التكرار التي تحمل معنى النفي مثل (never / rarely / seldom / little) في بداية الجملة لابد من استخدام فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل :
 ex. - Rodayna **rarely left** for school before 7:30. (Rarely ...)
 - **Rarely did** Rodayna leave for school before 7:30.

ALTfWok.com موقع المتفوق

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I prep. 3 exams two months ago.
a. take **b. took** c. have taken d. was taken
2. Nada saw one of her old friends in the club
a. now b. tomorrow **c. the other day** d. yet
3. Mohammed Salah Liverpool and won Player of the Year Award.
a. joined b. was joined c. joins d. was joining
4. I have many friends at my first school.
a. don't b. doesn't **c. didn't** d. never
5. I had many friends at my first school.
a. don't b. doesn't **c. didn't** **d. never**
6. Rokaya didn't the mobile ringing.
a. hears **b. hear** c. heard d. hearing
7. Did Sama mum with the housework.
a. was helping b. helps c. helped **d. help**
8. What Karim do when he cut his finger?
a. did b. do c. does d. has
9. Why did Rahma look tired when she the door?
a. shuts **b. shut** **c. was shut** d. shutting
10. well yesterday!
a. Did you play **b. You played**
c. Do you play d. How did you play
11. well yesterday?
a. Did you play **b. You played**
c. Do you play **d. How did you play**
12. A: yesterday? B: Quite well.
Did you play **b. You played**
c. Do you play **d. How did you play**

13. I off my tablet before I went out.
a. turn **b. turned** **c. was turned** d. was turning
14. My tablet off before I went out.
a. turn b. turned **c. was turned** d. was turning
15. I tired, so I went to bed.
a. was **b. wasn't** didn't be d. b & c
16. I tired, so I worked for three more hours.
a. was b. wasn't **c. didn't be** d. b & c
17. the best students at your first school.
a. They were b. Were they c. Did they be d. Are they
18. the best students at your first school?
a. They were **b. Were they** **c. Did they be** d. Are they
19. her lunch.
a. Did she have b. Had she
c. She hadn't **d. She didn't have**
20. her lunch?
a. Did she have b. Had she
c. She hadn't d. She didn't have
21. Yesterday, we some beautiful fish in the Red Sea.
a. saw b. were seeing c. see d. have seen
22. My sister usually to school when she was young.
a. walks b. was walking **c. walked** d. has walked
23. My grandfather always to work when he was young.
a. walked b. walks c. is walking d. was walking
24. My uncle in 1970.
a. born **b. was born** c. bear d. bears
25. Nesma late when she was young. She no longer does that now.
a. usually sleeps **b. is used to sleeping**
c. used to sleep d. was usually slept
26. One of the Egyptian scientists awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010.
a. was b. has been c. were d. had been

ALFwOK.com موقع التمرين

27. He committed the crime and ran away. *away*
 a. runs b. ran c. run d. running
28. The High Dam was built in Aswan creating the biggest artificial lake in the world. *السد العظيم في أسوان*
 a. built b. has built c. has been built d. was built
29. He wasn't seen at the club yesterday. *لم يره أحد*
 a. isn't seen b. wasn't seen c. didn't see d. doesn't see

Special cases

30. A: Where is the money that was on the table?
 B: Mum spent it. She paid the electricity bill. *دفعوا*
 a. spends b. spent c. did spend d. b & c
31. I was offered a car which cost me only 100,000 pounds. *قدموا لي*
 a. offer b. offered c. was offered d. was offering
32. The door was opened and we went in. *فتحت الباب*
 a. opened b. was opened c. a & b d. opens
33. I opened the door and we went in. *فتحت الباب*
 a. opened b. was opened c. a & b d. opens
34. At the age of five, I learned to swim. *التعلم السباحة*
 a. learned b. learn c. have learnt d. was learnt
35. As a boy, Mr Mohammed was praised for his good behaviour. *مدحوا*
 a. used to be praised b. was praising c. used to praise d. praised
36. He used to hard work on the farm. *عمل الشاقة*
 a. used b. were used c. got used d. didn't use
37. My friend sent me an email a short time ago. *الرسالة الإلكترونية*
 a. sent b. is sending c. has sent d. sends
38. We'd rather you will phone us tomorrow. *التصديق*
 a. are phoning b. phoning c. will phone d. phoned
39. It is high time we went home. *الوقت المناسب للذهاب*
 a. go b. have gone c. went d. going
40. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather stay in a good hotel. *المبيت*
 a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay

Check your understanding

41. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. I used to studying hard. b. I was used to study hard.
 c. I got used to study hard. d. I became used to studying hard.
42. I don't have enough time for hobbies. I wish I had had enough time for hobbies. *سأ*
 a. had enough time for hobbies
 b. have had enough time for hobbies
 c. had had enough time for hobbies
 d. didn't have enough time for hobbies
43. I didn't have enough time for hobbies when I was a child. I wish I had had enough time for hobbies when I was a child. *سأ*
 a. had enough time for hobbies
 b. have had enough time for hobbies
 c. had had enough time for hobbies
 d. didn't have enough time for hobbies
44. Who did you open the door?
 a. was the door opened by b. was opened the door
 c. did you open the door d. were you opened the door
45. "She wishes she were tall." What does this mean?
 a. She was tall. b. She wasn't tall.
 c. She isn't tall. d. She is tall.
46. "I'd rather you didn't use my mobile." This means that I don't want you to use my mobile.
 a. I wanted you to use my mobile
 b. I didn't want you to use my mobile
 c. I want you to use my mobile
 d. I don't want you to use my mobile
47. "You have to pay the bill right now." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
 a. It is about time you paid the bill
 b. It is about time you had paid the bill
 c. It is time you pay the bill
 d. It is time you have paid the bill
48. Mum always sets the table for lunch. *يضع*
 a. This is a present habit.
 b. This was a past habit.
 c. This always takes place.
 d. This never took place.

ALFFWOK.COM موقع التمرين

سأ / سأ / سأ



Part 1

Vocabulary

تلوية • ابدأ من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدا واستعملها بالطريقة المناسبة في الامتحان.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	نشط	noisy (adj)	مُزعج - صاحب
ancient (n)	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	في منتهى السعادة
beautiful (adj)	جميل	old (adj)	قديم - عجوز
boring (adj)	مُمل	peace (n)	السلام - السكينة
busy (adj)	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	هادئ / ذو سكينة
calm (adj)	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	هدوء - هادئ
exciting (adj)	مثير	relax(ed) (v)	يسترخي
exotic (adj)	غريب / نادر - أجنبي	relaxing (adj)	مُريح
modern (adj)	حديث	stuck (adj)	عالق - محشور

تلوية • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأزرق - واستعملها بالطريقة المناسبة.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually (adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	guide(d) (n - v)	مُرشد - يُرشد
adventure (n)	مغامرة	hobby (n)	هواية
amazing (adj)	رائع - مذهل	lettuce (n)	الخس
awful (adj)	فظيع / شديد	market (n)	سوق
balcony (n)	بلكون	on board	على متن (طائرة/سفينة)
brilliant (adj)	رائع / عَلاب - ذكي	paradise (n)	جَنَّة
castle (n)	قلعة	photograph(ed) (n-v)	صورة - يلتقط صورة
cheap (adj)	رخيص الثمن	resort (n)	منتجع سياحي
clear(ed) (adj - v)	صافي - نظى - واضح - يوضح	sight (n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم
cruise ship (n)	باخرة سياحية / مركب زخرة	steal - stole -	يسرق
cruise (n)	زخرة	stolen (v)	
cry(ied) (v)	يبكي	stressed (adj)	مُجهَّد - مضغوط
damage(d) (v/n)	تلف - يدمر - تلف	sunshine (n)	سفرح الشمس
distance (n)	مسافة - بُعد	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم

expect(ed) (v)	يتوقع	teenager (adj - n)	مراهق
explode(d) (v)	يستكشف	temple (n)	معبد
fascinating (adj)	جذاب / حَلاب	tiny (adj)	صغير الحجم
forget - forgot -		travel(led) (v)	يسافر
forgotten (v)	نسسى	traveller (n)	سافر - زحالة
garden(n)	بستان	try(ied) (v)	يحاول - يُجرب
gardening (n)	بستنة / فلاحة البساتين	underwater (adj - adv)	تحت الماء
glad (adj)	سرور / منتهج	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
grow - grew -	يزرع - ينمو	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
grown (v)			

تلوية • تعرفت المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستخدمة - هام جدا

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
ancient (adj) قديم / عتيق	very old
crowded (adj) مُزدحم	having a lot of people or things
exciting (adj) مثير	making you feel excited
exotic (adj) غريب / نادر - أجنبي	unusual and often from a different country
lean (v) ينجني	to be in a sloping position
modern(adj) حديث / مُعاصر	new and connected مرتبط to the present
orangutan (n) إنسان الغابة	a large ape فرد with long arms and long orange-brown hair
peaceful (adj) ملى بالسكينة	feeling calm, quiet, without any problems
relaxing (adj) مُريح	making you feel relaxed and not stressed

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Nuclear power الطاقة النووية must be used for purposes أغراض (الشيء - اشياء) ١٠ - ٢٢

a. annoying	b. peaceful	c. upsetting	d. notorious
-------------	-------------	--------------	--------------
- The Great Pyramid is a/an monument.

a. active	b. exotic	c. crowded	d. ancient
-----------	-----------	------------	------------

www.gettingaway.com

3. My father still uses his phone which does not even connect to the internet.
 a. noisy b. old c. busy d. modern
4. She is intelligent, hard working and polite.
 a. beautiful b. boring c. awful d. stressed
5. I spent the weekend in a/an place where it is calm and peaceful.
 a. crowded b. endangered c. relaxing d. swollen
6. I couldn't find a seat in the bus.
 a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient
7. I can't enjoy my time in this street. It makes me nervous.
 a. noisy b. old c. quiet d. modern
8. I enjoy the of the night in the countryside.
 a. noise b. quiet c. guide d. village
9. After this long and tiring متعب day, you need to
 a. realize b. respect c. resort d. relax
10. We got in the traffic jam الازدحام المروري for an hour.
 a. arranged b. stuck c. trekked d. unique
11. Being is the opposite of being lazy.
 a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient
12. Smartphones are inventions.
 a. noisy b. old c. busy d. modern
13. It is the fourth time I have watched this film.
 a. awful b. boring c. exciting d. stressed
14. I saw some birds on the beach. They do not belong to this area.
 a. active b. exotic c. crowded d. ancient
15. She is so doing the housework that she couldn't answer the phone.
 a. noisy b. old c. busy d. modern
16. What a/an match! I'll turn off the TV.
 a. beautiful b. boring c. exciting d. stressed

2 Important Vocabulary

17. I hate using social media. They make me
 a. pleased b. stressed c. dressed d. praised

18. I don't want to go to the park., I am meeting some friends in the club.
 a. Environmentally b. Otherwise c. Actually d. Naturally
19. Secondary school students are
 a. adults b. teenagers c. granddads d. toddlers
20. Smoking smokers' health.
 a. describes b. benefits c. develops d. damages
21. When we travel on holidays, we usually buy to remind us of the nice time we spent.
 a. souvenirs b. sails c. turtles d. paths
22. He lives in a village. It takes you a long time to go there.
 a. nearby b. near c. remote d. close
23. Tourists are usually fascinated to the places they visit and the people they meet.
 a. dive b. destroy c. grow d. photograph
24. is the activity of looking after plants in a garden or a park.
 a. Garden b. Gardening c. Park d. Parking
25. I find this novel extremely للغاية It interests me a lot.
 a. fascinating b. fascinated c. boring d. bored
26. While we were camping in the forest, some monkeys our food.
 a. fed b. protected c. stole سرور d. benefitted
27. We have to our children about nature conservation.
 a. learn b. educate c. study d. steal
28. In difficulties, العواقب الصعبة we need the of our relatives أقارب and friends.
 a. lettuce b. swell c. material d. support
29. The tourists enjoyed the of the sun shining on the statue of Ramses.
 a. sight b. cruise c. turtle d. article
30. This fascinating island is a tourist
 a. mosquito b. paradise c. pool d. Sahara
31. People who go on holidays in mountains and rainforests like
 a. resorts b. designs c. adventure d. respect
32. I enjoyed the on the Nile from Luxor to Aswan.
 a. cruise b. ecotourism c. drive d. unique

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

33. When I visited London for the first time, I spent three days the city.

- a. swelling **b. exploring** c. leaning d. collaborating

34. The plane I was travelling on had 125 passengers on

- a. broad b. board c. abroad **d. aboard**

35. I could see some fish moving about deep in the water.

- a. bored **b. clear** c. sick **d. tiny**

36. Mohammed Salah is a very footballer.

- a. little b. tiny c. ancient **d. brilliant**

37. My grandfather cotton in his field.

- a. grows** b. breaks c. feels d. spends

38. Diving is a/an activity.

- a. few b. warm c. sick **d. underwater**

3 Definitions

39. means too full of people or things.

- a. Awful **b. Crowded** c. Local d. Brilliant

40. describes something unusual and often from a different country.

- a. Close b. Natural **c. Exotic** d. Peaceful

41. means new and connected to the present.

- a. Modern** b. Ancient c. Spicy d. Endangered

42. means feeling calm, quiet, without any problems.

- a. Fascinating b. Natural **c. Peaceful** d. coral

43. means making you feel relaxed and not stressed.

- a. Fascinating b. Natural c. Coral **d. Relaxing**

44. A/An is a large ape with long arms and long orange-brown hair.

- a. lemur **b. orangutan** c. dragon d. turtle

45. means having a pleasantly strong taste, and gives you a pleasant burning feeling in your mouth.

- a. Underwater **b. Spicy** c. Traditional d. Fascinating

Part II Vocabulary Study

توليه setar حلتك على الزئفء بمسئولك عن طريق استاذك هذا الجزء مسبقا بامكك ديد وذل ادريانه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	activities	بمارس أنشطة	take	photos of	يلتقط صورًا لـ
forget	your worries	تنسى مخاوفك		a cruise	بفروم برحلة بحرية
go	trekking	يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
aboard	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)	on board
ancient	قديم / عتيق	very old
beautiful	جميل	pretty, cute
boring	مُمل	dull, spiritless
exotic	أجنبي	foreign
exotic	مُدّهش / مُذهل	unusual, unconventional
over the moon	سعيد جدًا	very happy, very excited, glad
quiet	هادئ	calm

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
active	نشط - فعال	lazy, inactive	كسول - خامل
ancient	قديم / عتيق	modern, new	حديث - جديد
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
boring	مُمل	exciting, interesting	مثير
busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
crowded	مزدحم	empty, quiet	فارغ - هادئ
exotic	أجنبي	native, local	محلي
exotic	مُدّهش / مُذهل	usual, familiar, conventional	عادي - تقليدي
relaxing	مريح	stressful, tiring	ضاغط / مُزق

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

1

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

crowded	
crowded (adj) حشود - حشود	People crowd to help when there is an accident.
crowd (n) جمع من الناس - حشد	A crowd of people came to help me.
overcrowding (n) التكدس	People in big cities suffer from overcrowding .
crowded (adj) مزدحم	People in big cities suffer from the very crowded streets.
overcrowded (adj) مزدحم جداً - تكدس	People in big cities suffer from the overcrowded streets.

peace	
peace (n) السلام - السكينة	I like the peace of the countryside at night.
peaceful (adj) هادئ / نوسكينة	It is peaceful in the countryside at night.
peacefully (adv) سكوناً - سكوناً	The baby is sleeping peacefully in its bed.

stick	
stick - stuck (v) لصق - لصق - يعلق - يعلق	I used glue to stick the picture.
stick (n) عصا	My grandfather uses a stick when he walks.
sticker (n) لاصق	There are some stickers which have some advice about coronavirus.
stuck (adj) تكدس مروري - عالق - محصور	I was stuck in a traffic jam.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا أنسى	make good use of	يُحسن استغلال
active holiday	إجازة مفيدة	on board = aboard	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
be tired of	يسئ من	on the balcony	في البلكونة
busy with	مشغول بـ	on the way there	في الطريق إلى هناك
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	over the moon	سعيد جداً
loads of	كثير من	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما يفعله

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to	يضيف إلى	learn about	يتعلم عن
decide to	يقرر أن	learn to	يتعلم أن
escape from	يفر من	leave ... behind	يغادر تاركاً
escape to	يفر إلى	stay with	يقيم مع
go away	يبتعد - يهجر	walk around	يسير - يمشي
go down	يغوص - ينزل - يهبط		

7 Clear the confusion يُحط بالفرق

old - ancient
• old (adj) قديم
- My grandfather still lives in his old house.
• old (adj) محوّر
- My grandfather is a very old man.
• ancient = very old (adj) قديم جداً / عتيق
- The ancient Egyptians had a great civilisation. حضارة
لاحظ أن العنصر (ancient) صفة قوية لا تُستخدم في صيغ المقارنة والتفصيل.
- The Great Pyramid is more ancient than the citadel. (X) القلعة.
- The Great Pyramid is much older than the citadel. (✓)

Adjectives ending in -ed / -ing
- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تعبر أن الموصوف أشاعر بالصفة - مُعرّض للصفة - يعانى من الصفة:
- I feel tired / excited / bored . إنني أشعر بالتعب / السعادة / الملل.
- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تعبر أن الموصوف (أشعب للصفة):
- This job is tiring / pleasing / boring . هذه الوظيفة مُتعبة / شيقة / مملّة.

little
• little + اسم اسم لا يُعد (الكسبة)
- We have little work to do.
- He gave us little information about the accident.
• little + اسم يُعد اسم (الحجم أو السن)
- I saw a little boy selling flowers.

sight - site
• sight (n) العنصر (الفترة على الرأيا)
- Taha Hussein lost his sight when he was a child.

- sight (n) - I like the **sight** of green plants and colourful flowers. (منظر الشيء، يمكن رؤيته)
- sights (n) - The guide showed me the important **sights** in Aswan. (معالم الأماكن المشهورة أو الهامة)
- site (n) - There are some tourists visiting the archaeological **site**. (موقع أثرى / موقع إلكتروني)
- Mr Mohammed has an educational **site**. (= website) (موقع إلكتروني)

steal - rob

- steal (stole - stolen) + (from) ... (سرق/يسطر) من
- This gang **stole** money from the bank. (الطائفة التي سرقته من المكان)
- rob (robbed) + (from) ... (سرق شيء من شخص)
- The gang **robbed** the bank.
- A thief **robbed** me of my bike.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:
- "I read a boring story." The antonyms of the word "boring" are
 a. dull b. wonderful c. tiring
 d. amazing e. spiritless
 - "Cairo is a very crowded city." The antonyms of the word "crowded" are
 a. empty b. filled c. busy
 d. full e. quiet
 - "She's over the moon about her new job." This means she is very
 a. happy b. annoyed c. sad
 d. excited e. angry
 - The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are
 a. merits b. pros c. disadvantages
 d. benefits e. demerits
 - If a place is, it has a lot of people.
 a. crowded b. exciting c. isolated
 d. ancient e. busy

- He met a very beautiful girl in the mall. The synonyms of the word "beautiful" are
 a. pretty b. energetic c. cute
 d. dull e. quiet
- and **native** are antonyms of "exotic":
 a. Conventional b. Modern c. Free
 d. Usual e. Ugly
- Sometimes, I go
 a. activities b. trekking c. a hobby
 d. the shopping e. diving
- You have to do
 a. an activity b. trekking c. mistake
 d. something different e. diving
- If someone is active, this means they are not
 a. lazy b. inactive c. foreign
 d. modern e. new
- The ship left the shore with 500 passengers
 a. abroad b. a board c. aboard
 d. broad e. on board

- MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Unfortunately, the burglar the house.
 a. stole b. took c. robbed d. guarded
 - 'Ancient' is to as 'boring' is to 'exciting'.
 a. excited b. new c. modern d. b & c
 - "You can a cruise or a boat trip."
 a. decide to b. go away c. go on d. trek into
 - He escaped prison.
 a. to b. with c. from d. on
 - It is over, Sama. There's nothing
 a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
 - Fans usually to take selfies with football stars.
 a. crowd b. crowding c. crowds d. crowdedness
 - People living in a big city suffer from
 a. crowd b. crowded c. overcrowding d. crowded

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

1. James's blog

(SB page 10)



This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant⁽¹⁾ here and there are loads of⁽²⁾ things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water.

My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers⁽³⁾ at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing⁽⁴⁾ and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater⁽⁵⁾ camera so I can take photos of them.

Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples⁽⁶⁾ there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually⁽⁷⁾ found them fascinating⁽⁸⁾ and am really glad⁽⁹⁾ we went there.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع
- (2) كثير من
- (3) مرافقين
- (4) مريح
- (5) تحت الماء
- (6) المعابد القديمة
- (7) في الواقع
- (8) خلاب
- (9) سعيد

2. Katy's blog



Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored⁽¹⁾ – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck⁽²⁾ here at home. The weather's awful⁽³⁾ and there's nothing to do.

Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents⁽⁴⁾ for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows⁽⁵⁾ all his own vegetables⁽⁶⁾ – he says it's cheaper⁽⁷⁾ than buying them.

Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce⁽⁸⁾ in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening⁽⁹⁾ – maybe I'll have a new hobby!⁽¹⁰⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (1) شاعر بالمثل
- (2) عالق
- (3) فظيخ
- (4) أجداد
- (5) يزرع
- (6) خضراوات
- (7) أرخص
- (8) الخس
- (9) أعمال الحدائق / تشجير
- (10) هواية

2 Listening Texts

Holiday Adverts!

(WB page 90)

A beach break

Do you want to relax⁽¹⁾ in a quiet and peaceful⁽²⁾ place? Escape⁽³⁾ from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind⁽⁴⁾. Visit this amazing paradise⁽⁵⁾. Enjoy the sunshine⁽⁶⁾ on isolated⁽⁷⁾ beaches and swim in clean, clear⁽⁸⁾ water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same⁽⁹⁾ old, boring⁽¹⁰⁾ places? Are you looking for an active⁽¹¹⁾ holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you climbing⁽¹²⁾ in the beautiful Alpine mountains⁽¹³⁾.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller⁽¹⁴⁾. You can go trekking⁽¹⁵⁾ through the Andes⁽¹⁶⁾ and explore⁽¹⁷⁾ ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide⁽¹⁸⁾. You can enjoy peace⁽¹⁹⁾ and quiet⁽²⁰⁾ or you can meet the local people, all without damaging⁽²¹⁾ the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise⁽²²⁾ around the Caribbean⁽²³⁾? On board⁽²⁴⁾ our modern cruise ship⁽²⁵⁾, you can enjoy great food and forget⁽²⁶⁾ your worries⁽²⁷⁾ in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets⁽²⁸⁾ and see many unusual sights.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يسترخى
- (2) هادئ - ذو مسكنة
- (3) يهرب
- (4) خلف / وراء
- (5) جنة
- (6) شروق / ضوء الشمس
- (7) منعزل
- (8) صافي
- (9) نفس
- (10) ممل
- (11) منشط / مفيد
- (12) ينسحق
- (13) جبال الأنديز
- (14) مسافر
- (15) تتنزه سيراً
- (16) جبال الأنديز
- (17) يستكشف
- (18) مرشد
- (19) السكينة - السلام
- (20) الهدوء
- (21) يدمر
- (22) نزهة بحرية
- (23) البحر الكاريبي
- (24) متن السفينة
- (25) مركب سياحية
- (26) ينسى
- (27) مخلوف - هموم
- (28) أسواق

Part IV Language



Remember

1 inf. + ing كفية إضافة [ing] لمصدر الفعل :

- visit: visiting
- help: helping
- clean: cleaning

UNIT 1

1 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (n) يتم إضافة (ing) لتكوين الفعل
- decide: deciding - like: liking - live: living

2 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بالحروف (ie) فهنا نحذف (ie) ونضيف (ing) لتكوين الفعل
- tie: tying - die: dying - lie: lying

3 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد نضاهيه بالحرف الساكن قبل إضافة (ing)
- swim: swimming - run: running - travel: travelling

لا تنطبق هذه القاعدة على الأفعال التي يكون المقطع الأخير فيها متخففاً في النطق (unstressed) مثل:

- open: opening (Not: openning)
- listen: listening (Not: listenning)
- develop: developing (Not: developping)

4 إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (c) يتم إضافة (-king) لتكوين الفعل.
- panic: panicking
- picnic: picnicking

2 The Past Continuous Tense : زمن الماضي المستمر

1 في الجملة المثبتة :

Subject فاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - Ahmed was reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were cooking lunch.

2 في الجملة المنفية :

Subject فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - Ahmed was not (wasn't) reading a story.
- Rodayna and Heba were not (weren't) cooking lunch.

3 في السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى « هل » :

Was / Were + Subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ... ?

ex. - Was Ahmed reading a book?
- Were you eating a cake?

1 في السؤال بـ « كلمة استفهام » :
Question word أداة استفهام + was / were + Subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ... ?

ex. - What was Ahmed reading ?

2 في صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Object مفعول + was / were + being + P.P.

ex. - A story was being read by Ahmed.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Some people on the farm from morning to afternoon that day.
a. was worked b. were worked c. was working d. were working
- I saw that she on her mobile, so I decided to return later.
a. talked b. was talked c. was talking d. wasn't talking
- It was not polite of him to interrupt what I
a. was doing b. did c. had done d. was done
- What you doing when I called ?
a. are b. were c. did d. had
- Some boys when the teacher entered the classroom.
a. fought b. were fought c. was fighting d. were fighting

Uses of the past continuous الاستخدامات

1 يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي :

ex. - I was playing on the beach last Friday afternoon.

2 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي :

While / As / When + جملة ماضى مستمر + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - While I was reading a story, Ali was watching TV.

3 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر :

While / As / When / Just as + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى مستمر

ex. - While he was playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.

UNIT 1

While + Inf. + ing + جملة ماكن بسيط

ex. - While playing a tennis match, he broke his arm.

During + noun اسم + جملة ماكن بسيط

ex. - During a tennis match, he broke his arm.

When + جملة ماكن بسيط + جملة ماكن مستمر

ex. - When I arrived, Shahd was watching a cartoon.

On + noun / (inf. + ing) + جملة ماكن بسيط / جملة ماكن مستمر

ex. - On my arrival at my office, the secretary was checking emails.

While + اسم + حرف جر

ex. - While in Alexandria, I ate fish for lunch every day.

للحظ استخدام المبني للمجهول في الصيغة التالية:

While / On + being + P.P. —

ex. - While the food was being cooked, it smelled nice.

= While / On being cooked, the food smelled nice.

في المثال السابق استخدمنا (being cooked) وليس (cooking) لأن الحصة التالية بدأت بـ (the food) الذي يُعتبر مفعول الجملة الأولى.

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلا من الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التالية:

ex. - Feelings المشاعر : like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish ... etc.

- Senses الحواس : hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look ... etc.

- Mental state الإحساس : realise, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine, recognise, remember, forget ... etc.

- I was hearing a noise outside. (×)

- I heard a noise outside. (✓)

لكن يمكن استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال السابقة في حالة استخدامها بمعنى آخر غير معانيها الأصلية:

ex. - I was seeing an old friend when you called. (= was meeting)

- I was having some pizza when the phone rang. (= was eating)

تذكر أن الماضي المستمر لا يُستخدم مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدة زمنية):

ex. - My car broke down. (Not: was breaking down)

كما أن (being) لا تُستخدم كفعل أساسي في الماضي المستمر:

ex. While we were in the park, our children were playing around us. (Not: were being)

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My car down as I was driving to work.
 - breaks
 - broke
 - was breaking
 - was being broken
- While I at the club, I played tennis.
 - was
 - was being
 - am
 - am being
- Nada when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.
 - slept
 - was slept
 - has slept
 - was sleeping
- the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.
 - As
 - While
 - During
 - When
- watching the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.
 - As
 - While
 - During
 - As soon as
- When you called me, I a shower. That's why I didn't answer.
 - was having
 - had
 - had had
 - has had
- During yesterday's match, most players fit.
 - hadn't been
 - weren't
 - weren't being
 - have been
- I my toys when I was young.
 - was loving
 - am loving
 - was being loved
 - loved
- While I the door of my flat, I heard a loud noise in the street.
 - was shutting
 - had shut
 - was being shut
 - shutting

General Exercise On Language

Apply

التدريبات التالية مرنية بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- From 9 to 12 last Friday, I an important meeting.
 - had attended
 - was attended
 - was attending
 - was being attended
- From 9 to 12 last Friday, an important meeting
 - had attended
 - was attended
 - was attending
 - was being attended

32. _____ touching the hot pan, Sama cried in pain.
 a. While b. On c. When d. During
33. _____ on holiday, I had a great time.
 a. While b. After c. When d. During
34. I last met Ahmed while he _____ off some of his British friend at the airport.
 a. saw b. was seeing c. had seen d. was seen
35. When I visited my sister, she _____ ill.
 a. seemed b. was seeming c. had seemed d. was seemed
36. When the teacher entered the class, the pupils who _____ a lot of noise soon became calm.
 a. were making b. were being made c. had been made d. were made
37. While climbing onto the mountain top, I _____ a strange animal.
 a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen
38. While we were travelling to Luxor, our car _____ down.
 a. was breaking b. has broken c. had broken d. broke
39. I couldn't watch the film because my brother _____ a football match.
 a. has watched b. was watching c. watched d. had watched
40. Abdu _____ the tree when he suddenly fell down.
 a. had been climbed b. was climbing c. climbed d. was climbed
41. _____ sleeping, I had a nightmare.
 a. While b. As c. When d. During

3 Check your understanding

42. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. Was Sama being very tired? b. Was Sama very tired?
 c. Did Sama be very tired? d. Sama was very tired?
43. I used to be overweight. This means I am _____ now.
 a. fat b. overweight c. no longer thin d. not overweight

44. I wish I were taller. This means I
 a. like my height b. don't like my height
 c. would like to be short d. enjoy being short
45. "While on holidays, she read romantic novels". This is a habit.
 a. past b. present c. future d. current
46. I didn't answer the phone because I my shower.
 a. had taken b. was taken
 c. was taking d. had been taken
47. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means
 a. Sama was drinking juice.
 b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.
 c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.
 d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice.
48. "During the football match, he fell and broke his leg."
 This means
 a. he was a player in that match.
 b. he was one of the fans watching that match on TV.
 c. He was not interested in that match.
 d. His leg was broken soon after the match.





Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island)، بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والتي المخصص لطالب المتفهم.

تلوّيه

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تلوّيه

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hand(ed) (v)	يُعطي (يدويًا) - يُسلم
blind (adj)	كفيف - أعمى	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يختبئ - يُخفي
Captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	inn (n)	حانة/نزل (لوكاندة)
cliff (n)	مُنخَر صخري	owe(ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	own(ed) (v)	يملك
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
frightened (adj)	خائف	papers (n)	مستندات - جرائد
grab(bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح
guard(ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	sword (n)	سيف
gun (n)	بندقية	terrible (adj)	فظيح

2 Definitions تعريفات

cliff (n)	مُنخَر صخري	a steep piece of land or rock	شديد الانحدار
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	to be brave enough to do something	شجاع
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة	to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or violent movement	
pale (adj)	شاحب اللون	light in colour	باهت
scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح	a mark on skin from a cut or wound	جرح
sword (n)	سيف	weapon with a long, sharp blade	نصل

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was arrested because of his debts. He money to several people.
 a. lent b. borrowed c. owned d. owed

2. I was frightened when I saw the man with a on his face.

- a. fly b. glasses c. scar d. blood

3. you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?

- a. Dare b. Brave c. Able d. Courageous

4. A criminal was punished for killing a man with a

- a. gun b. sun c. pun d. fun

5. The strict diet he follows has made him go He has to consult his nutritionist.

- a. healthy b. power c. short d. pale

6. A/An is a weapon with a long, sharp blade.

- a. gun b. mark c. fork d. sword

7. To is to protect a person, place, or object by staying near them and watching them.

- a. kill b. attack c. guard d. donate

8. means unable to see.

- a. Blind b. Generous c. Frightened d. Disabled

9. A/An is a small hotel, especially an old one in the countryside.

- a. restaurant b. inn c. station d. corridor

10. To is to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or violent movement.

- a. scare b. arrest c. grab d. release

Part II

Grammatical Hints

So

• نستخدم مع الصفة أو الظرف بمعنى جداً :

so + adj. / adv. .

- ex. - You can answer this question. It is not so difficult.
 - We have enough time. I don't know why you are driving so quickly.

• نستخدم (so + adj. + that) بمعنى (جداً لدرجة ان) :

so + adj. + that + جملة .

- ex. - The exam was so easy that all students passed it.
 - He ran so slowly that he came last in the race.

١ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار صفة أو ظرف بمعنى (هكذا / بهذه الطريقة) :
 ex. - The weather is cold and I think it will remain so (= cold) for another two days.

٢ تُستخدم (so) كبديل لتكرار عبارة بمعنى (ذلك) :
 ex. - A: Do you think Rokaya will come first?
 B: I think so. (= I think she will come first.)

٣ تُستخدم (so) في الصيغة التالية بمعنى (وكذلك ...) :
 فاعل + فعل مساعد أو ناقص + so
 ex. - Mr Helmi felt sick after the meal and so did Mr Ashraf and Fady.
 - My mother likes spicy food. So do I.

٤ تُستخدم (so) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (الذالك / لهذا السبب) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :
 جملة نتيجة + لذلك so

٥ ex. - Mr Abdulrahman was tired, so he went to bed early.

٦ تُستخدم (so that) كرابط بين جملتين بمعنى (حتى / لكي) ويأتي بعدها جملة نتيجة :
 جملة غرض + لكي / حتى so that

ex. - I want to get an underwater camera so that I can take photos of the corals.

ing

أحياناً يُستخدم (inf. + ing) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

جملة مبنية للمعلوم + (inf. + ing) = who / which / that

ex. - I have a cousin who works for a tourist company.
 = I have a cousin working for a tourist company.

with = who / which / that + have

للحظ استخدام (with) كبديل لعبارة وصل :

اسم نoun + have / has / had + who / whom / which / that = with + noun

ex. - I saw a little girl who has green eyes and long hair.
 = I saw a little girl with green eyes and long hair.
 - They live in a tiny village which has no shops.

when + ing

يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (when) بمعنى (عند / حين) بشرط ان يكون الفاعل نفس فاعل الجملة الرئيسية :

when + جملة = when + (inf. + ing)

ex. - When I was leaving the office, I heard the manager shouting.
 = When leaving the office, I heard the manager shouting.
 (انا كنت أفتاد وسمعت المدير يصيح).
 = When leaving the office, the manager was shouting.
 (المدير هو من كان يصيح وهو يفتاد المكتب).

or / otherwise

يمكن استخدام (or) أو (otherwise) في جمل شرطية بمعنى (وإلا) بدلاً من (if / unless) :

ex. - You must study hard, otherwise you won't pass the exam.
 = If you don't study hard, you won't pass the exam.
 = Unless you study hard, you won't pass the exam.

someone / anything ... + adj. صفة

تأتي الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

someone	somebody	something	somewhere	anyone
anybody	anything	anywhere	everyone	everybody
everything	everywhere	no one	nobody	nothing
				nowhere

ex. - I sat next to someone important on the plane. (Not: important someone)
 - Children like everything new. (Not: new everything)

It + verb to be + ... من ...

It + be + adj. صفة + to + inf. من ... أن ...

ex. - It is difficult to understand this lesson without your teacher's help.
 - It is enjoyable to spend your free time in the club.

It + be + adj. صفة + ing. من ... أن ...

ex. - It is dangerous walking in the forest alone.

It + be + adj. صفة + of / for + subj. فاعل + to + inf. من ... أن ...

ex. - It is easy for Ayman to do this work on his own. بفرده
 - It is kind of you to help me solve my problems.

help + inf. / to + inf.

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) او (inf.) بعد (help)

- ex. I helped Sama to do the cooking.
= I helped Sama do the cooking.
- The babysitter helps to look after the baby.
= The babysitter helps look after the baby.

busy

busy with + noun اسم

- ex. - The manager is busy with some clients. العملاء.

busy + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - We were busy doing the housework.

verb + object + inf. / ing

الافعال الاتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على متابعة الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing)
ليدل على متابعة جزء من الحدث.

see - watch - hear - notice

- ex. - I saw the sun go down. (شاهدت الغروب بالكامل)
- I saw the sun going down. (شاهدت جزء من الغروب)

including

تستخدم (including) كحرف جر بمعنى (بما في ذلك / مشتملاً على):

Including بما في ذلك ≠ excluding فيما عدا

- ex. - I called all my family members, including my uncle who lives in Canada.

stop

تستخدم (stop) بمعنى (يتوقف - يُوقف - يمنع) كالتالي:

stop + to + inf. + يتوقف (عما يفعله) لكي

- ex. - While Leen was doing homework, she stopped to make herself a cup of tea.

stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)

- ex. - Ashraf stopped chatting with his online friends to revise for the exams.

stop + obj. مفعول + (from) + inf. + ing.

يمنع ... من القيام بـ ...

- ex. - Mr Ayman stopped us from talking to each other.
= Mr Ayman stopped us talking to each other.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ali is busy his homework.
a. to do b. did c. doing d. has done
- When the bank, the manager was calling the police.
a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. had left
- Children like Tom and Jerry cartoons because they are funny.
a. such b. such a c. so d. so much
- She saw her father for work earlier than usual.
a. leaving b. to leaving c. leaves d. left
- It is nice you to help her.
a. in b. with c. for d. of
- I have to wear the uniform, I won't take part in the game.
a. as b. so c. otherwise d. if
- He writes so that I can't read anything.
a. bade b. badly c. good d. well
- They are busy the preparations of the wedding.
a. from b. to c. for d. with
- Can you suggest to do?
a. a something important b. an important something
c. something important d. important something
- talking to a client, the manager's mobile rang.
a. It b. So c. During d. When
- Mum was tired that she slept in her chair.
a. so b. such c. very d. too
- Mr Magdi helped us the experiment.
a. doing b. do c. to doing d. done
- It is useful us to have a work plan.
a. at b. about c. for d. of

14. He has a villa a swimming pool. d. out of
 a. of b. with c. into
15. He is very tired. He will remain unless he gets enough free time.
 a. else b. also c. so that d. so
16. I heard a bird beautifully before it flew away. d. b&c
a. to sing b. singing c. sings
17. We have told in the new project.
a. everybody interested b. interested everybody
 c. an everybody interested d. an interested everybody
18. I gave her all the keys, the front door key. d. including
 a. in b. at c. from
19. A: Is Omar ill? B: I think He looks pale. c. so d. as
 a. it b. this
20. It was helpful some days off. d. to take d. to take
 a. to taking b. take c. takes
21. The horse by the gate is mine. c. standing d. to stand
 a. stand b. stands
22. Marwa is hard-working and so
 a. I am b. am I d. do I d. do I
 c. I do
23. Shaza helped all of us ready for the competition. d. to get d. to get
 a. to getting b. got c. getting
24. Be careful you might fall.
 a. if c. or d. and
 b. unless
25. I know the girl the big nose.
a. with b. in c. of d. to
26. I am full, I can't eat anything else.
a. so b. as c. because d. since

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للزبد من التدرجات ملحق المهارات توبه

Model Essay

* Write an essay of about 150 words about voluntary work :

Voluntary work

What is voluntary work? Simply, voluntary work is work that you do for free. You do not expect or ask to be paid money or anything else for doing it. It is a type of help to the whole society or a certain group of people in society.

Voluntary work has always been very important. There are a lot of problems and challenges تحديات that face تواجه the society. The government cannot face all these problems and challenges without the people's help. We can say that the volunteering role is complementary مكملة to that of the government.

What can people volunteer? Most people would say money. That's not an accurate answer. Money is a donation not volunteering. Volunteering is mainly أساساً taking part in doing something useful or necessary for the society or the people living in it. Those who volunteer have enough time and experience with which they can help.

Voluntary work is very important. It helps with difficult problems. It creates a type of unity الاتحاد and strength in society. If you haven't volunteered so far , you had better try now.

2 Translation الترجمة

للزبد من التدرجات ملحق المهارات توبه

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. Tourism is one of the chief sources of national income. Every citizen has to do their best to help attract more tourists.
2. Ecotourism is a type of tourism that pays great attention to the environment. It is based on enjoying tourists as well as protecting the environment.
3. Some species of animals are endangered in one way or another. Those face the danger of dying out like dinosaurs and other creatures.

UNIT 1

١. يوفر النشاط السياحي الآلاف من فرص العمل للمواطنين من مختلف الأعمار، لذا فتشجيع السياحة والعمل على جذب المزيد من السياح واجب وطني.
٢. تضع السياحة البيئية في الاعتبار الحفاظ على البيئة الطبيعية، لذلك يتم تحديد أعداد السياح والأنشطة التي يقومون بها والأماكن التي يزورونها.
٣. إن حماية الأنواع النادرة من الحيوانات والنباتات من الانقراض واجب بيئي، فهذه الكائنات تلعب دوراً حيوياً في التوازن البيئي.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

as well as	بالإضافة إلى	in the idealistic way	بالشكل الأمثل
attention	انتباه	invest	يستثمر
attract	يجذب	job opportunities	فرص عمل
balance	التوازن	monuments	الأثار
chief	رئيسي	national income	الدخل القومي
citizen	مواطن	necessary	ضروري
create	يخلق	promotion	الترويج
creatures	كائنات / مخلوقات	rare	نادر
deny	ينكر	sources	مصادر
duty	واجب	species	أنواع / سلالات
dying out	الانقراض	type	نوع
extremely	ل للغاية	vital role	دورا حيويا

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

تلويح هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

conserve

- conserve (d) (v) = preserve(d) (v) بحفظ / يصون / يحمي
 - We should conserve the environment.
- conserve (d) (v) يرسد / يقتصد في
 - Everyone must conserve energy. الطاقة
- conserve = jam (n) مربى
 - I like peach conserve. مربى الخوخ
- conservation = preservation (n) حماية أو صيانة (البيئة الطبيعية)
 - The conservation of wildlife البرية الحياة is very important.

conservation (n) ترشيد / تقليل

- Water conservation is necessary.
- nature conservation حماية الطبيعة - wildlife conservation حماية الحياة البرية
- conservation groups جماعات حماية الطبيعة

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- conservationist (n) شخص محافظ على أو صديق للبيئة
 - He is one of the conservationists who work hard to protect lions from extinction الإقراض.

ecotourism

- ecotourism (n) سياحة صديقة للبيئة (تُراعى الحفاظ على البيئة والحياة الطبيعية)
 - The Red Sea coast is a promising area in ecotourism. ذو مستقبل باهر
- ecotourist (n) سائح صديق للبيئة
 - Some areas are visited only by ecotourists.

danger

- danger (n) خطر
 - Don't expose your life to danger. يُعرض
- endanger(ed) (v) يُعرض للخطر
 - Don't endanger your life.
- endangerment (n) التعريض للخطر
 - Child endangerment is a crime. جريمة
- endangered (adj) مُعرض للخطر / للإقراض
 - Some types of animals are endangered.

environment

- the environment (n) البيئة (الطبيعية)
 - لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (environment) بهذا المعنى :
 - Pollution endangers the environment. (Not: endangers environment)
 - لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :
 - protect / conserve the environment يحمي البيئة
 - harm / damage / destroy the environment يدمر البيئة
 - pollute the environment يُلوث البيئة
 - the natural environment البيئة الطبيعية

- **environment (n)** - In class, students must find a suitable environment to learn. وضع - ونشط - جو عام
- **environmentally (adv)** - Ecotourism is environmentally friendly. بيئياً / من الناحية البيئية

impact

- **impact (on / upon) (n)** - My friends have a great impact on me. تأثير / انطباع
- **impact (n)** - The force of the impact made the car turn over. إزطام / اصطدام

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- have an impact / اثر له تأثير
- a positive impact / تأثير إيجابي
- a negative / damaging / adverse impact / تأثير سلبي
- a long-term / lasting impact / تأثير دائم
- a short-term / immediate impact / تأثير لحظي
- an environmental impact / أثر بيئي

- **impact (ed)(on / upon) (v)** - The internet has impacted on life in the modern age. يؤثر (على)

isolated

- **isolate (d) (from) (v)** - Parents always try to isolate their children from bad friends. يُعيد / يعزل.....(عن)

- **isolate (d) (from) (v)** - This machine isolates butter from milk. يفصل.....(عن)

- **isolation (n)** - No one can live in isolation. العزلة

- **isolation (n)** - The isolation of the oasis gives it a unique culture. الانعزال / البُعد

- **isolated (adj)** - He lives in an isolated village. بعيد / ناءٍ / منفرد

- **isolated (adj)** - Working alone on a farm makes him feel isolated. شاعر بالعزلة أو الوحدة

crowded

- **crowded (with) (adj)** - The house was crowded with guests. مزدحم (ملى بالاشخاص)

- **overcrowded (with) (adj)** - In feasts, streets and parks are overcrowded. مكتظ به / متكدس به (خاص بالاماكن والأشياء)

- **overcrowding (n)** - Overcrowding is a serious problem in cities. الزحام / التكدس

- **crowd (n)** - There's a crowd of students near the school gate. جمع / حشد من الناس
- **crowd (ed) (v)** - Thousands of people crowded to welcome the winning team. يحتشد / يتجمع / يتصهر

- **crowd in on + شخص** - Fears crowded in on her and she was very sad. - لاحظ ما يلي :
تغالبه / تتراحم عليه

exotic

- **exotic (adj)** - This park has some exotic plants. غريب / نادر - أجنبي / وافد
- I saw some exotic birds on the beach.

lean

- **lean - (leant - leant) / (leaned - leaned) (v)** - He leaned and looked down from the balcony. يحنى / يميل

- **lean ... (on / against) (v)** - I leaned against the wall. يتكى - (على) - يستند ... على
- He leant his bicycle against a tree.

- **lean (adj)** - Abdulrahman is tall and lean. نحيف

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- lean years / سنوات الضنك
- lean meat / لحوم قليلة الشحم
- lean production / انتاج مقتصد
- **leaning (adj)** - He visited the Leaning Tower of Pisa. مائل / متكئ

material

- **material (n)** - Building materials have become expensive. مادة (تستخدم في صناعة الأشياء)

- **material (n)** - She bought a good blouse made of soft material. قماش (تستخدم في صناعة الملابس)
- This material is made of Egyptian cotton.

- **material (adj)** - He is only interested in material benefit. مادي (متعلق بالمال أو المنفعة)

- **material (adj)** - The police have material evidence against him. مادي = ملموس

UNIT 1

spicy

حريف / حار - منبيل بالبهارات

- **spicy (adj)**
- I like **spicy** sandwiches. نوابل / بهارات
- **spice - spices (n)**
- Fast food restaurants depend **on spices** to make food more delicious. اهتمام / إثارة (كلمة لا تُعد)
- **spice (n)**
- Our teacher of English usually adds **spice** to the reading lesson. يتشيل
- **spice (ed) ... with (v)**
- Mum never forgets to **spice** the food **with** hot pepper. يُضفي نوع من الإثارة أو التنوع
- **spice (ed) up (v)**
- Ahmed's funny talks **spiced (up)** the long train journey. أحاديث

sustainable

يُحافظ على / يُبقى على

- **sustain (ed) (v)**
- It is important that a teacher **sustains** his student's interest. اهتمام
- **sustain (ed) (v)**
- Their company **sustained** some losses. يتعرض لضرر
- **sustainable (adj)**
- Bicycles are **sustainable** means of transport. ملائم للبيئة / صديق للبيئة
- **sustainable (adj)**
- The government wants to achieve a **sustainable** economic growth. واثم / مُستدام / قابل للبقاء

swell

يتورم / يلتهب

- **swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)**
- He hit his head and soon it **swelled (up)**.
 - **swell - swelled - swollen (to) (v)**
- Water in the river has **swollen** because of the floods. يتزايد / يزداد في العدد أو الكمية
- لاحظ التعبيرات والتلازمات التالية :
- **swell with pride** يشعر بالفخر الشديد
 - **swell with anger** يستشيط غضباً
 - **swell-headed = big-headed** مفرور
- **swelling (in / on) (n)**
- She has a painful **swelling** in her hand. دم / التهاب (في)
 - **swollen (adj)**
- His knee is **swollen**. متورم / ملتهب

trek

رحلة طويلة (غالباً سيراً على الأقدام كنوع من المغامرة)

- **trek = hike (n)**
- We went on a long **trek (hike)** through the countryside.
- **trek(ked) = hike(d) (v)**
- We **trekked (hiked)** through the countryside. يقوم برحلة طويلة وصعبة سيراً

unique

فريد من نوعه

- **unique (adj)**
- Everyone has **unique** fingerprints. بصمات أصابع
- **unique (adj)**
- We had a **unique** time in France. مُتميز / رائع جداً

- لا تُستخدم الصفة (unique) في صيغ المفارقة والتفضيل :

- This horse is more **unique** than that one. (X)

- لاحظ التعبير التالي :

- **be unique to**
- The Komodo dragon is **unique to** Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else. يتفرد به / لا يوجد إلا في

volunteer

شخص متطوع (يقوم بعمل دون أجر)

- **volunteer (n)**
- A lot of **volunteers** work for charities.
- **volunteer (ed) (to / for) (v)**
- Yara **volunteered** for looking after the baby. يتطوع - يعرض القيام بعمل دون أجر
- **voluntary (adj)**
- She does **voluntary** work for a hospital. تطوعي (دون أجر)

voluntourism

- **voluntourism (n)**
- We should encourage **voluntourism** because tourists enjoy their time and help the people or the environment. السياحة الخيرية (أحد أنواع السياحة التي يقوم بها السائح بعمل بدون أجر)
- **voluntourist (n)**
- Some **voluntourists** helped treat poor patients. سائح يقوم بعمل خيري في الأماكن التي يزورها

Note these idioms

لاحظ التعبيرات الاصطلاحية التالية :

- over the moon = very excited or happy
- Mum was over the moon when she heard that I came first.
- be stuck = be forced to stay in a place
- I'm stuck here at home and I have nothing to do.
- loads of = a lot of
- I didn't go to the office yesterday, so I have loads of jobs to do.

سعيد جدًا

عالق / مقيد

كثير من

1 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix	Function	Examples	أمثلة
eco-	مُتعلّق بالبيئة	ecotourism ecofriendly ecology ecologist ecosystem	السياحة البيئية صديق للبيئة علم البيئة عالم متخصص في البيئة النظام البيئي
en-	تُكوّن فعل	endanger	يُعرض للخطر
teen-	بين سن 13 - 19	teenager	مراهق
under-	تحت	underwater	تحت الماء

2 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix	Function	Examples	أمثلة
-ing	تُكوّن اسم / صفة	relaxing (adj) overcrowding (n)	مريح الازحام
-ed	تُكوّن صفة	crowded endangered	مزدحم معرض للخطر
-ism	تُكوّن اسم	tourism	السياحة
-ist	تُكوّن اسم فاعل / صفة	tourist	سائح / سياحي

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

الهدف : التدرجات الثانية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Lung diseases الرئة are some of the problems pollution
a. protects b. brings c. has d. takes
- Never interrupt us while the meeting is progress.
a. for b. with c. on d. in
- is the air, water, and land on Earth, which is affected by man's activities.
a. Orngutan b. Orngutang
c. Environment d. The environment
- Children need to be brought up in a warm family
a. island b. Sahara c. environment d. weather
- My first teacher has a long-term impact on my life.
a. made b. done c. learned d. protected
- Thoughts in on me and I found it impossible to sleep.
a. encouraged b. isolated c. crowded d. endangered
- This is a /an type of plant here in England. It is common in tropical areas only.
a. conventional b. exotic c. sociable d. spicy
- My granddad sat in his armchair before his stick against the wall.
a. impacting b. isolating c. crowding d. leaning
- Some relations are now based on benefit. People usually think how they can benefit from you.
a. material b. spiritual c. virtual d. emotional
- He always adds to our journeys with his funny comments.
a. treks b. spices c. spice d. isolation

الإجابة والتوضيح

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	b الفعل (brings) هو الوحيد من بين الاختيارات الذي يُكوّن تعبير ذو معنى مناسب للسياق مع (problems) ، فنحن نقول (bring problems) بمعنى (يتسبب في مشاكل) ، أما (has problems) فتعني (لديه مشكلات) وهذا لا يتفق مع المعنى المقصود
2.	d التعبير (in progress) يعني (مُتقدّم) وهو يصف حدث مستمر لحظة الكلام
3.	d الاختياران (a / b) خاطئان ولا يعطيان أي معنى في هذا السياق، والإختيار (d) صحيح لأن كلمة (environment) بمعنى (البيئة الطبيعية) لابد أن يسبقها (the)
4.	c كلمة (environment) هنا تعني (جو، مُحيط، وَسَط، وَضِع) وليس البيئة الطبيعية
5.	a الفعل (made) هو الوحيد من بين الإختيارات الذي يُكوّن تعبير ذو معنى مناسب للسياق مع (impact) ، فنحن نقول (made a long-term impact) بمعنى (ترك أثراً عميقاً)
6.	c التعبير (thoughts crowded in on me) يعني (تراحمت عليّ الأفكار أي أنها شغلتنى جداً)
7.	b النبات الذي يكون شائعاً في المناطق الاستوائية فقط لابد أن يكون (exotic) بمعنى (غريب / غير شائع) في إنجلترا ذات الطقس البارد
8.	d الفعل (lean) هنا يعني (يستند)
9.	a كلمة (material) هنا هي الإختيار الصحيح بمعنى (مادى / خاص بالمال / غير معنوي)
10.	c التعبير (add spice to) يعني في هذه الجملة (يضيف نوع من الإثارة والجاذبية) وليس (يضيف التوابل)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبناها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
a. During b. On c. While d. As
- on holiday, I met a lot of my old friends.
a. During b. Just as c. While d. As
- My elder brother watching a movie on his computer last night.
a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
- I waited at the door for ten minutes until he it at last.
a. opened b. had opened c. has opened d. was opening
- I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
- Don't open the door until I you.
a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
- Rodayna to bed. Before that, she finished her homework.
a. go b. went c. had gone d. going
- While, the baby was laughing to the doctor.
a. examining b. was examining
c. being examined d. having examined
- to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator جهاز تنفس صناعي.
a. While taking b. When taking
c. On taking d. While being taken
- "During the football match, he fell asleep." This means
a. he was a player in that match
b. the match might have been boring
c. that match was very exciting
d. he watched the whole match

Getting away

Altfwok.com موقع التفوق

No. Answer & Explanation

1.	b	لا يمكن استخدام (During / As) لأن الوصول حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية لا يمكن استخدام (While) لأنه لا يأتي بعدها اسم ولأن الوصول حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية لا شك أن (On) هي الإختيار الصحيح بمعنى (عند / في لحظة)
2.	c	لا يمكن استخدام (During / Just as / As) لأنه لا يأتي بعدم (حرف جر + اسم) تعتبر (While) هي الإختيار الصحيح لأنه يمكن أن يأتي بعدها (حرف جر + اسم)
3.	c	لا يمكن استخدام (used to enjoy / would enjoy) لأن العادة لا ترتبط بفترة قصيرة (last night) لا يمكن استخدام (was enjoying) لأن الفعل (enjoy) لا يأتي في الأزمنة المستمرة بهذا المعنى
4.	a	تعتبر (opened) هي الإجابة الصحيحة وليس (had opened) لأن الانتظار سبق فتح الباب وليس العكس لا يمكن استخدام (has opened) لأن زمن الجملة الرئيسية ماضي بسيط (waited) لا يمكن استخدام (was opening) لأن فتح الباب في الغالب حدث لحظي لا يتطلب استمرارية
5.	b	لا يمكن استخدام (had gone) بل نستخدم (went) لأنه بعد (After that) يأتي الحدث الثاني (ماضي بسيط) إذا كان زمن الحديث ماضي لا يمكن استخدام (go) لأن السياق ماضي لا يمكن استخدام التصريف الثالث (gone) كفعل دون فعل مساعد قبلها
6.	a	إذا سبق (until) جملة أمر فإن زمن الجملة التي بعدها يكون مضارع بسيط أو تام (tell / have told)
7.	b	الحدث المذكور قبل (Before that) هو الحدث الثاني وليس الحدث الأول. لذلك نستخدم الماضي البسيط (went) وليس الماضي التام (had gone)
8.	c	لا يمكن استخدام (examining / having examined) لأن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the baby) لم يكن يفحص نفسه لا يمكن استخدام (was examining) لعدم وجود فاعل بعد (while) الإختيار الصحيح (being examined) لأنه من المنطقي أن فاعل الجملة الثانية (the baby) هو مفعول الجملة الأولى وهو من كان يُفحص
9.	d	بنفس فكرة الجملة السابقة فإن مفعول الجملة الثانية (the injured man) كان يُؤخذ إلى المستشفى (أي أنه مفعول ولا بد من اختيار المبني للمجهول)
10.	b	هذا هو الإختيار الوحيد الصحيح والمنطقي حسب معنى الجملة

Test on Unit 1

• Understand • Apply • Create

Part One

تلويح
يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "He lives in an isolated area". The word "isolated" can be replaced by the synonyms
a. close b. nearby c. remote
d. neighbouring e. faraway
(الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
- The antonyms of "pros" are
a. cons b. coins c. demerits
d. cans e. cares
(فتح الله كيرة الثانوية بين ٢٠٢٢)

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- work is what people do for no money.
a. Culture b. Hard c. Voluntary d. Bank
(ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
- Tourism is when we protect touristic places.
a. crowded b. sustainable c. unique d. noisy
(لورسعيد - الفرقة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
- The police have so far failed to down the criminal.
a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
(الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
- Penguins are animals. They may die out soon.
a. colourful b. dangerous c. endangered d. extinct
(الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
- He was sent to prison as he a lot of money to the bank.
a. won b. gained c. owed d. earned
(الفيوم - ايشواي ٢٠٢٢)
- The thief has a on his face.
a. scar b. scare c. scary d. scaring
(فتح الله كيرة الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
- When he went on holiday, he always a lot of photos.
a. takes b. have taken c. took d. has taken
(إدارة الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
- We an interesting film last night.
a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
(الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
- I'd rather you this car. It's a bargain.
a. bought b. will buy c. to buy d. buy
(إدارة انفصر ٢٠٢٢)
- When I was in Sharm El-Sheik, I to the beach a lot.
a. have gone b. was going c. would go d. went
(الفيوم - يوسف حكاء ٢٠٢٢)

UNIT 1

13. While Rokaya was cooking lunch, her brother
 a had slept b sleeping c was sleeping d has slept
14. I couldn't answer the phone because I
 a praying b was praying c prayed d have prayed
15. While we on our holiday, we played football a lot.
 a have been b were c were being d being
16. I playing football on Fridays.
 a was used to b used to c has used to d became used

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Trees are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Trees give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuels, etc. We can rest under the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors, and windows, etc. Trees are also a great source of materials for paper, rubber, gums, herbs and medicine plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion. They protect us from severe weather. Trees are a part and parcel of earthly life. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to them. Trees release oxygen which we need for our life. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form natural habitats of many animals, birds and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops out of fertile land. They are the source of the fruits and flowers. They offer us cool shade during summer. During rainy season, we take shelter under trees. Trees and plants are the sources of many life-saving drugs. They prevent land erosion and guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance. Trees protect us from inclement wind, too. Seeds, nuts and fruits are food sources for humans and animals. Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes. Essential oils derived from trees are used in medical and aroma industry. Thus, trees play an important role in our life. Felling of trees disturbs the ecosystem. We should preserve trees and plants with great care.

17. Which of the following is NOT correct?
 a. Trees help keep ecological balance.
 b. Trees take in oxygen
 c. Trees provide life-saving drugs.
 d. Trees protects the biodiversity.
18. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
 a. Trees b. Plants c. Insects d. Fruits

19. The word in the passage means "wood used for making things".
 a timber b fuels c stretch d involve
20. Give a suitable title to the passage.
 a The cool shade of trees b Many living species live in trees
 c Trees are useful gifts of nature d Essential oils derived from trees
21. How are trees useful in medicine?
 a Essential oils derived from trees are used in medicinal and aroma industry.
 b Tree resins are used in producing varnishes.
 c Trees release oxygen which we need for our life.
 d Trees help make the land fertile and suitable for growing crops.
 e Trees are sources of many life-saving drugs.
22. How do you think life would be if there were no trees?
 a. There would be a lot of forests.
 b. They would offer us cool shade during summer.
 c. They would keep up the ecological system.
 d. It would disturb the eco-system.
 e. It would disturb the ecological system.
23. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to
 a. many animals b. trees c. materials
 d. care e. plants

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :
 The conservation of the environment is a must to protect the future of life on earth. We have to protect it or we will surely die out.
2. Translate into English :
 إن أحد أسباب الهجرة من القرى إلى المدن هو الوضع الاقتصادي، فالعمل في الزراعة لا يوفر نفس الدخل الذي يحصل عليه الفرد في المجالات الأخرى.
3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :

How to protect the environment

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MIRQ، بنك الأسئلة.

UNIT 2

Supporting the community

SB pages 16 : 25 WB pages 94 : 99

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- Reading :
A text about Egyptian people who help their communities
- Writing :
write a blog on a famous person; a biography of Dr Leelah Hazzah

- Listening :
An interview with Dr Leelah Hazzah
- Speaking :
Discussion about helping people; Making arrangements
- Language :
Present simple and past simple; Present simple passive
- Life skills :
Empathy



• بنك الأسئلة للكتابة اليومية والشمسية
• ملحق المهارات اللغوية
• تدريبات للأرthur الشريف وفي بنك الأسئلة
• Dictation وفي ملحق بنك الأسئلة

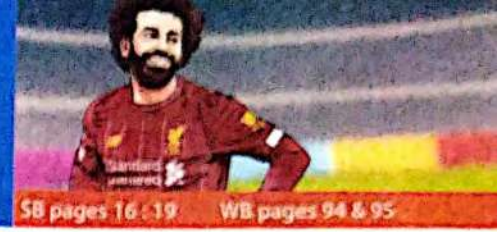
الإنسان
الوحدة

PART ONE

LESSONS

1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 94 & 95



Part I Vocabulary

تلميح • لتد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agreement(n)	موافقة - اتفاق	iron(ed) (n - v)	حديد - مكواة - يكرى
blood(n)	الدم	level(n)	مستوي / نسبة
blood donation(n)	التبرع بالدم	long-term(adj)	طويل المدى
blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم	pressure(n)	منغص
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	prestige (n - adj)	نُفوة / حَيَاة / رِخَاة -
donate(d) (v)	يتبرع	iron(ed) (n - v)	عالي الجودة
donation(n)	التبرع	roar(ed) (v - n)	يرأر - زئير
donor(n)	مُتبرع	role model(n)	قُدوة - نموذج يُحتذى
generous(adj)	كريم - سخّي	model(n)	نموذج
intelligence(adj)	ذكاء	speed(n)	سُرعة
iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم / مساندة - يدعم
transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل / زراعة أعضاء		

تلميح • من لفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	قُدرة	inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم - يَحْتُ / يَحْتِزُّ
admire(d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
amongst(preposition)	بين	intelligence(n)	الذكاء
be based in	يوجد مقره في	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
belief(n)	اعتقاد	maker(n)	صانع
benefit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	movement(n)	حركة
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسَمِّي - يَذكر اسم
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
chance(n)	فرصة	persuade(d) (v)	يُفَع
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	praise(d) (n - v)	المدح - يُثني على /
check(ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	purpose(n)	بمَدح
compassion(n)	رحمة	recognize(d) (v)	غرض يتعرف على

UNIT 2

conservation(n)	حماية البيئة - صيانة	regular(adj)	منتظم / مأثور - منظم
conservationist(n)	شخص يهتم بحماية البيئة	relationship(n)	علاقة
culture(n)	الثقافة	research(ed)(n-v)	بحث - بحري أبحاث
cost(adj)	حساب - حساب	respect(ed)(n-v)	احترام - يحترم
documentary(n-adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي	roleplay(n-v)	(اللعبة) تمثيل الأدوار - يُمثل
finish(n)	التهانين	save(d)(v)	يُخزّن / يوفّر - يُفد
fondness(n)	قراءة / إعجاب بالشيء	score(d)(v-n)	يُحزّل / يسجل - النقاط
foundation(n)	تأسيس	share(d)(v)	المسجلة
generation(n)	جيل	soccer(n)	يشارك / ينقسم - يتفاسم
go-went-gone(v)	حضر / حضر	succeed(ed)(v)	كرة القدم
grow up	نما - تكبر / يتربّع	task(n)	يتبع
happiness(n)	السعادة	teenager(n)	مهمة
hometown(n)	مستوطن	the wild	مراهق
hunter(n)	صيد	traditionally(adv)	البرية
illness(n)	مرض	view(n)	بشكل تقليدي
income(n)	دخل - عائد	volunteer(n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر
injure(d)(v)	جرح - يؤذي	wish(ed)(v-n)	متطوع
injured(adv)	جرح		يتننى - أمنية
reduce(d)(v)	يقلل / يخفّض		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستعدة - ص 88

Memorise	Understand
agreement	عقد - اتفاقية an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something
blood pressure	ضغط الدم the force with which blood travels through your body
community	المجتمع all the people who live in the same area, city etc.
desire	رغبة a strong hope or wish
donate	يسرع to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured
generous	كرم willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure
intelligence	الذكاء having a high level of mental ability, and good at thinking clearly and understanding ideas

iron level	مستوى الحديد	the iron is a chemical element (symbol) which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron presence
long-term	طويل المدى	continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future
prestige	تفوّذ / هبة / فخافة	the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society
roar	زئير - برّار	(to make) a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice
role model	قدوة	someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them
transplant	زراعة أعضاء - نقل	the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- My father is very He always donates money to many charities. (التفانيّة ٢٠٢٢)
a miserly b cruel c generous d dirty
- Salah's skill provides a model for inspiring young people. (الفرط طمّاع ٢٠٢٢)
a reel b rule c role d roll
- People can to the Egyptian Food Bank to help others. (يؤسّع - التبرعة التلقوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a donate b steal c support d call
- High blood pressure is considered a disease. (المضاهية لتجربة ٢٠٢٢)
a long-term b medium-term c short-term d first-term
- It's too cold and I've no to visit anyone. (القيود - القيود ٢٠٢٢)
a desire b identity c problem d prestige
- Blood should be measured regularly. (التبريد - الدمى ٢٠٢٠)
a pleasure b treasure c pressure d donation

7. The child with a diseased kidney will have a transplant, but we are waiting for a
(المنظف - مكنوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor
8. Sir Magdi Jacob's centre for heart in Aswan is famous for heart
(المنظف - مكنوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. transports b. transplants c. plants d. planets
9. Good education, money and power give people
(المنظف - مكنوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. prestige b. hometown c. conservation d. monitor
10. First, you need to be checked carefully before blood to make sure you are healthy.
 a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
11. He gets much from his brother.
 a. support b. supports c. supporter d. supported
12. We heard a lion, so we returned quickly to the car.
 a. transplanting b. tracking c. printing d. roaring
13. The driver paid a fine because he was driving at a very high
 a. support b. speed c. transplant d. prestige
14. Iron is the amount of iron stored in the body.
 a. track b. clothes c. tool d. level
15. To succeed and reach your goal, you need to be very
 a. intelligent b. intelligence c. stupid d. stupidity
16. What is the suffix which can be added to form the noun from the verb "agree"?
(إدارة الخليفة والمفطر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. -tion b. -ness c. -ion d. -ment

2 Important Vocabulary

17. Mohammed Salah's is "the Happiness Maker".
(فتح الله كيرة الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. surname b. first name c. nickname d. pen name
18. I Aswan in winter as its weather is fantastic then.
(إدارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. hate b. dislike c. admire d. leave
19. Eight teams play the quarter of a championship.
(ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. rule b. final c. beginning d. role
20. I have a friend who works in a big company in Kuwait.
(سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٠)
 a. laid b. lied c. based d. basis
21. My parents always me when I do well at school.
(البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٠)
 a. praise b. apologise c. bully d. defend

22. It's my father's success at basketball that me to play the game.
(المنظف - مكنوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. inspired b. aspired c. conspired d. respire
23. Salah is known as the happiness
 a. founders b. volunteers c. conservationists d. maker
24. Unfortunately, the old man died after a short
(المنظف - مكنوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. fun b. happiness c. condition d. illness
25. It was only later in her life that she found and peace of mind.
(المنظف - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
 a. happy b. happiness c. sad d. sadness
26. My father spares no efforts to me that having a job would give me a prestige.
(المنظف - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٠)
 a. purchase b. insulate c. persuade d. propose
27. Wildlife is necessary to stop species from dying out.
(المنظف - مكنوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. pressure b. livestock c. intelligence d. conservation
28. are not paid for the work they do.
 a. Founders b. Volunteers c. Conservationists d. Teenagers
29. He all other runners and won the race.
 a. ran past b. researched c. grew up d. reduced
30. His is so low that he has to look for a second job.
 a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
31. I look forward to returning to my of Assuit where I was born and educated.
 a. workplace b. hometown c. track d. support
32. As a striker, you are supposed to goals, not to lose the ball.
 a. miss b. realise c. reach d. score
33. Tourism national income
(الدخل القومي)
 a. aim b. aims c. benefit d. benefits
34. As a, he has great interest in looking after the environment.
 a. founder b. volunteer c. conservationist d. teenager
35. I feel for the old and the sick.
 a. compassion b. documentary c. income d. task
36. I think I won't Rokaya. She was a little child when I last saw her 20 years ago.
 a. reduce b. aim c. recognize d. transplant

UNIT 2

37. She pays visits to her old grandma in Suez.
 a safe b charitable c regular d missing
38. I will lend you the money even if I know you don't have the to pay it back.
 a able b ability c inability d disability
39. Mr Mohammed gave each student a/an to do.
 a compassion b documentary c income d task
40. My uncle is one of the of this charity. They started it in 1998.
 a founders b volunteers c conservationists d teenagers
41. When I, I hope I will be able to help myself and my community.
 a run past b research c grow up d respect

3 Definitions

42. A/An is a strong hope or wish.
 a desire b track c will d ability
43. To is to allow some blood or a body organ to be removed from your body so that it can be used in a hospital to help someone who is ill or injured.
 a reduce b protect c score d donate
44. means willing to give money, spend time etc., in order to help people or give them pleasure.
 a Intelligent b Responsible c Generous d Safe
45. means continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future.
 a Short-term b Long-term c Forever d For good
46. A is someone whose behaviour, attitudes, etc. people try to copy because they admire them.
 a donor b biologist c roleplay d role model
47. is the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society.
 a Prestige b Generosity c Support d Ability
48. A/An is an official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something.
 a admiration b agreement c pressure d donation
49. A means a deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion, or by someone's voice
 a success b killing c roar d livestock

Part II Vocabulary Study

توليه ساعد فاعلك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بأشكل جيد ودل لتدريبه

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	blood pressure	يقبس ضغط الدم	have	a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
	iron level	يقبس نسبة الحديد في الدم		health benefits	ذو فوائد صحية
donate	blood	يتبرع بالدم	have	health problems	يعاني من مشكلات صحية
	money	يتبرع بالمال		long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مُزمن
get	a job	يحصل على عمل	make	nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به
	angry with	يغضب من		a game	لديه مباراة
give	... a chance	يمنح ... فرصة	take	the ability to	لديه القدرة على
	a title	يُنقّب - يُسّمي		friends	يُكوّن صداقات
	blood	يتبرع بالدم		movements	يقوم بحركات
	work / jobs	يُشغّل	part in	يشارك في	

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
admire	يُعجب به
benefit	فائدة - ميزة
blood donation	التبرع بالدم
conservation	حماية البيئة
desire	رغبة - يرغب
donate	يتبرع
generous	كريم - سخّي - جواد
happiness	السعادة
long-term	طويل الأمد
long-term illness	مرض مُزمن
praise	يُسّمي على - يمتدح
prestige	نفوذ / هيبة / وجاهة
reduce	يقلل / يخفّض
take part in	يشارك في
	praise / approve of / appreciate / respect
	use, advantage, merit
	giving blood
	preservation
	wish / preference
	give, supply
	open-handed, big-hearted
	joy, pleasure
	durable, lasting
	serious illness
	appreciate, flatter
	influence, esteem
	cut down, decrease
	participate - join - share

UNIT 2

3 Antonyms الملاحظات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
admire	يُعجب به	disapprove of / scorn	يستنقح - يستنكر
benefit	نافعة - ميزة	harm, disadvantage, demerit	ضرر - سلبية
donate	يتبرع	keep / receive	يحفظ به / يتسلم
generous	كريم - سخى - حواد	mean, selfish, miser, stingy	بخيل / أناني
happiness	السعادة	sadness, displeasure, depression	حزن - ضيق - اكتئاب
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity / dullness	الغباء
long-term	طويل المدى	short-term, temporary	قصير المدى - مؤقت
praise	يثنى على - يمدح	criticise, disapprove of	ينتقد - يستهجن
reduce	يقلل / يخفض	increase, expand	يزيد
regular	معتاد / مأثور - منتظم	irregular / uneven	غير مأثور - شاذ

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary المشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

admire	
admire (d) (v)	يُعجب به / يزدقه - I admire Salah as a footballer.
admiration (n)	الإعجاب - I have a lot of admiration for Salah as a footballer.
admirer (n)	مُعجب - I am an admirer of Salah as a footballer.
admirable (adj)	مثير للإعجاب - Salah is an admirable footballer.
donate	
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع - It is good to donate money to charities.
donation (n)	التبرع - The donation of money to charities is something good.
donor (n)	مُتبرع - It is good to be a donor for charities.
intelligence	
intelligence (n)	الذكاء - He is famous for his intelligence.
intelligent (adj)	ذكي - He is intelligent.
intelligently (adv)	بذكاء - He behaves intelligently.

generous	
generosity (n)	الكرم / السخاء - Generosity is good behaviour.
generous (adj)	كريم / سخى - وفير - It is good to be generous.
generously (adv)	سخاء - It is good to behave generously.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

around the world	حول العالم	happiness maker	صانع السعادة
away on holiday	مُسافر في إجازة	in a friendly way	بشكل وودود
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	long-term illness	مرض مُرَمَّن
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	love-hate relationship	علاقة حب أو كراهية
blood donors	المتبرعين بالدم	regular blood transplants	نقل دم بشكل منتظم
community centre	مركز اجتماعي	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	بعهد مصر لنهائيات كأس العالم
earn regular money	يحصل على دخل منتظم	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي للتبرع بالدم
giving blood	التبرع بالدم		
working together	العمل معاً		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

admire ... for	يُعجب به ... بسبب	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
donate ... for / to	يتبرع به ... لـ	run past	يسبق في الجري
find out (about)	يكشف - يعرف (عن)	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى / يُزهل (...) لـ
hear (...) about	يسمع (...) عن	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
hear of	يسمع به / يعرف عن	work with	يعمل مع / على
move to	ينتقل إلى		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

biography - autobiography	
• biography	السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها شخص عن حياة شخص آخر)
- I read the biography of President Sadat written by Anees Mansour.	
• autobiography	السيرة الشخصية (يكتبها الشخص بنفسه عن حياته)
- Al-Ayyam is Taha Hussein's autobiography.	

UNIT 2

blood transplant - blood transfusion

عملية زرع الخلايا الجذعية (التي تنتج الدم)
 • blood transplant (n)
 - It is not easy for a surgeon to do a blood transplant.
 نقل الدم (من شخص سليم لشخص مريض أو مصاب)
 • blood transfusion (n)
 - This patient needs blood transfusion.

charity

جمعية خيرية (اسم يُعد)
 • charity (n)
 - There are some charities that help poor people.
 العمل الخيري - التبرعات (اسم لا يُعد)
 • charity (n)
 - Salah donates money to charity in Egypt.

forename - surname - pen name - nickname

الاسم الأول (اسم الشخص نفسه)
 • forename = first name (n)
 - My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My first name is Rodayna.
 اللقب (اسم العائلة)
 • surname = last name = family name (n)
 - My Name is Rodayna Mohammed Dueshy. My surname is Dueshy.
 اسم مُستعار (يستخدمه بعض الكُتّاب بدلاً من الاسم الحقيقي)
 • pen name (n)
 - She wrote under the pen name of Bint El-Shatei.
 اسم الشهرة
 • nickname (n)
 - 'King of Egypt' is one of Salah's nicknames.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- Sometimes, doctors ask us to check
 a. blood pressure b. research c. an impact
 d. iron level e. a nickname
- When there's an accident, it is important that some people blood.
 a. go b. give c. do
 d. leave e. donate

- The verb '.....' collocates with the noun 'work'.
 a. give b. make c. do
 d. go e. talk
- He has to succeed in the next exam.
 a. a title b. sure c. a desire
 d. a nickname e. the ability
- My sister's success us to do our best. (الفيوم - انشواي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. decreased b. encouraged c. inspired
 d. discouraged e. informed
- He donated money to build a school. The synonyms of the word "donated" are (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
 a. grew b. gave c. received
 d. supplied e. kept
- He has a desire to help other people. The synonyms of the word "desire" are (الفيوم - انشواشة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. link b. wish c. debt
 d. preference e. donation
- "I admire your idea." In this sentence, "admire" is a synonym of (التعابرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. praise b. belong to c. disapprove
 d. appreciate e. prove
- To be generous is a good quality. The antonyms of the word "generous" are (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. stingy b. kind c. cheerful
 d. selfish e. disappointed
- "I am for my lost keys. I don't know where they are." Which of the following verbs can be used in the space to make sense? تعطي معني مفيد
 a. donating b. looking c. giving
 d. preserving e. searching
- It is kind of you to donate money the poor.
 a. with b. in c. to
 d. from e. for
- My mother taught me depend on myself.
 a. to b. how c. how to
 d. what e. what to

• MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It is not always easy to new friends.
a. do b. look c. spend d. make
- Some students try to a job during the summer holiday.
a. go b. do c. get d. leave
- Vegetables a lot of health benefits if eaten fresh.
a. donate b. have c. check d. pay
- I admire your idea. In this sentence, 'admire' is an antonym of
a. praise b. approve of c. disapprove of d. appreciate
- "She's a long-term illness." "Long-term" here means
a. serious b. temporary c. short d. simple
- "He donated some blood." The word 'donated' can be replaced by
a. received b. gave c. kept d. a & c
- "I know you are generous." 'Generous' here is antonymous with
a. helpful b. selfish c. mean d. b & c
- "Donate" is to 'receive' as is to stupidity.
a. intelligence b. intelligent c. domestic d. tame
- I can't help my for your mentality *طريقة التفكير*.
a. admire b. admirer c. admiration d. admired
- I really your mentality.
a. admire b. admirer c. admiration d. admired
- First, a blood has to be checked carefully to make sure they are healthy.
a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
- First, you need to be checked carefully before you blood to make sure you are healthy.
a. donate b. donor c. donation d. donated
- blood is synonymous with giving it.
a. Transplanting b. Transfusing c. Pressuring d. Donating
- He to live in a large villa in a coastal *ساحلية* town.
a. desire b. desires c. desiring d. is desiring
- His is to live in a large villa in a coastal *ساحلية* town.
a. desire b. desires c. desiring d. is desiring
- What makes people admire him more is his
a. genre b. generous c. generosity d. generously

- What makes people admire him more is the fact that he is
a. genre b. generous c. generosity d. generously
- He won't take the race as he is injured.
a. place b. care of c. part in d. turns
- My father praised me helping the poor old man.
a. for b. of c. with d. to
- When I was talking with her for the first time, I found that she is intelligent.
a. in b. out about c. out d. b & c
- In his, Taha Hussein wrote about all that happened to him in his life.
a. graphy b. autobiography c. biography d. geography

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

People who help

(SB page 16)

1. Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers⁽¹⁾. He is admired⁽²⁾ for his speed⁽³⁾ and ability⁽⁴⁾ to score⁽⁵⁾ goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals⁽⁶⁾ since 1990.



Salah has been praised⁽⁷⁾ for his kind and generous⁽⁸⁾ donations⁽⁹⁾ to charity⁽¹⁰⁾ in Egypt. He donated⁽¹¹⁾ money to his hometown⁽¹²⁾ of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer⁽¹³⁾ hospital in Cairo.

Salah's desire⁽¹⁴⁾ to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance⁽¹⁵⁾ to succeed⁽¹⁶⁾. He is a role model⁽¹⁷⁾ to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname⁽¹⁸⁾, The Happiness Maker⁽¹⁹⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- لاعب كرة قدم
- يُحجَبُ بِـ
- سرعة
- القدرة
- يُحِزُّ
- نهائيات
- يُمنَحُ
- سخي / كريم
- تبرعات
- العمل الخيري
- تبرع بِـ
- مسقط رأس
- السرطان
- رغبة
- فرصة
- يُنجِحُ
- قدوة
- لقب
- صانع السعادة

2. Blood ⁽¹⁾ donors ⁽²⁾

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world **take part in** ⁽¹⁾ World Blood Donor Day to **share** ⁽²⁾ information about the importance of giving blood.

Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly **injured** ⁽³⁾ or need **regular** ⁽⁴⁾ blood **transplants** ⁽⁵⁾ because they have a **long-term** ⁽⁶⁾ **illness** ⁽⁷⁾.

Giving blood can also have health **benefits** ⁽⁸⁾. All donors have their **blood pressure** ⁽⁹⁾ and **iron levels** ⁽¹⁰⁾ **checked** ⁽¹¹⁾ before **donation** ⁽¹²⁾, so people who donate blood can **find out** ⁽¹³⁾ quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can **save** ⁽¹⁴⁾ **lives** ⁽¹⁵⁾ and it is easy to do!



(SB page 17)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الدم
- (2) المتبرعون
- (3) يشارك في
- (4) يشارك
- (5) مُصاب
- (6) منتظم
- (7) نقل
- (8) مزمن - طويل المدى
- (9) مرض
- (10) فوائد
- (11) ضغط الدم
- (12) مستويات الحديد (في الدم)
- (13) يفحص
- (14) التبرع
- (15) يكتشف
- (16) ينقذ
- (17) الحياة

2 Listening Texts

Interviewer : In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation **biologist** ⁽¹⁾ and **founder** ⁽²⁾ of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions ?

Martin : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions **roaring** ⁽³⁾ at night when he was sleeping on the **roof** ⁽⁴⁾ of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer : What happened next ?



(SB page 18)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عالم أحياء
- (2) مؤسس
- (3) يزار
- (4) سطح

Martin : She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions **amongst** ⁽¹⁾ the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now ?

Interviewer : So why are lions disappearing so quickly ?

Martin : There are several **reasons** ⁽²⁾. People have built houses in the areas that lions **traditionally** ⁽³⁾ hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villager's **livestock** ⁽⁴⁾, you know, their cows and goats. The **villagers** ⁽⁵⁾ get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is **prestige** ⁽⁶⁾ - in Maasai **culture** ⁽⁷⁾, young men get a lot of **respect** ⁽⁸⁾ from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

Interviewer : What did Leelah do ?

Martin : She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their **views** ⁽⁹⁾ about lions. She learnt that they have a **love-hate relationship** ⁽¹⁰⁾ with ⁽¹¹⁾ lions, they **admire** ⁽¹²⁾ their **beauty** ⁽¹³⁾, but hate them for eating their **cattle** ⁽¹⁴⁾. She also understood the prestige that came from being a **lion killer** ⁽¹⁵⁾ and realised that she needed to **persuade** ⁽¹⁶⁾ the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the **advantages** ⁽¹⁷⁾ of protecting lions instead.

Interviewer : Is that when she started Lion Guardians ?

Martin : Yes. Lion Guardians is an **organization** ⁽¹⁸⁾ that **employs** ⁽¹⁹⁾ local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to **track** ⁽²⁰⁾ lions in the **wild** ⁽²¹⁾, so they are taught to become lion guardians **rather than** ⁽²²⁾ lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.

- (5) بين
- (6) أسدي
- (7) تقليدياً
- (8) حيوانات المزرعة
- (9) العاجين
- (10) هيبه / واجاهه
- (11) ثقافة
- (12) احترام
- (13) وجهات النظر
- (14) علاقة حب وكره معاً
- (15) يعجب -
- (16) جمال
- (17) العاشية
- (18) قتل أسود
- (19) يفتح
- (20) مزاليا
- (21) منظمة
- (22) توظف
- (23) يرصد / يتابع
- (24) الحياة البرية
- (25) بدلاً من

Interviewer : How **successful**⁽²⁶⁾ is the programme ?

Martin : Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular **income**⁽²⁷⁾ and a sense of **purpose**⁽²⁸⁾. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with **fondness**⁽²⁹⁾.

Interviewer : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians ?

Martin : The importance of listening to people in the **community**⁽³⁰⁾ and to **recognise**⁽³¹⁾ how much **knowledge**⁽³²⁾ the local people have. By working together, both **the locals**⁽³³⁾ and **conservations** can **benefit**⁽³⁴⁾.

Interviewer : Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a

- (26) نجاح
- (27) دخل
- (28) هدف / غرض
- (29) شغف / وبع
- (30) جماعة / مجتمع
- (31) يتعرف على
- (32) معرفة
- (33) السكان المحليين
- (34) يستفيد

3 Video script section

Young people and older people don't always spend a lot of time together. But, they can do a lot to help each other.

In some communities⁽¹⁾, children and teenagers⁽²⁾ **volunteer**⁽³⁾ to support⁽⁴⁾ older people. They sit and watch television with them. They help them with their shopping or other **tasks**⁽⁵⁾ around the house.

They listen to their stories about life a long time ago. The older people don't feel so alone, they get the help they need and they can share interesting information about life in the past with the next generation⁽⁶⁾.

But, what about the young people ? Well, they can learn a lot about the history of their community. They also see that older people were just like them when they were younger.

- Check Vocabulary**
- (1) مجتمعات
 - (2) مرافقين
 - (3) يتطوع
 - (4) يساعد
 - (5) أعمال / واجبات
 - (6) جيل

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم

1. How do volunteers help older people ?
2. How does listening to older people help them feel less alone ?
3. What can young people learn from older people ?

Part IV Language



Supporting the community

1 The Present Simple Tense :

رغم المضارع البسيط :

1 في الجملة الخبرية البسيطة :

Subject فاعل (I, We, They, You) + التصريف الأول للفعل

- ex. - I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.
- احمد يحب كرة القدم كثيرا. (He / She / It) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب
- Ahmed likes football very much.
- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ (ch - sh - ss - o - x)
- Aya watches action films every day.
- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y)
- Mariam studies philosophy at Cambridge University.

2 في النفي :

Subject فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر

- لاحظ تستخدم (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب :

- ex. - I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.
- Ahmed doesn't like football very much.
- ونستخدم (never) أيضاً للنفي القاطع وفي هذه الحالة تبقى (s/es/ies) في نهاية الفعل مع (he/she/it) :
- He doesn't help the poor at all. = He never helps the poor.
- They don't get up late at all. = They never get up late.

3 في السؤال بـ «هل» :

Do / Does + Subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ؟

- ex. - Do you get up at six o'clock every morning ?
- Yes, I do. OR - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- No, I don't. OR - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.
- Does Aya watch action films ?
- Yes, she does. OR - Yes, she watches action films.
- No, she doesn't. OR - No, she doesn't watch action films.

UNIT 2

السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + do / does + Subject فاعل + Inf. المصدر + ?

- ex. - What do you eat for lunch?
- How often does Mr Ashraf go to the club?

في المبني للمجهول :

- عند تحويل زمن المضارع البسيط إلى صيغة المبني للمجهول نستخدم :

Object المفعول + am / is / are + P.P التصريف الثالث

- ex. Farmers grow plants. (معلوم)
- Plants are grown by farmers. (مجهول)
- Some people don't eat meat at all. (معلوم)
- Meat isn't eaten at all by some people. (مجهول)

- لا تستخدم (have / has) كفعل أساسي في المبني للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعنى :

Have = own - possess - belong to - suffer - eat - buy - spend - take

- ex. - I have a car. - A car is (possessed - owned) by me.
- She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Mini Test 1

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- My son football and tennis in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
 - My sons football and tennis in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
 - Football and tennis in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
 - Football in the club.
a. play b. plays c. is played d. are played
 - These trees their leaves in autumn.
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
 - This tree its leaves in autumn.
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost

- The leaves of this tree in autumn.
a. isn't lost b. don't lose c. doesn't lose d. aren't lost
- This tree its leaves in autumn.
a. never loses b. don't lose c. never lose d. aren't lost
- Does Amir your birthday parties?
a. attend b. attends c. is attended d. attending
- you with your homework?
a. Anyone helps b. Is anyone helped
c. Does anyone help d. Anyone is helped
- with your homework?
a. You help b. Do you help c. You are helped d. Are you helped
- We a nice time by the sea.
a. are had b. have c. are spent d. is spent
- A nice time by the sea.
a. are had b. have c. are spent d. is spent

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

بالنسبة للفعل (be) كفعل اساس في المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (am / is / are) بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) ولا تُستخدم (do / does) في النفي أو السؤال.

- Ali is at school. (إثبات)
- Ali isn't at school. (نفي)
- Is Ali at school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Where is Ali? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

بالنسبة للفعل (have) كفعل اساس في المضارع البسيط ، نستخدم (have / has) بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يشتري) ونستخدم (do / does) غالباً معهما كأنفعال مساعدة في النفي أو السؤال.

- They have lunch at three o'clock. (إثبات)
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. (نفي)
- Do they have lunch at three o'clock? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When do they have lunch? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)

Mini Test 2

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- Ali at home right now. He's at school.
a. is b. doesn't be c. isn't d. has

UNIT 2

2. A: at home right now? B: No, he's at school.
 a. Is Ali b. Does Ali be c. Ali is d. Does Ali have
3. We lunch before my father returns home.
 a. haven't b. don't have c. aren't d. don't be
4. lunch before your father returns home?
 a. You have b. Have you c. Are you d. Do you have

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple) في:
 1 التعبير عن حقائق ثابتة:

ex. - The sun gives us light and heat. - People don't live under water.

2 التعبير عن شيء حقيقي في المضارع (حقيقة تدوم لفترة) / مواقف دائمة:

ex. - Yousif lives in Assuit. - My wife is an engineer.

3 يدل المضارع البسيط على المستقبل بعد الربوط الزمنية التالية:

- قبل - بينما as / just as - بينما while - عندما when
 - بمجرد أن once - بعد after - في اللحظة التي the moment
 حتى until / till / as soon as بمجرد أن

جملة مستقبل + مضارع بسيط/ تام + رابط زمني Time connector

ex. - When I arrive (have arrived) home, I will take a shower.
 - Before she goes (has gone) to bed, she will kiss her mother.
 - I won't call you until I know (have known) the latest news.

4 بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى و الحالة الصفرية:

ex. - If I get information about this subject, I'll tell you.

5 التعبير عن جداول المواعيد الثابتة:

ex. - My train leaves at nine tomorrow morning.

6 يستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلاً من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عما يحدث الآن مع الأفعال النظرية (مثل أعمال الحواس و المشاعر و الإدراك...):

ex. - I am seeing some beautiful flowers. (x)
 - I see some beautiful flowers. (✓)

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Lions meat.
 a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
- Lions grass.
 a. eats b. eat c. don't eat d. are eaten
- This soup very good.
 a. tastes b. taste c. is tasting d. to taste
- My father in a big company. He is an accountant there.
 a. works b. work c. is working d. is worked
- After I my lunch, I will take a short rest.
 a. will have b. have c. had d. had had
- I will take a taxi if I up late.
 a. will get b. had got c. got d. get
- She'll help you as soon as she her work.
 a. will finish b. finish c. finishes d. have finished
- According to the timetable, the train the station at seven.
 a. will reach b. had reached c. reach d. reaches

Present Habits عادات المضارع

Subj. فاعل + always / usually / sometimes + فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط

- Nada usually goes to the shops on Sunday.

It + is + someone's habit to + Inf.

- It is Nada's (her) habit to go to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + In the habit of + (Inf. + Ing)

- Nada is in the habit of going to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + am / is / are + used to + (Inf. + Ing) / n.

- Nada is used to going to the shops on Sunday.

Subj. فاعل + no longer + Inf. / (Inf + s, es, les) فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط

- He no longer eats rice.

Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + Inf... + any longer/any more

- He doesn't eat rice anymore.

Adverbs of frequency with the present simple ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط

تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (am / is / are)

- غالبا دائما - always
- عادة - usually / normally
- بانتظام - regularly
- أحيانا - occasionally
- بالتكاد - hardly ever
- بالتكاد - seldom
- نادرا - rarely
- قلما - little
- بين حين وآخر - frequently
- مطلقا - never

ex. - I always go to school on time. - I am always at school on time.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الطرف.

ex. - Sometimes, I play football. - I play football sometimes.

تستخدم تعبيرات التكرار التالية أيضا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة

- once مرة / twice مرتين / three times ... / several times / many times
- + a / an / every + period of time
- every (morning - day - Monday - week - month - summer - year.....) / on Fridays / in summer

ex. - I go for a walk twice a week.
 - Once a month, I visit my parents.
 - I take Arabic lessons on Wednesdays.
 - Every morning, my mother wakes me up.

Mini Test 4

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. My father works as a doctor. He very busy examining patients.
 a. often is b. is often c. often has d. has often
 2. Leen something to do. She is very busy.
 a. always have b. have always c. always has d. has always
 3. I visit my grandparents month, in the beginning and in the middle.
 a. twice b. once c. once a d. twice a
 4. Sama is used in Aswan.
 a. to living b. alive c. to live d. living

5. It is Omar's habit for walks on Fridays.
 a. going b. to going c. to go d. goes
6. Hussein working on the farm.
 a. is used b. is used to c. used to d. used

The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط

تم شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.

General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. My car always down on the motorway. (عرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. is broken b. has broken c. breaks d. was broken
 2. I think the next train to Aswan at 10 a.m. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. will leave b. leaves c. is leaving d. left
 3. One of the Egyptian scientists awarded the Nobel Prize in 2010. (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. was b. has been c. were d. had been
 4. When I was in Sharm El-Sheik, I to the beach a lot. (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
 a. have gone b. was going c. would go d. went
 5. Yesterday, we some beautiful fish in the Red Sea. (اكوم ابو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. saw b. were seeing c. see d. have seen
 6. Nesma late when she was young. She no longer does now. (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. usually sleeps b. is used to sleeping
 c. used to sleep d. was usually slept.
 7. My sister usually to school when she was young. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. walks b. was walking c. walked d. has walked
 8. Money into our country by tourists who come to enjoy our civilization. (إدارة القصر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. is brought b. has brought c. are brought d. is bringing

9. Every day, my room while I'm at school. (الطوبى - التدبير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. was tidied b. is tidied
 c. tidied d. was being tidied
10. When he went on holiday, he always a lot of photos. (إدارة الخليفة والمقدم ٢٠٢٢)
 a. takes b. have taken c. took d. has taken
11. He committed the crime and away. (القبوم - اشوي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. runs b. ran c. run d. running
12. Tamer meals outdoors. (إدارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. hasn't b. never has c. has ever d. isn't had
13. Now, Salah as a role model for all young Egyptians. (الدمو الثانوية بين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. is being known b. is known c. knows d. known
14. How much time on social media? (القبوم - يوسف ككك ٢٠٢٢)
 a. are spending b. you spend c. is spent d. spent
15. He hard work on the farm. (القبوم - يوسف ككك ٢٠٢٢)
 a. used to b. were used to c. got used to d. didn't use to
16. My friend used to get high marks but now he (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. don't b. doesn't c. didn't d. isn't
17. He at the club yesterday. (إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. isn't seen b. wasn't seen c. didn't see d. doesn't see
18. Do as you and don't ask questions. (القبوم - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. tell b. are told c. are telling d. being told
19. Never to school late. He is so punctual. (بورسعيد - الفرقة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. he comes b. comes he c. does he come d. is he come

تدويه • ذاكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.



Part I Vocabulary

تدويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	party(n)	فريق - صاعقة - حزب
cattle(n)	الماشية	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
community(n)	المجتمع	monitor(ed) (v - n)	مُراقِب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
famous(adj)	مشهور	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - منظمة
guardian(n)	حارس	track(ed) (v - n)	يرصد - يتابع - مسر
hunting parties	فِرق الصيد		

تدويه • من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	local(adj)	محلي
aim(ed) (n - v)	يهدف - هدف	locate(d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع
amazing(adj)	رائع - مذهل	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
angle (n)	زاوية	nearby(adj-adv)	قريب - مجاور
appearance (n)	ظهور - مظهر	path(n)	مسار - طريق
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	paw print	أثار أقدام الحيوان
disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى	paws(n)	
empathy(n)	تَعاطُف - تقدير ظروف الآخرين	protect(ed) (v)	يحمي
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغَل	recent(adj)	حديث
estimate(d) (v)	يقدّر - يفترض	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
expert(n)	خبير	safe(adj)	آمن
field (n)	مجال - حقل	sense(n)	حاسة
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة	sign(n)	علامة/إشارة - لافتة
hunting (n)	الصيد	tribe(n)	قبيلة
killings (n)	حالات القتل	villagers(n)	القرريين

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

UNIT 2

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستخدمة - عام جداً

Memorise	Understand
admire (v) يَعْجب - يَحترم	to respect and like someone because they have done something that you think is good, or to respect their qualities or skills
guardian (n) حارس - حارس	someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something
livestock (n) حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
monitor (v) يرصد - يراقب	to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time

Exercise On Vocabulary Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The child's parents or must give their agreement before she has the operation. (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors
- Families should their children's internet activity. (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. meet b. dick c. monitor d. scam
- The police managed to down the criminal. (إدارة الشرقية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. track b. tick c. trek d. truck
- The international is really very worried about the problem of climate change. (المنيا - ديمواس ٢٠٢٠)
 a. security b. communication
 c. technology d. community
- "Farmers keep livestock on their farms." The synonym of "livestock" is (الشرقية - كفر صفر ٢٠٢٠)
 a. kittle b. castle c. cattle d. kettle

- The farmers build fences to protect their from wild animals and thieves.
 a. wildlife b. livestock c. parties d. tracks
- He joined the tourist who visited the Valley of Kings.
 a. herd b. party c. flock d. community
- He works for an international that help poor people in Africa.
 a. organisation b. cancer c. maker d. presentation
- He is an experienced ذو خبرة
 a. biology b. biological c. biologically d. biologist

2 Important Vocabulary

- I don't have to do your homework; it's your
 (إدارة امبراش - انشد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. biography b. responsibility c. disease d. illness
- A good citizen has a of duty. (المنيرة - اندي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
- If there is a supermarket, we can shop easily. (المنيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
 a. really b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely
- "Not all that glitters is gold", this means you shouldn't be deceived by.....
 (السيول - ادفو ٢٠٢٠)
 a. appearance b. personality c. politeness d. character
- He is really kind. He showed much with my difficult situation.
 a. empathy b. donation c. admiration d. charitable
- She is a doctor. She works in the medical طبي
 a. transplant b. party c. field d. interview
- Most patients are taken to the hospital in our area.
 a. local b. missing c. wild d. repeated
- Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is a great
 a. loss b. movement c. achievement d. organisation

3 Definitions

- A/An is someone who is legally responsible for looking after someone or something.
 a. biologist b. guardian c. hunter d. admirer
- are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
 a. Livestock b. Parties c. Viewers d. Guardians
- To is to carefully watch and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progresses over a period of time.
 a. desire b. employ c. monitor d. transplant

Part II Vocabulary Study

توليه استعد الطلاب على الارتقاء بمستواهم عن طريق استكمال هذا الجزء من الوحدة بالأسئلة التي في الجدول التالي

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	research work with	تجري أبحاث تقوم بأعمال مع	have	a negative impact on	له أثر سلبي على
give	a sense of responsibility	يعطي إحساس بالمسئولية	leave	school	يقطع أو يُنتهي دراسته
go	missing	يتوه / يضل الطريق	make	sure movements	يتأكد / يتيقن / يتحقق يقوم بحركات

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
amazing	رائع - مذهل astonishing, wonderful
disappear	يختفي - يتلاشى vanish, die out / go away
empathy	تعاطف - تقدير ظروف الآخرين togetherness, sympathy, understanding
employ	يوظف - يُشغل take on, hire, appoint
famous	مشهور well-known, renowned
monitor	يراقب / يترصد track, observe, watch, keep an eye on
nearby	قريب - مجاور close, near, neighbouring
search for	يسحث عن look for, hunt

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
amazing	رائع - مذهل ordinary, usual, everyday	عادي - مألوف
disappear	يختفي - يتلاشى appear, come out	يظهر
employ	يوظف - يُشغل fire, dismiss, discharge	يفصل من العمل
nearby	قريب - مجاور remote, faraway, distant	ناء - بعيد
wild	برّي domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

biologist	
biology(n)	علم الأحياء - He is an expert in biology .
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء - He is an experienced biologist .
biological (adj)	حيوي - خاص بالكائنات الحية - He is a biological expert.
guard	
guard(ed)(v)	حرس - He guards this farm.
guard (n)	حارس - He is a guard of this farm.
guardian (n)	حارس - وصي - He is one of the nature guardians .
kill	
kill(ed) (v)	يقتل - This criminal killed three people.
killing (n)	القتل - This criminal is responsible for the killing of three people.
killings (n)	حالات القتل / الضحايا - This criminal is responsible for three killings .
killer (n)	قاتل - This criminal is the killer of three people.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسئولية	expert at/in/on	خبير في
all over	في كل أنحاء	from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة
as much as	بنفس الكمية	in groups	في مجموعات
be based in	مقره في (+ مكان)	kill animals for sport	يقتل الحيوانات كرياضة
be based on	قائم على (+ الفكرة)	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية
be interested in	يهتم بـ	thanks to	تفضل
early life	مرحلة مبكرة من العمر		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

bring ... into	يُخبر ... إلى	look after	يرعى / يهتم بـ
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ	look for	يسحث عن
complete with	يُكمل بـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
deals with	يتعامل مع / يواجه	search for	يسحث عن
encourage ... to	يُشجع ... لكي	teach ... (how) to	يُعلم ... كيف
know about	يعرف عن	worry about	يقلق على

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be based in / be based on

مقره في / مكانه في

- be based in
- Our company is based in Cairo.
- be based on
- This film has been based on a novel by Naguib Mahfouz.

مؤسس على - قائم فكرياً على

every day - everyday

- every day (adv) = daily
- I play football every day. = - Every day, I play football.
- everyday (adj)
- He feels bored because of his everyday routine.

كل يوم (ظرف زمان يأتي غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

يومي (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف)

hear of / about - hear from

يعرف / يسمع بـ

- hear of / about
- I haven't heard of / about this writer before.
- hear from
- I haven't heard from Mr Ashraf lately. I hope he is well.

يتلقى اتصالاً أو أخباراً من (رسالة / مكالمة / خطاب ...)

angle / angel

زاوية - جانب

- angle
- A square has four angles.
- Try to look at the subject from a different angle.
- angel
- Children are little angels.

ملاك - شخص حسن الخلق

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- We can say someone makes
a. blood b. movements c. missing
d. friends e. nothing to do
- You can do
a. work b. mistakes c. research
d. movements e. decisions

3. Suddenly, Ahmed disappeared in the forest. The synonyms of the word "disappear" are

(أندرية - الفصحى ٢٠٢٢)

- a. refrain h. remain e. vanish
- d. operate e. hide

4. "We have an outdoor camera to monitor the street outside." The verb 'monitor' in this sentence means

- a. watch b. give e. observe
- d. look e. wish

5. She is expert cooking recipes.

- a. of b. in e. for
- d. on e. to

6. "We don't allow hunting parties to kill animals." The word 'parties' here can be replaced by

- a. teams b. festivals c. occasions
- d. groups e. animals

7. 'Wild' is antonymous with

- a. well-known b. serious e. violent
- d. tame e. domestic

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The loss of his job a negative impact on him. (الندوة - الفصحى ٢٠٢٠)

- a. had b. took e. provide d. did

2. We need to more research into coronavirus.

- a. go b. do e. get d. leave

3. Young men join the army after school or university.

- a. going b. doing c. getting d. leaving

4. When I was young, I missing when I was shopping with my mum.

- a. went b. did c. got d. left

5. To wild animals is a crime.

- a. kill b. kills c. killing d. killings

6. wild animals is a crime.

- a. Kill b. Kills c. Killing d. Killings

7. The new wildlife law القانون helped reduce among rare نادرة animals.

- a. kill b. kills c. killing d. killings

8. The lion Guardians is an organization based Kenya.

(البيسكندرية - التوجيه الفصحى ٢٠٢٠)

- a. on b. in c. at d. to

9. This film is based a true story.
 a. in b. on c. of d. with
10. He succeeded in his life thanks hard work.
 a. for b. to c. from d. about
11. People don't drink as as camels do.
 a. long b. well c. much d. soon
12. Doing sport is part of my activities.
 a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day
13. I do sport
 a. angel b. angle c. everyday d. every day
14. Finally, I heard my brother in the USA. He sent me an email.
 a. from b. of c. about d. b & c
15. I have just heard your health problems.
 a. from b. of c. about d. b & c

Part III Reading

Reading Texts

1. Working together

(SB page 20)

Lions are disappearing⁽¹⁾ all over Africa but there is some hope now after the amazing⁽²⁾ work of an organization⁽³⁾ called Lion Guardians⁽⁴⁾, which is based in⁽⁵⁾ Kenya, but Guardians help in nearby⁽⁶⁾ Tanzania. The aim⁽⁷⁾ of Lion Guardians is to help local⁽⁸⁾ people to protect⁽⁹⁾ their own livestock⁽¹⁰⁾ and reduce⁽¹¹⁾ the number of lion killings⁽¹²⁾ in the area⁽¹³⁾.



Cattle⁽¹⁴⁾ are important to the villagers⁽¹⁵⁾ but they often go missing⁽¹⁶⁾ or are attacked⁽¹⁷⁾ by lions. Then the lions are killed as⁽¹⁸⁾ villagers worry⁽¹⁹⁾ about losing more livestock.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تختفى
- (2) مذهل
- (3) منظمة
- (4) حراس
- (5) مقرها في
- (6) قريب
- (7) هدف
- (8) محلي
- (9) يحمي
- (10) حيوانات المزرعة
- (11) يقتل
- (12) حالات القتل
- (13) المنطقة
- (14) الماشية
- (15) القرودين
- (16) تضل الطريق
- (17) تُهاجم
- (18) لأن
- (19) يقلق

Lion Guardians is changing this. The organization works with the community⁽²⁰⁾ to help both⁽²¹⁾ the lions and the livestock and this is done by employing⁽²²⁾ local people.

Maasai⁽²³⁾ men are chosen⁽²⁴⁾ to become guardians as they understand lions and have the skills⁽²⁵⁾ needed to monitor⁽²⁶⁾ their movements⁽²⁷⁾, find missing⁽²⁸⁾ livestock and stop hunting parties⁽²⁹⁾ who kill the lions for sport. They are taught to be field⁽³⁰⁾ biologists⁽³¹⁾ and are given a sense⁽³²⁾ of responsibility⁽³³⁾.

Lions are monitored⁽³⁴⁾ every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure⁽³⁵⁾ their cows are safe. Lion Guardians are very successful⁽³⁶⁾. They help the future of lions as well as⁽³⁷⁾ the local communities.

Check Vocabulary

- (20) المجتمع
- (21) كل من
- (22) يوظف
- (23) شعب الماساي
- (24) يُختار
- (25) مهارات
- (26) يراقب
- (27) تحركات
- (28) مفقود
- (29) فرق الصيد
- (30) ميداني
- (31) علماء الأحياء
- (32) إحساس
- (33) المسؤولية
- (34) يتتبع / يراقب
- (35) يتأكد
- (36) ناجح
- (37) بالإضافة إلى

2. Maasai Tracking

The Maasai are experts⁽¹⁾ at tracking⁽²⁾ animals and lions are the most well-known⁽³⁾ animal that they follow⁽⁴⁾. But how do they do it? The lions are tracked by the Maasai, who use all their senses⁽⁵⁾ to follow them.

When a paw print⁽⁶⁾ is discovered⁽⁷⁾, it is checked to see if it is an old paw print or a recent⁽⁸⁾ one. Then the path is followed by the Maasai until the lions are found.

While they are tracking the lions, the Maasai are listening and looking for signs⁽⁹⁾ to help them discover where they are. In the past, the Maasai might kill a lion when they found one. Today, lions are protected by the Maasai from hunting parties and at the same time the local people's cows are safe. Thanks to⁽¹⁰⁾ the Lion Guardians, everyone is happy!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) خبراء
- (2) التتبع
- (3) معروف
- (4) يتتبع
- (5) حواس
- (6) آثار أقدام الحيوان
- (7) يكتشف
- (8) حديث
- (9) علامات
- (10) بفضل

Part IV Language



تطبيق وتعلم

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تدوين

General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تدوين

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Leen usually the 8 o'clock train to work.
a. has caught b. is catching c. catch d. catches
2. Aya late for work.
a. never is b. is never c. never has d. has never
3. When you usually finish studying your lessons?
a. are b. have c. do d. does
4. Omar come to work late at all.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
5. Omar comes to work late.
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
6. I always the piano after I come home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
7. I always the piano after I came home from work.
a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
8. He usually very quickly, so we didn't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
9. He usually very quickly, so we don't understand him.
a. speaks b. spoke c. was spoken d. speaking
10. My friends often came to my birthday party and me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
11. My friends often come to my birthday party and me nice presents.
a. have given b. were giving c. give d. gave
12. When I was on holiday, I tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played

13. When I am on holiday, I tennis every day.
a. had played b. have played c. play d. played
14. Sama an email to her friend but she has received no reply so far.
a. sends b. is sent c. sent d. was sent
15. Rubbish and burnt.
a. are collected b. collected c. collects d. is collected
16. He often with me in English to become better at speaking.
a. is speaking b. has spoken c. spoke d. speaks
17. We an interesting film last night.
a. watched b. had watched c. watch d. have watched
18. Policemen criminals and arrest them.
a. hunt b. hunts c. are hunting d. hunted
19. They attend the conference last month.
a. wasn't b. weren't c. didn't d. don't
20. According to the timetable, the train at 11 o'clock.
a. is arriving b. arrives c. is going to arrive d. had arrived
21. She the newspaper every morning. It is a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
22. She the newspaper every morning. It was a habit of hers.
a. is reading b. has read c. read d. reads
23. What time you usually arrive at school when you were a student?
a. do b. would c. did d. does
24. What time you usually arrive at school when you take a taxi?
a. do b. would c. did d. does
25. My son ambitious and he wants to study medicine.
a. is always b. always is c. doesn't always d. isn't always
26. When I finished my work, I closed my office and home.
a. return b. returning c. had returned d. returned
27. His mother his room door while he was studying his lessons.
a. opened b. opening c. was opening d. opens
28. The moon around the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التمرين

29. He phoned me once he _____ the message.
 a. had read b. will read c. reads d. read
30. He will phone me once he _____ the message.
 a. had read b. will read c. has read d. read
31. _____ I was twelve, my family moved into this flat.
 a. While b. When c. During d. As
32. He _____ early.
 a. rarely is b. is rare c. is rarely d. rare is
33. He _____ up early.
 a. rarely gets b. gets rarely c. get rarely d. rarely get
34. It hardly _____ in Egypt.
 a. is raining b. rains c. have rained d. raining
35. As a schoolboy, my uncle always _____ to school on foot.
 a. gone b. went c. goes d. will go
36. Mum _____ by all family members.
 a. is loving b. is being loved c. is loved d. loves
37. I'll phone you as soon as I _____ my work.
 a. finishes b. finish c. will finish d. had finished
38. We all _____ in Allah.
 a. believe b. believes c. is believing d. are believing
39. It is time we _____ home.
 a. went b. are going c. go d. have gone
40. _____ the email sent before the office was closed?
 a. Are b. Was c. Had d. Does
41. During his last holiday, Tamer _____ football every day.
 a. is playing b. played c. plays d. has played
42. He _____ playing tennis.
 a. use to b. is used to c. used to d. was used
43. A: Have you seen her lately?
 B: Yes, I _____ her when I was on my way to work the other day.
 a. saw b. had seen c. have seen d. was seeing
44. All the information I read in this book _____ very valuable and useful.
 a. is being b. has c. is d. are

45. Ten people _____ to have been injured in the crash.
 a. had reported b. have reported c. were reported d. were reporting
46. Don't open the door until I _____ you.
 a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told
47. I am sure he _____ a Samsung laptop. He just doesn't want to lend it to you.
 a. is having b. is going to have c. will have d. has
48. When Salma read a story, she _____ interested in its moral.
 a. is usually b. was usually c. usually is d. usually was

2 Check your understanding

49. "He used to work as a firefighter." This means
 a. he is a firefighter b. he works as a firefighter
 c. he is no longer a firefighter d. he never worked as a firefighter
50. "I wish I were tall." What does this mean?
 a. I am tall. b. I am not short.
 c. I used to be tall. d. I am not tall.
51. "It is time Omar paid me back my money." This means
 a. Omar had returned my money b. Omar hasn't returned my money
 c. Omar returned my money d. Omar has just returned my money
52. "I'd rather Sama hadn't used my cream yesterday." This means
 a. Sama used my cream yesterday
 b. Sama didn't use my cream yesterday
 c. Sama asked to use my cream yesterday
 d. Sama agreed to use my cream yesterday
53. "Plants get their food from the sun". This is a
 a. present habit b. past habit c. future fact d. fact
54. "We take mid-year exams in January". This is a
 a. timetable b. future fact c. habit d. hope
55. "I don't smoke heavily any longer." I mean that I
 a. smoke heavily b. used to be a heavy smoker
 c. haven't stopped smoking d. didn't use to smoke



Part I

Vocabulary

المعجم: الكلمات: ...
المعجم: الكلمات: ...

Key Vocabulary Items & Collocations

map(n)	خريطة
rich(adj)	غني
riches(n)	ثروة
riches(n)	ثروة
secret(n-adj)	سري
secret(n-adj)	سري
the rest(n)	بقية
the rest(n)	بقية

Exercise On Vocabulary

- The **slay** helped each other to control the situation well.
 a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
- The police found a **clue** that helped them solve the crime.
 a. glare b. trace c. clue d. flu
- Unfortunately, the burglar **robbed** the house.
 a. stole b. took c. robbed d. guarded
- A **magistrate** is the most important person in an organization.
 a. head b. crew c. clerk d. cleaner
- A/An **inn** is someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning.
 a. magistrate b. officer c. servant d. interviewer

- To **escape** is to succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you.
 a. rob b. escape c. guard d. dare
- A **juror** is someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court.
 a. doctor b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
- Treasure** is a group of valuable things such as gold, silver, jewels etc.
 a. Treasure b. Scar c. Adventure d. Head
- A/An **island** is a piece of land completely surrounded by water.
 a. beach b. island c. desert d. inn
- A/An **equal** is the mark (= or +) used on paper, to represent where something is, or where something should be.
 a. equal b. plus c. cross d. minus

Part II Grammatical Hints

Since

- الظرف الذي يستخدم في الجملة الرئيسية مع **since** هي:
- I **have lived** in Aswan since 2002.
 - I **have been living** in Aswan since 2002.
 - I **had lived** in Aswan since 2002 before I left it last year.
 - I **had been living** in Aswan since 2002 before I left it last year.
- الظرف الذي يظهر أن تستخدم في الجملة بعد **since** هي:
- I haven't slept since my mother **stayed** in hospital.
 - I haven't slept since my mother **has stayed** in hospital.

يمكن أن يُستخدم (inf + ing) بعد (since) إذا كان الفاعل مشترك في الحدثين

ex. - He has worked for the same company since he left school.
= He has worked for the same company since leaving school.

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية قبل (since):

It + is / was / has been / had been + + since

ex. - It is two days since I last saw Sama.
- It was the first time that I met the manager since last Monday.

تُستخدم (since) مع الماضي لتشير للزمن بين وقتين:

ex. - In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990.

يمكن استخدام (since / since then) دون تعبير زمني بعدها بمعنى أنه ذلك الحين إذا كان الوقت المشار إليه مفهوماً من السياق:

ex. - I returned home at 3 p.m. I haven't gone out since / (since then).

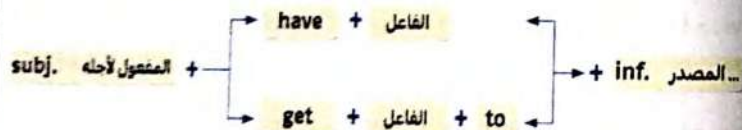
تُستخدم (since) بمعنى (الآن) وفي هذه الحالة تُستخدم مثل (because / as):

ex. - He didn't answer the phone since he was angry.
= He didn't answer the phone because he was angry.
= He didn't answer the phone as he was angry.

The Causative صيغة المفعول لأجله

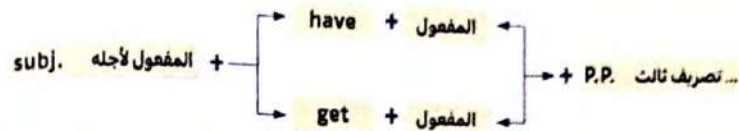
- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أفع أو دفع مالاً أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.

- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن.
- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:



ex. - I had a doctor check my blood pressure.
(جعلت الطبيب يفحص ضغط الدم الخاص بي)
= I got a doctor to check my blood pressure.

- أما في المبني للمجهول فتتكون هذه الصيغة من:



- I had / got my blood pressure checked (by a doctor).
(لقد تم قياس ضغط الدم لدي عن طريق الطبيب)

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

1 تميّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أي تقارن بين أكثر من طرفين):

ex. - English is the easiest subject.
- The lion is the most dangerous animal.
- The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.

2 تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the + adj. صفة + est / st / iest

ex. - fast → the fastest - old → the oldest
- large → the largest - close → the closest
- big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest
- lazy → the laziest - healthy → the healthiest

3 تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي:

the most / the least + adj. صفة

ex. - beautiful the most / the least beautiful

4 لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل بعد العداد الترتيبية مثل:

first / second / third / fourth ...etc.

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Egypt.

5 لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - 's

ex. - Cairo is Egypt's largest city.
- Is Sama your youngest sister?

noun phrase العبارة الاسمية
العبارة الاسمية تتكون من مجموعة كلمات وتعمل عمل الاسم، ويمكن استخدامها كفاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور:

- ex. - Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. (فاعل)
- We all respect Salah's desire to help others. (مفعول)
- I want to know more about Salah's desire to help others. (مجرور)

التصريف الثالث p.p.

أحياناً يُستخدم (p.p.) كبديل لعبارة وصل - لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

التصريف الثالث p.p. + جملة مبنية للمجهول + who / whom / which / that

- ex. - I have a cousin who is called Karim.
= I have a cousin called Karim.
- They have the skills which are needed to monitor wild animals.
= They have the skills needed to monitor wild animals.

as

1. تُستخدم (as) بمعنى (ك...) ويأتي بعدها اسم يدل على الوظيفة - المرحلة العمرية - الدور - المظهر:

- ex. - As a student, Sama is very clever.
- Captain Bassem works as a police officer.

2. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون اختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

- He works hard as planned.
= He works hard as it has been planned.

3. تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة:

- He fell asleep as he was watching a film. (as = when /while)
- As she was ill, she didn't go to school. (As = Because)

Own

1. تُستخدم (own) قبل اسم شيء، للتأكيد على أن شخص ما يملك هذا الشيء، أو أنه هو من قام بعمله، وتأتي (own) بعد صفات الملكية التالية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its - 's

- I relax well in my own room.
- He can't help you because he is busy doing his own homework.

1 يمكن أن تُستخدم (own) كضمير وفي هذه الحالة لا يأتي بعدها اسم:

- This is my wife's car. My own is being checked in the garage.

Plural Titles العناوين الجمع

للحظ أن عناوين الكتب والمؤسسات التي في صيغة الجمع تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- Lion Guardians is a success story.
- One Thousand and One Nights has been translated into several languages.

but / but still لكن

تُستخدم (but) للتعبير عن تناقض في الفكرة الرئيسية بين الجملتين:

- I asked for another glass of orange juice, but there was no more.

تُستخدم (but still) للتعبير عن تناقض في التوقع أو الرأي بين الجملتين:

- There was no more orange juice, but still she asked for another glass.

Thanks to بفضل / بسبب

تُستخدم (thanks to) في سياق إيجابي للتعبير عن السبب مثل (because of):

- thanks to / because of / due to / owing to + اسم noun
جملة + لأن because / since / as ... =

- We could solve our problems thanks to your help.
= We could solve our problems because you helped us.

Exercise On Language Hints

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- That man had his kidney in his brother.
a. transplants b. transplanted c. transplant d. transplanting
- I went to the mechanic to have
a. repaired my car b. my car repaired
c. my car repair d. my car repairs
- Gulliver's Travels a children's novel.
a. is b. are c. has d. have
- We have studied English 2010.
a. at b. on c. since d. for
- I sleep well in room.
a. own b. an own c. owning d. my own

6. a teacher, I have the qualities and qualifications that make my students understand well.
 a. As b. Like c. Since d. When
7. Rodayna has a cousin Zamzam.
 a. was called b. called c. is called d. calling
8. It was two years he moved into that flat.
 a. as b. while c. when d. since
9. What Mr Ashraf does because he has been very ill recently.
 a. is b. are c. has d. have
10. Mr Nasser is my friend of them all.
 a. the best b. the better c. better d. best
11. she was busy, she refused to help me.
 a. Because of b. On c. As d. During
12. Last August, I went to Alexandria for the second time 2015.
 a. in b. since c. for d. by
13. I did the job well agreed.
 a. like b. for c. since d. as
14. We have the equipment for our work.
 a. needed b. needing c. need d. needs
15. I have my blood pressure every week.
 a. check b. checks c. checked d. to check
16. Ahmed hasn't gone out since he home last night.
 a. went b. has gone c. had gone d. going
17. own car is a KIA.
 a. Him b. His c. He d. Himself
18. The last match was Salah's game ever.
 a. great b. greater c. greatest d. the greatest
19. I got a plumber the water pump.
 a. to fix b. fixes c. fixed d. to fixing
20. She left an hour ago. She hasn't returned
 a. then b. since then c. already d. just
21. I arrived home mum was preparing lunch.
 a. before b. as c. since d. on
22. I have my son after the trees in our house's garden.
 a. to look b. look c. looks d. to looking
23. As, ice is lighter than water.
 a. know b. knows c. knew d. known

24. I was very tired, I didn't finish studying unit 2.
 a. When b. While c. Since d. Because of
25. That isn't my tablet. My is a SAMSUNG.
 a. own b. it c. this d. ones

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تلويح للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات.

(A) Tips on writing a biography : * إرشادات خاصة بكتابة السيرة الذاتية :

Early life: المرحلة الأولى من العمر

- Where was he / she born? • Where did he / she live as a child?
- What did his / her parents do? • What did he / she study?
- Did anything important happen to him / her as a child?

Description: الوصف

- Describe his / her appearance and her personality.
- How did he / she help the community ?
- What did he / she do in the past to help the community?
- Where does he / she currently live and how is he / she helping the community now?

Conclusion: الخلاصة - الخاتمة

- What is your opinion of him / her?
- Why is his / her work so important?
- What is he / she admired for?
- Why is he / she a good role model?

(B) Tips on writing about a person : * إرشادات للكتابة عن شخص :

عند الكتابة عن شخص ما ، ينبغي أن نتحدث ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:

- 1 Who this person is من هو هذا الشخص
- 2 What his / her job is ما الوظيفة
- 3 How old he / she is كم العمر
- 4 When he / she lived متى عاش
- 5 Where he / she comes from من أين
- 6 What he / she did ماذا فعل
- 7 When he / she did that متى فعل ذلك
- 8 Why that is important ما أهمية ذلك

Model Essay

* Write an essay of about 150 words about the person you admire :

The person I admire

Perhaps you think I am going to write about a football star or a famous actor. These are important people, of course. However, I admire professor Magdi Yacoub. For me, he is the best role model. **قدوة** He is a great man for everything he has done for mankind. **البشرية**

Professor Yacoub was the son of a doctor who had to move to a new town every few years. This helped young Yacoub to adapt to **يتكيف مع** different situations. When his aunt died of a heart problem, he decided that he wanted to be a heart surgeon.

He succeeded in achieving his goal. He became a surgeon. He travelled abroad and worked with great heart surgeons in Britain and the USA. That gave him a lot of experience. He was part of the team that did the first heart transplant. **زرع القلب** Queen Elizabeth II awarded him the title "Sir" for his great achievements. **إنجازات**

When he retired, he returned to Egypt and set up **أسس** Magdi Yacoub Heart Foundation in Aswan. This foundation helps people with heart problems for free.

In my opinion, Professor Magdi Yacoub is the best example of greatness among people. He doesn't think of himself. Instead, he thinks how to help the people of his own country. He doesn't care for money. He only cares for saving people's lives. He gives heart patient the hope to live. I hope we all do our best to follow his footsteps.

2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. **تنويه**

1 Translate into Arabic :

- The Egyptian woman has always been an important partner of man. Women in Egypt are strong, wise, helpful, intelligent and ambitious.
- No one can deny the role Dr Zewail played in science. With his help to his research team, they discovered the femtosecond.
- The use of computer tablets will help students in a positive way. It will enable them to reach the sources of knowledge easily.

2 Translate into English :

- من الممكن أن تكون عظيماً ومشهوراً في أحد المجالات، كل ما عليك هو أن تثق بنفسك وتخطط جيداً للرصول لهدفك.
- لا بد من مساعدة الحكومة في تطوير العملية التعليمية في مصر، فالتعليم الجيد سيوفر لنا العلماء والمفكرين الذين سيجعلون حياتنا أفضل.
- يمكن استخدام المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية لزراعة بعض المحاصيل، مما سيوفر الكثير من الغذاء للسكان كما سيوفر الكثير من فرص العمل.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

achieve	يحقق	knowledge	المعرفة
ambitious	طموح	population	السكان
chances	الفرص	positive	إيجابي
deny	ينكر	provide	يوفر
development	تطوير	research	بحث
enable	يُمكن	sources	مصادر
fields	المجالات	thinkers	المفكرين
goal	هدف	trust	يثق بـ
job opportunities	فرص العمل	wise	حكيم

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للفائقين فقط

تنويه هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب الفائقين فقط.

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

admire

- admire (d) (v)** **يُعجب بـ** (بدون حرف جر)
 - I admire the way you teach your students.
 - لاحظ أن :
عادة لا يُستخدم الفعل (admire) بهذا المعنى في الأزمنة المستمرة:
 - We are admiring Mohammed Salah. (X)
 - We admire Mohammed Salah. (✓)
- admire for** **يُعجب بـ ... بسبب ...**
 - Students admire Mr Hossam for working hard.
- admire (d) (v)** **ينظر بإعجاب إلى / يستمتع بجمال الشيء أو جودته**
 - She was admiring herself in the mirror.

- admirer = fan (n) - Football stars have millions of admirers. الإعجاب (ب)
- admiration (for) (n) - I want to express my admiration for your wisdom. الحكمة

field

- field (n) - Farmers work in fields. حقل / مزرعة
- field (n) - Mr Yaseen works in the field of teaching. مجال / نشاط
- field (n) - The players are warming up on the field. أرض الملعب

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- on the field داخل الملعب
- off the field خارج الملعب
- take the field = go into the field يدخل الملعب

- field (n) - I think this opinion won't work in the field. الواقع العقلي

- ولاحظ المصطلحات التالية :

- field research بحث ميداني
- fieldwork عمل ميداني

blood

- blood (n) - The heart pumps blood all over the body. الدم

- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :

- blood transplant / transfusion نقل الدم
- blood donation = giving blood التبرع بالدم
- blood pressure ضغط الدم
- blood donor مُتبرع بالدم

community

- community (n) - The governor holds a meeting every month to discuss community problems. مُجتمع

- community (n) - The Egyptian community in France welcomed our team. حالية / جماعة / طائفة

- لاحظ أن :
صفة عامة يُستخدم فعل مفرد بعد كلمة (community) لكن في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع :
- The community is / are interested in the new educational system.

- ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- the local community المجتمع المحلي - a community centre مركز اجتماعي
- a community leader قائد مجتمعي - community services خدمات اجتماعية
- community care رعاية اجتماعية - a religious community طائفة دينية
- minority communities الأقليات - international community المجتمع الدولي

- ولاحظ أن :

العلاقة بين (community) و (society) هي علاقة بين الجزء والكُل، فكلمة (community) تدل على مجتمع أصغر داخل المجتمع الأكبر (society)

desire

- desire (d) (v) = want ... very much يرغب في
- He desires to live in a villa, not a flat.

- لاحظ أن :

- لا يُستخدم الفعل (desire) في الأزمنة المستمرة :
- The Egyptians are desiring peace. السلام (X)
- The Egyptians desire peace. (✓).

- desire (to + inf.) / (for + n) = strong wish or hope رغبة / أمنية شديدة
- Sama has a strong desire to succeed.
= Sama has a strong desire for success.

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a strong / great / burning desire رغبة قوية - have a desire لديه رغبة
- show a desire يُظهر رغبة - express a desire يُعبر عن رغبة
- satisfy/ fulfill a desire يُلبّي أو يُشبع رغبة

donate

- donate (d) (v) = give يتبرع به
- It is kind of you to donate blood.
- donate + شيء + to + شخص / شيء ل... .. يتبرع به ... ل...
- Salah donates a lot of money to poor people.

- **donation (n)**
- Most charities **get money from donations.**
الطرف الذي يحصل على التبرع + الخيرية الجمعيات الخيرية
- **donation to** + a children's hospital.
- Salah made a **donation to** a children's hospital.
الطرف الذي يُعَدُّ التبرع +
- **donation from** + a children's hospital.
- A children's hospital **got a donation from** Salah.
الشيء الذي يتم التبرع به +
- **donation of** + blood.
- The **donation of** blood is something very important.
التبرع من فاعل خبر (المستتر مجهول)

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :
- receive a donation **تُبرع**
 - charitable donation **تبرع خيري**
 - make / give a donation **يتبرع**
 - a generous donation **تبرع كريم / هائل**
 - anonymous donation **تبرع من فاعل غير (المستتر مجهول)**

- **donor (n)**
- Blood **donors** must be healthy people.

empathy

- **empathy (with) (n)**
- His **empathy with** poor people is clear.
القدرة على إظهار التعاطف مع - المُرَاعاة أو تقدير ظروف الآخرين واضح
- **empathetic = empathic (adj)**
- Mr Helmi is **empathetic** with my opinion.
مُتَعاطِف مع - مُرَاعِي أو مُقَدِّر لظروف الآخرين

generous

- **generous (adj)**
- People who donate money and other things are **generous.**
جَوَاد - كريم - سَخِي
- **generous + to +** شخص
- He is **generous to** the poor.
كريم مع الفقراء
- **generous + with +** الشيء (adj)
- Rodayna is **generous with** her effort.
كريم به الجهد
- **generosity (n)**
- The people of Aswan are famous for their **generosity.**
الكَرَم - الجود - السخاء
- Giving money to charities is an **act of generosity.**
تصرف بِنَم عن الكرم

hunt

- **hunt (ed) (v)**
- It is known that lions **hunt** in packs.
بصطاد (حيوانات وطيور) في قطعان
- **hunt (ed) = search (v)**
- She **hunted** for an hour but she couldn't find the lost ring.
ببحث عن - بفتش عن خاتم

- **hunt (ed) ... down (v)**
- The police **hunted** the gang **down** and arrested them.
يطارد - يفتقب - يلاحق
- **hunt (n)**
- Some people helped in the **hunt** for the missing boy.
البحث - التفتيش عن
- **hunter (n)**
- It is not allowed for **hunters** to kill lions.
صياد - قناص

intelligence

- **intelligent (n)**
- To be good at maths and physics, you need to be very **intelligent.**
ذكي
- **intelligence (n)**
- To be good at maths and physics, you need much **intelligence.**
الذكاء - الذنطة

- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- show **intelligence** يُظهِر ذكاء
- high / low **intelligence** محدد / عالي
- artificial **intelligence** الذكاء الاصطناعي (الحاسوبي)
- **intelligence (n)** المخابرات
- Our **intelligence** has found out a lot of secret plans.
الخطط السرية

livestock

- **livestock (n)**
- The **livestock** needs more care.
حيوانات المزارع - الماشية (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع) رعاية
- The **livestock** need more care.

cattle

- **cattle (n)**
- **Cattle** are kept for meat and milk.
أنعام / ماشية (تأخذ فعل جمع)

long-term

- **long-term (adj)**
- This plan is **long-term.** (X)
- This is a **long-term** plan. (✓)
بعيد المدى / على المدى البعيد (تستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- a long-term plan خطة طويلة المدى
- a long-term strategy استراتيجية طويلة المدى
- in the long term على المدى البعيد
- a long-term illness مرض مزمن

monitor

- monitor (ed) (v)
 - The situation is monitored carefully.
 - It is not legal to monitor people's phone calls.
- monitor (n)
 - Don't look at the computer monitor for a long time.
- monitor (n)
 - There are peace monitors between the two countries.

party

- party (n)
 - I invite you to my birthday party.
 - have a party
 - attend a party
- party (n)
 - I have never joined any political party.
- party (n)
 - I saw a tour guide and a party of tourists.

track

- track (ed) (v)
 - The police are tracking the terrorists.
 - The enemy planes were tracked and attacked.
- track (ed) (v)
 - Teachers must track the progress of their students.
- track (n)
 - I followed the track down the mountain.
- track (n)
 - The first runner to reach the end of the track wins the gold medal.

transplant

- transplant (n)
 - My uncle had a heart transplant surgery.
- transplant (ed) (v)
 - His kidney was transplanted in his brother.
- transplant (ed) (v)
 - I transplanted an apple tree next to the old palm tree.

support

- support (ed) (v)
 - You must support people when they need you.
 - I support your opinion.
- support (n)
 - Your support helped me a lot.

2 Prefixes بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
bio-	خاص بعلم الأحياء أو الحياة	biology	علم الأحياء
		biography	السيرة الذاتية
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disappear	يختفي - يتلاشى
inter-	بين	interview	يجري مقابلة / مقابلة شخصية
trans-	عبر	transplant	نقل أو زراعة الأعضاء

3 suffixes ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ation	تُكوّن اسم	admiration	إعجاب
-ce	تُكوّن اسم	intelligence	الذكاء
-er / -r	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	villager	قردي
-ion	تُكوّن اسم	donation	تبرع
-ist	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	biologist	عالم أحياء
		artist	فنان
		scientist	عالم
-or	تُكوّن اسم الفاعل	donor	مُتبرع
-ure	تُكوّن اسم	pressure	ضغط
-ment	تُكوّن اسم	agreement	عقد - اتفاق

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary ▶ التدرجات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:
- All Egyptians Salah for his skill and generosity. الكرم
a. inquire b. admire c. derive d. role play
 - The Egyptian in London welcomed and supported the Egyptian handball team.
a. Frequency b. stadium c. Maasai d. community
 - Which of the following is correct?
a. A society is a part of a community.
b. A community is bigger than a society.
c. A society is a part. A community is a whole.
d. A society is a whole. A community is a part.
 - We all know that water has become a must.
a. wasting b. donating c. conservation d. support
 - Although he is rich, he works hard to his desire for success.
a. satisfy b. donate c. conserve d. monitor
 - When we do not know who paid the money, we say it is a donation.
a. antonym b. synonym c. synonymous d. anonymous
 - All fans cheered متفرا when the players the field.
a. ploughed b. took c. lost d. missed
 - The livestock on this farm looked after by three workers.
a. is b. are c. is or are d. has
 - The cattle on this farm looked after by three workers.
a. is b. are c. is or are d. has
 - In the, eating too much food causes overweight.
a. long term b. field c. hometown d. desire

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الاختيار الأدق والأصح لمعنى الجملة هو (admire)
2.	d	- الاختيار الوحيد الذي يعطي معنى في هذا السياق هو (community) بمعنى (جالية)
3.	d	- الاختيار (d) هو الصحيح لأن كلمة (society) أشمل ويندرج تحتها (community)
4.	c	- كلمة (conservation) بمعنى (الحفاظ على) هي الوحيدة التي تعطي معنى منطقي للجملة
5.	a	- التعبير (satisfy his desire) يعني (يُشبع رغبته)
6.	d	- التعبير (anonymous donation) يعني (تبرع من فاعل خير)
7.	b	- التعبير (took the field) يعني (نزلوا أرض الملعب)
8.	c	- الاسم (livestock) يمكن أن يتبعه فعل مفرد أو جمع
9.	b	- الاسم (cattle) يتبعها فعل جمع وليس مفرد
10.	a	- التعبير (In the long term) يعني (على المدى الطويل)

Advanced Exercise on Language ▶ التدرجات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- He no longer as he used to do.
a. smoke b. smokes c. smoked d. doesn't smoke
 - He used to smoke but now he
a. isn't anymore b. doesn't no longer
c. doesn't any longer d. any longer doesn't
 - He was used to smoking, but now he
a. is no longer b. no longer is c. does no longer d. no longer does
 - A: Does he smoke? B: No, but he
a. is used to b. is used to doing c. used to do d. used to be
 - A: Is he used to smoking? B: No, but he
a. is used to b. is used to doing
c. used to do d. used to be

6. A: _____ ? B: Yes, but he never smokes now.
 a. Is he used to smoking
 c. Did he use to smoke
 b. Does he get used to smoking
 d. Was he used to smoke
7. I wish you _____ your time last year.
 a. wasted
 b. didn't waste
 c. had wasted
 d. hadn't wasted
8. _____ to bed before 1 a.m.
 a. Rarely do I go
 c. I go rarely
 b. Rarely I go
 d. Rarely am I go
9. He never _____ used to eating in class.
 a. is
 b. was
 c. got
 d. get
10. It's a habit of _____ to drink a big glass of water when I get up every morning.
 a. I
 b. me
 c. my
 d. mine

الإجابة والتوضيح

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	b - الجملة تدل على عادة كانت موجودة في الماضي (used to smoke) لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر، لذلك استخدمنا الفعل (smokes) لأن الفاعل (He)
2.	c - لا يمكن استخدام (isn't anymore) لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولى هو (smoke) وليس الفعل (be) - نفس الفعل الأساسي (smoke) في المضارع يكون (doesn't) وتأتي بعدها (any longer) وليس قبلها - لا يمكن استخدام (doesn't no longer) لأنها خاطئة لغوياً
3.	b - لا يمكن استخدام (does) لأن الفعل الأساسي في الجملة الأولى هو (was) وليس الفعل (smoking) - نفي الفعل الأساسي (was) في صيغة المضارع يكون (is) وتأتي قبلها (no longer) في هذه الصيغة المختصرة - لا يمكن استخدام (is no longer) لأنها خاطئة لغوياً في الصيغة المختصرة فقط
4.	c - الفعل الأساسي في السؤال هو (smoke) وليس (be) فحمل محله (do) وليس (be) - لا يمكن استخدام (a / b) لأنهما في المضارع في حين أن السياق بعد (but) يتطلب الماضي

5.	d	- الفعل الأساسي في السؤال هو (is) وليس (smoking) فحمل محله (be) وليس (do) - لا يمكن استخدام (a / b) لأنهما في المضارع في حين أن السياق بعد (but) يتطلب الماضي
6.	c	- لا بد أن يكون السؤال عن العادة في الماضي لأن الرد (Yes) يدل على أنه كان يدخن في الماضي لكنه لا يفعل الآن.
7.	d	- بعد (I wish) يُستخدم الماضي التام في حال وجود ظرف زمان ماضي (last year)
8.	a	- عندما تبدأ الجملة بظرف دال على النفي مثل (rarely) فلا بد أن يأتي الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل - الاختيار (d) خاطئ أنه لا يمكن استخدام (am) قبل (go) في المصدر
9.	c	- لا يأتي الظرف (never) في السياق العادي قبل (is / was) - الاختيار (d) خاطئ أنه لا يمكن استخدام (get) في المصدر بعد (he)
10.	d	- بعد التعبير (it is a habit of) نستخدم ضمير ملكية (mine)



Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "He donated some blood". The word "donated" is antonymous with
 a. kept b. received c. gave
 d. admired e. sold
2. I this man for his bravery and strong will.
 a. press b. admire c. donate
 d. collect e. praise

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. My sister's really She's always buying things for her friends.
 a. furious b. brave c. generous d. frustrated
4. The Egyptian in Cameroon welcomed our team in the African cup.
 a. peoples b. president c. community d. society
5. Mohamed Salah is a role to millions of young people around the world.
 a. example b. module c. model d. figure
6. To your progress, record each day's results.
 a. move b. monitor c. wish d. rationalize
7. Magdy to the library twice a week.
 a. usually goes b. goes usually c. usually go d. go usually
8. My uncle in 1970.
 a. born b. was born c. bear d. bears
9. Leen has a cousin Kenzy.
 a. called b. was called c. calling d. is called
10. My grandfather always to work when he was young.
 a. walked b. walks c. is walking d. was walking
11. Smart cards everywhere nowadays.
 a. use b. uses c. are using d. are used

12. I'll collect you as soon as my car
 a. was repaired b. had been repaired
 c. is repaired d. repaired
13. Who ?
 a. was the door opened by b. did you open the door
 c. was opened the door d. were you opened the door
14. Egyptian cotton clothes all over the world.
 a. is sold b. sells c. are sold d. has sold
15. A: Have you visited Ali? – B: Yes, I him last night.
 a. have visited b. visit c. will visit d. visited
16. He a smart BMW. He has paid too much money for it.
 a. had b. was had c. is had d. has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Who would win in a fight, a lion or a tiger? Well, if size has anything to do with the matter, the tiger would win. That's because tigers are the largest of all cat species. The tiger is the third largest land meat-eating animal. Tigers are not only large; they are also fast.

You might not think that such large, fast, and wild creatures need help to live, but they do. The tiger is an endangered species. Despite all of the tiger's strengths, the future of the species is uncertain.

Tigers face a very high risk of extinction. Interestingly, the most serious threats that tigers face come from a much smaller species. Humans threaten tigers in primarily two ways: hunting and destroying habitat. Tigers are hunted for many reasons. People have long valued the famous striped skins. Though trading tiger skins is now illegal in most parts of the world, tiger hair is worth around \$ 10,000 on the black-market. Though the fur would be a motivation for most thieves, other parts of the tiger can also bring wealth. Some people in China and other Asian cultures believe that various tiger parts have health benefits. Traditional Chinese medicine calls for the use of tiger bones, amongst other parts to treat some serious diseases. Tigers have also been hunted as game. In other words, people hunted tigers only for the excitement and

achievement of killing them. Such killing took place in large scale during the 19th and early 20th centuries, when a single maharaja or English hunter might claim to kill over a hundred tigers in their hunting career. Though this practice is much less popular today than it was in the past, it has not stopped entirely.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 17 It is strange that a lion can easily a tiger despite its size.
a. respect b. win c. beat d. gain
- 18 The underlined word "risk" means
a. danger b. safety c. peace d. war
- 19 Tiger's have health benefits.
a. legs b. teeth c. bones d. hands
- 20 According to the passage, killing tigers can be for some people.
a. excitement b. boring c. dull d. miserable
- 21 The writer isn't about the future of tigers.
a. uncertainly b. surely c. uncertain d. sure e. certain
- 22 The tiger is an endangered species means that it's about to
a. retire b. stay c. die out d. remain e. vanish
- 23 People hunt tigers for their
a. horn b. nails c. skin d. nose e. hair

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

(الطود - التدريب الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

2. Translate into English :

تعتبر مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أهم إنجازات التكنولوجيا الحديثة، لكن هذه المواقع لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.
(الطود - التدريب الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on :

The role of youth in society



تلويح • للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام اسئلة MRQ. بنك الاسئلة

UNIT 3

Improving lives

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 14 : 19

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- Reading : An extract from David Copperfield
- Writing : A paragraph on a book character, A summary of a story
- Listening : A talk about the effect of Charles Dickens' books

- Speaking : Discussing a topic
- Language : Past simple and present perfect
- Life skills : Empathy



موقع
التفوق

AltFwok.com

• بنك الأسئلة للترجمة اليومية والشهرية
• ملحق الهمزات اللغوية
• تدريبات الأهرام الشريف وفي بنك الأسئلة
• Dictation وفي ملحق بنك الأسئلة

الإنفاق
الوحدة

PART ONE LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 100 & 101

Part I Vocabulary

تلوبه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amazing(adj)	مذهل - رائع جدًا	owe(d) (v)	يدين - يكون مدين
debt(n)	دَيْن (مديونية)	plump(adj)	مكنتز - ممتلئ قليلا
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب - يجني مال	prison(n)	السجن
merchant(n)	تاجر	rat(n)	فأر
miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس	terrible(adj)	قطع - سيء جدًا
miserably(adv)	بتعاسة - بشقا		

تلوبه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

action(n)	حَدَث - فِعْل	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخْفِي/يُخْفِي - يختفي
arrange(d) (v)	يُرتب - يوفّر	high school(n)	مدرسة ثانوية
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	honest(adj)	أمين
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير - يستلف	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب
break - broke - broken (v)	ينعطل - يكسر - ينكسر	lucky(adj)	محظوظ
brilliant(adj)	رائع - لامع - ممتاز	modern(adj)	حديث
character(n)	شخصية	opportunity (n)	فرصة
childhood(n)	مرحلة الطفولة	penny(n)	بنس (١/١٠٠ من الجنيه الإسترليني)
criminal(n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	realise(d) (v)	يُدرك - يستوعب
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق - يساوي	remove (d) (v)	يزيل - يحو
die(d) (v)	يموت	review(ed) (v)	يُراجع
dirty(adj)	قذر	reward (ed) (v/n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
discover(ed) (v)	يكشف	section(n)	قسم - جزء
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفْرغ	similar(adj)	مشابه - متشابه
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرْفِه عن	skill(n)	مهارة
entertainment(n)	التسلية - الترفيه	society (n)	المجتمع
exactly(adv)	تمامًا - بالتحديد	spend - spent (v)	يقضي وقت - ينفق مال
extract(ed) (n - v)	مُقتطف/اقتباس - يقتبس/يقتطف	storyteller(n)	روائي - قُصاص

factory (n)
 floor (n)
 goods (n)
 hate (v)
 healthy

مصنع
 أرضية - دونه
 خالص (أدوية)
 كره - سفت
 صحة جيدة

support (ed) (v/n)
 theatre (n)
 tired-looking (adj)
 twins (n)

دعّم - دغم
 المسرح
 يبدو عليه التعب
 توأم

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسة من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - صام هذا

Memorise	Understand
community (n) مجتمع	people who live in a place or an area and have common interests
debt (n) دين	money you must give to someone
earn (v) يكسب/يتقاضى أجر	to receive for doing work
merchant (n) تاجر كبير	a person who buys and sells a lot of goods
miserable (adj) تعس/شقي	very sad
owe (v) يدين - يكون سميّن	money or things you have to pay back يُسَدّد/يُرَدّد
plump (adj) مكثّر - مستلّ قليلاً	slightly قليلاً fat in a nice way
prison (n) السّجن	a place to keep criminals for a period of time as punishment عقاب
rat (n) فأر - حُرّة	an animal like a big mouse

Exercise On Vocabulary Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- He's been looking for an extra job to get out of
 a. debit b. debt c. dirt d. doubt
 (إدارة الخليفة والمفطم ٢٠٢٢)
- Most football players a lot of money.
 a. win b. beat c. earn d. fill
 (الفيوم - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)

- A lot of people in Africa live due to poverty and lack of education.
 a. truly b. amazingly c. sincerely d. miserably
 (الفيوم - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
- They broke the law and were sent to for a year.
 a. prisoner b. prison c. imprisonment d. park
 (إدارة الرينة ٢٠٢٢)
- My daughter never stops eating, so she is
 a. thin b. thick c. plump d. angry
 (بورسعيد - الفرقة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
- All I am or can be, I to my great mother.
 a. owe b. admire c. dare d. fill
 (الفيوم - يوسه، كلك ٢٠٢٢)
- The journey home was Everyone was sad about losing the game.
 a. miserable b. happy c. cheerful d. enjoyable
 (كوم اسيو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
- Some say that their sales were affected by the price of the dollar.
 a. interests b. opportunities c. merchants d. merchandise
- The cruise was really We all enjoyed it.
 a. amazing b. terrible c. miserable d. b & c
- The cruise was really We all regretted joining it.
 a. amazing b. terrible c. miserable d. b & c

2 Important Vocabulary

- I read a/an from David Copperfield in Unit 3.
 a. exact b. extract c. trick d. work
 (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠٢٠)
- To be, Sama did not break the vase. I did it.
 a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
- Shouting at children their feelings.
 a. realises b. hurts c. empties d. reviews
- Children depend on their parents'
 a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
- He was for his hard work.
 a. rewarded b. hidden c. entertained d. deserved
- There is a job in this factory. You can apply for it.
 a. mistake b. view c. opportunity d. experience
- Although I helped her with the housework, I felt sorry for my mother.
 a. look-tired b. tired-look c. tired-looking d. looked-tiring

3

18. Don't let the baby crawl on this grass.
 a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
19. From the sad look on her face, I that there is something wrong.
 a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
20. Let the kids have fun and enjoy their
 a. society b. childhood c. penny d. support
21. This bad car doesn't the price you have paid for it.
 a. entertain b. hide c. reward d. deserve
22. In Egypt, students have to finish school before joining university.
 a. high b. low c. prep d. primary
23. The sold in this shop are all made in Egypt.
 a. work b. works c. goods d. good
24. Salah is a/an footballer. He is a world-famous star.
 a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal
25. The child the bottle of water on the floor.
 a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
26. Try to be a good member of your
 a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
27. The thief ran away and in the fields.
 a. entertained b. hid c. rewarded d. deserved
28. Sama and Abdulrahman are but they are completely different.
 a. unlike b. difference c. twin d. twins
29. There are nice shows to the children.
 a. entertain b. hide c. realise d. deserve
30. For, you can go to the cinema or the theatre.
 a. society b. childhood c. entertainment d. support
31. He the trains timetable before buying a ticket.
 a. realised b. reviewed c. emptied d. hurt
32. He was arrested because of his behaviour.
 a. honest b. brilliant c. dirty d. criminal

3 Definitions

33. A is money you must give to someone.
 a. donation b. prize c. reward d. debt
34. To means to receive money for doing work.
 a. earn b. win c. make d. get
35. A is a person who buys and sells a lot of goods.
 a. worker b. writer c. merchant d. volunteer

36. To money or things means you have to pay them back.
 a. own b. owe c. lend d. donate
37. means very sad or unhappy.
 a. Misery b. Miserable c. Cheer d. Cheerful
38. A woman or a child who is is slightly fat in a nice way.
 a. plump b. fat c. obese d. overweight
39. is a place to keep criminals for a period of time as punishment.
 a. Imprison b. Prisoner c. Imprisonment d. Prison
40. A is an animal like a big mouse.
 a. goat b. rabbit c. cat d. rat

Part II Vocabulary Study

توبه ساعد فعلك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	ill	يَمرض	no parents	ليس له
break	the law/rules	يخالف القانون	debts	عليه ديون
change	your opinion	تُغير رأيك	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في
do	the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي	bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة
	exciting things	يقوم بأشياء مثيرة	time	لديه الوقت
earn	money	يكسب مال	no opportunity	ليس لديه فرصة
get	a better job	يحصل على وظيفة أفضل	a role	له دور يقوم به
owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ	take	يُسجن - يحبس
pass	exams	ينجح في الامتحانات	to prison	

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
earn money	يكسب - يجني مال
honest	أمين
miserable	تعميس - بانس
terrible	فظيح - سيء جداً
	make money
	sincere, trustful
	sad, depressed, unhappy
	awful, horrifying, horrible

UNIT 3

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعكس
earn money	كسب - يجني مال	lose, waste money	يفسر / يهدد المال
miserable	تعبس - بائس	happy, contented	سعيد - راضى
plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin, slender, skinny	نجيف
empty	فارغ	full	ممتلئ
borrow	يستعير - يتلف	lend	يقترض - يُسلف
honest	أمن	dishonest, deceitful	مخادع - خائن
terrible	فزع - سيء جداً	nice, delightful, lovely, pleasant	لطيف - جميل - سار

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

earn	
earn (v)	يكسب - You can earn more money by working hard.
earning (n)	الربح - There's no problem in earning more money by working hard.
earnings (n)	دخل / مكسبات - Be wise. Don't waste your earnings .
earner (n)	كاسب / عائل - This woman is the only earner for her children.
miser	
miser (n)	بخيل / تعبس - He is a miser .
misery (n)	التعاسة / البؤس - Poor people live in misery .
miserable (adj)	تعبس - بائس - Poor people have miserable lives.
miserably (adv)	- Our team failed miserably in their attempts to score a goal. بتعاسة - بشقا.
prison	
imprison (v)	يحبس - He has been imprisoned because he is a criminal.
prison (n)	السجن - He has been sent to prison because he is a criminal.
prisoner (n)	سجين - He is a prisoner because he is a criminal.
imprisonment (n)	- He has been sentenced imprisonment because he is a criminal. السجن / الحبس
imprisoned (adj)	محروس - He is now imprisoned because he is a criminal.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره 4 سنوات	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at this age	في هذا السن	not ... any more	لن ... مرة أخرى
difference in	فرق في	similar to	مشابه لـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	stay abroad	بقي خارج البلاد
it was not unusual	كان من المألوف	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون السيء
make ... better	يجعل ... أفضل	what kind of person	أى نوع من الأشخاص
make ... worse for	يجعل ... أسوأ لـ		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	learn from	يتعلم من
entertain ... with	يُسلِّي ... عن طريق	look after	يرعى / يعتنى بـ
find out	يكشف	owe ... to	يدين بـ ... لـ
help ... with	يساعد ... في	pay back	يزد الدين - يُسدِّد
know ... for	يعرف ... بـ	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

earn money / get money / make money	
• earn money	يكسب مال مقابل عمل
- This doctor earns twenty thousand pounds a day.	
• get money	يحصل على مبلغ معين من المال في مدة معينة
- I get 4000 pounds a month.	
• make money	يكسب (كثير من) المال بطريقة غير تقليدية
- Footballers make a lot of money.	
own / owe / borrow / lend	
• own(ed)	يملك
- He owns a farm in the countryside.	
• owe(d)	يدين بـ
- I owe Ahmed a thousand pounds.	
• borrow(ed)	يقترض / يستلف / يستعير
- I borrowed a thousand pounds from Ahmed.	
• lend - lent - lent	يقترض / يُسلف
- Ahmed lent me a thousand pounds.	

plump / fat / overweight / obese

كف تقول أن شخصاً ما سمين / زائد الوزن

مكتنز - ممتلئ بشكل جذاب (بالنسبة للنساء والأطفال)

• plump

- She is a **plump** cheerful little girl.

• fat

- A **fat** person finds it difficult to do a sport.

• overweight

- She wants to follow a diet because she is **overweight**.

• obese

- He was an **obese** teenager.

لديه وزن زائد (أكثر من الوزن المثالي)

سمين جداً (بشكل خطير على الصحة)

prison - jail - cell

• prison

- Thieves are sent to **prison**.

سجن (كبير)

• jail

- He was taken to **jail**.

سجن (مكان للحجز المؤقت)

• cell

- The dangerous criminal was kept alone in a **cell**.

زناينة (حجرة داخل السجن)

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- I did before watching TV.
 - a. a decision
 - b. a mistake
 - c. my homework
 - d. exciting things
 - e. some debts
- I have to play.
 - a. a role
 - b. no opportunity
 - c. a problem
 - d. debts
 - e. no parents
- My baby sister never stops eating! That's why she looks!
 - a. slight
 - b. slim
 - c. plump
 - d. thin
 - e. fat

4. She looked miserable." 'Miserable' here is antonymous with

(قرب طلبنا ٢٠٢٢)

- a. depressed
 - b. happy
 - c. contented
 - d. poor
 - e. helpless
5. A girl can't look after herself.
- a. in four
 - b. of four
 - c. from four
 - d. four
 - e. who is four

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was sent to prison as he a lot of money to the bank.

(التفويض - ايشواي ٢٠٢٢)

- a. won
- b. gained
- c. owed
- d. earned

2. The judge assured that the director had the law and sent him to prison.

(الضابطة التتابعية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

- a. supported
- b. kept
- c. broken
- d. issued

3. I was over the moon after the last exam I had

- a. passed
- b. solved
- c. made
- d. earned

4. It is not a bad thing if you your opinion if it is wrong.

- a. change
- b. do
- c. break
- d. make

5. You can't say she is fat. She is no more. (الديزة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)

- a. clumsy
- b. obese
- c. plump
- d. crescent

6. Earn and lose are

- a. antonyms
- b. synonyms
- c. adverbs
- d. nouns

7. My job here is customers.

- a. help
- b. to help
- c. to helping
- d. being helped

8. If something wrong with the machine, call me.

- a. has
- b. does
- c. makes
- d. goes

9. I study hard pass the next exam.

- a. so
- b. because
- c. in order to
- d. for

10. Can you take your toys please, Sama ?
The room is in a mess فوضى.
- a. after b. up c. off d. away
11. I owe some money a friend of mine.
أدين لـ
- a. with b. from c. to d. at
12. I will help you this difficult maths lesson.
أساعدك في
- a. by b. to c. for d. with
13. My father's are what we live on.
أرباح
- a. earns b. earner c. earning d. earnings
14. are people who are not generous.
الذين هم أشخاص لا يسهلون
- a. Misers b. Miserly c. Miserable d. Misery
15. Those who break the law must be
الذين يخالفون القانون يجب أن
- a. prison b. prisoner c. imprisoned d. imprisonment
16. Those who break the law are kept as
الذين يخالفون القانون يُحتجزون
- a. prison b. prisoners c. imprisoned d. imprisonment
17. I this flat. It's mine.
أملك
- a. owe b. own c. borrow d. lend
18. She her success to her parents.
أدين بـ
- a. owes b. owns c. borrows d. lends
19. Will you me the money I need?
تقرضني
- a. owe b. own c. borrow d. lend
20. much money will leave you heavily in debt.
أدين
- a. Owing b. Owning c. Borrowing d. Lending
21. The High dam was built the age of President Nasser.
في
- a. of b. for c. at d. in
22. In prison, that criminal was kept in a small on his own.
الذي كان محتجزاً في زنزانة صغيرة
- a. jail b. cell c. prison d. a & c

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

1. David Copperfield

(SB page 27)

"This is Mr Quinion, David," Mr Murdstone said. "You're going to work for⁽¹⁾ him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants⁽²⁾, in London. You'll earn⁽³⁾ enough money to pay⁽⁴⁾ for your food, and I've arranged⁽⁵⁾ a place for you to live."

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work⁽⁶⁾. I went to a dirty⁽⁷⁾ old house near⁽⁸⁾ the river where rats⁽⁹⁾ lived under the floors.⁽¹⁰⁾ There my job was to wash empty⁽¹¹⁾ bottles with three other boys, and I hated⁽¹²⁾ it.

One morning, a plump⁽¹³⁾ man came to see me with Mr Quinion. "Ah, Master⁽¹⁴⁾ Copperfield!" the man said. "This is Mr Micawber," Mr Quinion told me. "You will be living at his house."

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin⁽¹⁵⁾, tired-looking⁽¹⁶⁾ lady⁽¹⁷⁾ – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins⁽¹⁸⁾, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

I soon discovered⁽¹⁹⁾ that the Micawbers were poor⁽²⁰⁾ and that Mr Micawber owed⁽²¹⁾ money to several⁽²²⁾ people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison⁽²³⁾ because of his debts⁽²⁴⁾. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

"If a man earns twenty pounds⁽²⁵⁾ a year and spends⁽²⁶⁾ nineteen pounds, he'll be happy," he said. "But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny⁽²⁷⁾, he'll be miserable."

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يعمل لدي
- (2) خُبار
- (3) تنقاضي
- (4) تدفع
- (5) بررتب / يوفّر
- (6) عمل شاق
- (7) قذر
- (8) بالقرب من
- (9) فئران
- (10) أرضيات
- (11) فارغ
- (12) يكره
- (13) ممتلئ / مكتمل
- (14) سيد
- (15) نحيف
- (16) يبدو عليها التعب
- (17) سيدة
- (18) توأم
- (19) يكتشف
- (20) فقير
- (21) يدين بـ
- (22) العديد من
- (23) السجن
- (24) ديون
- (25) جنيهات
- (26) يُنفق
- (27) بنس ٠.٠١ من الجنيه

UNIT 3

2. Learning new skills

The book character⁽¹⁾ David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual⁽²⁾ for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories⁽³⁾ liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as⁽⁴⁾ they paid adults⁽⁵⁾. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example⁽⁶⁾, they were small⁽⁷⁾ so they could go under machines⁽⁸⁾ when they broke down⁽⁹⁾. The children were often miserable⁽¹⁰⁾. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity⁽¹¹⁾ to improve⁽¹²⁾ their lives. However, some children learned⁽¹³⁾ a skill⁽¹⁴⁾ when they worked. They were the lucky⁽¹⁵⁾ ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs⁽¹⁶⁾ when they were older.

(WB page 100)



Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصية
- (2) غير مألوف
- (3) مصانع
- (4) بالنسبة للقدم - كثيراً مثل
- (5) الكبار
- (6) على سبيل المثال
- (7) صغير الحجم
- (8) الآت
- (9) يتعطل
- (10) تعيس / باليس
- (11) فرصة
- (12) يُحسِّن
- (13) يتعلم
- (14) مهارة
- (15) محظوظ
- (16) يحصلون على وظائف أفضل

2 Listening Texts

A. Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant⁽¹⁾ books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller⁽²⁾. But, Dickens didn't only want to entertain⁽³⁾ people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions⁽⁴⁾ about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place⁽⁵⁾.



(SB page 29)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) رائع / متائق
- (2) سارد القصة
- (3) يسلى
- (4) يغير آرائهم
- (5) يجعل من العالم مكان أفضل

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood⁽⁶⁾. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support⁽⁷⁾ his family instead. The Poor Law⁽⁸⁾ of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

- (6) طفولة
- (7) يساند
- (8) القانون
- (9) يكافئ
- (10) يستحق

When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded⁽⁹⁾. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved⁽¹⁰⁾ to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

3 Video script

People have always told stories. Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عاطفي
- (2) ارتباط

They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories.

If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an emotional⁽¹⁾ connection⁽²⁾ to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or the people like them.

They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. Why did people often tell stories in the past ?
2. How did they tell the stories in the past ?
3. Why do stories often have a message ?

Part IV Language



تعلم وتعلم

ثم شرح الماضي البسيط في الوحدة الأولى.

تأنيبه

The present perfect simple

1 The present perfect simple tense: زمن المضارع التام البسيط

Subject فاعل + have / has + P.P.

تستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) وتستخدم (have) مع الفاعل الجمع (We / They / You) والضمير (I)

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. - Ahmed has played tennis for an hour.

في الجملة الخبرية المنفية:

Subject فاعل + hasn't / haven't + P.P.+

ex. - They haven't watched the match yet.
- Rodayna hasn't done her homework yet.

السؤال بـ «هل»:

Have / Has + Subject فاعل + P.P. ?

ex. - Have you tidied your room?
Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- Has Rodayna done her homework?
No, she hasn't (done her homework yet).

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام:

Question word أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + P.P. ?

- Where have you played the match?
- How long have you stayed here?

Object في صيغة المبني للمجهول: have / has + been + P.P.

ex. - I have tidied my bedroom. (active)
My bedroom has been tidied (by me). (passive)
- Ahmed has played tennis for an hour. (active)
Tennis has been played for an hour (by Ahmed). (passive)

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It is Sama who my pen.
a. take b. taking c. has taken d. have taken
- The children the window. The pieces of glass are everywhere.
a. broke b. were breaking c. has broken d. have broken
- your teeth, Omar?
a. You have brushed b. Have you brushed
c. Are you brushed d. Were you brushed
- They doing the census الإحصاء السكاني. They're still doing it.
a. have finished b. haven't finished
c. had finished d. hadn't finished
- He carefully.
a. examines b. was examining
c. has examined d. has been examined
- Where before you have come here?
a. do you live b. you were living
c. have you lived d. have you been lived

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام البسيط في الحالات التالية:

- التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت في الماضي و لم تنتهي بعد):
ex. - I have studied English since 2013. I'm in secondary one.
- التعبير عن مواقف مرت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ولكن يكون المقصود ضمناً حتى هذه اللحظة/الآن:
ex. - I have visited the Pyramids three times.
- Scientists have discovered medicines for a lot of diseases.
- التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي و لها اثر على الحاضر:
ex. - I've lost my mobile, so I can't phone my parents.

UNIT 3

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

Ⓛ لاحظ الفرق بين:

1. **have / has been to** + مكان ذهب إلى مكان و عاد
- She **has been to** the market. Now she **is in the kitchen** putting the vegetables in the fridge.
2. **have / has gone (to)** + مكان ذهب إلى مكان ولم يرجع بعد
- Bassem **has gone to** the club. He **will come back** after the match.
3. **have been in** + مكان + **for / since** متواجد في (لا يزال هناك)
- I **have been in** London for three years. (This means I am in London now.)

- Ⓛ لا يتم ذكر توقيت وقوع الحدث في المضارع التام ، وعند ذكر التوقيت نستخدم الماضي البسيط:
- Ahmed **has drunk** two coffees.
 - Ahmed **drank** two coffees **yesterday**.

- Ⓛ عند التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية مستتة حتى الآن مثل:
- this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year ... etc.**
- I **have sent** three emails **today**.

- Ⓛ يُستخدم المضارع التام مع (**ever / never / since**) للتعبير عن الخبرات والتجارب السابقة:
- I **have never gone** camping. (لم يسبق أن عشت هذه التجربة.)
 - Sama is the most intelligent girl I **have ever seen**. (الأول مرة أرى طالبة بهذا الذكاء.)
 - I **have worked** here **since** 2002. (لقد عملت هنا منذ ٢٠٠٢.)

Mini Test 2

Ⓛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I English since I was in Primary one. I still study it.
a. studied b. had studied c. have studied d. was studying
2. She the High Dam three times. She'll visit it again next week.
a. has visited b. had visited c. was visiting d. has been visited
3. Hussein his leg. He can't walk without a stick.
a. was breaking b. had broken c. has been broken d. has broken
4. Rodayna to the club. I'll join her there.
a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been

5. Your mother to the market. Take the shopping bag to the kitchen.
a. was gone b. has gone c. has been d. had been
6. Mrs Noha this school two years ago.
a. has left b. has been left c. had left d. left
7. Today, I three emails so far. I'm waiting for two more.
a. have received b. was received c. had received d. was receiving

2 Time adverbs :

ظروف الزمان :

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان مع المضارع التام البسيط كالتالي:

Ⓛ ظروف الزمان تأتي بعد الفعل المساعد وقبل التصريف الثالث

من قبل **ever** - أبداً **never** - بالفعل **already** - توأ **just**

- ex. - My uncle **has just** arrived at the airport.
- I **have never** seen a real fox.
- This is the tallest tree I **have ever** seen.
- Have you **ever** travelled abroad?
- I **have already** passed the driving test.
= I **have passed** the driving test **already**.

Ⓛ للظ ما يلي :

has / have + never + p.p.

= **hasn't / haven't + ever + p.p.**

- ex. - Nada **has never been** to Paris.
- Nada **hasn't ever been** to Paris.

Ⓛ ظروف زمنية تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وأحياناً قبل التصريف الثالث :

حديثاً / مؤخراً **lately = recently** - حتى الآن **up till now** - حتى الآن **so far**
in the last - على مر السنين **over the years** - لمدة **for** - منذ **since**
 - على مر السنين **throughout the years** - في الشهور الأخيرة **months**
 هذا الأسبوع **this week**

- ex. - I **have written** two essays **so far**.
- **So far**, I **have written** two essays.

١ تُستخدم (yet) في نهاية الجملة المنفية والاستهائية وذلك على أنه من المتوقع حدوث الفعل.

- ex. - Have you watered the trees yet?
 - Marwa hasn't seen the new manager yet.

٢ يأتي بعد (since) تعبير زمني يدل على وقت بداية الحدث مثل:

five o'clock / the morning / Monday / 26th September /
 منذ ذلك الحين March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then
 / arrival / وصول / departure / رحيل / birth / ميلاد / death / موت /

- ex. - He's been here since April.
 - She has lived in Aswan since her birth.

٣ في حالة وجود جملتين مع (since) تكون الجملة بعد (since) ماضى بسيط والجملة الأخرى مضارع تام:

- ex. - I have lived in this flat since I got married.
 = Since I got married, I have lived in this flat.

في حالة وجود جملة واحدة تكون مضارع تام

- ex. - I haven't seen him since 2015.
 - Since then, we haven't met.

٤ يأتي بعد (for) تعبير زمني يدل على المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث:

a moment / a while / فترة / two seconds / three minutes / half an hour / four hours / five days / six months / two seasons / ten years / a decade / عند / two centuries / قرنين / ages / مدة طويلة / a long time / على قدر ما أتذكر / the last / as long as I can remember

- ex. - I've had this mobile for more than 10 years.
 - He's been here for 6 months.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Marwa to Aswan before.
 - never has been
 - has been never
 - has never been
 - was never going
- Hossam to Hurghada. He plans to make his first visit next January.
 - hasn't never been
 - hasn't ever been
 - has ever been
 - has been never
- My parents home yet.
 - don't return
 - weren't returning
 - have returned
 - haven't returned

4. Wonderful! Have you completed the report ? So, you can give it to the manager.

- a. already b. yet c. ago d. yesterday

5. I haven't travelled outside Egypt my birth.

- a. for b. since c. before d. last

6. I have felt great pain in my stomach since I a piece of biscuits.

- a. eat b. has eaten c. ate d. had eaten

7. I haven't seen my sister ages.

- a. for b. since c. before d. after

3 Notes for more understanding :

١ للخط استخدم (ago) بدلا من (just) والعكس :

فاعل + have / has + just + P.P. =

ماضى بسيط + just now a moment ago a short time ago

- ex. - He has just left the office. = He left the office a moment ago.
 - Nada has just gone out. = Nada went out just now / a moment ago.

٢ للخط استخدم (never) في بداية الجملة :

فاعل + have / has + never + P.P. = Never + have / has + فاعل + P.P.

- ex. - I have never played squash. = Never have I played squash.

٣ للخط استخدم (ever / never) :

= This is the first time + subj + have / has + (ever) + P.P.

= This is the first time + for + subj / ضمير مفعول + to + inf.

- ex. - This is the first time I have ever seen such a tall girl.
 = This is the first time for me to see such a tall girl.

جملة تفصيل + subject + have / has + (ever) + P.P.

Subject + have / has + never + P.P. + such (a/an) + adj. صفة

+ n. اسم

- ex. - She is the tallest girl I have ever seen.
 - I have never seen such a tall girl.

ⓐ لاحظ استخدام (yet) بدلا من (still) والعكس:

Subject + am / is / are + still + (inf. + ing)
 Subject + haven't / hasn't + finished / stopped + (inf. + ing) yet.
 ex. - He is still doing homework. = He hasn't finished doing homework yet.
 - It is still raining. = It hasn't stopped raining yet.

ⓑ لاحظ الاختلاف بين (for) و (since) عند الاستخدام مع عدم تغيير المعنى:
 أ. عند التحويل من (for) إلى (since) اطرح العدة من الوقت الحاضر:

ex. - He has lived in Aswan for 19 years.
 = He has lived in Aswan since 2003.
 ب. عندما لا يمكن حساب العدة تستخدم الصيغة التالية:

جمله ماضى بسيط + past simple + since + مدة زمنية + It is
 ex. - She has stayed with her aunt for a long time.
 = It is a long time since she stayed with her aunt.
 ج. عند التحويل من (since) إلى (for) احسب العدة منذ بداية الحدث وحتى الوقت الحاضر:
 ex. - He has waited here since seven o'clock. It is nine now.
 = He has waited here for two hours.
 د. لاحظ التحويل من (since) إلى (for) في الصيغة التالية:

جمله ماضى بسيط عشيت + since + مدة زمنية + It is
 = Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P + for + مدة زمنية
 ex. - It is five years since I (last) saw Ali.
 = I haven't seen Ali for five years.
 هـ. لاحظ استخدام (ago) بدلا من (for / since) والعكس:
 Subject + have / has + P.P + since / for
 Subject + started / began + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) + ago + مدة زمنية
 ex. - The boys have played football for two hours.
 = The boys started playing (to play) football two hours ago.
 - He has worked in this hospital since 2010.
 = He began working (to work) in this hospital twelve years ago.

و. لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P + since + past simple
 = جملة ماضى بسيط
 = Subject + last + S.C. + in / on / at + تصريف ماضى
 = The last time + Subject + S.C. + was + in / on / at + تصريف ماضى
 ex. - She hasn't gone shopping since Monday.
 = She last went shopping on Monday.
 = The last time she went shopping was on Monday.

4 Present Perfect Simple Vs. Past Simple :

الفرق في الاستخدام بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

المضارع التام Present Perfect	الماضى البسيط Past Simple
١. حدث تم في وقت غير معروف في الماضي: - Someone has broken the window.	١. حدث تم في وقت محدد في الماضي: - Someone broke the window yesterday.
٢. حدث تم في وقت لم ينتهي بعد: - I have received three emails today.	٢. حدث تم في وقت انتهى: - I received three emails last Monday .
٣. حدث تم في الماضي وله أثر على الحاضر: - I have learnt to drive. Now, I can drive my father's car.	٣. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي: - I learnt to drive. Mr Khalid was my driving teacher.
٤. حدث قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Salah has scored more than 100 goals in the Premier League. (صلاح لا يزال حياً ويمارس كرة القدم وقد يحرز المزيد من الأهداف)	٤. حدث غير قابل للتكرار أو التعديل: - Naguib Mahfouz wrote a lot of successful novels. (نجيب محفوظ توفي ولا يمكنه أن يكتب المزيد)
٥. حدث أو حالة لازلت موجودة: - I have lived in Aswan since 2002. (وما يزال أعيش هنا)	٥. حدث أو حالة لم تعد موجودة: - I lived in Aswan in 2002. (لم أعد أعيش هناك)

Mini Test 4

ⓐ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father is angry because I the door open.
 a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left

2. My father is angry. I the door open last night.
 a. leaves b. left c. have left d. was left
3. He three coffees so far today.
 a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
4. He three coffees yesterday.
 a. drank b. drinks c. had drunk d. has drunk
5. I to swim. Now, I swim as well as a swimming champion.
 a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
6. I to swim. That was during the summer holiday.
 a. learn b. learnt c. have learnt d. was learnt
7. I a running champion as a child. Now, I can hardly walk.
 a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been
8. I a running champion. I will represent Egypt in the following Olympics.
 a. was b. had been c. am being d. have been

General Exercise **On Language** **Apply**

• التدرجات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. I haven't met him he moved to a new house. (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. for b. yet c. ago d. since
 2. Merna has been on holiday the last two weeks. (بورسعيد - الفرقة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. just b. since c. yet d. for
 3. I have lived in Alexandria 2005. (فتح الله كبر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. in b. for c. since d. ago
 4. They have seen such a wonderful show. (إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. ever b. never c. since d. yet
 5. Aya her homework recently. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. didn't finish b. have finished c. has finished d. will finish

6. I haven't seen my cousin the last time we met in Cairo. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. when b. ago c. for d. since
7. The little boy is crying because he his leg. (المنوف - المشيخية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. is broken b. had broken c. was breaking d. has broken
8. We haven't seen her since she to Paris. (بورسعيد - الفرقة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. went b. goes c. has gone d. had gone
9. During the last ten years, giant projects out all over Egypt. (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. were being carried b. are carried
 c. carried d. have been carried
10. Salim two coffees so far. (ادفة الشيفة والمطعم ٢٠٢٢)
 a. drank b. has drunk c. drinks d. was drinking
11. Have you ever to London? - Yes, I went there last year. (بنج حمادي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. went b. been c. gone d. arrived
12. Have you sent all the invitations ? You have done a great job! (ادفو - الرئيسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. yet b. already c. just d. ever
13. He couldn't answer the phone he was sleeping. (غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. so b. though c. before d. since
14. At the age of five, I to swim. (ادفو الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. learned b. learn c. have learnt d. was learnt
15. Sara hasn't visited Aswan 2 years ago. (إدارة أسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. so far b. since c. for d. over the ages
16. I was very tired, I didn't finish studying. (الفاخرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. During b. While c. Since d. Because of

توبيه ذكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدرجات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق



Part I Vocabulary

تلويح • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام بالترتيب المطلوب في الامتحان.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد	plan(ned) (n/v)	خطة - يخطط
community(n)	مُجتمع - جماعة	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
culture(n)	الثقافة	youth (n)	الشباب
food bank	بنك الطعام	youth association	جمعية شبابية

تلويح • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

admit (ted) (v)	يُقر - يعترف	later (adv)	فيما بعد
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	nowhere (adv)	لا مكان
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر	opportunity(n)	فرصة
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضر	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
common (adj)	عام - مُشترك - شائع	solution(n)	حل
crescent (n)	هلال	solve (d) (v)	يحل
disabled (adj)	مُعاق	stepfather (n)	زوج الأم
dreamer (n)	حالم	steps (n)	خطوات
ending (v)	نهاية - خاتمة	structure(n)	تركيب - بناء
experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة	surprise(d) (n - v)	مفاجأة / دهشة - يفاجئ
experiences (n)	خبرات/ تجارب حياتية	tip (n)	نصيحة
grow - grew - grown (v)	يكبر - يتوسع	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
improve(d) (v)	يحسّن - يتحسن	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ
include (d) (v)	يشمل/ يتضمن - يُضمّن		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تلويح • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج الأعمالم المستخدمة - هام جداً

Memorise	Understand
culture	ثقافة
food bank	بنك الطعام
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
youth association	جمعية شبابية
	the beliefs and traditions of a group of people
	a place where people collect food to give to others
	a job that people do for no money
	a group of young people who do things together

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- work is what people do for no money. (راجع دماغك ٢٢-٢٣)
 - Culture
 - Hard
 - Voluntary
 - Bank
- is the age of activity and livelihood.
 - Old age
 - Youth
 - Babyhood
 - Womanhood
- The teachers' play a great role in society.
 - city
 - town
 - community
 - village
- People in Upper Egypt مصر صعيد مصر have a different from that of Lower Egypt. الوجه البحري.
 - culture
 - cultural
 - cultured
 - culturally
- A youth is a group of young people who do things together.
 - hostel
 - hotel
 - camp
 - association
- The Egyptian plays an important role in feeding poor families.
 - Restaurant
 - Kitchen
 - Food Bank
 - Shop
- We've to spend the weekend in the countryside.
 - indebted
 - planned
 - earned
 - owed

2 Important Vocabulary

- Your shoes will be repaired and ready for you to in five minutes. (الغنى - ديوموس ٢٠-٢١)
 - collect
 - walk
 - buy
 - mend

9. A: Can you tell me about the of the essay?
 B: Introduction, body and conclusion.
10. The thief stealing my car and selling it for only ten thousand pounds.
11. He succeeded in back all his debts.
12. I don't like films that have a sad
13. Volunteers help the needy المحتاجين their problems.
14. My teacher gave me some useful on how to improve my English.
15. It was not funny playing a on the poor old man. It was impolite.
16. I was born and up in a small village.
17. Modern technology has our lives.
18. Follow these and you will learn how to do the experiment.
19. Child labour عمالة الأطفال is a/an against childhood.
20. Ayman and I have some interests in We both like reading and fishing.
21. are fully grown-people. (الشمولية - طلبة ٢٠٢٠)
22. people need more interest and care.
23. I asked you to do this difficult job because I you.
24. The Egyptian Red helps people in difficult situations.

3 Definitions

25. is the beliefs and traditions of a group of people.
 a. Religion b. Culture c. Law d. Habits
26. A is a place where people collect food to give to others.
 a. restaurant b. kitchen c. food bank d. shop
27. work means a job that people do for no money.
 a. Voluntary b. Team c. Group d. Paid

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعلك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد ودل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a job يقوم بعمل	make	a difference يُحدث فرقاً / يصنع الفارق
	voluntary work يقوم بعمل تطوعي		money يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة
	something to help يفعل شيء للمساعدة		brief notes يُنَوِّن ملاحظات قصيرة
follow	the steps يتبع الخطوات		a suggestion يقدم اقتراح
get	the main idea يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية	play	a trick on يخدع
write	a summary يكتب تلخيصاً		a role يلعب دوراً
have	a happy ending ذو نهاية سعيدة	solve	a problem يحل مشكلة
	a suggestion لديه اقتراح	go	travelling يذهب في رحلة
	common interests لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة		wrong يتعطل
	nowhere to live ليس لديه مكان يعيش فيه		

UNIT 3

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
admit	يعترف / يعترف
adult	شخص بالغ - راشد
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع
miserable	تعيس - بائس
voluntary	عمل تطوعي

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
admit	يعترف / يعترف	deny, conceal, renounce	ينكر
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	unusual, rare	غير مألوف / نادر
trust	ثقة - يثق به	doubt, disbelieve	يشك / لا يصدق
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory, obligatory, paid	إجباري / مدفوع

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

association	
associate (d) (v)	- Students and teachers associate El-Moasser with high quality. مُصاحب - يتقرن
association (n)	- I joined a youth association last summer. جمعية / اتحاد
association (n)	- There is a clear association between El-Moasser and high quality. تلازم - ارتباط
associated (adj)	- El-Moasser is associated with high quality. مُصاحب - متلازم
culture	
culture (n)	- It is important to respect other peoples' cultures. الثقافة
culture (n)	- Culture is the main producer of food. الزراعة
cultural (adj)	- It is important to respect cultural differences. ثقافي
cultured (adj)	- Mr Ali is a cultured man. مُتَقَن
culturally (adv)	- The Egyptian history is culturally important. ثقافياً

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an idea for	فكرة لـ	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
at the end of	في نهاية	It's a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن
for no money	مجاناً	It's important to	من المهم أن
free/spare time	وقت فراغ	key information	المعلومات الرئيسية
health problem	مشكلة صحية	why don't you	لم لا
how about	ما رأيك في	young people	الشباب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

give ... back to	يُرد ... لـ	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
grow up	يكبر - يتعرع	talk about	يتحدث عن
happen to	يحدث لـ	think of	يفكر في
put ... into	يضع ... بداخل	work for	يعمل لدى
return to	يعود إلى	work in	يعمل في
run away	يهرب	work with	يعمل مع / في
send ... away	يطرده	write down	يُسجّل - يُنوّن

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

at the age of / in the age of

- at the age of** في سن / في عمر
 - I could swim at the age of nine.
- in the age of** في عصر
 - In the age of Mohammed Ali, Egypt was a very large empire. إمبراطورية.

work - job

- work** عمل / مكان العمل (كلمة لا تُعد)
 - He did much work in the office yesterday.
 - I go to work in my car.
- a work - works** عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسي (كلمة تُعد)
 - El-Karnak is a work by Naguib Mahfouz.
- a job - jobs** وظيفة - مهمة (كلمة تُعد)
 - My first job was as a teacher. (Not: My first work)
 - I have finished all today's jobs.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- He did during holiday.
 - a. voluntary work
 - b. his opinion
 - c. a happy ending
 - d. exciting things
 - e. a suggestion
- She made during the lecture. المحاضرة
 - a. a job
 - b. a suggestion
 - c. a role
 - d. the law
 - e. brief notes
- If you work harder, you will more money.
 - a. earn
 - b. do
 - c. make
 - d. go
 - e. owe
- You can say that somebody played a
 - a. suggestion
 - b. trick
 - c. law
 - d. rule
 - e. role
- We listened carefully to Rodayna who a good suggestion.
 - a. did
 - b. had
 - c. became
 - d. made
 - e. played
- When something is common, this means it is
 - a. usual
 - b. unusual
 - c. uncommon
 - d. rare
 - e. widespread
- "He admitted making a mistake." Which of the following give opposite meanings to the verb 'admit' in this sentence?
 - a. Denied
 - b. Confessed
 - c. Concealed
 - d. Agreed
 - e. Told
- You can do your hobbies at your time.
 - a. busy
 - b. spare
 - c. congested
 - d. crowded
 - e. free
- Homeless children to live.
 - a. don't have anywhere
 - b. have everywhere
 - c. have somewhere
 - d. have nowhere
 - e. have a flat
- The traffic law didn't solve the problem.
 - a. good
 - b. bad
 - c. poor
 - d. rich
 - e. wealthy
- I asked him to back the money I had lent to him.
 - a. own
 - b. owe
 - c. give
 - d. take
 - e. pay
- In a charity, the poor are helped for
 - a. free
 - b. much money
 - c. some money
 - d. no money
 - e. good

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Generous people are always ready to voluntary work.
 - a. do
 - b. make
 - c. give
 - d. take(العيوم - ايشواي ٢٠٢٢)
- Our relation began to wrong when we met a bad situation.
 - a. do
 - b. go
 - c. make
 - d. take(الطهيد سيد ركرا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
- It is not always easy to new friends nowadays.
 - a. do
 - b. take
 - c. make
 - d. give(ابوسعيد - العرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
- My sister and I common interests.
 - a. play
 - b. solve
 - c. make
 - d. have
- My wife's a big difference in my life.
 - a. played
 - b. solved
 - c. made
 - d. had
- Everything will be OK if you the steps.
 - a. owe
 - b. do
 - c. break
 - d. follow
- This problem must be as soon as possible.
 - a. lied
 - b. solved
 - c. made
 - d. had
- "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word 'admit' in this sentence can be replaced by
 - a. deny
 - b. conceal
 - c. confess
 - d. a & b
- Voluntary is to as miserable is to happy.
 - a. paid
 - b. unpaid
 - c. expensive
 - d. selfish
- He looks his old parents who really need help.
 - a. as
 - b. after
 - c. alike
 - d. unlike
- She looks very weak and pale. She must have a problem.
 - a. wealth
 - b. wealthy
 - c. health
 - d. healthy
- After the deliberate foul الخطأ المتعمد he had made, the referee sent him
 - a. away
 - b. in
 - c. on
 - d. back
- Flu is usually with cold weather.
 - a. associate
 - b. associates
 - c. associated
 - d. association
- She was a highly woman.
 - a. culture
 - b. cultural
 - c. cultured
 - d. culturally
- Which of the following words can mean cultivation?
 - a. Community
 - b. Section
 - c. Merchant
 - d. Culture
- I have several to do in the office today.
 - a. work
 - b. works
 - c. job
 - d. jobs

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

1. A summary of David Copperfield (WB page 102)

David Copperfield grew up⁽¹⁾ with his mother and his stepfather,⁽²⁾ Mr Murdstone.

Then David's mother died⁽³⁾ and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs Micawber. David had to leave⁽⁴⁾ school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had nowhere⁽⁵⁾ to live.

Without⁽⁶⁾ a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter,⁽⁷⁾ Agnes, but David didn't trust⁽⁸⁾ him.

Some time later⁽⁹⁾, Uriah Heep played a trick⁽¹⁰⁾ on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her.

When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted⁽¹¹⁾ that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him give it back⁽¹²⁾ to her. Then David went travelling around Europe⁽¹³⁾.

When David returned⁽¹⁴⁾ to England, he married⁽¹⁵⁾ Agnes and he became a successful⁽¹⁶⁾ writer⁽¹⁷⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يكبر
- (2) زوج الأم
- (3) يتوفى
- (4) يترك
- (5) لا مكان
- (6) بدون
- (7) ابنة
- (8) يثق بـ
- (9) فيما بعد
- (10) يخدع
- (11) يعترف بـ / يعترف
- (12) يرد
- (13) أوروبا
- (14) يعود
- (15) يتزوج
- (16) ناجح
- (17) كاتب

2. Three Egyptian teenagers (WB page 103)

Tarek : In my opinion the Egyptian Food Bank⁽¹⁾ (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough⁽²⁾ money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بنك الطعام
- (2) كافي

Samira : I have experienced⁽¹⁾ the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer⁽²⁾ Youth⁽³⁾ Association⁽⁴⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يجرب
- (2) حالم
- (3) شباب
- (4) جمعية

In my opinion, it shows⁽⁵⁾ young people that they can make a difference⁽⁶⁾, and it teaches them about other cultures⁽⁷⁾ and communities⁽⁸⁾. They are doing a great job⁽⁹⁾ by helping to educate⁽¹⁰⁾ a lot of young people.

- (5) توصح / تبين
- (6) تحدث فرقا
- (7) ثقافات
- (8) مجتمعات
- (9) يقوم بعمل رائع
- (10) يعلم

Maher : The Egyptian Red Crescent⁽¹⁾ helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big health problem, we always see the doctors from the Red Crescent on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems⁽²⁾ from happening. One day, I want to do some voluntary work⁽³⁾ for them.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الهلال الأحمر
- (2) مشاكل صحية
- (3) عمل تطوعي

2 Listening Texts

B. Let's talk about how to write (58 page 30)

a great short story⁽¹⁾. It's important to plan⁽²⁾ your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main characters⁽³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) يخطط
- (3) الشخصيات الرئيسية
- (4) يفسد / يتعطل
- (5) مفاجأة لـ

Don't spend too much time describing places and people - your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong⁽⁴⁾. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for⁽⁵⁾ the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

Part IV Language



تلقوا وتعلموا

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني

تلقوا

General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية موزعة بشكل متدرج تصاعديًا حسب تصيفه هرميًّا بلووج

تلقوا

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Manager : Hello! I can't find you in your office! Where are you?
Clerk : Sorry, sir. I to restaurant for lunch.
a. will go b. was going c. have been d. have gone
2. Amir lives in Canada, so I haven't seen him the age of ten.
a. for b. since c. already d. ever
3. Soha has never to go to hospital.
a. needed b. needs c. need d. needing
4. Nasser has lived in this house since he a child.
a. had been b. was c. will d. is
5. I only bought my new camera last week, but I 300 photos with it so far.
a. already take b. already took
c. have already taken d. already taking
6. Karim can't play football because he his leg.
a. broke b. has broken c. breaking d. had broken
7. Mona is in Cairo now. She to Alex.
a. has gone b. go c. has been d. goes
8. I for five hours every day last week.
a. has worked b. had worked c. worked d. have worked
9. you enjoyed your time at the museum?
a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Are
10. She has lived in London three years.
a. since b. ago c. for d. during
11. He to Cairo. I'll wait for him until he comes back.
a. goes b. has gone c. has been d. was going

12. Noha has cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
a. already b. yet c. never d. ever
13. We have lived in that house twenty years.
a. in b. ago c. for d. since
14. I haven't met him he moved to a new house.
a. yet b. since c. ago d. when
15. We in Cairo since 1993.
a. had living b. have lived c. lived d. are living
16. He come back home.
a. never b. has just c. already has d. just has
17. A: How long worked in Cairo? B: Since 2008.
a. has he b. he has c. had he d. he had
18. He there for ten years. He intends to retire next year.
a. 'd worked b. worked c. 's working d. 's worked
19. A: yourself today? B: Yes, I've had a great time.
a. Have you enjoyed b. Are you enjoying
c. Do you enjoy d. Had you enjoyed
20. I my exam. I am celebrating my success with my family.
a. 've passed b. 'd passed c. 'll pass d. am passing
21. I Brazil twice up till now.
a. was visited b. visited c. 've visited d. am visiting
22. a long time since I last played football.
a. For b. It's c. It has d. It'll be
23. Nothing interesting since I last saw him.
a. has happened b. happen c. have happened d. had happened
24. The writer his book yet.
a. didn't finish b. has finished c. hasn't finished d. isn't finished
25. Wahid and Mohammed friends all their lives. They are often together.
a. will be b. has been c. have been d. were
26. We each other since we were at school.
a. have been knowing b. have known
c. known d. had known
27. They in the garden for five hours.
a. have worked b. have been worked
c. work d. are working
28. It is since we met.
a. three weeks b. 1980 c. yesterday d. schooldays

29. What has happened to him this morning ?
 a. for b. ago c. since d. when
30. Mustafa has the club. He is on his way there.
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
31. Mustafa has the club. He looks as if he has had a great time there.
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
32. Mustafa has the club for three hours. I wonder when he will return home.
 a. been to b. been in c. gone to d. gone in
33. I Brazil in 2014.
 a. had been to b. have been in c. have been to d. went to
34. I last met him he moved to a new house.
 a. yet b. for c. since d. when
35. My secretary three emails today. She will send the rest in a few minutes.
 a. was sent b. has sent c. has been sent d. had sent
36. My grandfather ill over the last year. I hope he will get better soon.
 a. has been b. had been c. was d. was being
37. Have you finished your homework ? ! You are very quick!
 a. yet b. ever c. already d. just
38. I haven't been to Aswan since 2010. This means that
 a. I have been in Aswan since 2010 b. I have never been to Aswan
 c. I was in Aswan in 2010 d. I wasn't in Aswan in 2010
39. Ali and his family have never travelled since
 a. he gets married b. he marries c. his marriage d. married
40. He's been on holiday the last two weeks.
 a. while b. for c. when d. since
41. Now, Huda lives in extreme poverty فقر شديد because all the money she earned lost.
 a. had been b. had c. has been d. had has been
42. Have you finished reading that novel ? That's amazing!
 a. ever b. just c. already d. yet
43. Since you your homework, you won't be allowed to go out.
 a. didn't do b. hadn't done c. haven't done d. had done

44. It has been the main concern إهتمام of parents to maintain a good future for their children.
 a. never b. ago c. just d. always
45. I didn't feel that a thief entered the flat since I the match on TV.
 a. watched b. had watched c. was watching d. have watched

2 Check your understanding

46. I'm in secondary one. I English for ten years.
 a. am studying b. have studied c. studied d. had studied
47. This is my house. I here for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived
 c. had lived d. had been lived
48. That was my house. I there for three years.
 a. have lived b. have been lived c. lived d. had been lived
49. He has just taken an aspirin. This means that
 a. he has taken an aspirin a moment ago
 b. he has never taken an aspirin
 c. he has taken an aspirin for ages
 d. he took an aspirin a moment ago
50. Yara has never eaten shrimps. This means
 a. she doesn't eat shrimps
 b. she had never eaten shrimps
 c. she hasn't ever eaten shrimps
 d. she wasn't ever eaten shrimps
51. I have lived here in this city for ten years. What does this sentence mean ?
 a. I no longer live in this city.
 b. I didn't live in this city.
 c. I have always lived in this city.
 d. I still live in this city.

Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island). بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب المتفهمين.

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

اهم المفردات اللغوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب

تنويه

attack(ed) (n-v)	يهاجم - هجوم	make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك
barrel(n)	برميل	mutiny(n)	تمرد / عصيان
crutch(n)	عكاز - زكيزة	note(n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
destination(n)	مُتَّجِد - وجهة السفر	of different sizes	ذو أحجام مُخْتَلِفَة
empty(ied) (adj-v)	فارغ - يُفْرغ	parrot(n)	ببغاء
finger(n)	إصبع اليد	patient (adj-n)	صبور - مريض
frightened(adj)	خائف	pay - paid(for)(v)	يدفع ثمن
gang(n)	عصابة	pirate(n)	قرصان
harbour(n)	مرفأ - مرفأ	save(d)(v)	يُنْقِذ - يَدَّخِر
helper(n)	مُساعد	secret (n-adj)	سر - سري

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In the film, there is a on a ship and the captain has to hide.

(القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

- a. mutiny b. stormy c. tiny d. barrel

2. A is a large container made of wood or metal.

(غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)

- a. tin b. jug c. jar d. barrel

3. A/An is a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak.

- a. crew b. owl c. eagle d. parrot

4. A is a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg.

- a. gun b. sail c. crutch d. wheel

5. A is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.

- a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard

6. A/An is an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely.

- a. pool b. harbour c. airport d. river

7. A is a group of people that causes trouble.

- a. gang b. team c. community d. nursery

8. A/An is an act of violence that intended to hurt a person or damage a place.

- a. element b. lack c. attack d. mutiny

9. A is known about by only a few people and kept from others.

- a. journey b. secret c. harbour d. barrel

10. means able to wait calmly for a long time.

- a. Patient b. Impatient c. Descent d. Elegant



Part II

Grammatical Hints

Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية

- هي صفات ذات معني قوي مثل :
- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|-------|
| ex. - amazing | رائع / مذهل | terrible | رهيبي |
| - gigantic | ضخم | furious | ساحط |
| - ancient | قديم جداً | excellent | ممتاز |
| - miserable | بائس | | |

لا تستخدم (very / fairly) قبل الصفات القوية :
 ex. - very amazing (X) - fairly miserable (X)

لاحظ ان :
 صفة عادية + very = صفة قوية
 ex. - ancient = very old - amazing = very good
 - miserable = very unhappy

تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :
 تماماً completely - كلياً utterly / entirely - بشكل مطلق absolutely
 ex. - This engine is absolutely excellent. - The temple is utterly ancient.

كل / لكل a / an
 تستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (كل) قبل الكلمات الزمنية :
 ex. - We go to school five days a week. - This car goes at 130 km an hour.

تستخدم (a / an) بمعنى (الكل) قبل أسماء المقاييس والأوزان :
 ex. - The apples are 25 pounds a kilo.
 صفة + adj. + the

عند استخدام (the) قبل الصفة التي ليس بعدها موصوف فإنها تتحول لإسم جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :
 صفة + adj. + the = اسم جمع + صفة + adj.
 - Poor people are not able to buy everything they need.
 = The poor are not able to buy everything they need. (Not: The poor is)

اسم انسان + the
 عند استخدام (the) قبل اسم انسان مضافاً له (s) فإن ذلك يدل على الأسرة كلها وتأخذ فعل جمع :
 - The Hassans were busy last week. (Not: The Hassans is)

the police

كلمة (police) جمع دائماً وتأخذ فعل جمع :
 ex. - The police have arrested some criminals.

one - ones

تستخدم كلمة (one - ones) كضمائر فاعل او مفعول :
 ex. - One should work hard to succeed. (One = A person / A student ...)
 - I don't need this tablet. I want the black one. (one = tablet)
 - Some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones. (ones = children who learned a skill)
 - These are not my books. Mine are the ones on the table. (ones = books)

have + agent + inf. / (inf. + ing)

لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفعول للجنه (causative) عند قيام الفاعل بتكليف غيره بالقيام بالفعل :
 have + obj. + مفعول + inf.
 get + obj. + مفعول + to + inf.
 have / get + obj. + مفعول + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Factories liked to have children work for them.
 - Factories liked to get children to work for them.
 - Factories liked to have / get children working for them.

make + obj. + inf. / adj

لاحظ استخدام الفعل (make) في الصيغ التالية بمعنى (يجعل) :
 صفة + adj. + مفعول + make + obj. + فاعل + Subj.
 صفة + adj. + made + be + مفعول + obj. =
 ex. - Sama's birth made them happy. = They were made happy by Sama's birth.
 Subj. + فاعل + make + obj. + مفعول + inf.
 = obj. + مفعول + be + made + to + inf.
 ex. - I make Ahmed water the flowers. = Ahmed is made to water the flowers.
 make + adj. + صفة + job + وظيفة
 ex. - A sportsman makes a good police officer.

Nouns ending in (f / fe)

تدول النهاية (f / fe) في المفرد إلى (ves) في الجمع لتعطي الحركات - اللط المثلثة التالية

half	نصف	halves
knife	سكين	knives
leaf	ورقة نبات	leaves
life	حياة	lives
thief	السرقة	thieves
wife	زوجة	wives
wolf	ذئب	wolves
dwarf	قزم	dwarves / dwarfs
scarf	إيشارتب (الطرحة)	scarves / scarfs
calf	صغير البقر (عجل)	calves

وهناك استثناءات لهذه القاعدة مثل :

- ex. - belief اعتقاد - beliefs
 - safe حزانة - safes
 - roof سقف - roofs
 - gulf خليج - gulfs
 - chief رئيس - chiefs
 - brief إحصار - briefs

Making suggestions

- Let's + inf. ما بنا
 ex. - Let's go to the cinema.
 We / You could + inf. يمكننا / يمكنك أن
 ex. - We / You could go to the cinema.
 I suggest + (inf. + ing) أقترح
 ex. - I suggest going to the cinema.
 I suggest + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) أقترح أن
 ex. - I suggest (that) we / you go to the cinema.
 What / How about + (inf. + ing)? ما رأيك في?
 ex. - What / How about going to the cinema?
 Why don't we / you + inf.? لماذا لا?
 ex. - Why don't we / you go to the cinema?

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- are a small family.
 a. Ragab b. Ragab's c. Ragabs d. The Ragabs
- The poor man is miserable.
 a. fairly b. absolutely c. absolute d. fair
- I suggest the Plants' Island in Aswan.
 a. visit b. visiting c. to visit d. visited
- Your success has us happy.
 a. made b. caused c. let d. allowed
- The police looking for some escaping criminals.
 a. is b. has c. are d. have
- This man is He is really unhappy.
 a. miserably b. not miserable c. miserable d. miser
- Why don't you a dentist?
 a. to see b. seeing c. saw d. see
- Rodayna has two aunts. is a teacher and the other is a doctor.
 a. Another b. One c. Ones d. Other
- I suggest Sama to the park with us.
 a. go b. went c. has gone d. was going
- This baby girl is easily made
 a. laugh b. to laugh c. laughing d. laughs
- The disabled more care and interest.
 a. needs b. has needed c. need d. were needed
- How about the match in the stadium?
 a. to watch b. watch c. watching d. to watching
- We have a gardener after the trees in our garden.
 a. looks b. to look c. looked d. look
- I go to the park once week.
 a. in b. a c. at d. on

UNIT 3

15. A: What do you suggest for the weekend?
B: We _____ do some voluntary work.
a didn't b don't c had to d could
16. The old man made me _____ his bag.
a carrying b to carry c carry d carried
17. The poor never _____ enough money.
a have b has c are d is
18. An accountant _____ a good manager.
a makes b does c scores d gives
19. They had a mechanic _____ their car engine.
a to check b to checking c checks d check
20. My mobile rings at least three times _____ hour.
a a b an c at d all

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. **تنويه**

- عندما يُطلب منك الكتابة عن قصة ، يمكنك التركيز على النقاط التالية :
- Which story have you chosen? ما القصة التي قمت باختيارها ؟
 - Who is the main character in the story? What is he/she like? - من هي الشخصية الرئيسية في القصة ؟ كيف يبدو / تبدو ؟
 - Where does he / she live? What is his /her life like? - أين تقيم تلك الشخصية ؟ وكيف هي حياته / حياتها ؟
 - Who are the other characters? How did they know the main character? - من هي الشخصيات الأخرى ؟ كيف عرفوا الشخصية الأساسية ؟
 - How does the story start? What happens first? What happens next? And then? - كيف تبدأ القصة ؟ ماذا يحدث أولاً ؟ ماذا يحدث بعد ذلك ؟
 - What is the moral of the story? ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة ؟

* Write an essay of about 150 words about a story you have read :

The Old Man and the Sea

Reading is one of my favourite hobbies. In fact, I find reading both interesting and useful. I like reading novels. In this essay I'm going to write about a great novel called "The Old Man and the Sea".

The novel was written by Ernest Hemingway. It is about an old fisherman called Santiago. This fisherman was very poor. He wanted to catch a big fish to sell it for a lot of money.

Santiago had to sail far away into the sea. He was alone in his boat. The rod ^{السنارة} caught a very big marlin. The marlin was bigger than the boat itself. It was impossible for Santiago to pull the fish into the boat.

Santiago waited until the fish was tired and pulled it behind the boat. Unfortunately, some sharks attacked the marlin and ate it. When Santiago reached the beach, the marlin was just a skeleton. Santiago was very tired. He went home and slept.

I like this story because it has a moral. One ^{المرء} should be patient. We should have determination ^{إصرار}. Despite being old and weak, Santiago tried and didn't give up ^{يستلم}. We also learn that people need cooperation ^{التعاون}. To succeed in life, you need to work with others.

2 Translation الترجمة

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. **تنويه**

1 Translate into Arabic :

- After Shakespeare, Charles Dickens is probably the most famous writer in the English literature. The former wrote great poems and the latter was the author of fabulous novels.
- Reading works of art like novels, plays and poems is very beneficial. It widens our horizons and gives us useful experience.
- Success is not something that occurs out of the blue. To be successful, you must work hard to a plan.

- 1- عليك أن تعمل بكل جد لكي تنجح في الوصول لهدفك في الحياة، فالنجاح الحقيقي يأتي بعد سنوات من المثابرة والعمل الطموح.
- 2- من الأفضل أن تقول الصدق في كل المواقف وإن أغضب الآخرين، فالكذب من السمات السلبية غير المقبولة دينياً أو اجتماعياً.
- 3- إن أطفال الشوارع قبيلة موقوتة قد تنفجر في أي وقت، وعلى كل فرد أن يفعل ما يستطيع من أجل حل هذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة
Vocabulary related to translation texts

author	مؤلف	perseverance	المثابرة
beneficial	مفيد	position	موضع
experience	خبرة	religiously	دينيًا
explode	تفجر	socially	اجتماعياً
fabulous	رائع	success	النجاح
homeless	شخص	the former	الأول
horizon	الأفق	the latter	الأخر
individual	فرد	timed bomb	قنبلة موقوتة
literature	الأدب	unacceptable	غير مقبول
may	قد	widen	يوسع
out of the blue	لحظة		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للمفكرين

تلويح هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

life

life - lives (n) حياة - حيوات

- My goal in **life** is to be a successful doctor.
- Prices **have an effect** أثر الأسعار **on people's lives**.

live (d) (v) يعيش / يحيى - يسكن

- I think people who **lived** in the past were happier.
- Mohammed **lives** in Aswan.

- **alive (adj)** حي / على قيد الحياة (لا تأتي قبل الموصوف)
 - This fish is **alive**. (Not: This is an alive fish)
- **live = living (adj)** ميتة ≠ dead / حي / على قيد الحياة (قبل الموصوف فقط)
 - People don't eat **live** animals. (Not: ... animals that are live)
- **live (adj)** مسجل مسبقاً ≠ prerecorded / على الهواء مباشرة
 - We all prefer watching **live** matches on TV.
- **lively (adj)** مليء بالحياة والنشاط
 - Sama is a **lively** child.
- **livelihood (adj)** مصدر دخل - مصدر رزق
 - Farming is the source of **livelihood** in villages.

association

- **association (n)** إتحاد / منظمّة / نقابة
 - This youth **association** helps poor people.
- **associate (n) = colleague** زميل عمل / شريك
 - You need to work with your **associates** to finish the report. التقرير
- لاحظ المصدر التالي:
- **in association with** بمصاحبة / بالتزامن مع
 - The green colour of trees usually comes **in association with** spring.
- **associate (d) (v)** يلازم / يُصاحب / يأتي مع
 - Bad cough **associates** smoking.
- **associate(d) ... with (v)** يربط بين ... و ...
 - People usually **associate** high price **with** quality. الجودة
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- **be + associated with + شخص / شيء** يكون مُصاحب أو مُلازم ل
 - Overweight **is associated with** health problems.
- **associate with + شخص** يلازم / يرافق / يُصاحب
 - Don't **associate with** bad friends.

culture

- **culture (n)** ثقافة
 - The **culture** of Arab people is different from European **culture**.
- **culture (n)** حضارة
 - We are all proud of ancient Egyptian **culture**.
- **culture = cultivation (n)** الزراعة
 - Rice **culture** needs a lot of water.

UNIT 3

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- western culture الثقافة الغربية
- national culture الثقافة القومية
- culture shock صدمة ثقافية
- local culture الثقافة المحلية
- common / dominant culture الثقافة السائدة

ثقافي

- cultural (adj)
 - There are cultural differences اختلافات between countries.
- cultured = cultivated (adj)
 - Mr Nasser is a cultured person.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- cultural heritage التراث الثقافي
- multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

ثقافت

debt

دين

- debt (n)
 - He found a second job to pay back his debts.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

مدين لـ

- be in debt to
- The old man can't retire because he is in debt. يتقاعد
- He was in debt to the bank.

عليه ديون كثيرة

- be + heavily / deeply + in debt
- The old man can't retire because he is heavily in debt. يتقاعد

يصبح مديناً

- get / fall / run into debt
- The old man can't retire because he got / fell / ran into debt. يتقاعد

مدين بالشكر أو الامتنان

- owe debt of gratitude / thanks
- I owe a debt of gratitude to my parents.

ولاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have a debt عليه دين
- clear the debts يسد كل الديون
- write off / cancel a debt يتنازل عن الديون
- pay off debts يسد الديون
- service a debt يسد فوائد الديون
- a heavy debt دين كبير

مدين / غارم

- indebted (to) (adj)
 - He is indebted to a car company.

earn

- earn (ed) (v)
 - Not many farmers earn a lot of money. يكسب مال مقابل عمل
- earn (ed) (v)
 - This book earned two million dollars. يربح / يحقق أرباح

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- earn (respect / a reputation ...)
- He has earned the respect of all his friends. ينال (الاحترام / سمعة طيبة ...)
- earn a living
- He earns a living by selling fruit and vegetables. يكسب رزقه من / مصدر رزقه هو

ولاحظ أيضاً:

- earn good money يكسب الكثير من المال
- earn a fortune يكسب ثروة
- كاسب / ذو أجر / مصدر دخل

- earner (n)
 - My father is the only earner in our family.
 - This shop is our chief earner. رئيسي
- earnings (n)
 - His earnings are not enough for his family. دخل / ربح (دائماً جمع)

experience

- experience (of / with) (n)
 - I learned a lot from my childhood experiences. تجربة حياتية / مرفق (كلمة تُعد)
- experience (of / in / with) (n)
 - Mr Ashraf has a lot of experience in teaching. الخبرة (كلمة لا تُعد)

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- have experience لديه خبرة
- lack experience تنقصه الخبرة
- get / gain experience يكتسب خبرة
- past / previous experience خبرة سابقة
- experience (d) (v)
 - People should experience things to learn from them. يمر بتجربة - يتأثر بموقف / مشكلة - يُجرب
- experienced (in) (adj)
 - Ashraf is an experienced teacher. عديم الخبرة / غير مُجرب ≠ مُحْتَك / ذو خبرة

merchant

- merchant (n)
 - He makes a lot of money as a merchant. تاجر (شخص / شركة)
- merchandise (n)
 - His stores are full of high-quality merchandise. بضائع - سلع

miserable

- miserable = very unhappy (adj)
 - She has lost her job and family. She looks miserable. بائس / تَعيس / شقي
- miserable = very little / very bad (adj)
 - His miserable income isn't enough for his family. ضئيل / سيء جداً (قبل الاسم فقط)
 - I was angry because of my team's miserable performance. أداء سيئ.

UNIT 3

نعاسة / شقاء / بؤس / معاناة
 الفقر: misery of war and poverty.
 You don't know the misery of war and poverty.

miser (n)
 - I'm sure he won't donate any money. He is a miser.
 يميل

owe
 • owe (d) + مبلغ مالي + شخص + ...
 - Omar owes Ali ten pounds. = Omar needs to pay ten pounds to Ali.
 • owe (d) + مبلغ مالي + to + شخص + ...
 - Omar owes ten pounds to Ali.
 • owe (d) + شخص + for + شيء + ...
 - You owe me for the drinks.
 يدين لـ ...
 يدين لـ ...
 يدين لـ ... مقابل ...

• owe + شخص + a debt
 - We owe our parents a debt.
 يدين بالفضل لـ
 • owe everything (it all) to + شخص
 - I owe everything to my family.
 يدين بكل شيء لـ
 • owe + شخص + a lot / a great deal
 - She owes her mother a great deal.
 يدين لـ ... بالكثير من الفضل

prison
 • prison (n)
 - Prison is the right place for criminals. (Not: The prison ...)
 السجن
 - لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل كلمة (prison) عند الحديث عنه كمكان لعقاب المجرمين كما في المثال السابق، لكن يمكن استخدام (the) في أي سياق آخر:
 - Visitors to the prison wait here.

• لاحظ التعبيرات والالتزامات اللفظية التالية:
 - go to prison يتم حسه
 - put ... in prison يضع ... في السجن
 - be released from prison يُطلق سراحه من السجن
 - let ... out of prison يُخرج ... من السجن
 - get out of prison يخرج من السجن
 - a prison sentence (term) حكم بالسجن
 • prisoner (n)
 - In this prison, there is a library for prisoners who like reading.
 سجين
 • imprisonment (n)
 - No one has seen him since his imprisonment.
 عقوبة الحبس - مدة الحبس

• imprison(ed) (v)
 - He was imprisoned for selling drugs.
 المخابرات
 يحبس / يسجن - يقيد حرية

youth
 youth (n)
 - I was very fit in my youth.
 مرحلة الشباب (لا تُعدّ)
 youth (n)
 - The youth of Egypt are ready to help their country.
 الشباب بوجه عام (اسم الجمع)
 youth - youths (n)
 - A group of youths were arrested for troublemaking last week.
 شاب - شباب (تُعدّ)
 إثارة الشغب

2 Prefixes بادئة مقاطع

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis-	تُكوّن العكس	disabled مُعاق
mis-	تعطي معنى بطريقة خاطئة	mistake خطأ - يخطئ misunderstand يُسي فهم misspell يتهجى بطريقة خاطئة
re-	يُعيد	review يُراجع rewrite يُعيد كتابة
step-	أحد الأقارب (نتيجة الزواج من أحد الوالدين)	stepfather زوج الأم stepmother زوجة الأب stepfamily أسرة زوج الأم أو زوجة الأب

3 suffixes ناهية مقاطع

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-able	تُكوّن صفة	miserable تعيس - بانس
-er	تُكوّن اسم فاعل	dreamer حالم
-ful	تُكوّن صفة	successful ناجح
-ing	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	ending (n) نهاية amazing (adj) متفعل
-ly	تُكوّن ظرف	exactly تماماً - بالتحديد
-al	تُكوّن صفة / اسم	criminal مجرم - إجرامي factual (adj) واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق arrival (n) وصول refusal (n) رفض

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- The police his sudden fortune with the bank robbery.
 - paid
 - mistook
 - planned
 - associated
 - Fishing is the only source of for people living here.
 - community
 - experience
 - misery
 - livelihood
 - animals are kept on farms.
 - Alive
 - Live
 - Life
 - Lives
 - Egypt was famous for cotton
 - culture
 - association
 - capture
 - section
 - There was a/an between Egypt and high-quality cotton.
 - culture
 - association
 - opportunity
 - section
 - I a feeling of nausea when I am on a boat.
 - pay
 - brainstorm
 - feel
 - experience
 - Being very old and not able to walk, he feels in his house.
 - joked
 - imprisoned
 - lived
 - reviewed
 - This cream will renew the of your skin.
 - youth
 - culture
 - crescent
 - beliefs
 - He applied for as a tour guide in a tourist company.
 - work
 - a work
 - job
 - a job
 - Don't buy goods that a trademark.
 - haven't
 - hasn't
 - don't have
 - a & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- فى إطار معنى الجملة فإن كلمة (associated) بمعنى (ارتبط) هى الوحيدة التى تتفق مع السياق خاصة فى وجود حرف الجر (with)
2.	d	- كلمة (livelihood) تعنى (مصدر دخل) هى التى تعطى معنى مقيد فى سياق الجملة، فصيد السمك ليس المصدر الوحيد للبر (misery) ولا الخبرة (experience) ولا المجتمع (community)
3.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام الصفة (alive) قبل الإسم الموصوف - لا يمكن استخدام (life) كصفة قبل كلمة (animals) فهى ستعطى معنى (حيوانات الحياة) وهو ما لا يتفق مع سياق الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (lives) كصفة قبل كلمة (animals) لأنها اسم جمع كما أنها ستعطى معنى (حيوانات الحياة) وهو ما لا يتفق مع سياق الجملة

4.	a	- كلمة (culture) بمعنى (زراعة) هى الوحيدة التى تعطى معنى منطقي فى سياق الجملة
5.	b	- كلمة (association) بمعنى (الرباط) هى الوحيدة التى تعطى معنى منطقي فى سياق الجملة
6.	d	- الفعل (experience) بمعنى (يشعر به / يعايش) هو الوحيد الذى يعطى معنى منطقي فى سياق الجملة
7.	b	- الصفة (imprisoned) بمعنى (محبوس) هى الوحيدة التى تصف إحساس رجل عجز لا يستطيع السير
8.	a	- لا يمكن استخدام الاسم (culture) لأنه لا يعطى معنى فى هذا السياق - لا يمكن استخدام (crescent) التى تعنى (هلال) ولا كلمة (beliefs) التى تعنى (معتقدات) فى سياق هذه الجملة
9.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (work / a work) لتوصيف (a tour guide) لأنها وظيفة محددة - لا يمكن استخدام (job) بدون (a) لأنها اسم مفرد معدود
10.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (hasn't) مع الإسم الجمع (goods)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- I injured my knee and I haven't played football
 - already
 - never
 - for
 - since
 - We have lived here fall.
 - yet
 - already
 - since
 - for
 - They for ten years when I met them. It was in Paris in 2016.
 - married
 - had been married
 - have married
 - have been married
 - This is the first time I have ever travelled alone. I mean to say that
 - I'm travelling alone for the first time.
 - I have ever travelled alone.
 - I haven't never travelled alone.
 - I travelled alone only once.
 - Omar is the cleverest student I have ever seen. This means that
 - I have seen many clever students like Omar
 - I have seen many students as clever as Omar
 - It is the first time for me to see a student who has this degree of cleverness
 - Omar is not as clever as the students I have ever seen

6. Nouran hasn't finished doing her homework yet. That means
- Nouran didn't start doing her homework
 - Nouran is going to start doing her homework
 - Nouran is still doing her homework
 - Nouran finished doing her homework
7. It is still raining. I mean to say that
- it has rained
 - it was raining
 - it has stopped raining
 - it hasn't stopped raining yet
8. It's a month since I last went for a walk. This means
- I have gone for a walk for a month
 - I haven't gone for a walk a month ago
 - I haven't gone for a walk for a month
 - I have gone for a walk since a month
9. I have lived in Edfu since 2002. I mean to say that
- I started to live in Edfu about 20 years ago
 - I stopped living in Edfu about 20 years ago
 - I have lived in Edfu for ten years
 - I have lived in Edfu before 2002
10. I last ate fish on Friday. This sentence means that
- I didn't eat fish since Friday.
 - I haven't eaten fish since Friday.
 - I had eaten fish on Friday.
 - I didn't eat fish on Friday.

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	لا يمكن استخدام (already) لأنها لا تتفق مع معنى الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (never) في نهاية الجملة - لا يمكن استخدام (for) لعدم وجود مدة زمنية بعدها - الظرف (since) هنا يعني (منذ ذلك الحين) وهو يساوي (since then)
2.	c	- تُستخدم (since) قبل أسماء الفصول ومنها (fall) بمعنى (اقبل الخريف)
3.	b	- الفعل الماضي البسيط (married) غير مناسب للمعنى خاصة في ظل وجود (for) وبعدها مدة زمنية
4.	a	لا يمكن استخدام (c / d) لأنهما مضارع تام والسياق في الجملة ماضي
5.	c	- الجملة تعني أنني مسافر بالفعل للمرة الأولى
6.	c	- الجملة تعني أنها المرة الأولى التي أرى فيها طالباً بهذه الدرجة من الذكاء
7.	d	- الجملة تعني أن نوران بدأت بالفعل في عمل الواجب لكنها لم تنته بعد
8.	c	- الجملة تعني أن المطر لم يتوقف بعد
9.	a	- الجملة تعني أنني ذهب للتنزه سيراً منذ شهر ولم أفضل ذلك مجدداً منذ ذلك الحين
10.	b	- الجملة تعني أنني بدأت أسكن في ادفو عام ٢٠٠٢ - الجملة تعني أنني لم أتناول السمك منذ يوم الجمعة



Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- My sister and I some problems.
 - played
 - owed
 - solved
 - had
 - did
 - Voluntary work is of great importance. The antonyms of "voluntary" are
 - optional
 - exceptional
 - compulsory
 - obligatory
 - obligation
- MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- He was arrested because of his debts. He money to several people.
 - lent
 - borrowed
 - owned
 - owed
 - I don't much money as a carpenter.
 - win
 - hate
 - earn
 - pay
 - It is kind of you to do work.
 - abroad
 - miserable
 - paid
 - voluntary
 - He died heavily in
 - promise
 - debt
 - ditch
 - pit
 - Have you finished your homework? Wonderful!
 - yet
 - ever
 - just
 - already
 - It's two months since we our uncle in the village.
 - had visited
 - visited
 - have visited
 - visit
 - Sadly, he has been ill he was a young man.
 - for
 - when
 - ago
 - since
 - Mona isn't here, she to the shops.
 - had gone
 - go
 - has been
 - has gone
 - Finally, my mother how to use the internet. Now, she can send emails.
 - learns
 - has learnt
 - had learnt
 - was learning
 - Bassant gets up early while on holiday.
 - don't
 - isn't
 - doesn't
 - never

- 13. I have passed this test
 a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
- 14. He lives in Paris, he has there since 2001.
 a. gone b. been c. come d. done
- 15. My car is similar Ali's. Both are red.
 a. from b. to c. as d. like
- 16. Who's the of this big house? - He must be a wealthy man.
 a. owner b. guide c. tourist d. parrot

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :
 (المعهد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

Statistics show that the rapid growth in population creates problems for developing countries. So, why don't people have fewer children? It has also been found that only when people's education and living standards begin to rise, birth rates begin to fall. Now poor countries can't afford social services and old age pensions, and people's incomes are so low that they have nothing to spare for savings. So, people need their children to provide them with security in their old age. Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are still young, children can help on a small farm. Improvements in public health services and medical care have assured that many more babies survive infancy and grow up. It has also helped the parents to live longer. No wonder populations are being added to both ends. These people have to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more employment and thus a better standard of living. This means changes in attitudes.

- 17. decreased the number deaths among babies.
 a. Education b. the standard of living
 c. Birth control d. Medical care
- 18. We have to convince people to
 a. build houses b. go to school
 c. have smaller families d. work on farms
- 19. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a. people b. people's incomes
 c. social services d. children

- 20. The best title for this text is
 a. Family planning b. Family food
 c. Developing countries d. Statistics
- 21. The underlined word "survive" means
 a. stay alive b. fight c. try d. go e. exist
- 22. Pension means money you get after you
 a. become older b. retire from work
 c. work hard d. have free time
 e. go abroad
- 23. Why did people like to have many children in the past ?
 a. To help the parents to live longer
 b. To provide them with security
 c. To convince them to plan the family
 d. To afford social services
 e. Children can help on a small farm when they are still young

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :
 The city has advanced systems to manage transportation, housing and communication. However, the countryside has fresh air and water as it is less polluted.

2. Translate into English :
 لكي تحقق أهدافك عليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تتحلى بالصبر، فالنجاح الحقيقي في الحياة لا يأتي عن طريق الحظ أو بأحلام اليقظة.
 (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on :
 How to improve our lives

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

• للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام أسئلة MRQ، بنك الأسئلة، تلوينه

لأول مرة
تقييمات
تراكمية في
بنك الأسئلة

اختبار تراكمي على كل ثلاث وحدات في الحصة التمهيدية

Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المشتقات الرئيسية

admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ	lie - lay - lain (v)	يرقد / يتسدد
adult (n - adj)	راشد / بالغ	lie - lied (v)	يكذب
beat - beat - beaten (v)	يخرب	lying (adj)	ممدد - راقد
beginning (n)	بداية	marine life (n)	الحياة البحرية
bite - bit - bitten (v)	يغض - يقضم	marry (ied) (v)	يتزوج
blood pressure (n)	ضغط الدم	monitor (ed) (v) (n)	يراقب - جهاز عرض
boyhood (n)	صبا	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
champion (n)	بطل	national team (n)	المنتخب الوطني
character (n)	شخصية	pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
competition (n)	مسابقة	pocket (n)	جيب
completely (adv)	بالكامل	puzzle (n)	لغز
desire (d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلي
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	recording (n)	التسجيل
dream - dreamed / dreamt	حلم - يحلم	run - ran - run (v)	يدير - يجري
end (n)	نهاية / خاتمة	score (d) (v)	يُحرز
final (n)	نهائي	squash (n)	رياضة الاسكواش
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي	strange (adj)	غريب
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	success (n)	النجاح
generous (adj)	كرم - سخّي	tiring (adj)	مُتعب
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	top (n)	أفضل - قمة
include (d) (v)	يتضمن / يشمل	twice (adv)	مرتين
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم	volunteer (n)	متطوع
isolated (adj)	منعزل - وحيد	vote (d) (v - n)	يُصوّت / يقترح - تصويت / اقتراح
join (ed) (v)	ينضم	wild (adj)	برّي
junior (n) (adj)	الأشبهين		
lay - laid - laid (v)	يضع - تبيض		

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Arsenal (n)	نادي أرسنال الإنجليزي	readers (n)	القراء
Basel (n)	نادي بازل السويسري	still (adv)	لا يزال
describe (d) (v)	يُصِف	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
discuss (ed) (v)	يُناقش	team (n)	فريق
interesting (adj)	شيق	times (n)	مَرّات
low (adj)	مُنخفض	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
main (adj)	رئيسي	wife (n)	زوجة

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	puzzles	يحل ألغاز	make	notes	يدون ملاحظات
go	wrong	يتعطل - يختل	reach	the final	يصل للمباراة النهائية
become	friends	يصبحون أصدقاء	run	the country	يدير البلد
have	a strong desire	لديه رغبة قوية	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
	a vote	يُجري اقتراح/ تصويت	win	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
include	information	يتضمن معلومات			

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the same time as	في نفس توقيت	play for	يلعب لـ
be good friends with	يكون على صداقة قوية بـ	since the beginning	منذ البداية
be married to	متزوج من	squash World Open Championship	بطولة العالم المفتوحة للاسكواش
be well paid for	يحصل على مقابل جيد على	student volunteers	متطوعين من الطلاب
find out	يكشف	that's why	لهذا السبب
follow ... to	يتبع ... إلي	the first person	مسير المتكلم
in fact	في الحقيقة	too low	منخفض جداً
in groups	في مجموعات	top player	أفضل لاعب
in pairs	في ثنائيات	work as volunteers	يعملون كمتطوعين
main characters	الشخصيات الرئيسية	world champion	بطل العالم
move to	ينتقل إلي	World Junior Champion	بطل العالم للشباب
plan a short story	يضع تصور للقصة القصيرة		

1

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

1. Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces.⁽¹⁾ She was world champion⁽²⁾ of the squash⁽³⁾ World Open in 2017, when she beat⁽⁴⁾ another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice⁽⁵⁾ reached⁽⁶⁾ the final⁽⁷⁾ in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top⁽⁸⁾ women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team⁽⁹⁾ when she was only ten. She became World Junior⁽¹⁰⁾ Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition⁽¹¹⁾ as an adult⁽¹²⁾ in 2009. She is now married⁽¹³⁾ to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles,⁽¹⁴⁾ but it is her success⁽¹⁵⁾ at squash that has inspired⁽¹⁶⁾ many young Egyptians to play the game.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) شخصيات
- (2) بطال
- (3) رياضة الاسكواش
- (4) هزم
- (5) مرتين
- (6) وصل الي
- (7) نهائي
- (8) افضل
- (9) فريق
- (10) الناشئين
- (11) مسابقة
- (12) راشد / بالغ
- (13) متزوجة
- (14) يحل افعال
- (15) النجاح
- (16) يلهم

2. Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer⁽¹⁾. He is a strong⁽²⁾ player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team⁽³⁾ more than 60 times.⁽⁴⁾ He has scored⁽⁵⁾ more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved⁽⁶⁾ from his boyhood⁽⁷⁾ club⁽⁸⁾ Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010.

He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same⁽⁹⁾ time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland⁽¹⁰⁾ and joined⁽¹¹⁾ Basel,⁽¹²⁾ one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal.⁽¹³⁾

He is still⁽¹⁴⁾ good friends with Salah. "I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning⁽¹⁵⁾ and he has not changed,⁽¹⁶⁾" he says.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لاعب كرة قدم
- (2) قوي
- (3) المنتخب الوطني
- (4) مَرَّات
- (5) وحرز
- (6) ينتقل
- (7) صبياً
- (8) نادي
- (9) نفس
- (10) سويسرا
- (11) ينضم الي
- (12) نادي بازل
- (13) نادي ارسنال
- (14) لا يزال
- (15) بداية
- (16) يتغير

3. How to write a short story

Why you write a long book when you can write a short story?⁽¹⁾ A short story can have 200 words or less.⁽²⁾ The writer can't describe⁽³⁾ many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives⁽⁴⁾ in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle⁽⁵⁾ and an end⁽⁶⁾ to the story. And the story needs to be interesting,⁽⁷⁾ so we include⁽⁸⁾ important information and an interesting main⁽⁹⁾ character, but perhaps⁽¹⁰⁾ only one. In fact,⁽¹¹⁾ it can be interesting to write in the first person⁽¹²⁾ (I did this ...) and then the person telling the story is the main character.⁽¹³⁾

Readers⁽¹⁴⁾ can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise,⁽¹⁵⁾ a problem or something that goes wrong.⁽¹⁶⁾ Readers don't always find out⁽¹⁷⁾ what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine⁽¹⁸⁾ the end of the story.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قصة قصيرة
- (2) أقل
- (3) يصف
- (4) صفات
- (5) وسط
- (6) نهاية / خاتمة
- (7) شيق
- (8) يضمن
- (9) رئيسي
- (10) ربما
- (11) في الحقيقة
- (12) صميم المتكلم
- (13) شخصية
- (14) القراء
- (15) مفاجأة
- (16) يتعطل - يختل
- (17) يكتشف
- (18) يتخيل

2 Listening Texts

Presenter : Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam : Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of

Lara : My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir : I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!

UNIT 4

Making new friends

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 110 : 115

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

- **Reading :**
A magazine article about moving to a new town
- **Writing :**
An email to a magazine's problem page
- **Listening :**
A radio phone-in about bullying at school

- **Speaking :**
Having a debate
- **Language :**
Articles, Countable/ uncountable nouns
- **Life skills :**
Respect for diversity; Communication



• بنك الأسئلة للتحقق اليومية والاشهرية.
• ملحق الفيديوهات التعليمية.
• تدريبات للزهر الشريف وفي بنك الأسئلة.
• Dictation مع ملحق بنك الأسئلة.

البنك
الأسئلة



Part I

Vocabulary

تلميح • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدًا ومراجعتها بانتظام أولوية قصوى في الامتحان.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advice (n)	نصيحة	noticeboard (n)	لوحة الإعلانات
advise (d) (v)	نصح	populate (d) (v)	يُستلم مكان / يُقطن
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	population (n)	عدد السكان
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل	produce (d) (v)	يُنتج
connect (ed) (v)	يربط	production (n)	إنتاج
connected (adj)	مرتبط - متصل	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال	pronunciation (n)	النطق
inform (ed) (v)	يُخبر	salutation (n)	تحيةة
information (n)	معلومة / معلومات	take ... for granted	... يتقبل / ... يأمر مُستلم به

تلميح • من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح بـ	grade (n)	ترتيب - مرتبة
allowed (adj)	مسموح به	greeting (n)	تحية
article (n)	مقال	header (n)	رأس الصفحة
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى
body (n)	مَن (صُلِب الموضوع)	optional (adj)	اختياري
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	personal (adj)	شخصي
conversation (n)	محادثة	practice (n)	ممارسة - تدريب
cool (adj)	علي الموضة - جميل / جذاب	recipient (n)	مُتلقي - مُستلم
diversity (n)	التنوع	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع	serious (adj)	خطير - جاد
extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر	stressed (adj)	مضغوط (نفسياً)
face (d) (n - v)	وجه - يواجه	teammates (n)	زملاء الفريق
favourite (adj)	مُفضل	teenager (n)	مراهق
feel - felt (v)	تبدو / تُعطي إحساس	wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي
friendship (n)	صداقة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تلميح • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المستخدمة - هام جدًا

Memorise	Understand
advice نصيحة	an opinion someone gives to help you
connection رابط - علاقة	something that brings people together
noticeboard لوحة الإعلانات	a board on a wall that people put information on
take ... for granted يُستلم ... بـ / يتقبل ... كأمر مُستلم به	to think something is true or will stay the same

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The between smoking and cancer is very clear. (٢٠٢٢ - الرديسية الثانوية)
 - transplant
 - donation
 - connection
 - conservation
- It is taken for that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. (الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
 - denial
 - refusal
 - granted
 - decided
- They all have smartphones, so they are all to the internet. (التفويج - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
 - decorated
 - donated
 - disconnected
 - connected
- Our teacher always us to study hard to get high marks. (التسامحية ٢٠٢٢)
 - advises
 - devise
 - device
 - advice
- Our teacher always gives us to study hard to get high marks.
 - advises
 - devise
 - device
 - advice
- Lack of in a marriage causes serious problems. (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
 - communication
 - bullying
 - conservation
 - experiments
- The lecture table of this term has been put on the (إدارة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)
 - noticeboard
 - noticeable
 - noticeably
 - notable
- This problem needs urgent solutions. (حلول عاجلة)
 - serious
 - useful
 - cool
 - concerned

9. The ancient Egyptians the banks of the Nile thousands of years ago.
 a. communicated b. populated c. pronounced d. produced
10. Use electronic dictionaries to know how to new words.
 a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
11. Use electronic dictionaries to know the of new words.
 a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
12. Most of the world's live in cities.
 a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
13. This factory high quality TV sets.
 a. communicates b. populates c. pronounces d. produces
14. Learn foreign languages to with tourists from different countries.
 a. communicate b. populate c. pronounce d. produce
15. I was that I got the best marks in the exam.
 a. advised b. informed c. connected d. populated
16. The of solar energy depends on light from the sun.
 a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation
17. You start an email with the opening
 a. production b. pronunciation c. population d. salutation

2 Important Vocabulary

18. I hate using social media. They make me (إدارة الخليفة والمقطر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. pleased b. stressed c. dressed d. praised
19. If you want to good health, avoid smoking. (إدارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. follow b. be c. enjoy d. having
20. After the match, he preferred to with a glass of orange juice. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. stress b. sleep c. worry d. relax
21. If you can leave a question in an exam, this question is (المنيا - ملوي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory
22. It is important to respect the of opinions and ideas, even if they are different from yours. (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)
 a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation

23. Did you form any close while you were at school?
 a. friendly b. a friend c. friendships d. friends' (المنيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
24. Some parents have bad memories of their own years.
 a. teenage b. teenager c. marvellous d. splendid (نقا - قوصي ٢٠٢٠)
25. You won't succeed if you don't have support from other
 a. contractions b. diversity c. salutations d. teammates
26. He becomes nervous when he a difficult situation.
 a. stresses b. faces c. welcomes d. drops
27. a club and doing a team sport help you make new friends.
 a. Joining b. Pointing c. Closing d. Calling
28. His clothes make a lot of people admire him.
 a. fashioned b. fashionable c. cold d. old-fashioned
29. People who are sociable اجتماعي find it easy to start with others.
 a. contractions b. problems c. conversations d. diversity
30. My school bag is full. There's no room مكان for books.
 a. this b. no c. less d. extra

3 Definitions

31. A/An is something that brings people together.
 a. cheating b. phone-in c. address d. connection
32. A/An is a board on a wall that people put information on.
 a. list b. noticeboard c. circle d. contraction
33. When you think something is true or will stay the same, then you
 a. find it difficult b. find it easy c. take it easy d. take it for granted
34. is an opinion someone gives to help you.
 a. Advice b. A belief c. Practice d. A debate

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

Part II Vocabulary Study

تلاوية تساعد فمعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجدول مسبقاً بشكل جيد وطلب تدريباته

1 Verbal Collocations مثلزمات لفظية

do/take	extra practice	يقوم بتدريبات إضافية	get	easier	يسهل / يجعل ... أسهل
do	team sports	بممارسة رياضات جماعية	give	advice on	ينصح بخصوص
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة	go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت
feel	better	يشعر بتحسن	join	clubs	ينضم لأندية
	at home	يشعر بالراحة	make	friends	يكون صداقات
	connected to	لديه ارتباط بـ	make	a connection	يربط / يترك العلاقة
	like	يرغب في / يريد - يشعر كأنه	pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	so hard	تبدو صعبة/صعبة جداً	start	a conversation	يبدأ حوار
	stressed	يشعر بضغوط		a new school	ينتقل للمدرسة الجديدة

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام
connection (n)	ارتباط - اتصال
cool (adj)	علي الموضة / جميل / جذاب
	conclusion, end, ending
	link, relationship, relation
	fashionable

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
agree (v)	يرافق	disagree, refuse, turn down	يرفض
angry (adj)	غاضب	contented, satisfied, pleased	راضٍ - سعيد
borrow (v)	يستعير / يستلف	lend - lent	يسلف
busy (adj)	مشغول	free	حر - غير مشغول
forget - forgot - forgotten (v)	ينسى	remember (ed)	يتذكر
kind (adj)	طيب - عطف	unkind	سيء / قاسي
optional (adj)	اختياري	compulsory, obligatory	إجباري
personal (adj)	شخصي / خاص	public	عام

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	part of a team	عضو في فريق
address ... by name/title	يخاطب ... بالاسم / باللقب	pieces of advice	نصائح
ask ... to your house	تدعو ... لمنزلك	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
at breaktime	في الفسحة	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	revise for exams	يراجع للامتحانات
instead of	بدلاً من	show the reason for	يوضح السبب
make it easier	يجعل من الأسهل	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
nursing people	تتمريض / رعاية الناس	stressed about	معتزط بشأن
on my own	بمفردي	who else	من أيضاً

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	go out (with)	يخرج (مع)
ask for	يطلب	move to	ينتقل إلى
check ... for	يفحص ... من أجل	revise for	يراجع من أجل
come out	يخرج - تَصَدَّر	talk about	يتحدث عن
connect with	يرتبط بـ - يرتبط بـ	talk to	يتحدث إلى
focus on	يركز على		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

practice / practise

- practice (n) ممارسة - تدريب
- You need more practice to achieve more progress. تحقق المزيد من التقدم.
- practise (v) يحارس - يتدرب
- لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية الأمريكية تُستخدم (practice) كإسم وفعل:
- I practised / practiced speaking English by talking to my online English friends.
يؤدي تمرين
- do / take practice
- He did the guitar practice.

advise / advice / a tip

- advise (on / about / to) (v)
 - I advised her to work hard.
- advice (on / about) (n)
 - I gave him advice about his future.
- I gave him an / one advice. (x)
- I gave him some many / a few / several advices. (x)
- I gave him two / three advices. (x)
- I gave him some advice. (✓)
- I gave him a piece of advice. (✓)
- I gave him pieces of advice. (✓)
- tip - tips (n)
 - I gave him a tip about his future.

ينصح ... بخصوص / أن

نصيحة بخصوص

لا تلاحظ أن كلمة (advice) لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد

نصيحة - نصائح

noticeboard (n)

- noticeboard (n)
 - You can find the company's email on the noticeboard.
- bulletin board (n)
 - You can find the company's email on the bulletin board.

لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية البريطانية)

لوحة الإعلانات (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)

nursing (n)

- nursing (n)
 - It is known that nursing is very important for patients.
- nursery (n)
 - My wife had to find a nursery for our little daughter.
- nursery (n)
 - After Ahmed was born, he was put in a nursery because he had difficulty in breathing.
- nursery (n)
 - I went to a nursery to buy some plants for my garden.

التربية / رعاية المرضى

حضانة (مكان تعليمي)

حضانة

مشتل (مكان لزراعة النباتات والأشجار ليبيها)

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. I thanked my sister when she me to use her mobile.
 - a. allowed
 - b. let
 - c. borrowed
 - d. permitted
 - e. warned
2. "You should avoid what hurts you." The antonyms of "avoid" in this context are
 - a. improve
 - b. confront
 - c. ignore
 - d. face
 - e. follow
3. One can say that one practice.
 - a. sells
 - b. makes
 - c. admits
 - d. does
 - e. takes
4. You can say that someone has started a
 - a. police
 - b. new school
 - c. point of view
 - d. conversation
 - e. good marks
5. After some time, I started to feel and I calmed down.
 - a. at home
 - b. better
 - c. stressed
 - d. so hard
 - e. like
6. "My father is angry with my brother." The adjective 'angry' here is antonymous with
 - a. contented
 - b. discontented
 - c. satisfied
 - d. dissatisfied
 - e. hungry
7. You can address someone by their
 - a. dress
 - b. money
 - c. title
 - d. skill
 - e. name
8. I asked my father to give me
 - a. an advice
 - b. advice
 - c. advise
 - d. a piece of advice
 - e. a few advice

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He can't a connection between them.
 - a. do
 - b. make
 - c. have
 - d. take
2. I don't online until I have finished all my jobs.
 - a. do
 - b. go
 - c. have
 - d. make
3. I can't sleep. I so stressed
 - a. fight
 - b. feel
 - c. give
 - d. take

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

UNIT 4

4. _____ team sports helps you mix **تختلط** with others and be sociable **إحساني**.
5. You need to check your essay _____ mistakes.
6. Here's _____ advice on how to speak English well.
7. I spend a nice time _____ my cousins in the countryside.
8. Civilized **مُحَضَّر** people show respect _____ diversity.
9. We went to a _____ to buy flowers. **السوّاح - المرافقة - ٢٠٢٠**
10. You need some more _____ to be better at goalkeeping.
11. _____ patients in hospitals is an important job.

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A. New in town

(SB page 43)

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the paper⁽¹⁾ and pens you need. You're wearing⁽²⁾ cool⁽³⁾ new clothes. But, you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. Starting at a new school feels⁽⁴⁾ so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to feel stressed⁽⁵⁾, but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ورق
- (2) يرتدى
- (3) جميل / جذاب
- (4) يبدو / يُعطي إحساس
- (5) مضغوط (نفسياً)

Don't take it for granted⁽⁶⁾ that other students will start a conversation.⁽⁷⁾ Ask other people questions about themselves. Everyone likes talking about themselves. Try⁽⁸⁾ asking them about their favourite⁽⁹⁾ subjects⁽¹⁰⁾ or which sports they like and don't ask too many personal⁽¹¹⁾ questions.

You can only make friends⁽¹²⁾ if you spend⁽¹³⁾ time with them! The best way to do this is to join⁽¹⁴⁾ clubs or do team sports⁽¹⁵⁾ you like. Go online⁽¹⁶⁾ or look at the noticeboard⁽¹⁷⁾ at your school and find out what's happening. If you're part of a team, your teammates⁽¹⁸⁾ will feel connected⁽¹⁹⁾ to you and that connection⁽²⁰⁾ could become a friendship.⁽²¹⁾

While you're busy⁽²²⁾ talking to other students, don't forget⁽²³⁾ to study. Remember⁽²⁴⁾ to do your homework, so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

- (6) يكون على ما يظن
- (7) ابدأ من انفسك به
- (8) محادثة
- (9) يجذب - يحاول
- (10) مفضل
- (11) موضوعات
- (12) شخصي
- (13) يُكون صداقات
- (14) ينضم
- (15) ينضم إلى
- (16) رياضات جماعية
- (17) يدخل على الإنترنت
- (18) لوحة الإعلانات
- (19) زملاء الفريق
- (20) مرتبط
- (21) الارتباط
- (22) صداقة
- (23) مشغول
- (24) ينسى
- (25) يتذكر

B. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (SB page 44)
Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school!
 Dear Aunt⁽¹⁾ Carol,

I think it is difficult to make friends. I don't have any friends at my school. I am always on my own⁽²⁾ at break-time⁽³⁾. Yesterday, I talked to a girl in my class. I asked her if she wanted to do some homework with me, but she said no.

I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عمّة / خالة
- (2) وحيد
- (3) وقت الفسحة

C. To : problems@teen-magazine.com (SB page 44)
Subject : Help! I'm really stressed!

Dear Aunt Carol,
 I always work very hard at school, but I'm really stressed⁽¹⁾ about some exams⁽²⁾ I have next week.

The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very challenging. The last exam is in a subject⁽³⁾ I'm not very good at. I've spent a lot of time studying in the library this week, but that hasn't helped me feel better.

I need some advice about how to relax⁽⁴⁾, please.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مضغوط
- (2) امتحانات
- (3) موضوع / مادة
- (4) يسترخي

2 Workbook Texts

A. If you want to pass ⁽¹⁾ your exams, my advice is to always do your homework. Remember the information that your teacher gives you about the exam because it will help you. For a week or two before any exams, don't go out with your friends. Save ⁽²⁾ your money and do some extra ⁽³⁾ practice instead. It'll be really useful!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) اجتاز
- (2) يوفر - يمدد
- (3) زائد - إضافي

B. It is not easy to be a teenager ⁽¹⁾ and students often need some help when they are at school. So, what problems do they have? Some students feel like ⁽²⁾ they don't have time to revise ⁽³⁾ for exams. They can also feel stressed about the work they get for homework.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُراهق
- (2) يشعر كأنه
- (3) يُراجع

So, who can they ask for some advice? They can always ask a teacher or their family. If they have a good friend, he or she can help too.

Part IV Language



شاهد وتعلم

تتويج هام
تحتوي الوحدة على قاعدتين رئيسيتين، لذلك تم تقسيم الشرح إلى جزئين مستقلين كل منهما له تدريباته الخاصة

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

1 Countable Nouns: الأسماء المعدودة

- 1 الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمعا بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل:
- a girl → girls
 - an egg → eggs
 - a bus → buses
 - a library → libraries

1 هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل:

Singular مفرد	Plural جمع
child	children أطفال
crisis	crises أزمات
datum	data معلومات
foot	feet أقدام
goose	geese أوز
man	men رجال
medium	media وسائل الإعلام
mouse	mice فئران
oasis	oases واحات
ox	oxen ثيران
phenomenon	phenomena ظواهر
tooth	teeth أسنان
woman	women نساء

2 قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الـ a / an:

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
one	- One student got the full mark.
every / each	- Every player in the team should train hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
this / that	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

3 قبل الأسماء الجمع يمكن أن نستخدم الـ some / any / many / a few / a lot of / several / two / three / lots of / many / a lot of:

- these هؤلاء - those أولئك - some بعض - any أي - many كثير - a few قليل - a lot of كثير من - lots of كثير من - several عددهم - two - three
- ex. - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

2 Uncountable Nouns:

1. الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد. وتشمل ما يلي

1. Liquids السوائل

water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.

2. Gases الغازات

oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.

3. Meals الوجبات

breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects

history - mathematics - physics الفيزياء - biology الأحياء ... etc.

5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. Sports الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron الحديد - lime stone الحجر الجيري - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain ... etc.

10. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة

honesty امانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية - confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم - evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر etc.

11. Other nouns

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish - equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work - clothing الملابس - electricity الكهرباء - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب - luggage امتعة - machinery ماكينات - news - information - oil - advice - water - music - bread - cloth.... etc.

1. نستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that.....

ex. - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

2. لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المعدود :

ex. - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

3. يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

ex. - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

4. الأسماء غير المعدودة يأتي معها فعل مفرد :

ex. - Meat is cooked better at home.
- Has milk got a lot of proteins ?
- Does exercise make you healthy ?

Quantifiers:

- 1. a lot of - lots of** + كثير من + plural جمع - uncountable لا يعد

تستخدم (a lot of / lots of) في الإجابات مع الأسماء التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد

ex. - I have a lot / lots of books.
- She bought a lot / lots of sugar.
- 2. many** + كثير من - عدد + plural جمع

تأتي قبل اسم يعد في صيغة الجمع وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام

ex. - Have you got many books?
- Yes, I have got a lot of books.
- No, I haven't got many books.
- 3. much** + كثير من + uncountable لا يعد

تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتفضل في النفي والاستفهام

ex. - Did you drink much coffee?
- Yes, I drank a lot of coffee.
- No, I didn't drink much coffee.
- 4. a few - few** + قليل + plural جمع

a few = some / a small number
few = not many / almost none

تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل

ex. - There are a few people sitting at the back of the hall.
- He has few interests outside his work.
- 5. a little - little** + قليل + uncountable لا يعد

a little = some / a small amount
little = not much / almost nothing

تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة

ex. - There is a little cheese in the fridge. I'll make you a sandwich.
- I have little money in my pocket. I need to borrow some.
- 6. some** بعض

تستخدم (some) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية:

 - 1. Affirmative** الإجابات

ex. - There are some apples in the kitchen.
- The doctor gave me some medicine.

- 2. Offering** الأستلة في حالة تقديم عروض

ex. - Would you like some sandwiches and some juice?
- 3. Request** الأستلة في حالة الطلب

ex. - Can you give me some paper and some pens?
- 7. any** أي

تستخدم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد في الحالات التالية:

- 1. Negative** النفي

ex. - He didn't have any sandwiches or any juice.
- 2. Interrogative** الاستفهام

ex. - Is there any cheese in the fridge?
- 3. hardly any = almost no**

ex. - There is hardly any milk left.
- 4. any at all**

ex. - I don't have any money at all.

- لاحظ ما يلي:

فعل منفي + any = فعل مثبت + no

ex. - He hasn't got any friends. = He has got no friends.

اسم + no + verb to be + منفي = اسم + verb to be

ex. - I am not a teacher. = I am no teacher.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- عندما تربط كلمة (and) اسمين أو ضميرين فإن الفعل بعدهما يكون جمعاً في كل الاحوال:

- Meat and chicken are sources of protein.
- You and I have to leave early.
- الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول مفرد أو لا تعد هي (is / was / has / (inf. + s / es / ies):

- This man is kind.
- The car was repaired.
- Milk makes us healthy.
- الأفعال التي تستخدم مع فاعل أو مفعول جمع هي (are / were / have / infinitive):

- These men are kind.
- The cars were repaired.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

يمكن أن تُستخدم (many - much) في الجملة المثبتة في الحالات التالية :
 1. تُستخدم (many - much) في الجمل المثبتة إذا جاء قبلها ما يلي :

so / very / as / too + much

- I have **so much work** to do.
- She has put **too much salt** in the soup.

so / as / too / a good / a great + many

- I saw **too many people** in the street.
- He has **so many friends** on Facebook.

ب. إذا كانت many / much فاعل الجملة أو تصف فاعل الجملة :

- **Many students** find maths difficult.
- = **Many** find maths difficult.

بعض الأسماء لها نفس الشكل في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى المقصود :

طائرة - طائرات aircraft / سمكة - سمك fish / غزال - غزالان deer / خروف - غنم sheep / مركبة فضاء - مركبات فضاء spacecraft

- **A deer** is running away from a tiger.
- **Some deer** are standing in the shade of a tree.

عند استخدام the قبل صفة دون وجود موصوف تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع وتأخذ دائما فعل جمع :

المصابين بالصمم the deaf / المعاقين the disabled / الأغنياء the rich / الفقراء the poor

- **The poor** are in need of our help.
- = **Poor people** are in need of our help.

هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع وليس لها صيغة مفرد مثل :

cattle	ماشية	pliers	زردية
clothes	ملابس	police	الشرطة
congratulations	مبارك	scissors	مقص
glasses	نظارة	shorts	بنطلون قصير
jeans	بنطلون جينز	trousers	بنطلون
people	الناس		

- **Your clothes** are dirty.
- **Many congratulations**, Rody.

6. الأسماء المكونة من جزئين مكملين لبعضهما البعض دائما تأخذ فعل جمع (الأمثلة في الجدول السابق) :

- **My glasses** were broken yesterday.
- **Your trousers** are very fashionable.

ويمكن استخدام (a pair of) قبل الأسماء المكونة من جزئين وفي هذه الحالة يكون الفعل مفرد أو جمع حسب كلمة (pair) :

- **A pair of sunglasses** was on the table.
- **Five pairs of socks** were bought for me.

7. بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل :

Uncountable (لا تُعد)		Countable (تُعد)	
business	عمل	a business - businesses	شركة / مشروع
chicken	لحم الدجاج	a chicken - chickens	دجاجة
coffee	قهوة	a coffee - coffees	فنجان قهوة
cold	البرد عموما	a cold - colds	نزلة برد
experience	خبرة	an experience - experiences	تجربة حياتية
glass	الزجاج	a glass - glasses	كوب زجاجي
hair	الشعر	a hair - hairs	شعرة
iron	الحديد	an iron - irons	مكواة
light	الضوء	a light - lights	مصباح كهربائي
orange	اللون البرتقالي	an orange - oranges	برتقال
paper	ورق الكتابة	a paper - papers	جريدة / وثيقة
time	الوقت	a time - times	مرة

- I don't like **orange**. I like green.
- I ate **an orange**.
- Iron conducts heat and electricity.
- I need **an iron** to press my shirt.

8. يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالاتي :

- أ. استخدام (a bit - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه في المفرد وفي الجمع (bits - pieces) :
- She gave me a piece (a bit) of advice.
- She gave me pieces (bits) of advice.

ب. استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل :

A tube of toothpaste	أنبوبة معجون أسنان	A slice of meat	شريحة لحم
A box of matches	علبة كبريت	A loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
A sheet of paper	فوخ ورق	A grain of sand	حبة رمل
A drop of water	قطرة ماء	A bottle of milk	زجاجة حليب
A glass of lemonade	كوب عصير ليمون	A bar of soap / chocolate	قطعة صابون / شوكولاتة
A jar of jam	برطمان مربى		
A lump of sugar	مكعب سكر		

ج. وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة :

- four sheets of paper
- six jars of jam
- two slices of meat
- five cups of coffee
- five pairs of shoes
- two loaves of bread
- six bars of chocolate

General Exercise On Language

Apply

• التدرجات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Ahmed bought a lot of for his new flat.
a. new furnitures b. new furniture c. a new furniture d. furnitures
2. Yara asked me for advice about how to study well.
a. a b. an c. a few d. some
3. Can you give me sandwiches?
a. little b. a c. some d. any
4. Hassan earns money. He is in need of your help.
a. little b. many c. a few d. much
5. How meat do you need, Madam?
a. long b. many c. much d. often
6. How kilos of meat do you need, Madam?
a. long b. many c. much d. often

7. Hossam doesn't like city life as there's always too much
a. voices b. noise c. cars d. shops
8. Will you buy a of toothpaste for me, honey?
a. piece b. glass c. tube d. plate
9. people live in the country today than in the past.
a. Little b. Less c. Few d. Fewer
10. I can hear too many in the living room. Do you have guests?
a. noise b. sounds c. voice d. voices
11. I've had so many jobs to do and so time.
a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
12. There three pairs of scissors in the drawer.
a. is b. are c. was d. has
13. How do you have?
a. much money b. few money c. money d. many money
14. He bought blue shorts.
a. a b. an c. some d. any
15. There plenty of sugar but we need some more coffee.
a. is b. are c. was d. were
16. He gave the police a lot of about the criminal.
a. few information b. an information
c. informations d. information
17. I don't have time to speak to you. I have to leave right now.
a. few b. much c. no d. many
18. My trousers some holes in them.
a. has b. have c. is d. are
19. Can you help me with my ?
a. luggages b. baggages c. a baggage d. luggage
20. Could I have only orange to eat?
a. some b. no word c. many d. an
21. There a lot of people who are interested in what you are doing.
a. is b. was c. have d. are
22. I gave Rodayna advice about doing better at English.
a. an b. some c. any d. a few
23. there many hotels in Aswan?
a. Has b. Was c. Are d. Had
24. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take photographs.
a. a b. some c. any d. many

25. Her clothes to be ironed.
 a. has needed b. needs c. need d. is needing
26. There only a little accommodation available in this hotel.
 a. are b. were c. do d. is
27. We met interesting people at the party.
 a. some b. any c. much d. a little
28. Ashraf has a lot of good
 a. an idea b. idea c. ideas d. some ideas
29. I haven't got money left. I need to borrow some.
 a. a few b. many c. little d. much
30. I must buy some bread. I hardly have left in the kitchen.
 a. much b. any c. many d. some
31. Two hundred pounds enough for today's spending.
 a. are b. have c. is d. were
32. Try to reduce the of cups of tea you drink a day.
 a. amount b. quantity c. number d. some
33. There is juice for everyone to drink a little.
 a. too much b. too many c. little d. enough
34. There aren't in this town. Only two.
 a. some hotels b. any hotels c. many hotels d. much hotels
35. The money of the books on the table.
 a. are b. were c. has d. is
36. There aren't seats for everybody. Some people will have to sit on the floor or stand!
 a. all b. much c. any d. enough
37. How are coming to the party?
 a. many peoples b. many people c. much people d. any people
38. The police questioning some people.
 a. is b. was c. are d. have
39. He failed to carry out his duties as a manager as he didn't have
 a. many experience b. few experiences
 c. some experiences d. much experience
40. congratulations! I'm very happy to hear your good news.
 a. A b. Any c. Much d. Many

41. There wasn't traffic on the road. Only a few private cars.
 a. many b. much c. little d. a few
42. My are in my bag.
 a. a glass b. pair of glasses c. glass d. glasses
43. A: How sugar do you want in your coffee? - B: Two spoons.
 a. much b. many c. little d. few
44. Those sheep fat.
 a. is b. are c. was d. has been
45. There a lot of rubbish in the kitchen.
 a. is b. are c. has d. were
46. My reading glasses missing.
 a. had b. was c. is d. are
47. This poor woman has
 a. child b. a few child c. little children d. much children
48. We hardly heard news of him since he left the company.
 a. any b. some c. many d. much
49. Mathematics not very easy to understand.
 a. are b. were c. is d. has
50. Knowledge of foreign languages necessary.
 a. is b. are c. have d. were

2 Check your understanding

51. "Little children travel on the train for free." This means
 a. not many children travel on the train for free
 b. a few children travel on the train for free
 c. little number of children travel on the train for free
 d. young children travel on the train for free
52. "I have got no money left." I mean that
 a. I have little money left b. I have very little money left
 c. I don't have any money left d. I have some money left
53. "Ali is not a doctor." Which of the following gives the same meaning?
 a. Ali is no doctor. b. Ali has no job.
 c. Ali doesn't like doctors. d. Ali is a professor.
54. Some people like watching basketball, but prefer football.
 a. any b. many c. people d. everyone



Part 1

Vocabulary

تدرب على حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية مع مراعاة النطق (الوجهة الأولى) في العنصرين

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bully(ed) (v)	تطغى - تطغى	bully(n)	معتزة
bullying(n)	التطغى - تطغى	bullying(n)	التعرض
bullyphone(n)	الخطبة - الخطبة	bullyphone(n)	برنامج يُشترك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً
cheat(ed) (v - n)	غش - غش	police(d) (v)	يفرض الأمن والاضطراب
cheating(n)	الغش	police(n)	الشرطة
nurse(d) (v)	تعرض - تعرض	policing(n)	فرض الأمن والاضطراب

من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - حفظ المفردات **باللون** - بمراعاتها بالنطق

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

behave(d) (v)	تصرف ارتكك	laugh(ed) (v/n)	ضحك - ضحكة
concerned(adj)	مبتد - له اهتمام	list(ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يضع في قائمة
copy(ed) (n - v)	نسخ	lonely(adj)	وحيد - متعزل
debate(d) (n - v)	مناظرة - مناقشة	nasty(adj)	فج - ذميم
effect(n)	أثر	negative(adj)	سلبى
fight - fought (v)	مقاتل / يتشاجر مع	positive(adj)	إيجابي
hide(d) (v)	يخفي - يخفي	rucksack(n)	حقبة الظهر
hide - hid - hidden (v)	يخفي - يخفي	scared(adj)	مزعزج
highlight(ed) (n - v)	الجرء - الأهم - أبرز	social media(n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
humble(d) (n - v)	معتد - يستفيد	welcome(d) (v)	يؤحب

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من مواقع التعلم المستخدمة - كما وردت

Memorise	Understand
bully(ed) (v) يتطغى - تطغى	to threaten بهدف to hurt someone or frighten يخيف them, especially someone smaller or weaker
bully(n) بطغى - متطغى	someone who uses their strength قوة or power to frighten يخيف or hurt يؤذي someone who is weaker أضعف
bullying(n) البططجة - التطغى	the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker
cheat(ed) (v) يغش	to act in a dishonest غير أمينة way in order to gain an advantage, especially خاصة in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheat(n) غشاش	someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
cheating(n) الغش	acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
nurse(d) (v) تعرض - تعرض	to look after someone who is ill or injured
nurse(n) ممرضة	someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital
nursing(n) التعرض	the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old
phone-in(n)	a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary عادي people expressing يعبر عن opinions or asking questions over the telephone
police(d) (v) يفرض الأمن والاضطراب	to keep control على سيطر over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property الممتلكات are protected محمي, using a police force قوة
police(n) الشرطة	the people who work for an official organisation هيئة التي عملت على المحرمين whose job is to catch criminals القانونيين and make sure that people obey يُطع the law
suffix	a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1 Key vocabulary

1. His addiction إدمان has turned him into أصبح and a liar. كاذب
 a. cheat b. cheating c. a cheat d. cheated
2. Unfortunately, a lot of teenagers are يتعرضون at school.
 a. powered b. respected c. greeted d. bullied
3. ليس allowed at this school as using muscles or power to hurt others is prohibited.
 a. Pulling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull
4. Students who فشلوا in this exam will be excluded يُستبعدون and will face severe punishment.
 a. achieve b. sheet c. cheat d. succeed
5. The use of guns and other weapons must be ممنوعة.
 a. listed b. closed c. connected d. policed
6. Those يخيفون frighten the poor workers to work for them.
 a. bully b. bullies c. bullying d. bully's
7. Don't look at the dictionary during the exam. That's ممنوع.
 a. cheats b. cheat c. cheating d. cheated
8. A good woman رعت my uncle when he was ill in hospital.
 a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
9. A good رعت looked after my uncle when he was ill in hospital.
 a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
10. She chose تربو as a profession because she wanted to help patients.
 a. nursery b. nursing c. nurse d. nursed
11. The الرجل managed to arrest the murderer.
 a. policy b. policing c. policed d. police
12. السياسة is one of the most important things in societies.
 a. Policy b. Policing c. Policed d. Police

2 Important Vocabulary

13. Staying up late may have an التأثير on your performance the next day.
 a. affect b. effect c. impacted d. effective

14. It's not wise to تواجه bullies because they have nothing to lose.
 a. call b. populate c. fight d. avoid
15. Although I live in a big city where there are lots of people, I often find myself feeling الوحدة.
 a. only b. unique c. single d. lonely
16. Sama أخفت her father's car keys in her bag.
 a. wore b. hid c. saluted d. fought
17. Tell this unkind person that he is not مقبول in our organisation.
 a. personal b. concerned c. physical d. welcome
18. In this programme, we have two scientists to تتناقش the issue.
 a. debate b. believe c. think d. agree
19. I can't give you my opinion about this player as I am not مفيد.
 a. concerned b. useful c. fortunate d. favourite
20. تطبيقات have made communication easier.
 a. Facebook b. Twitter c. WhatsApp d. Social media
21. Our company offered to تستضيف the conference in a five-star hotel.
 a. stress b. highlight c. host d. express

3 Definitions

22. A/An المتسلط is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful.
 a. expert b. bully c. archaeologist d. role model
23. To التهديد is to threaten to hurt someone or frighten them, especially someone smaller or weaker.
 a. bully b. promise c. pull d. dare
24. A/An اللاحقة is a group of letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.
 a. noun b. adverb c. suffix d. prefix
25. التسلط is the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker.
 a. Bullying b. To bully c. A bully d. Bully
26. التحايل is someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
 a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating
27. التحايل means to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
 a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating

28. means acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in a game, a competition, an exam, etc.
 a. A cheat b. To cheat c. Cheat d. Cheating
29. is someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured, usually in a hospital.
 a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse
30. is the job or skill of looking after people who are ill, injured, or old.
 a. Nursing b. Nurse c. To nurse d. A nurse
31. A is a radio or television programme in which you hear ordinary people expressing opinions or asking questions over the telephone.
 a. talk show b. phone-in c. programme d. film
32. To is to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected, using a police force.
 a. police b. policed c. the police d. policing

Part II Vocabulary Study

تولوية ساعد فعلكم على الارتفاع بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء فسيفاً بشكل جيد وحل تدرجته

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	different to / from	have	an effect on	له أثر على
	not welcome here		exams	لديه امتحانات
	right to		a class debate	يُنظَّم مناظرة بين الطُّلاب
feel	safe	make	a class vote	يجري اقتراع بين الطُّلاب
	the bullies		... clear	يُوضَّح
get	good marks	take	a photo	يلتقط صورة
	along with		turns to	يتبادلون الدوار لكي
give	an opinion			يعطي رأياً

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
cheat(ed) (v)	deceive, trick
concerned (adj)	interested, involved, affected, connected
nurse(d) (v)	care for, take care of, look after
police(d) (v)	control, keep in order, keep under control, regulate

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	المعكس
effect(n)	أثر	cause, reason	سبب
exciting(adj)	مثير	boring	ممل
positive(adj)	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
right(adj)	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d) (v)	يُنقذ	endanger	يُعرض للخطر
save(d) (v)	يُدخِّر / يوفر	waste	يُهَيِّر - يُبدد
with (prep. - adv)	بـ - ذو	without	بدون

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونياً	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعاً نضحك
angry with	غاضب من	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
any more	مرة أخرى	on the line	على الخط (الهاتف)
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
cheating in exams	الغش في الامتحانات	save money	يوفر مال
debate the good things and the bad	يناقش إيجابيات وسلبيات	sure about	متأكد من
things about	يجد نصيحة لـ	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
find advice for	جيد في	where to go	أين يذهب
good at	مفيد/صالح لـ		
good for			

ALTFWOK.com موقع التفوق

5 Verb + Preposition **فعل + حرف جر**

get along (with)	يتعاقد جيداً (مع)	point at / to / towards	يشير إلى
get to	يصل إلى	reply to	يرد على
list ... in	يذكر ... في	say ... about	يقول ... عن

General Exercise **On Vocabulary study**

• MCQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- The antonyms of the word 'advantages' are
 a. merits b. pros c. disadvantages
 d. benefits e. demerits
- The class we had was interesting.
 a. debate b. device c. vote
 d. bully e. effect
- I was asked to give
 a. the bullies b. a problem c. advice
 d. a sport e. an opinion
- Positive is to negative as is to endangered.
 a. safe b. save c. danger
 d. endanger e. secure
- "Smoking has bad effects on health." The noun 'effects' here is the antonym of
 a. cause b. result c. outcome
 d. reason e. product
- "Parents are always concerned with their children's future." The adjective 'concerned' in this context is a synonym for
 a. contented b. connected c. fashionable
 d. cool e. interested
- "It is a crime to cheat others." The verb 'cheat' here is synonymous with
 a. trek b. track c. trick
 d. deceive e. chat

- The little boy pointed the picture of the bully who frightened him.
 a. at b. of c. off
 d. to e. from
- It took me about half an hour to my home.
 a. arrive at b. go out c. get to
 d. come out e. talk to

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Tourism plays a role in our national income.
 a. positive b. passive c. negative d. destructive
- My sister and I usually turns to do the washing up. **غيب الأثرى**
 a. are b. feel c. give d. take
- He left his job because the manager told him that he not welcome there.
 a. was b. felt c. gave d. took
- "You must not waste your time." In this sentence, the words 'not waste' can be best replaced by
 a. rescue b. spend c. save d. waist
- "This area is policed by the army." **الجيش** The verb "policed" here means
 a. disagreed b. controlled c. nursed d. freed
- Optional and compulsory are
 a. opposites b. antonyms c. synonyms d. a & b
- "She nurses her old mother." "Nurses" here is a synonym of
 a. looks for b. takes turns c. looks after d. takes off
- Wait a moment and I will tell you where good clothes.
 a. to buy b. buy c. do you buy d. b & c

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

9. Don't believe everything people post social media.
 a. of b. on c. out d. down
10. I sometimes call this radio phone-
 a. on b. in c. at d. off
11. As as I'm concerned, money is not his only problem.
 a. soon b. well c. far d. a & c

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

C. Maged : Hassan is a good friend. Last week, (WB page 112)

however⁽¹⁾, he borrowed⁽²⁾ my phone without⁽³⁾ asking. Then he dropped⁽⁴⁾ the phone. Fortunately⁽⁵⁾, the phone did not break⁽⁶⁾, but I was very angry⁽⁷⁾ with him. Now, he's not talking to me.

Omar : Fawzi always gets good marks⁽⁸⁾ at school, but he is not always a good student. He often tries to make us all laugh.⁽⁹⁾ Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom⁽¹⁰⁾. Now, he doesn't want to make us laugh any more⁽¹¹⁾.

Hoda : There is a girl in my class and she always says unkind⁽¹²⁾ things about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me on social media.⁽¹³⁾ Last week, she took a photo of me without asking. Today, she was pointing⁽¹⁴⁾ at me and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy.

- Check Vocabulary**
- (1) مع ذلك
 - (2) يستعير / يستلف
 - (3) بدون
 - (4) يسقط
 - (5) لحسن الحظ
 - (6) يتكسر
 - (7) غاضب
 - (8) درجات
 - (9) يضحك
 - (10) حجرة الدراسة
 - (11) بعد الآن / مرة أخرى
 - (12) سيء / قاسي
 - (13) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
 - (14) يشير

D. Salem : Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school in another⁽¹⁾ town ? (WB page 113)



Sayed : As far as I'm concerned⁽²⁾ it can be a good thing. You can meet new people and learn different things.

Salem : I'm not so sure about that. I think I'd find it very difficult at a new school. Everything would be new and different⁽³⁾.

Sayed : I agree, but new things can be exciting, and you'll soon have new friends too.

Salem : In my opinion⁽⁴⁾ your old friends are your best friends.

Sayed : Yes, but I think, you can never have too many friends. One day, your new friends will be your best old friends !

Salem : That's true⁽⁵⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) أخرى
- (2) بقدر اهتمامي
- (3) مختلف
- (4) من رأيي
- (5) هنا صحيح

2 Listening Texts

A. Radio phone - in about bullying (SB page 46)



Radio show host : Good evening, everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, we're talking about bullying⁽¹⁾. Unfortunately⁽²⁾, a lot of teenagers⁽³⁾ are bullied at school, and this can have some very negative effects⁽⁴⁾ on them.



We're going to talk to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, who is being bullied. Ali... are you on the line⁽⁵⁾?

Ali : Hi Seleem. How are you?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بلطجة / تمهر
- (2) لسوء الحظ
- (3) المراهقين
- (4) آثار سلبية
- (5) متصل / على الخط

Radio show host : I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

Ali : I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid my rucksack⁽⁶⁾. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now!

Radio show host : Oh no! That's terrible. Did you tell a teacher?

Ali : No, I didn't. I was too scared. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

Radio show host : Well, Ali. I really think you should talk to a teacher. Your teacher can talk to the bullies⁽⁷⁾ and make it clear⁽⁸⁾ that they shouldn't behave⁽⁹⁾ like this. If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.

Ali : Yes... you're right... There's one teacher that I get along well⁽¹⁰⁾ with. I'll talk to him.

- (6) حقيبة الظهر
- (7) المتنمرين / المتنمرين
- (8) يوضح
- (9) يتصرف / يسلك
- (10) يتسامح مع / يتعاطف مع

B. Ola and Lina giving their opinions (SB page 47)

Ola : So, do you think moving to⁽¹⁾ a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for teenagers?

Lina : As far as I'm concerned⁽²⁾, it's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to make new friends⁽³⁾.

Ola : I'm not so sure about⁽⁴⁾ that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations with⁽⁵⁾ them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

Lina : That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time⁽⁶⁾. You'll be really lonely⁽⁷⁾ for the first few months.

Ola : In my opinion, it's a good experience⁽⁸⁾ to have because it makes you stronger⁽⁹⁾.

Lina : I know that it can make people stronger, but I would prefer to just stay with the people I know.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الانتقال إلى
- (2) على حد علمي / في رأيي
- (3) يكون صداقات جديدة
- (4) متأكد من
- (5) يبدأ حديث مع
- (6) يستغرق وقت
- (7) منعزل
- (8) تجربة جيدة
- (9) تجعلك قويًا

Part IV Language



Making new friends

Articles a / an and the with singular nouns :

a / an

تستخدم (a/an) في الحالات التالية :

1 قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذكره لأول مرة:
ex. - I saw a cat in front of the door.
- There is an apple on the table.

2 قبل اسم وظيفة معدود مفرد عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما
ex. - Mustafa is a doctor.
- My uncle is an astronaut.

3 قبل الاسم المعدود المفرد الدال على عدد :

a pair زوج - a couple زوج - a dozen دسنة - a hundred -
a thousand - a million...etc.

ex. - He paid a million dollars for this car.
4 مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والأمن :

ex. - 80 kilometres an hour ٨٠ كم في الساعة
- two days a week ١٠ جنيهات للكيلو 10 pounds a kilo - يومان في الأسبوع

5 قبل الصفة إذا سبقت اسم مفرد معدود :

ex. - We have got a new car.
6 للحظ أن (a - an) لا تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع و الأسماء غير المعدودة :

ex. - Cats eat fish and drink milk. (Not: A cats....)
- The bottle is full of oil. (Not: an oil....)

كيفية الاختيار بين (a/an) :

1 تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بصوت ساكن :

a table - a house - a boy - a girl - a doctor - a plant - a window etc.

2 تستخدم (a) قبل اسم مفرد يبدأ بالحروف (u - eu - ew) عندما تنطق كحرف (y) :

a university - a uniform - a union - a useful book -
a European team - a eweetc.

- ١ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد يعد بصوت متحرك :
 ex. - an egg / an orange / an apple / an eagle / an elephant.....etc.
- ٢ تستخدم (an) قبل اسم مفرد يعد يبدأ بحرف ساكن لا ينطق يليه صوت متحرك :
 ex. - an hour / an honest person.
- ٣ يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل اسم معدود مفرد لإعطاء تعريف للكلمات :
 ex. - A doctor is someone who works in a hospital to help and treat patients.
- ٤ قبل الاختصارات التي تنطق كحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف :
 ex. - My friend sent an SMS to me.
 - There is an "m" letter in the word "man".
- ٥ قبل كلمة (one) كصفة نستخدم (a) لأن (one) تبدأ بصوت ساكن :
 ex. - I found a one-dollar banknote on the floor.
 - This is a one-way street.

The

- نستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :
- ١ قبل اسم سبق ذكره في سياق الحديث :
 ex. - His father works in an office. The office is in the city centre.
 - She bought a book by Dickens yesterday. The book is called Oliver Twist.
- ٢ قبل اسم لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط :
 the sun - the moon - the sky - the country -
 the countryside - the ground - the world - the horizonetc.
- ex. - The moon goes around the Earth. (هناك قمر واحد وأرض واحدة)
- ٣ قبل اسم معروف للقاري، أو السامع :
 ex. - "Make the bed and open the window," said mum.
 (معروف بالنسبة لك أي فراش سترتب وأي نافذة ستفتح)
- ٤ قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية :
 the tallest - the oldest - the most beautiful - the least expensive -
 the first - the second - the millionth - the only - the last.....etc.
- ex. - That's the best film I've ever seen.
 - The Nile is the longest river in the world.
 - The first letter of the alphabet is A.

- لكن في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / ...'s) قبل صفات التفضيل والأعداد الترتيبية فلا نستخدم (the) :

- Nasser is my best friend. (Not: the best ...)
 - Omar is Sama's oldest uncle. (Not: the oldest ...)

٥ قبل أسماء المحيطات والبحار و معظم أسماء الأنهار و القنوات (لكن ليس قبل أسماء البحيرات):

- البحر المتوسط - the Mediterranean - المحيط الهادي the Pacific
 - قناة السويس the Suez Canal - نهر النيل the Nile - نهر الأمازون the Amazon
 Lake Nasser بحيرة ناصر - Lake Victoria بحيرة فيكتوريا etc.

٦ لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الدول :

- Egypt - Britain - France - Spain - Germany - Iraq etc.

- أما إذا احتوى اسم الدولة أو الهيئة على إحدى الكلمات التالية فهي تأخذ (the) :

(State - ولاية - مملكة - Kingdom - اتحاد - Union / Federation - جمهورية - Republic)

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| the Arab Republic of Egypt (the ARE) | جمهورية مصر العربية |
| the United Arab Emirates (the UAE) | الإمارات العربية المتحدة |
| the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia (the KSA) | المملكة العربية السعودية |
| the United States of America (the USA) | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية |
| the United Kingdom (the UK) | المملكة المتحدة |
| the United Nations (the UN) | الأمم المتحدة |

- Egypt is a great country.
 - The Arab Republic of Egypt is a great country.
 - و أيضا إذا كان اسم الدولة جمع فهو يأخذ (the) :

الفلبين the Philippines - هولندا the Netherlands

- لاحظ أنه كان في السابق يوضع (the) قبل أسماء هذه الدول ولكن حسب قائمة أسماء الدول في الأمم المتحدة لم يعد يسبق الاسم بـ (the) :

Lebanon - Ukraine - Yemen - Sudan

٧ تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء السلاسل الجبلية :

جبال روكي the Rocky Mountains - جبال الهيمالايا the Himalayas
 the Alps جبال الألبetc.

أما أسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ (the) :

Mount Everest قمة إفرست - Kilimanjaro جبل كليمنجارو etc.

ملحوظات إضافية Extra Notes

تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية أيضًا :

- 1 تستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد بعد للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام خاصة مع فصائل الحيوانات والطيور:
- The giraffe is my favourite animal.
- يستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:
- Giraffes are my favourite animals.

- 2 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة على النوع بوجه عام:
- The computer is the most important invention.
- لكن عند الحديث عن الأجهزة في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة :
- I have bought a tablet and a laptop. The tablet is white, but the laptop is black.

- 3 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الآلات الموسيقية المفردة مع أفعال مثل: (play / practise / learn / study / appreciate / listen to)
- Can you play the guitar ?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.
- أما عند الحديث عنها في أي سياق آخر نطبق القواعد العامة:
- My brother has a guitar and a piano. The guitar is old and doesn't work well.

- 4 تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (theatre / cinema / radio / post office / internet / shops) ولا نقصد مكان أو شيء محدد:
- Do you go to the theatre ?
- We listen to the news on the radio.

- 5 تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التي لا يتبعها أسم لتدل على اسم جمع دائما و تأخذ فعل جمع:
the rich / الأغنياء / the poor / الفقراء / the blind / المكفوفين / the disabled / المعاقين etc.
- The disabled are in need to our help.
- He is collecting money for the blind.

- 6 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأقاليم والمناطق :
the Middle East / the Far East / the north of Egypt ... etc.

- 7 تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الأماكن الجغرافية مثل :
الصحراء الكبرى / the Sahara / حوبي / the Gobi

8 تستخدم (the) غالبا قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة وصل أو الاسم المُعرّف بحرف الجر (of) :

- The man who lost his son was very sad.
- He opened the door of the room.

- لكن لاحظ أنه توجد استثناءات:

- Do you have a dictionary that I can borrow ?
(هنا يقصد بها أي قاموس (أحد القواميس)
- Ashraf told me about a man who can eat glass. (هنا يقصد بها أحد الرجال)

9 تستخدم (the) قبل العدد الذي يدل على فترة عشر سنوات :

التسعينيات / the nineties / الخمسينيات / the fifties

10 تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

الطقس / the weather / المناخ / the climate / الحكومة / the government / الشرطة / the police / الصحافة / the press / البيئة / the environment / الجيش ... etc.

11 تستخدم (the) مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة (صيغة كلما كلما):

- The more you practise, the better you get. كلما تدرت كلما تحسنت.

لا تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية :

1 لا تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الجمع إذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :

- Rabbits are nice animals. (not : the rabbits)
(هنا يقصد الأرانب بشكل عام)
- The rabbits in the garden have eaten the carrots.
(هنا الحديث عن مجموعة محددة من الأرانب)

2 لا تستخدم (the) قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية إذا كانت تستخدم للفرض الأساسي منها :

prison / school / university / college / church / hospital / market / court / mosque... etc.
- He went to university. He studies medicine there.

- أما إذا استخدم المكان لفرض آخر فيأخذ (the) :

- Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle.
(She didn't go there as a patient)

3 غالبا لا تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (bed/work/home) :

- He went to bed. - She left work. - I arrived home.

لا تستخدم (a - an - the) في الحالات التالية :

- 1 قبل أسماء المواد (الغامات) :
wood / wool / metal / milk / iron / plastic / meat etc.
- 2 قبل أسماء القارات :
Asia / Africa / Europe / North America etc.
- 3 قبل أسماء المدن :
Cairo / New York / London / Madrid etc.
- 4 قبل أسماء الوجبات :
- We have lunch at three o'clock. (Not: the lunch)
- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم (a/an/the) :
- The breakfast I ate yesterday was horrible.
- 5 قبل أسماء اللغات :
Arabic / English / Chinese / Turkish etc.
- لاحظ أنه إذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the) :
the English language / the French language
- 6 قبل أسماء المواد الدراسية :
mathematics / biology / political science
- 7 قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم شخص :
- King Ramses built a lot of temples. (Not: the king Ramses ...)
- President Sadat was a great politician. (Not: the President Sadat ...)
- 8 قبل كلمة (space) عندما تعني الفضاء :
- NASA sends spaceships into space.
- عندما نستخدم (the) قبل كلمة (space) فهي تعني مكان فارغ :
- The space in the class isn't enough for ten more students.
- 9 لا تستخدم (a/an/the) قبل الاسم المتبوع برقم تمييزي له :
- I booked seat 25 in carriage 2.

General Exercise **On Language** **Apply**

• التدرجات التالية فُرِّقَتْ بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصبُّحك هرم بلوم.

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. sun has been shining all day.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article
2. In today's lesson, we have known about a brave man. brave man's name is Hossam El-Rasheedy.
a. A b. An c. The d. No article

3. My grandma cannot walk easily, so she has to use stick.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
4. Salah is one of best footballers in the world.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
5. I've bought new computer.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. We're staying in room on the first floor of our large villa.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. The injured man was taken to a hospital. Doctors at hospital told him that he would be OK.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
8. My uncle was staying in a new hotel which overlooks Red Sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
9. This building is going to be tallest one in the area.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
10. His cousin is journalist. He works for a newspaper in Cairo.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
11. She wants to have holiday next to the sea.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
12. I had dream last night. In the dream, I was a bride عروسة in a white dress!
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
13. Adel is a space scientist. At the moment, he is studying moon.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. The best way for a person to get fit is to do exercises two or three times day.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. My friend is sportsman. He plays squash.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
16. He has meat and soup for lunch.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
17. Could you close front door, please?
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
18. There were no chairs, so we had to sit on the floor.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article
19. There are two cars parked outside, expensive one and a cheap one.
a. a b. an c. the d. no article

20. In my opinion, most important invention has been the mobile.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
21. The plane has made world a smaller place.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
22. Where is pen that I bought yesterday.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
23. Omar, man you and I met yesterday, is an honest man.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
24. Rokaya is very nice girl.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. mobile phone was invented in 1973.
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
26. The moon is round object that moves around a planet.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
27. We have a house with garden.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
28. When I leave school, I want to be tourist guide.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
29. It wasn't your fault. It was bad luck.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
30. She has Italian name.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
31. Rodayna gave me encouraging reply.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
32. When I was at school, I loved history.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
33. On our trip to America, we crossed Atlantic Ocean.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

2 Special cases

34. If the Earth had a blue moon and a white moon, I'd prefer white one.
 a. a b. an c. the d. some
35. Egypt has unique location in the world.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

36. There is going to be 300-seat dining room on the second floor of the hotel.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
37. water is essential for all people.
 a. A b. No article c. The d. An
38. There were two fashionable shirts in the shop. I chose one that was up to the latest fashion.
 a. an b. some c. a d. the
39. Yesterday, my father bought useful story. It had useful pieces of advice to follow.
 a. an b. a c. the d. no article
40. For lunch, I made an order for half chicken and some salad.
 a. some b. a c. the d. no article
41. I think exams we have next week will be difficult.
 a. the b. a c. an d. no article
42. My uncle will arrive on Sunday which is after my birthday.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
43. He gave me a pen and a ruler, but pen didn't work.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
44. When dealing with difficult situations, one should be patient.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
45. Come on, Rodayna. It is time to go to bed.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
46. We always go on holiday in July.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
47. They all went to lunch organized by their aunt.
 a. any b. an c. the d. no article
48. I remember day when we went to the seaside.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
49. I want you to choose day we can meet.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
50. A new spaceship will be sent into space next month.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

51. _____ space in my room is not enough for another bed.
 a. a b. an c. The d. no article
52. The Sun went down _____ horizon.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
53. Britain is _____ European country.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
54. You will find the information you need at the top of _____ page 41.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
55. Fear is _____ universal weakness.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
56. I dislike _____ towns, but I love the countryside.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
57. _____ pomegranates الرمان are good for health.
 a. A b. An c. The d. no article
58. Look at _____ oranges on that tree.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
59. My son has started _____ school this year.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
60. My father went to _____ school to meet my teachers.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
61. _____ youth play important roles in the progress تقدم of all nations الأمم.
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
62. _____ teachers in my school work hard.
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
63. For this job, you need _____ experience with the computer.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
64. I asked _____ professor Mohammed about his early life.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article

3 Check your understanding

65. "Doctors help people who feel sick." This means
 a. the doctors help people who are sick
 b. doctors help the sick
 c. a doctor helped the sick
 d. the sick need help

66. "People should help those who are homeless." This means
 a. people should help homeless
 b. people should help a homeless
 c. people should help the homeless
 d. people should have a home
67. "This film is exciting." I mean that
 a. this is an exciting film b. this is an excited film
 c. this film makes me exciting d. this film is excited
68. "All lions are meat-eating animals." This is the same meaning as
 a. the lions are meat-eaters b. the lions are meat-eating animals
 c. the lions eat meat d. the lion is a meat-eating animal
69. "He is hard working." What does this mean?
 a. He does work that is hard. b. He is hard-working person.
 c. He is a hard-working person. d. He hardly does any work.
70. "I can speak English well." This means
 a. I can speak an English well
 b. I can speak English language well
 c. I can speak an English language well
 d. I can speak the English language well
71. "China is the largest country in Asia." This sentence tells us that
 a. China is one of the largest countries in Asia
 b. China is a largest country in Asia
 c. China is Asia's largest country
 d. China is one of Asia's largest countries
72. "Hard work makes you more successful." What does this mean?
 a. If you work hardly, you will be more successful.
 b. Unless you work hardly, you won't be more successful.
 c. Hard work makes you less successful.
 d. The harder you work, the more successful you are.

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

Part I Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة Treasure Island / بالكتابة المتعددة اللغوية المودودة في الوحدة والواجب ما بين السطور والتي المخصص للطلاب المتقدمين **تدوين**

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية في قصة Treasure Island (كما يمكنك التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب) **تدوين**

blow a whistle	نفث صرارة	hold - held (v) (onto)	بشبهت به
branch (n)	فرع - غصن	low (adj)	منخفض
climb (ed) (v)	يسلق	mark (ed) (v)	يُعدّد - يُنمّن
climb out of	يسلق خارجاً من	marked (adj)	مُعدّد
close (to)	قريب - لمسق (م)	organise (d) (v)	يُنظّم
crest (n)	ساحل	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
count (ed) (v)	يعدّد - يُحصي	rocky (adj)	صخري
disease (n)	مرض	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	تعبيرات الوجه	thought (n)	فكرة
fight-fought (v)	يقاتل - يتشاجر	trust (ed) (n - v)	يثق - الثقة
forever (adv)	للأبد	whistle (d) (n - v)	صرارة - يُصفر

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
1. He fell off the horse and his arm.
a. shouted b. whistled c. blew d. hurt
 2. The fox has the ability to high walls.
a. build b. climb c. destroy d. guard
 3. You need to You look dead tired.
a. work b. hurry c. relax d. excite
 4. Don't leave petrol to a cooker or there will be a fire.
a. away b. close c. far d. distant
 5. Two of the sailors from the sinking boat managed to reach the
a. sure b. ocean c. sea d. shore

6. Her facial changed once she heard of her success.
a. expression b. experiment c. disease d. coast
7. The referee pointed to his, which means that the players can't play unless he blows it.
a. whistle b. red card c. yellow card d. ear peas
8. It is necessary to talk in a voice when you are in a library.
a. screaming b. shouting c. high d. low
9. I the students on the bus and found that we missed two of them.
a. taught b. counted c. learnt d. shouted
10. You'll do better. We all you.
a. doubt b. kill c. trust d. mark

Part II Grammatical Hints

Giving instructions

1 لإعطاء الأمر المُثبت (الفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

inf. المصدر +

- ex. - Stop.
- Remember to do your homework.
- Put your lunchbox in the bag.

لإعطاء قوة للمعنى أو لإعطاء نصيحة قوية لشخص مُفرب نستخدم (Always) قبل الصيغة السابقة :

- ex. - Always follow your parents' advice.

2 لإعطاء الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Don't - Never + inf. المصدر +

- ex. - Don't Stop.
- Don't forget to do your homework.
- Never break the law.

3 يمكن وضع الفندقي (المخاطب) في بداية أو نهاية الجملة كالتالي :

- ex. - Don't waste your time, Ahmed.
- Ahmed, don't waste your time.

Indefinite pronouns

1 يتم استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع :

(Someone / somebody - anyone / anybody - everyone / everybody - no one / nobody).

- ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who they are.
- Everybody has prepared themselves to the meeting.

ينطبق لفس الشيء، على الأسماء غير محددة الجنس التي تحمل التذكير والتأنيث مثل
 a child - a person - a teacher - a traveller ... etc.

ex. - A traveller has parked his car in front of my house. They must have entered the opposite restaurant.

يمكن استخدام ضمير مفرد مذكر مضافاً إليه ضمير مفرد مؤنث ليحل محل ضمير الجمع :
 ex. - Someone is knocking on the door. I'll see who he or she is.

يمكن استخدام ضمير مفرد مذكر فقط أو ضمير مفرد مؤنث فقط في حالة معرفة جنس الشخص الذي نتحدث عنه :
 ex. - This child will do better if he joins a school for boys only.

another

another + اسم مفرد آخر / أخرى

ex. - We found another shop in a small street.
 - I want another bag of macaroni, please.

another + (few - number: two, three,....)

ex. - Give me another two days to finish the report.
 - She has another few jobs to do.

other

other + اسم جمع أو اسم لا بعد آخرين / أخرين

ex. - Ahmed likes helping other people.
 - Any other knowledge will be available online.
 - ونستخدم (other) أيضا بعد الكلمات الآتية :

the - some - every - each - many - any - no - two, three,.....etc.

ex. - Five chairs will be in the office. The other chairs will be moved to the teachers' room.
 - Like any other child, Rodayna wants to play.

others [ضمير (تُحل محل فاعل أو مفعول) الآخرين

ex. - Some children like fish. Others prefer chicken.

compound adjectives with numbers

يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة :
 ex. - Omar is a forty-year-old man.

يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها :
 ex. - We're going on a two-day trip.

مع الأسماء الدالة على مسافة يمكن استخدام رقم وبعده تمييز جمع ينتهي بـ (s) كصفة :
 ex. - My work is an hour's drive from here.
 - We have three hours' walk every weekend.

في حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s) في حالة المفرد و (s) في حالة الجمع :
 ex. - In two weeks' time, I will travel to Aswan.

own

on + (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) + own = alone
 = بمفرده - دون مساعدة without help

ex. - I did the housework on my own.
 = I did the housework alone / without help.

of + (my - his - her - its - your - our - their) + own ملكه - خاص به

ex. - I have a car of my own.

right

be right to = have the right to محق في

ex. - She is right to ask for a break.
 - She has the right to ask for a break.

Asking for and Giving Advice

Asking for Advice طلب النصيحة

Can you give me some advice about ...? ...?
 Can I ask your advice about ...? ...?
 ما الذي يمكنك فعله فيما يتعلق بـ ...? ...?

Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة

You should / shouldn't + inf. ... أن / ينبغي
 You ought to / ought not to + inf. ... أن / ينبغي
 لو كنت مكانك ، (ما) كنت ... I'd (had) better + inf. ... من الأفضل لك أن
 I advise you (not) to ... أنصحك أن / أنصحك أن
 أفضل شيء تفعله هو أن / ألا ... The best thing to do is (not) to ...

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The two girls stopped talking to one
a other b another c others d the others
2. The police could arrest two of the robbers and shot one of them.
a the other b others c another d else
3. I'd like to know about Seif's desire to help
a others b other c another d the other
4. You can take this pen. I have one.
a other b others c the other d another
5. You can take this pen. I will use one.
a other b others c the other d an other
6. You can take this pen. I have two ones.
a other b others c the other d another
7. You can take this pen. I have two ones.
a other b others c the other d another
8. Some people like meat. like chicken or fish.
a Other b Others c The other d Another
9. Amir made this cupboard his own. I didn't help him.
a from b off c of d on
10. Amir has a cupboard his own. No one else uses it.
a from b off c of d on
11. You both should do this activity on own.
a you b your c yours d yourselves
12. A: Who joined the trip? B: I did.
a two b else c too d either
13. You right to slow down when you drive on these ups and downs.
a are b is c has d have

14. You the right to ask for help.
a are b is c has d have
15. sure your tablet is updated
a To make b Making c Make d Made
16. Never your secrets to anybody.
a telling b tell c told d to tell
17. Rokaya is a nine- - old girl.
a year b years c years' d year's
18. Someone rang the doorbell. When I opened the door, there.
a he was b she wasn't c they weren't d I wasn't
19. Somebody taken my glasses.
a have b has c is d are

Part III Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. **تنويه**

* Write an email of about 150 words to your friend Reda about "Something that makes you stressed."

To : reda2020@elemoasser
 From: aliselim@gmail.com
 Subject: Something that makes me stressed!
 Dear Reda,
 How are you? I hope you are well. I'm writing to tell you about something stressful I have to face. I've started my secondary school recently and things aren't so easy or smooth as they used to be. I am supposed to work hard not only at school but at home as well.
 It's completely new routine. The school subjects are not that easy. I meet new teachers and new classmates that I must get along with. I find it difficult to keep up with this new community yet not impossible. I made few friends anyway. However, I've got some problems with quite a few

students who are difficult somehow and the new subjects I have to study and understand. The lessons are so many that I can't get back home until late in the afternoon. What a nuisance!

In addition, the school has no room for activities which makes matters worse and as a result, most students get bored and even frustrated.

At home, life is not that easy one as it was when I was at prep school.

Parents argue with me to study all the time, there is no space for play or entertainment. They believe that entertainment or practising activities should be during summer holiday only.

Isn't it a problem? Send me your advice. I'm badly in need of your help. I'm waiting for your replay.

Yours,
Ali

2 الترجمة Translation

للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات. تنويه

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. When you have too many jobs to do without having some rest and entertainment, you feel stressed. That feeling kills the joy of life and the willingness to work.
2. Once you start to get used to your new life in a different place, your stress gradually disappears. At that time, you will start to find out the advantages of your new life.
3. There must be respect to the diversity of opinions and ideas. Different people have a variety of ideas and opinions that enrich life in a community.

2 Translate into English :

1. إن التعليم الجيد هو حجر الأساس لبناء مجتمع عصري يتمتع بالرخاء، فالأهم تتقدم بالعلم والثقافة والتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد من كل المواطنين.
2. حياة أي إنسان لا بد أن يكون لها جانبان هما العمل الجاد والترفيه، فنحن لن نكون سعداء إلا بالترفيه ولن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل.
3. يخشى الكثير من الناس من البدايات في كل شيء يفعلونه، فالبدايات دائما تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلي الكثير من المغامرة والثقة بالنفس.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	joy	بهجة
bedrock	حجر الأساس	modern	عصري
by nature	بطبيعته	once	بمجرد أن
citizen	مواطن	prosperity	الرخاء
creature	كائن	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
enrich	يُثري	sociable	اجتماعي
entertainment	الترفيه	stress	الضغط
especially	خاصة	variety	عديد
fear	يخشى	willingness	الاستعداد - الرغبة
gradually	بالتدريج		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للمتقدمين فقط

تنويه هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bully

- **bully (n)** بلطجي
- We called the police to arrest the bullies.
- **bully (ied) (v)** يُبلطج - ينتشر
- Older children usually bully younger or weaker ones.
- **bully (... into) (v)** يبتز - يساوم
- The manager bullied me into leaving my job.
- **bullying (n)** البلطجة
- Bullying is a big problem in slums. المناطق العشوائية.

cheat

- **cheat (at / in) (v)** يخش
- He used a mobile to cheat in the test.
- **cheat (v)** يخدع - يحتال على - يخون
- He was arrested because he cheated an old woman out of her money.
- **cheat (n)** غشاش - نصاب
- Don't trust this cheat.
- **cheating (n)** غش - نصب
- Cheating is a crime.

connect

- connect (to / with) (v) يربط - يُوصِل
- Connect the charger الشاحن to the mobile, please.
- connect (with) (v) يرتبط - يكون على علاقة بـ
- This parliament member connects with his voters الناخبين.
- connected (to / with / by) (adj) متصل بـ / مرتبط بـ - على علاقة بـ
- The computer is connected to the internet.
- connection (to / with / between) = link (n) اتصال - ارتباط - علاقة
- The connection between the computer and the printer has failed.
- لاحظ المتلازمات التالية :
- have a connection to / with على علاقة بـ - متصل بـ
- see a connection between ... and ... يربط بين ... و ...
- make a connection يُوجد علاقة - يربط بين
- stop a connection ينهي العلاقة - يفصل

address

- address (n) عنوان السكن أو العمل
- He changed his address.
- address (n) خطبة رسمية - كلمة رسمية
- The Prime Minister's address was clear and direct. واضح ومباشر
- address (v) يُعنون - يضع عنوان
- He addressed the letter and sent it by post.
- address (to) (v) يُخاطب - يوجه الحديث أو الطلب رسمياً إلى
- Don't address these tourists in French. They're English.
- You must address the application طلب الالتحاق to the manager.
- address (by) (v) يُخاطب ... بـ (الاسم / اللقب)
- It is impolite to address an older person by their name.
- address ... as (v) يُخاطب ... كـ / يُلقب ... بـ
- Why do you address him as Mr not Dr?
- address (v) يُلقى خطبة أو كلمة
- The President addressed the parliament. البرلمان
- address (v) يُناقش - يُلقى الضوء على
- This essay does not address the real causes of the problem.
- address yourself to (v) يتفكر في كيفية التعامل مع موقف أو مشكلة
- We need to address ourselves to the water pollution problem.
- addressee (n) المُخاطب - المُتلقي
- Make sure that the addressees have received the letters.

debate

- debate (over / about / between) (n) مُناقشة / مُناقشة
- The new law is still under debate in the parliament.
- debate (with) (v) يتباحث / يناقش - يفكر بحرص
- There's a debate over the solutions حلول of the traffic problem.
- The new law is still debated in the parliament.
- He debates with his friends on how to spend the weekend.

nurse

- nurse (n) مُمرضة - مُمرض
- She is still a student nurse in the local health care centre.
- nurse (d) (v) يرعى مريض - يُمرض
- He was nursed by a good woman called Hana.
- nurse (d) (v) تعمل بالتمريض
- She nurses in a big hospital in Cairo.
- nurse (d) (v) تُرضع - تقوم بإرضاع
- Mothers nurse their babies until they are two.
- nurse (d) (v) يُرضع
- Babies nurse until they are two.
- nursing (n) التمريض
- She studies nursing at Assuit University.

police

- police (n) الشرطة
- The police have arrested some criminals.
- لاحظ أن الاسم (police) دائماً جمع وبأخذ فعل جمع:
- The police are responsible مُسئول for law enforcement.
ولاحظ المتلازمات التالية:
- call the police بتصل بالشرطة / يستدعي الشرطة
- tell / inform the police يُبلغ الشرطة
- report ... to the police ... يُبلغ الشرطة عن ...
- police (d) (v) يفرض الأمن والانضباط - يتحقق من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير
- The officer asked for more soldiers to police the city centre.
- policing (n) فرض الأمن والانضباط - التحقن من تطبيق الضوابط والمعايير
- Policing is the responsibility of the government.

UNIT 4

2 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix	Function	امثلة	Exemples
dis-	لا - غير	disagree(d)	يرفض
extra-	إضافي - زائد	extraordinary	استثنائي / خارق
pre-	قبل	prefix	بادئة
semi-	نصف	semi-final	نصف نهائي

3 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix	Function	امثلة	Exemples
-hood	تُكوِّن اسم	boyhood	الصبا
-tion	تُكوِّن اسم	pronunciation information production	التلفظ معلومة / معلومات إنتاج
-ess	تُكوِّن اسم مؤنث	hostess waitress	مضيفة نادلة
-ion	تُكوِّن اسم	connection communication population	ارتباط / اتصال تواصل - اتصال (عدد) السكان
-ship	تُكوِّن اسم	friendship	الصداقة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary ▶ **تلويح:** التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- Getting the Nobel Prize was the of Naguib Mahfouz's life.
 - a addressee
 - b project
 - c highlight
 - d punctuation
 - He is still what to do. It isn't easy for him to decide.
 - a debating
 - b preferring
 - c expressing
 - d believing
 - The flowers and plants on my balcony have been bought from a nearby
 - a contraction
 - b concern
 - c nursing
 - d nursery

- It is the right of a baby to
 - a contain
 - b nurse
 - c fight
 - d host
- The use of guns and other weapons must be
 - a connected
 - b closed
 - c policed
 - d listed
- It is known to all of us that are usually cowards. They only look strong against the weak.
 - a bullying
 - b bullies
 - c teammates
 - d friendships
- One can say that one or takes practice.
 - a sells
 - b makes
 - c gives
 - d does
- A secretary is supposed to have the ability to with all staff members.
 - a police
 - b pronounce
 - c connect
 - d salute
- We have to ourselves to the problem of water shortage.
 - a address
 - b allow
 - c list
 - d practise
- I used the cursor to the title of the essay.
 - a experience
 - b decide
 - c inform
 - d highlight

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- الاسم (highlight) بمعنى (الجزء الأبرز) هو الاختيار الذي يتوافق مع مضمون الجملة
2.	a	- الفعل (debating) بمعنى (يتناقش / يفكر في) هو الذي يتناغم مع معنى الجملة
3.	d	- الاسم (nursery) بمعنى (مشتل) هو الاختيار الصحيح
4.	b	- الفعل (nurse) بمعنى (يرضع) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
5.	c	- الفعل (policed) بمعنى (يضبط / يسيطر على / يقنن) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
6.	b	- الاسم (bullies) بمعنى (بلطجية) هو الاختيار الصحيح حسب سياق الجملة
7.	d	- كل من الفعلين (does / takes) يكوّنان متلازمة لفظية مع الإسم (practice) ليكون المعنى (يقوم بالتدريب)
8.	c	- الفعل (connect) بمعنى (يتواصل / يجيد التعامل) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة
9.	a	- التعبير (address ourselves to) بمعنى (نفكر في كيفية التعامل مع) مما يجعل الفعل (address) هو الاختيار الصحيح
10.	d	- الفعل (highlight) بمعنى (يظلل / يحدد) هو الاختيار الذي يناسب الجملة

Advanced Exercise on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The dead man's _____ include no will.
 a paper b a paper c papers d newspaper
2. Everyone should depend on _____.
 a itself b himself c herself d themselves
3. Be patient, please. We will talk about the matter in just bit.
 a no article b the c an d a
4. The poor _____ from high prices.
 a suffers b suffer c has suffered d was suffering
5. A: How _____ television do you watch a week? B: About ten hours.
 a much b many items of c many d few items of
6. He was sent to prison for a year for stealing only two
 a slices of clothing b pieces of clothing
 c clothes d clothings
7. I think you can't sit in this row as there isn't room for you.
 a no article b the c an d a
8. Mandela was in prison for before he became president.
 a some time b any time c duration d years' of time
9. The new digital camera is a very complex
 a item of technology b technology
 c technology pieces d bar of technology
10. I can't go out with you today. I've got too and it all has to be finished by nine o'clock.
 a many tasks b much work
 c many jobs d many pieces of work

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c (papers) صحيفة في صيغة الجمع لأنها تعني (وثائق / مستندات) وليس (ورق)	- كلمة (papers) صحيفة في صيغة الجمع لأنها تعني (وثائق / مستندات) وليس (ورق)
2.	d لأن الفاعل (everyone) من الممكن أن يكون مذكر أو مؤنث فإن الضمير الذي يعود عليه هو (themselves)	- لأن الفاعل (everyone) من الممكن أن يكون مذكر أو مؤنث فإن الضمير الذي يعود عليه هو (themselves)
3.	d كلمة (bit) بمعنى (وقت قصير) هي اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن فتسبقه أداة التنكير (a)	- كلمة (bit) بمعنى (وقت قصير) هي اسم مفرد معدود يبدأ بحرف ساكن فتسبقه أداة التنكير (a)
4.	b الصفة (poor) التي يسبقها (the) ولا يتبعها اسم موصوف تعتبر اسم جمع وتأخذ فعل يتفق مع الجمع	- الصفة (poor) التي يسبقها (the) ولا يتبعها اسم موصوف تعتبر اسم جمع وتأخذ فعل يتفق مع الجمع
5.	a السؤال هنا عن كم المشاهدة وليس عدد الأجهزة بدليل أن كلمة (television) لم يضاف لها (s) الجمع	- السؤال هنا عن كم المشاهدة وليس عدد الأجهزة بدليل أن كلمة (television) لم يضاف لها (s) الجمع
6.	b الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغويًا هو (pieces of clothing) لأن كلمة (clothing) غير معدودة فنستخدم قبلها لفظ التجزئة (pieces) ولا يمكن استخدام (slices) التي تعني (شرائح). كما أن كلمة (clothes) لا تُستخدم بعد رقم	- الاختيار الوحيد الصحيح لغويًا هو (pieces of clothing) لأن كلمة (clothing) غير معدودة فنستخدم قبلها لفظ التجزئة (pieces) ولا يمكن استخدام (slices) التي تعني (شرائح). كما أن كلمة (clothes) لا تُستخدم بعد رقم
7.	a كلمة (room) بمعنى (مكان / فراغ / مجال) هي اسم غير معدود ولا يُستخدم قبله أداة في هذا السياق	- كلمة (room) بمعنى (مكان / فراغ / مجال) هي اسم غير معدود ولا يُستخدم قبله أداة في هذا السياق
8.	a كلمة (time) هنا تعني (مدة) وهي اسم غير معدود بهذا المعنى ولا يُستخدم قبلها أداة في هذا السياق	- كلمة (time) هنا تعني (مدة) وهي اسم غير معدود بهذا المعنى ولا يُستخدم قبلها أداة في هذا السياق
9.	a بعد الظرف والصفة (very complex) المصوقين بأداة التنكير (a) لا بد من استخدام لفظ تجزئة مناسب قبل كلمة (technology) وهي اسم غير معدود	- بعد الظرف والصفة (very complex) المصوقين بأداة التنكير (a) لا بد من استخدام لفظ تجزئة مناسب قبل كلمة (technology) وهي اسم غير معدود
10.	b الضمير (it) بعد (and) يجعل من الضروري استخدام اسم مفرد أو غير معدود	- الضمير (it) بعد (and) يجعل من الضروري استخدام اسم مفرد أو غير معدود



Test on Unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تدريب
يمكنك حل
الامتحان وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



Part One

MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He was asked to give on the issue of pollution. (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. information b. advice c. problem
 d. internet e. debate
2. I can't send an email because the laptop is not to the internet. (توم إمبو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. hacked b. connected c. detached
 d. honked e. linked

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. It is taken for that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change. (الشيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
 a. denial b. granted c. refusal d. decided
4. No doubt that there is a between smoking and cancer.
 a. communication b. contact c. collection d. connection
5. The use of guns and other weapons must be (القصر - الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. listed b. closed c. policed d. connected
6. The names of the top ten students are announced on the
 a. noticeboard b. chat board c. guard room d. changing room
7. one way road is needed to be established on the west bank of Aswan. (ادارة اسوان - أحمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
8. Students often need help when they are at school. (الفيوم - يوسف كحك ٢٠٢٢)
 a. a b. an c. the d. some
9. people live in the country today than in the past. (اكوم إمبو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. Much b. Fewer c. Little d. A little
10. women play a very important role in developing their countries. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article
11. River Nile is the longest river in the world. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. A b. An c. The d. No article

12. France and England are European countries. (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

12. France and England are European countries. (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. a b. an c. the d. No article
13. He doesn't have money. (ادارة الشرقية - نجات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. many b. few c. a lot d. much
14. Two injured persons were taken to hospital. (الفيوم - اشواي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. He played well. , he lost the match.
 a. Luckily b. Luck c. Fortunately d. Unfortunately
16. They sent "SOS" when the ship began to sink.
 a. no article b. a c. an d. many

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins have become a popular attraction at zoos in recent years. They are more and more interesting than lions and tigers because they are livelier and perform tricks like circus animals. But, although they are more willing to cooperate with the trainer than other mammals in captivity, they get bored if they are asked to do the same trick twice. This is one reason for believing they are very intelligent.

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them about helping drowning sailors have been common since the Romans. We now have more reliable evidences of their usefulness than sailors' tales. In South Africa, two dolphins have been trained to help swimmers in difficulties and drive sharks away from the beach. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that they are better organized and their society is more complex than people have previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weak as we do.

Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language system which is similar to bats one and man cannot hear. It is much more probable that they have an echo-location. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? The question cannot be answered.

17. Dolphins are
 a. as intelligent as man b. more intelligent than man
 c. more intelligent than sea animals d. the most intelligent of all

18. The synonym of the word "popular" is
 a. strange b. unknown c. common d. different
19. The underlined word "they" refers to
 a. sharks b. dolphins c. bats d. elephants
20. The antonym of the word "intelligent" is
 a. stupid b. smart c. creative d. wise
21. Dolphins get bored when they are asked to do same trick
 a. once b. only c. just once d. twice
22. Dolphins look after other dolphins when they aren't
 a. well b. sick c. ill d. bad
23. Dolphins are more interesting than lions and tigers because
 a. they are livelier
 b. they don't cooperate with their trainer
 c. they perform tricks like circus animals
 d. they drown sailors
 e. they organise tricks

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic :

It is high time people enjoyed peace. We have had enough of wars, so we look forward to solving problems through talks as civilized peoples do.

(الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

2. Translate into English :

بساعدنا السفر في التعرف علي ثقافات ولغات وعادات الشجتمعات الأخرى، كما أن السفر يعطينا الفرصة للاستمع بأشياء غير موجودة في بيئتنا المحلية.

(الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :
 Friendship

.....

.....

.....

.....

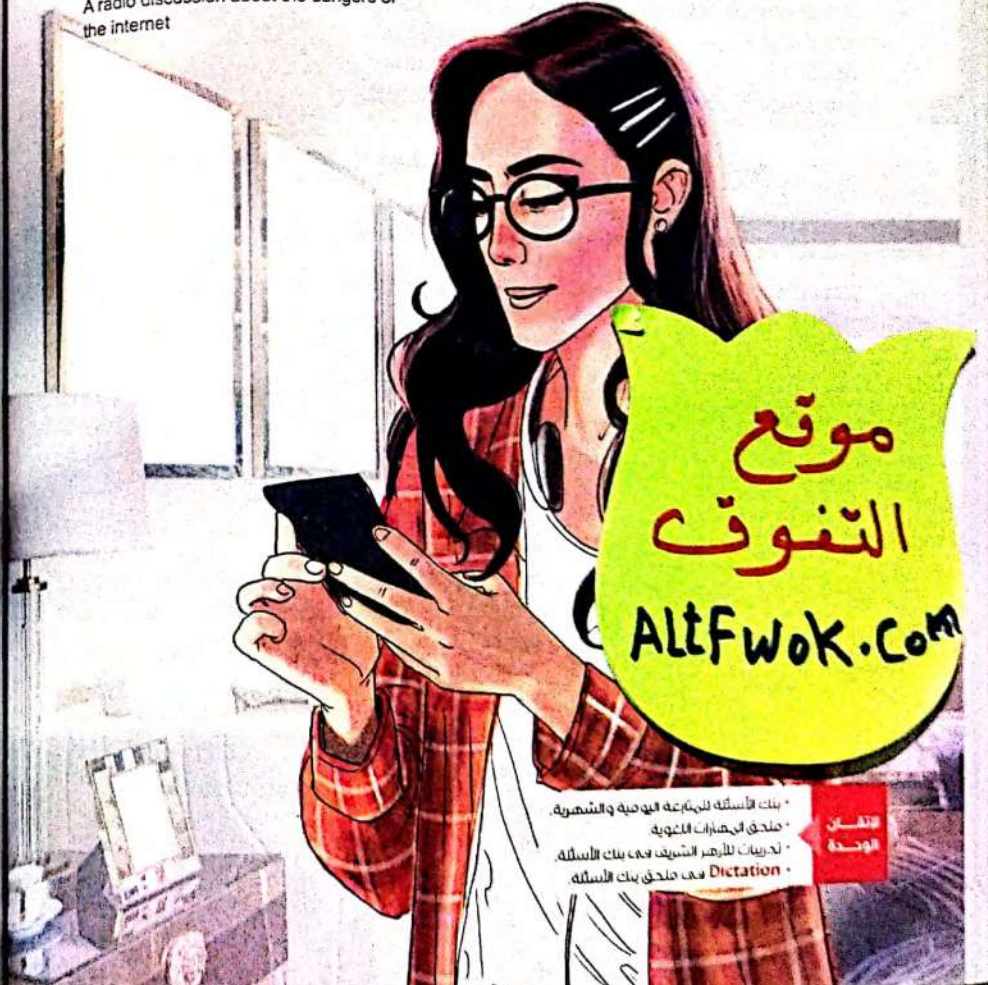
.....

تلويه • للتدريب علي أشكال مختلفة من قطع الشهم بنظام أسئلة (MRQ). بنك الأسئلة

58 pages 52 - 61 WB pages 116 - 121

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- Reading :
A science article on how we may communicate in the future
- Writing :
An essay on IOT; a blog on how to stay safe online
- Listening :
A radio discussion about the dangers of the internet
- Speaking :
Giving a presentation
- Language :
Future forms will, be going to and present continuous
- Life skills :
Self-management, Decision making



• بنك الأسئلة للتمارين اليومية والشهرية.
 • ملحق أجهزة الهاتف
 • تدريبات للأمر الشيفر مع بنك الأسئلة.
 • Dictation مع ملحق بنك الأسئلة

التفوق
الوحدة

Part I

Vocabulary

تلويه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيدا ومراجعتها بانتظام (الولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

app = application (n)	تطبيق (رقمي)	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
break into (phr. v)	يقتحم	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل	security(n)	الأمن
connect(ed) (v)	يربط	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
hack(ed) (n - v)	يخترق - يُقرصن	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	the internet (n)	الإنترنت

تلويه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

accident(n)	حادثة	introduce(d) (v)	يُقدِّم / يطرح (موضوع/فكرة)
book(ed) (v)	يحجز	lighting(n)	الإضاءة
businesses(n)	شركات	major(adj)	كبير
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	management(n)	إدارة
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
control(led) (v)	يتحكم في	network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يتصل عن طريق الشبكة
create(d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	online (adj / adv)	مُصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت
creative(adj)	مبدع - خلاق	organisation(n)	المؤسسات
criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي	particular (adj)	مُحدد - مُعيَّن
develop(ed) (v)	يتطور	petrol(n)	البنزين
device(n)	جهاز	possibility(n)	إمكانية
driverless(adj)	بدون سائق	power station(n)	محطات توليد الطاقة
electric(adj)	كهربوي	recent(adj)	حديث
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	rubbish(n)	القمامة
empty(ied) (v - adj)	يُفرغ - فارغ	safe(adj)	آمن
evidence(n)	دليل	self-management(n)	إدارة الذات
expert (n - adj)	خبير		
flexible(adj)	مرن		

heating(n)	التدفئة	survey(n)	بحث استقصائي
illegally(adv)	بشكل غير قانوني	system(n)	نظام
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحي
intention(n)	نية	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم
steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي

3 Definitions تعريفات

تلويه تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المُستهدفة - هام جداً.

Memorise	Understand
app(n)	a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function
communication(n)	systems to send and receive information
connected(adj)	when more than one thing is joined or linked
hack(ed) (n - v)	to break into a computer system illegally
the internet(n)	a worldwide computer network
link(n)	a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website
security(n)	protecting a place or person
smartphone(n)	a device that can connect to the internet
technology(n)	the use of science to create devices for everyday use

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- If someone into a computer system, they break into it to get secret information.
 - contacts
 - communicates
 - hacks
 - scams

(كوم إيسو - أحمد محمد موسى بنات ٢٠٢٢)

2. Karim's new smart phone has a lot of
 a. clouds b. liquids c. medicines d. apps
(الذبح جمادى ٢٠٢٢)
3. A thief broke the old man's house yesterday.
 a. in b. into c. onto d. on
(الذبح - الوديسة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
4. The IOT is internet of things.
 a. refer to b. abbreviate to c. short for d. abbreviation
(الاسكندرية - التوجيه العام ٢٠٢٠)
5. The has made information exchange very easy.
 a. satnav b. app c. advert d. internet
6. The of the manager's ideas to the staff is important.
 a. communicate b. communication
 c. communications d. communicative
7. The of citizens is the responsibility of the police.
 a. secure b. insecure c. security d. insecurity
8. Your computer has very important information. Protect it against
 a. hack b. hacking c. hacker d. hacked
9. If you have a/an, you can surf the internet on it.
 a. smartphone b. technology c. advert d. online
10. Modern has affected all fields positively.
 a. password b. link c. internet d. technology
11. My laptop is to the internet through Wi-Fi.
 a. commented b. communicated
 c. connected d. contacted

2 Important Vocabulary

12. Sugar is a cause of tooth decay.
 a. major b. minor c. remote d. distant
(الذيرة - الدقي ٢٠٢٠)
13. Self - is necessary to the success of any person.
 a. manage b. manager c. managed d. management
14. In the past, people burnt wood for and cooking.
 a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting
15. A team of researchers are doing a/an
 a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey
16. I think a car is not safe to travel in.
 a. modern b. driverless c. strong d. big

17. Watching too many videos the battery of the mobile.
 a. imagines b. steals c. empties d. charges
18. New laws have been to stop cyberbullying.
 a. taken b. warned c. done d. introduced
19. Mr Ashraf is a/an in teaching English.
 a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting
20. Electricity is produced in stations.
 a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting
21. I have strong that this thief has stolen my motorbike.
 a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey
22. I two train tickets to Cairo.
 a. tested b. rang c. embarrassed d. booked
23. Small help young people to have jobs and start their lives.
 a. businesses b. business c. diaries d. messages
24. In some situations, you should behave in a/an way to avoid making matters worse.
تجنب زيادة الأمر سوءاً
 a. flexible b. electric c. electronic d. recet
25. El-Moasser is published by a great educational
 a. network b. organisation c. evidence d. survey
26. The smart mobile is a wonderful
 a. website b. device c. blog d. helmet
27. "The battery is empty." In this sentence, the word 'empty' is a/an
 a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
28. The internet is a/an that connects millions of computers and other smart devices all over the world.
 a. network b. intention c. evidence d. survey
29. I like this writer because he has a/an style.
أسلوب
 a. recent b. electric c. electronic d. creative
30. Reading in poor affects your sight badly.
 a. expert b. power c. heating d. lighting

3 Definitions

31. are systems to send and receive information.
 a Possibilities b Organizations
 c Accounts d Communications
32. is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
 a Technology b Management c Evidence d Document
33. When more than one thing is joined or linked, they are
 a created b. developed c. connected d performed
34. The is a worldwide computer network.
 a security b. internet c presentation d environment
35. A is device that can connect to the internet.
 a web b. smartphone c. network d. blog
36. A / An is a computer programme designed to perform/do a specific function.
 a. satnav b. advert c. app d. IOT
37. To is to break into computer illegally.
 a. hack b. download c. upload d. lock
38. is things that are done to protect a place or person.
 a. Danger b. Hacking c. Technology d. Security
39. A/An is a place in an electronic document that takes you to another page or website.
 a. blog b. website c link d. online

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد وحل تدريباته.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	my satnav	أتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	collect	someone	بمصطحب/ يرسل بسيارة
make	life better	تجعل الحياة أفضل	lose	information	بجمع معلومات
	a decision	بتخذ قرار		money	بفقد مال
be	known as	بكون معروف كـ	send	messages to	براسل ...

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
app	تطبيق application
book	يحجز reserve
recent	حديث new, modern, late

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
correct	صحيح	incorrect, wrong	غير صحيح
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor, little, unimportant	صغير - غير هام
online	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline, disconnected	غير متصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
send	يرسل	receive	يستقبل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning
app	
apply(ied) (v)	يُطبق - يتقدم - It is difficult to apply this design. - She applied for a job.
application (n)	طلب انضمام - I sent my application by mail.
application = app (n)	تطبيق - The application of this design is difficult
applied (adj)	تطبيقي - We study applied maths in secondary two.
communication	
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل - We communicate with foreign customers in English.
communication (n)	اتصال - تواصل - We use English as the language of communication with customers.

connect	
connect(ed) (v) يربط - يوصل - يتصل	- You need to connect to the internet to send the file.
connection (n) اتصال - صلة / علاقة	- Connection to the internet is necessary to send the file.
connected (adj) متصل	- You need to be connected to the internet to send the file.
hack	
hack(ed) (v) يخترق - يُقرص	- Protect your computer or it will be hacked into.
hacking (n) اختراق - القرصنة	- Protect your computer from hacking .
hacker (n) قرصان إلكتروني	- Protect your computer from hackers .
hack (n) عملية قرصنة	- Some important files have been stolen in a hack .
hacked (adj) مُخترق - مُقرص	- Our computer system is hacked .

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as often as I can	كثيراً لأقصى حد ممكن	on all our flights	على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية
be able to	يكون قادر على	on the computer / smartphone	على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be based on guesswork	قائم على الظن	on the moon	على القمر
be connected to	يكون متصل أو مرتبط بـ	particular tasks	مهام مُعيّنة
be known as	معروف كـ	possible problems	مشاكل محتملة
daily life	الحياة اليومية	posting photos	إرسال الصور
decision making	صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	talking to one another	يتحدثون إلى بعضهم البعض
flying taxi	التاكسي الطائر	the outside world	العالم الخارجي
major security problems	مشكلة أمنية كبيرة	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
no longer	لم يعد	with no evidence	دون دليل
no more driving	لا مزيد من القيادة	worldwide web	الشبكة الدولية

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

break into	يقنم	hack into	يخترق - يُقرص
communicate with	يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	live on	يعيش على - يتغذى على
connect ... to	يربط ... بـ	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
connect to	يتصل بـ	(dis) advantage to/of	ميزة/ عيب لـ

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

app = application

- app = application (تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)
- Google play is full of free apps / applications.
- application (طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ))
- To join this club, fill in this application form.

communicate - contact

- communicate (يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق الهاتف / التلفزيون / الرسائل ... إلخ))
- I usually communicate with my friends by phone.
- contact (يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع (عن طريق التلفزيون / الرسائل ... إلخ لطلب أو إعطاء معلومة)
- When I saw the smoke, I contacted the fire brigade المطافي.

security - safety

- security (الأمن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الأشخاص والممتلكات))
- The match was postponed تأجل for security reasons.
- safety (الأمان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر))
- The airline is taking steps to ensure safety on its aircraft.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Something that is recent is
a. late b. ancient c. modern
d. old e. traditional
2. To have a Facebook account, you have to download and install Facebook on your phone.
a. ad b. app c. population
d. application e. advert

• MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Decision _____ needs knowledge and experience.
a doing b having c making d saying
- I don't know where I am. I'll _____ my satnav.
a stay b check c go d take
- It is important for a manager to _____ his ideas to his staff. *عاملين*
a communicate b communications
c communicable d communicative
- _____ help some people work from home.
a Communicate b Communication
c Communications d Communicative
- I don't know how he _____ passwords.
a hack b hacking c hacker d hacks
- The police forces broke _____ the cave and arrested the criminals.
a in b out c into d onto
- I have the latest applications _____ my smartphone.
a at b from c to d on
- The thief stole a lot of money _____ a supermarket.
a of b from c with d for
- I connected his absence *غياب* from school _____ his illness.
a at b on c by d to
- What is true _____ you may be wrong from my point of view.
a as b of c for d at
- Someone has hacked _____ my Facebook account and posted false news about me.
a into b from c of d about
- There're some disadvantages _____ modern technology.
a into b to c on d a & c
- I handed my _____ form to the secretary.
a app b application c apply d a & b
- She _____ me about the time of the meeting.
a communicated b attached c connected d contacted

1 Reading Texts

A. The Internet of Things

(SB page 52)

1. Linking⁽¹⁾ the world

Communication⁽²⁾ is no longer⁽³⁾ about people talking to one another, but about machines⁽⁴⁾ talking to machines. This is known as⁽⁵⁾ the Internet of Things (IOT).⁽⁶⁾ Technology⁽⁷⁾ is developing⁽⁸⁾ so fast that experts⁽⁹⁾ believe everyone will be connected to⁽¹⁰⁾ the IOT in a few years.



2. Connecting our homes

Many things in our own homes are going to be connected to the IOT. Already⁽¹¹⁾, people can control⁽¹²⁾ their heating⁽¹³⁾ and lighting⁽¹⁴⁾ from their phones, but in the future computers will make the decisions⁽¹⁵⁾ for us. They'll even be able to say when the rubbish⁽¹⁶⁾ bins need to be emptied⁽¹⁷⁾ and control how much water we use!

3. No more driving

Cars can already connect to the internet using smartphones,⁽¹⁸⁾ but imagine⁽¹⁹⁾ if you can get a driverless⁽²⁰⁾ car to come and collect⁽²¹⁾ you using an app⁽²²⁾ on your phone. All driverless cars will be electric⁽²³⁾ and much cleaner⁽²⁴⁾ than petrol⁽²⁵⁾ ones. Experts think our roads will be safer⁽²⁶⁾ as there will be fewer accidents⁽²⁷⁾ using driverless cars.

4. Possible problems

Many people don't think IOT is safe enough yet.⁽²⁸⁾ Computers collect information about people and businesses⁽²⁹⁾ which criminals⁽³⁰⁾ can steal⁽³¹⁾. They use this information to hack⁽³²⁾ into organisations⁽³³⁾ like hospitals, power stations⁽³⁴⁾ and airports, and cause⁽³⁵⁾ major⁽³⁶⁾ security problems⁽³⁷⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- التواصل / الارتباط -
- الاتصال
- لم يعد
- الآلات
- معروف كـ
- انترنت الأشياء
- التكنولوجيا
- تتطور
- الخبراء
- متصل بـ
- بالفعل
- يتحكم في
- التسخن
- الإضاءة
- التقنيات
- التحكم
- يتبرع
- الهواتف الذكية
- يتخذ
- بدون سائق
- يختصر - يجمع
- تطبيق
- كهربى
- أنظف
- البنزين
- أكثر أماناً
- حواشي
- حتى الآن
- المشركات
- مجرمين
- يسرق
- يتخرب
- المؤسسات
- محطات الطاقة
- يسبب
- أساسي / رئيسي
- مشكلات أمنية

2 Listening texts

- A. Boy : I don't think we'll ever live on the moon. (SB page 54)
 Girl: Lots of people are going to study online in the future.
 Boy : Did you know that in 2039 the worldwide web will be 50 years old ?
 Girl: I can't find the restaurant. I'll check my satnav.
 Boy : My mum is buying a new flexible smartphone next week.

3 Video script section

Sometimes teenagers experience⁽¹⁾ bullying⁽²⁾ because they look different, have different abilities⁽³⁾ or different opinions⁽⁴⁾ and experiences.

If you think someone is being bullied⁽⁵⁾, what should you do ?

Parents and teachers are there to give advice⁽⁶⁾ when bullying happens. If you know someone is being bullied, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer⁽⁷⁾ to help the person tell their parents.

You can keep a note⁽⁸⁾ of any bullying you see so that you have plenty of information⁽⁹⁾ to tell your teacher. The teacher can then talk to the bully⁽¹⁰⁾ about everything they have done.

Be kind to the person who is being bullied. Make sure⁽¹¹⁾ that they know you support them and do not like the bully's behaviour⁽¹²⁾. Spend time talking and socialising⁽¹³⁾ with them to help them build new friendships⁽¹⁴⁾. Invite them to join your friends.

Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What can you do to help yourself remember what the bully has done ?
2. How can you help a person who is being bullied ?
3. What can you do with your friends to help stop the bully ?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يجرب
- (2) التنمر
- (3) قدرات
- (4) آراء
- (5) يتم التنمر عليه
- (6) يعطى نصيحة
- (7) يعرض
- (8) بدون ملاحظات
- (9) معلومات كثيرة
- (10) المتنمر
- (11) تأكد من
- (12) سلوك
- (13) يتشارك اجتماعياً
- (14) صداقات

Part IV Language

Future Forms



1 The "will" Future

Formation التكوين

يتكون المستقبل البسيط أو (will + inf.) في هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم من :
 Subject فاعل + will / shall + inf. في الجمل الخبرية الملبئة

- لاحظ استخدام (will) مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط.

- ex. - I will (shall) help you do your homework.
 - Nada will be four next March.

عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf.

- ex. - We won't be ready before he comes back.
 - Ahmed won't attend the party.

عند السؤال بـ «هل» :

Will / Shall + subject فاعل + inf. ?

- ex. - Will you wait for the bus ? - Yes, I will (wait for the bus).
 - No, I won't (wait for the bus).

عند السؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + will / shall + Subject فاعل + inf. ?

- ex. - When will you go to bed ? - What will they do next ?

يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمجهول من :

Object المفعول + will / shall + be + p.p.

- ex. - A camera will be bought (by Rodayna) tomorrow.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She will 21 next Monday.
 a. am b. is c. be d. being
2. show me your new tablet ?
 a. You will b. What will you c. You won't d. Will you
3. show me on your tablet ?
 a. You will b. What will you c. You won't d. Will you

UNIT 5

4. I think he _____ for returning home late.
 a. will punish b. will be punished
 c. won't punish d. is punishing

الاستخدامات Uses

التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفعل أو رغباته أو إرادته دخل فيها)

- ex. - It's my birthday next Tuesday. I'll be 17.
 - The school will be ten years old this year.

التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام):

- ex. - Oh, that's the doorbell. I'll open it.

التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل، ويمكن في هذه الحالة ان تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل:

يخشي be afraid / متأكد be sure / يأمل hope / يتوقع expect / يعتقد think
 يفترض suppose / يتساءل wonder / يفترض

- ex. - I expect Lucy and Jim will stay for dinner.

- I think it will rain.

- ومن الممكن ان يصاحب ذلك بعض الظروف مثل:

- ex. - Perhaps I'll go home early today.

- She will probably refuse to take any money.

عند عرض عمل شيء، أو تقديم خدمة أو الدعوة:

- ex. - You look very thirsty. I'll get you a cold drink.

عند طلب خدمة:

- ex. - Will you let me use your mobile, please?

التعبير عن الوعود:

- ex. - My father has promised that we will spend a month in Sharm El-Sheikh.

توجيه تهديدات:

- ex. - Do your homework or I'll punish you.

2 The "Be + going to + Inf. form"

1 في الجملة المثبتة: Subject فاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- ex. - Mohammed is going to play tennis.
 - I'm going to study medicine.

2 عند النفي: Subject فاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + inf.

- ex. - Walid isn't going to play squash.

3 عند السؤال بـ "هل...": Am / is / are + Subject فاعل + going to + inf. ?

- ex. - Is Rodayna going to attend the meeting?
 - Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).
 - No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).

- السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

Question word أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + Subject فاعل + going to + inf. ?

- ex. - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday?

3 في صيغة المبني للمجهول:

Object المفعول + am / is / are + going to + be + P.P.

- ex. - Tennis is going to be played (by Ali).

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ashrafs the next summer holiday in Alexandria.
 a. will be spent b. going to spend
 c. are going to be spent d. are going to spend
2. the office?
 a. When are you going to leave b. You are going to leave
 c. Are you going to be left d. You are going to be left

- 3 This man _____ to prison for this crime.
 a is going to send b is going to be sent
 c will send d going to send

Uses الاستخدامات

1 التعبير عن الخطط الشخصية المسبقة "plans":

- ex. - I am going to decorate my house.
 = I have planned to decorate my house.
 = I have made a plan to decorate my house.

2 التعبير عن النية (intend / intention) لعمل شيء في المستقبل:

- ex. - He is going to study medicine at university.
 = He intends to study medicine at university.
 = He has the intention to study medicine at university.

3 التنويه بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل (أي يودع بالمصراع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء):

- ex. - His leg is broken. He is going to have an operation.
 - وبهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام "going to" بعد أفعال مثل:

be sure / be afraid / believe / think

- ex. - Mum is very ill. I think she is going to see a doctor.
 - لاحظ ان الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً وتستخدم معها (will):

- ex. - He will win the running race. He's very fast.

4 وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويبدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

- ex. - He is going to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has decided to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has made a decision to have lunch outdoors.
 = He has made up his mind to have lunch outdoors.

5 وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث:

be going to + inf. = be about to + inf. + علي وشك

- ex. - I'm going to leave right now.
 = I'm about to leave.

3 The Present Continuous for Future Arrangements

Affirmation الإثبات	Subj. + am / is / are + (inf. + ing) + التعبير الزمني يدل على المستقبل - Hany is visiting our school tomorrow.
Negation النفي	Subj. + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf. + ing) - Hany isn't visiting our school tomorrow.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Am / Is / Are + Subj. + (inf. + ing)? - Is Hany visiting your school tomorrow?
'Wh__' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + أداة الاستفهام + am / is / are + Subj. + (inf. + ing)? - When is Hany visiting your school?
Passive المبني للمجهول	Obj. + am / is / are + being + P.P. - Our school is being visited (by Hany) tomorrow.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Malak some friends tomorrow evening
 a meets b will meet c going to meet d is meeting
- your birthday party tomorrow ?
 a What are you giving b Are you giving
 c You are giving d Are you being given
- Our guests at the airport by the manager himself.
 a are welcoming b are going to welcome
 c are being welcomed d will welcome

Uses الاستخدامات

1 التعبير عن المستقبل القريب في حالة وجود ترتيبات نهائية مسبقة ، و يدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arranged / made arrangements / prepared / made preparations

- ex. - I'm taking Salma on a trip tomorrow. Everything is arranged

١ لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات. لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

ex. - My brother is getting married next Thursday.

٢ لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها المؤسسات مستقبلاً تستلزم ترتيبات. لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر:

ex. - My class are going on a school trip next week.

٣ إذا منعك بشيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتباً له وبالتالي نستخدم المضارع المستمر:

ex. - I can't go out with you tonight because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.

٤ لاحظ أن المضارع المستمر لا يدل على المستقبل إلا في حالة وجود تعبير زمني أو سياق يدل على المستقبل:

ex. - I am having lunch with my uncle. (حدث مستمر الآن)
- I am having lunch with my uncle tomorrow. (ترتيب مستقبلي)

٤ The Present Simple for Timetables

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث أو المواقف المرتبطة بجدول مواعيد لخدمة مثل الطائرات والقطارات والمباريات والحصص والامتحانات ومواعيد العمل:

ex. - My train arrives at 7:15 tomorrow morning.
- The match starts at 9 p.m. next Friday.

Important Notes on Future Forms

١ ملاحظات هامة على صيغ المستقبل
التعبيرات الزمنية التالية تدل على المستقبل، وتأتي في نهاية الجملة، لكن عندما تأتي في بداية الجملة تستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) بعدها:

tomorrow / in the future / soon / one day / next (year / month / week / Friday.....) this time
next week / (في مثل هذا الوقت)
tomorrow..... in (خلال / بعد /) (a year, month, week.....)
by (next week / tomorrow morning / 2030.....)

- She will do the shopping tomorrow.
- Next Monday, I am visiting my uncle.

١ يستخدم المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

مستقبل / جملة أمر → حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + After / as soon as / When / the moment

- After I arrive (have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.

- Tell Ahmed to call me the moment you see (have seen) him.

مستقبل / جملة أمر → حدث ثانٍ (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) + Before

- Before we leave (have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.

- Don't leave here before you finish (have finished) all your jobs.

حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام + till / until + حدث ثانٍ مستقبل بسيط منفي (غالباً) / جملة أمر

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (has arrived) home.

- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools (has cooled).

٢ أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والتملك وكذلك (be) لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر كأفعال أساسية، وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم (will + inf.) ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

المشاعر Feeling	like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish.
الحواس Senses	hear, see, smell, feel, taste, sound, يبدو appear, يبدو seem, look يبدو.
التواصل Communication	promise, satisfy, يبرهن surprise, deny, يتكبر agree, disagree.
الإدراك Perception	realize, يدرك understand, know, mean, think = believe, يتعرف على, يعتقد imagine, يتخيل recognize, remember, forget.
أفعال أخرى Other verbs	يشمل be, belong, concern, depend, يعتمد involve, matter بهم, need, owe, يدين own = possess يملك

- I think she's agreeing with me. (X)

- I think she will agree with me. (√)

موقع التفوق ALTfwoK.com

Notes for more understanding ملاحظات هامة

Ⓛ لاحظ استخدام (will)

Subject + promise / offer / threaten + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- I promise to lend you the money you need.
- I will lend you the money you need.

Subject + have / has just decided + to + inf.
= Subject + (have / has) made a quick decision + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- I have just decided to watch a film on TV.
- I will watch a film on TV.

.... don't / doesn't want + to + inf.
= hope / hopes + won't + inf.

- Mum doesn't want my brother to get bad marks.
- Mum hopes my brother won't get bad marks.

.... predict / expect + to + inf.
= Subject + will + inf.

- We expect Bassem to win the gold medal.
- Bassem will win the gold medal.

Ⓛ لاحظ استخدام (going to)

Subject + intend / have intentions / plans / have plans + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- She has plans to study physics at university.
- = She is going to study physics at university.

Subject + (have / has) decided + to + inf.
= Subject + (have / has) made a decision + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- We have decided to move to another flat.
- = We are going to move to another flat.

Subject + have / has made up mind + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- He has made up his mind to find another job.
- = He is going to find another job.

Subject + am / is / are + about to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + going to + inf.

- He is collecting his things. He is about to leave the office.
- = He is collecting his things. He is going to leave the office.

Ⓛ لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط أو التام وليس (will / be going to) بعد الروابط الزمنية مباشرة ولكن يمكن استخدامها في الجملة الرئيسية (الثانية)

- After I (will arrive - am going to arrive - arrive) home, I will take a shower.
- Before she (has left - is going to leave - will leave) the office, she is going to send the emails.

Ⓛ لاحظ استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية :

Subject + (have / has) arranged / prepared / made arrangements + to + inf.
= Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing)

- I have arranged to take a course in English next month.
- = I am taking a course in English next month.

Ⓛ لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام بعد الروابط الزمنية:

(When) (After) (Before) (until)

- She will buy some fruit. Then, she will return home.
- = When she buys (has bought) some fruit, she will return home.
- = After she buys (has bought) some fruit, she will return home.
- = Before she returns (has returned) home, she will buy some fruit.
- = She won't return home until she buys (has bought) some fruit.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

• التدرجات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تدوين

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali 17 next month.

- a. is going to be
- b. will be
- c. going to be
- d. is

(الاستيعابية ٢٠٢٢)

2. It is very hot in the house. I on the air conditioner.
 a. will turn b. am turning
 c. turn d. am going to turn
 (القبور - يوسف كركك ٢٠٢٢)
3. Watch out! The child
 a. will fall b. is going to fall
 c. is falling d. would fall
 (القبور - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
4. Those bags look heavy. I you carry them.
 a. help b. am helping
 c. will help d. am going to help
 (كجور امبو - احمد محمد موسي بنات ٢٠٢٢)
5. Look! It is very windy. I the windows.
 a. will close b. am going to close
 c. close d. am closing
 (بنات - نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٢)
6. Malak some friends tomorrow evening on her birthday.
 a. meets b. will meet
 c. going to meet d. is meeting
 (البنات الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
7. I will see her after she back.
 a. comes b. came
 c. will come d. had come
 (البنات الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠٢٢)
8. A party in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.
 a. is giving b. gives
 c. is being given d. is going to give
 (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)
9. They a party tomorrow. Everything is arranged.
 a. are having b. will have c. have d. can have
 (القبور - ايشواي ٢٠٢٢)
10. This museum at 9:00 am tomorrow.
 a. will open b. opens c. open d. is going to open
 (ادارة اسوان - احمد طه حسين المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
11. I be at school early tomorrow morning.
 a. 'll probably b. 'm probably going to
 c. probably go d. 'm probably
 (الرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
12. According to the timetable, the train at 11 o'clock.
 a. have left b. leaving c. leave d. leaves
 (القاهرة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

13. My friend is highly intelligent. He the test easily.
 a. is going to pass b. will pass
 c. is passing d. would pass
 (القبور - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
14. I my cousins at the weekend. I've arranged it.
 a. will visit b. am visiting
 c. going to visit d. visit
 (ادارة الربينة ٢٠٢٢)
15. Hany to France tomorrow. He's got the ticket.
 a. will be travelled b. will travel
 c. is travelling d. travels
 (الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
16. I the faculty of education when I grow up; it's my intention.
 a. join b. am going to join
 c. will join d. am joining
 (بورسعيد - الغرفة الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
17. After he his homework, he will watch the match.
 a. had done b. did c. will d. does
 (ادارة الربينة ٢٠٢٢)

• تذكر القاعدة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع. **تنويه**



Part I

Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

تولوه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية جيداً ومراجعتها بنظام (الواجب) لغوى في الامتحان

advert =	إعلان	malware(n)	البرمجيات الخبيثة
advertisement (n)		password(n)	كلمة المرور
anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات	personal details(n)	التفاصيل الشخصية
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - ينقر	phishing(n)	النصب الإلكتروني
cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني	post(ed) (v)	يرسل
download (n)	ملف مُنزّل	satnav(n)	التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي
download(ed) (v)	يُنزّل	scam(n)	احتيال - غش
downloading (n)	التنزيل	software(n)	برنامج - برمجيات
google (n)	مُحرك البحث جوجل	upload (n)	ملف مرفوع
google(d) (v)	يبحث على جوجل عن	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
lock(ed) (n - v)	يقفل - قفل	uploading (n)	الرفع

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

تولوه • من المُهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بنظام

account(n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على الإنترنت)	impossible(adj)	مستحيل
almost(adv)	تقريباً	join(ed) (v)	يلتحق به - ينضم إلى
careful (adj)	حريص / حذر	media(n)	أجهزة الإعلام - وسائل الإعلام
change(d) (v)	يُغيّر - يتغيّر	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعليق - يعلق	properly(adv)	بشكل صحيح
credit card(n)	بطاقة ائتمان	provide(d) (v)	يزود به - يُتيح
delete(d) (v)	يحذف - يُلغى	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف على

details(n)	تفاصيل	remove(d) (v)	يُزيل - يُبعد
dishonest(adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع	rude(adj)	وقح / غير مهذب
document(n)	وثيقة	scary(adj)	مُخيف / مُرعب
embarrassing(adj)	مُخزج	share(d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر
employment(n)	توظيف / تشغيل - استغلال	socialise(d) (v)	يحتلظ (بالآخرين)
excited(adj)	سعيد - متحمس	support(ed) (n - v)	دُعم - يدعم
fly - flew - flown(v)	يطير - يُطير - يُسرع	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
free (free of charge)(adj)	مجاني	trouble(n)	مأزق / مشكلة
frighten(ed) (v)	يخيف	ugly(adj)	قبيح المنظر
furious(adj)	ساخط / غاضب جداً	unwanted(adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
horrible(adj)	فظيح	website(n)	موقع على الإنترنت

3 Definitions تعريفات

تولوه • تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلّم المُستهدفة - هام جداً

Memorise	Understand
anti-virus software (n) برنامج مُكافح الفيروسات	software that removes unwanted programs from a computer يزيل unwanted programs
click(v) ينقر	to press a button زر on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen شاشة that you want the computer to do
cyberbullying(n) التنمر الإلكتروني	sending messages online to frighten or worry someone
downloading malware تنزيل البرامج الخبيثة	putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it
lock(v) يقفل	to do something to stop other people using your phone or social media accounts
phishing(n) النصب الإلكتروني	- trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them - a dishonest plan to get money
posting photos إرسال الصور	putting photographs online
scam(n) احتيال - غش	a dishonest plan to steal money
uploading personal details تحميل البيانات الشخصية	copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- My friend keeps photos all day.
 a logging in b posting c lighting d connecting
التصوير الفوتوغرافي - نزلت ٢٢-٢٤
- To protect your data, you need a strong software.
 a website b anti-virus c malware d blog
البرمجيات الضارة - البرنامج المضاد للفيروسات - البرنامج الضار المشترك ٢٢-٢٤
- He didn't realise he had been until after he had used his credit card.
 a scammed b managed c advertised d announced
الخداع - التحذير - الإعلان المشترك ٢٢-٢٤
- He asked me about details of my credit card. It's a
 a scan b scam c scar d skim
التفحص - الاحتيال - الجرح - التلميح ٢٢-٢٤
- He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through
 a fishing b fisherman c phishing d phisher
- Captains of ships and car drivers use to know where they are and how to reach a place.
 a adverts b satnav c IOT d ID
- This webpage is full of job I found my current job here.
 a anti-virus b malware c adverts d satnav
- There must be a law to criminalize
 a technology b satnav c cyberbullying d internet of things
- My tablet is protected. No one else can use it.
 a website b internet c password d virus
- My tablet has powerful anti-virus
 a hardware b hardwares c software d softwares
- When I heard the of the gun parts, I knew the man was about to shoot.
 a direct b object c check d click
الاشارة - طلق ٢٠-٢١
- programs can cause your device not to work properly.
 a Software b Malware c Security d Hardware
البرمجيات ٢٠-٢١

- You shouldn't ask strangers questions.
 a scientific b legal c public d personal
- A scam is an online trick used to
 a legally take someone's money b win a match
 c rob someone of their money d destroy a building
الخداع - طوي ٢٠-٢١
- You can someone you have recently met to see what information is available about them on the internet.
 a google b download c upload d hack
التصفح - تصفح ٢٠-٢١
- I want to some apps to my new smart phone.
 a load b download c upload d unload
التصفح - طفا ٢٠-٢١
- Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is
 a lock b locked c locks d a lock
- I have already the file to the website.
 a downloaded b downloads c uploaded d uploads

2 Important Vocabulary

- Although he was in disguise, I was able to him.
 a concept b release c realise d recognise
التخفية - التوافق ٢٠-٢١
- Most people find it to ask others for money.
 a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted
- Black cats some babies.
 a socialise b frighten c comment d mention
- "I must" she said. "My train leaves in ten minutes."
 a flow b flee c fly d flea
التخفية - التوافق ٢٠-٢١
- One must always their password to keep their accounts safe.
 a change b charge c recharge d exchange
التخفية - رشيد ٢٠-٢١
- He was because his new tablet had just been broken.
 a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted
- It is important for a child to with other people.
 a socialise b frighten c comment d mention
- He is a short-tempered person, so be about what you say to him.
 a careless b care c cares d careful
التخفية - رشيد ٢٠-٢١

- 27 He wants to _____ a malware from his tablet.
 a remove b recognize c develop d design
- 28 Children under six have their meals _____ of charge in this restaurant.
 a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted
- 29 She _____ that she turned off the laptop before leaving the office.
 a socialised b frightened c tricked d mentioned
- 30 You need to protect your Facebook _____ network.
 a account b evidence c intention d networks
- 31 The officer asked me about the _____ of the accident.
 a details b organisations c offers d networks
- 32 Millions of followers _____ on Salah's posts.
 a socialise b frighten c comment d mention
- 33 This programme deletes _____ unwanted data to save memory.
 a embarrassing b furious c free d unwanted

3 Definitions

- 34 _____ is tricking someone into giving information or money over the internet or by e-mail.
 a Malware b Phishing c Antivirus d Password
- 35 A/An _____ software removes unwanted programs from a computer.
 a hacker b database c virus d anti-virus
- 36 To _____ is to press a button on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
 a cause b link c click d network
- 37 To stop other people using your phone or social media accounts, you should _____ them.
 a offer b lock c post d design
- 38 _____ personal details means copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet.
 a Downloading b Uploading c Protecting d Embarrassing
- 39 _____ malware means putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it.
 a Recognising b Solving c Protecting d Downloading

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدرب على الكلمات المتشابهة من طريق استكمال هذا الجزء مسبقاً يمكنك ديد وجد تدريبك

1 Verbal Collocations متكررات لفظية

build	friendships	تُكرز صداقات	like	يسمى كأنه / يشبه
do	wrong	يُخطئ	look	تبدو ثقيلة
get	money	يحصل على مال	stay	يسمى على ما يُرام
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية	study	يسمى بأمان
go	online	يدخل على الإنترنت	take	يسمى عبر الإنترنت
keep	a note of	يحتفظ بملاحظة عن	write	يسمى الصور
			win	يسمى بجائزة
			a prize	يسمى منشور في مدونة
			write	a blog

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advert	إعلان
malware	برمجيات خبيثة
satnav	الملاحة بالقمر الصناعي
scam	احتيال - غش
advertisement, ad	
malicious software	
satellite navigation	
fraud, trick	

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الإنترنت)	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الإنترنت)
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يفتح
security, safety	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف

موقع التفوق ALTFWOK.com

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

advert	
advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن - We pay a lot of money to advertise our products.
advert = ad = advertisement (n)	إعلان - We pay a lot of money for adverts for our products.
advertiser (n)	مُعلن - We pay a lot of money for advertisers to promote our products.
advertised (adj)	مُعلن عنه - This product is advertised on TV.
cyberbullying	
cyberbully(ied) (v)	يُتنمر على الإنترنت - It is a crime to cyberbully people.
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكتروني - Cyberbullying is a crime.
cyberbully (n)	متنمر إلكتروني - It is a crime to be a cyberbully .
download	
download(ed) (v)	يُنزّل - يتم تحميله - The file downloaded slowly.
download (n)	ملف مُنزّل - I keep all downloads in this file.
downloading (n)	التنزيل - Downloading large files take some time.
downloadable (adj)	قابل للتنزيل - This file is not downloadable .
lock	
lock (v)	يقفل - I use a symbol to lock the screen.
lock (n)	قفل - I use a symbol as a lock for the screen.
locked (adj)	مقفول - The screen is locked with a symbol.
scam	
scam(med) (v)	يحتال على / يغش - She was scammed by an online friend.
scam (n)	احتيال / غش - She was the victim of a scam .
scammer (n)	محتال / غشاش - She was the victim of a scammer .

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a comment about an advert for an example of careful about disadvantages to in trouble key points nothing happened	تعلق على إعلان عن مثال على حرص على مساوئ في مأزق النقاط الرئيسية له يحدث شيء	on the internet on the other hand, plenty of Social Media stop it working the space provided to conclude/ in conclusion write in clear simple words	على الإنترنت من الناحية الأخرى كثير من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي جعله يتوقف عن العمل الفراغ المتاح والعلامة هي write in clear simple words يكتب مستخدماً كلمات بسيطة وواضحة
---	--	---	---

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

choose from	يختار من بين	delete ... from	يُحذف ... من
click on	ينقر على	remove ... from	يرمى ... من
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ	socialise ... with	يحتل اجتماعياً بـ - يتواصل عبر وسائل التواصل مع

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

scam - spam	
• scam	نصب / احتيال على الإنترنت (للاستيلاء على أموال الغير)
- The police have warned people about internet and phone scam.	حذر
• spam	رسائل البريد الإلكتروني التي تحتوي على إعلانات غير مرغوب فيها
- I don't know how to delete all this spam.	
advertisement	
• advertisement / advert / ad	إعلان عن سلعة / خدمة (كلمة عامة)
- Don't believe adverts. Ask people who have already bought the products	المنتجات
• commercial	إعلان تجاري (في التلفزيون / الإذاعة)
- This actress started her career in commercials.	ممثلة
• trailer	إعلان عن فيلم
- This web page is full of trailers.	
• promotion	حملة دعائية (للترويج لمنتج معين)
- The company spent 2 million dollars on promotions for the new product.	
• announcement	إعلان / تنبيه (نشر تنبيهات - تعليقات - تحذيرات - قرارات)
- We are waiting for the announcement of the decisions.	

virus - anti-virus - malware - hacker

- virus (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
He is infected with **Coronavirus** صاب.
- virus (سبب خسر للأجهزة الحاسوبية)
A **virus** has destroyed the data on my tablet.
- anti-virus software (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)
Don't trust a free **anti-virus software**.
- malware (البرمجيات الخبيثة) (برنامج يقوم بتدمير وإتلاف أجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)
Malware is a malicious software برنامج ضار.
- hacker (قرصان إنترنت) (شخص يخترق خصوصية أجهزة الكمبيوتر والبرامج الخاصة بالآخرين)
A **hacker** has deleted the data from the central computer.

software - hardware

- software (countable noun) (برنامج حاسوبي) (يزدي غرض معين على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)
I bought this **anti-virus software**.
- hardware (uncountable noun) (مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره))
I need some kitchen **hardware**.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

1. The verb 'make' collocates with
a wrong b like c a decision
d right e life better
2. I was asked to give
a personal details b heavy c online
d a presentation e sat-nav
3. You can _____ online
a give b go c do
d take e study
4. "_____ " is short for advertisement.
a PP b Ad c DOB
d AD e Advert
5. Scam is a synonym of
a trek b trick c found
d fraud e afraid
6. "I locked the front door." The verb 'lock' here is an antonym for
a open b repair c fix
d paint e unlock

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Show me the photo you've just
a stayed b done c gone d taken
2. Apologise when you _____ wrong.
a do b look c make d write
3. Keep at home _____ safe
a Stay b Check c Go d Take
4. Her face is pale. She does not _____ right.
a do b look c make d lock
5. I'm very busy, so I rarely _____ online.
a stay b check c go d take
6. The blog I had _____ was shared by 200 people.
a done b looked c made d written
7. Danger is antonymous with _____
a safe b safety c secure d insecurity
8. Scam is to _____ as book is to reserve.
a fried b trick c trust d a & b
9. "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word 'uploaded' is the antonym of
a. unloaded b overloaded c downloaded d a & c
10. "Be careful of malicious software." The speaker is warning us against _____
a software b hardware c antivirus d malware
11. My children keep the _____ on desktop.
a downloaded b downloads c uploaded d cyberbullying
12. Don't worry, sir. The door of the room is _____
a lock b locked c locks d a lock
13. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money through _____
a. fishing b. fisherman c. phishing d. phisher

14. He is a bad person who gets a lot of money as a
 a fishing b fisherman c phishing d phisher
15. I had given him 5000 pounds before I realised that he was a
 a scam b scams c scammed d scammer
16. I pressed the red button to stop the machine
 a working b to working c work d. to work
17. Sama asked me to remove the peel the orange.
 a with b for c from d. at
18. conclude, hard work is necessary for success in life and work.
 a In b By c. Of d To
19. The processor of the computer is part of its
 a software b hardware c malware d. a & b
20. I got tired of the that is sent to my email.
 a. spam b. scam c. download d upload

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

B. Hassan's blog

(58 page 57)

Last week, I was playing online when I saw an advert⁽¹⁾ for a free⁽²⁾ game. I clicked⁽³⁾ on the link⁽⁴⁾ and wrote my name, address and some bank details.⁽⁵⁾ When I tried to download⁽⁶⁾ the game, nothing happened. It was a scam!⁽⁷⁾

My dad was furious⁽⁸⁾ because they stole⁽⁹⁾ money from his bank account⁽¹⁰⁾ and my computer stopped working properly!⁽¹¹⁾ Don't click on links you don't recognise⁽¹²⁾ and never give your personal details on a strange⁽¹³⁾ website. Oh, and remember to use anti-virus⁽¹⁴⁾ software⁽¹⁵⁾ to stop thieves!⁽¹⁶⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (1) إعلان
- (2) مجاني
- (3) ينقر
- (4) رابطة
- (5) تفاصيل
- (6) يُحمّل
- (7) احتيال - غش
- (8) سخط / غضب جداً
- (9) يسرق
- (10) حساب
- (11) بشكل صحيح
- (12) يتعرف علي
- (13) غريب
- (14) مضاد فيروسات
- (15) برنامج حاسوبي
- (16) لصوص

C. Stay safe online

(58 page 57)

- Don't add your personal details to a website.
 Do change your password⁽¹⁾ often.
 Don't click on a link⁽²⁾ you don't recognise⁽³⁾.
 Do lock⁽⁴⁾ your phone.
 Do lock your social media accounts⁽⁵⁾.
 Don't upload embarrassing⁽⁶⁾ photos.
 Don't save bank details on a website.
 Do use anti-virus software.
 Do use different passwords on different websites
 Don't write unkind comments⁽⁷⁾ about other people.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) كلمة سر
- (2) ينقر على رابط
- (3) يتعرف علي
- (4) يلق
- (5) حسابات مواقع
- (6) التواضع الاجتماعي
- (7) مخر
- (8) تعليقات سيئة

Internet use in Egypt

(WB page 116)

Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent⁽¹⁾ survey⁽²⁾ found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication, so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones, so they can listen to music or watch films.

Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility⁽³⁾ that their devices might be hacked.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) حثري / حديث
- (2) إحصاء / استبيان
- (3) إمكانية / احتمالية

2 Listening texts



B. Hassan : Last week, I was reading about (56 page 56) a new online game⁽¹⁾ and saw an advert⁽²⁾ that said I could get this game for free. All I had to do was complete a form⁽³⁾ with my name, email address⁽⁴⁾ and credit⁽⁵⁾ card details⁽⁶⁾. I don't have a credit card, but I sometimes use my dad's card to buy things. Of course, it was a scam⁽⁷⁾. They just wanted the credit card details so they could steal money, but it looked just like a real advert. I think lots of kids would be so excited to get a free game they wouldn't think carefully about it.

Laila : I'm leaving school this year and I want to get a job in a bank. My teacher told me that employers⁽⁸⁾ often look online to see what we've posted⁽⁹⁾, so I decided to google⁽¹⁰⁾ my name to see what they might find. It was scary. All the photos and the "funny" comments⁽¹¹⁾ I'd ever posted were there and I couldn't delete⁽¹²⁾ them. I didn't realise⁽¹³⁾ it's almost impossible to remove personal data⁽¹⁴⁾ from the internet.

Saeed : I love reading my friend's social media posts⁽¹⁵⁾, but some people write really horrible⁽¹⁶⁾ things about other teenagers. One of my friends posted a photo of himself on his new bike and he got lots of rude comments⁽¹⁷⁾ about how he looked and how ugly⁽¹⁸⁾ his bike is. I couldn't believe it! These kids would never, never bully⁽¹⁹⁾ my friend at school, so why they do online? I'm really careful about what I say on the internet now!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) لعبة على الإنترنت
- (2) إعلان
- (3) إيصال / بكمال استمارة
- (4) عنوان
- (5) حساب بنكي
- (6) تفاصيل
- (7) احتيال / غش
- (8) أصحاب العمل
- (9) يرسل منشور
- (10) يبحث على جوجل
- (11) تعليقات
- (12) يمحى
- (13) يدرك
- (14) بيانات شخصية
- (15) منشورات مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
- (16) فظيح / رهيب
- (17) تعليقات وفضح
- (18) قبيح
- (19) يتلمز / يبلطج



تحميل وتثبيت

راجع شرح القاعدة من المدرسين الأول والثاني **توبه**

General Exercise On Language Apply

التدريبات التالية مرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم **توبه**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. I am not doing anything until I something to eat.
a have b will have c had had d had
2. Oh, the water is boiling. I off the gas.
a will turn b am going to turn
c am turning d turn
3. A: We haven't got any sugar B: I know. I some this evening.
a will buy b am going to buy
c will be buying d will have bought
4. A party in celebration of the end of the school year tomorrow.
a is giving b is being given
c gives d is going to give
5. It's the first time I've ever seen this hotel. I've decided that I in it next month.
a am going to stay b will stay c am staying d have stayed
6. The ceiling of this room doesn't look very safe. It looks as if it down.
a will fall b is falling c is going to fall d falls
7. We tomorrow. We have booked our tickets.
a are travelling b will travel
c travel d going to travel
8. A: How old are you? B: I 44 next February.
a am b am going to be
c will be d am being
9. I have made up my mind. I a new house.
a am going to buy b will buy
c am buying d buy

UNIT 5

10. A: I don't know how to use this camera.
B: It's quite easy. I you.
a am showing b am going to show
c will show d show
11. Our school part in the sports competition next week. That has been arranged.
a. will take b. takes
c. is taking d. is going to take
12. I expect that Reem married next year.
a. get b. will get c. has got d. gets
13. Watch out! You the flower vase.
a. would drop b. are going to drop
c. drop d. are dropping
14. I work early today. I have arranged that with the manager.
a. leave b. am going to leave
c. am leaving d. will leave
15. The train Aswan at 8:00 o'clock. It's on the timetable.
a. is going to leave b. will leave
c. is leaving d. leaves
16. I expect that my team the match.
a. is winning b. is going to win
c. will win d. wins
17. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures? B: I the room.
a. paint b. am going to paint
c. will paint d. am painting
18. My English lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
a. start b. has been starting
c. starts d. is stating
19. I've decided to buy a mobile. I a smart one.
a. will buy b. buy
c. am going to buy d. am buying
20. They a party next Monday. Everything is arranged.
a. would have b. has
c. have d. are having

21. The agent says my flight at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
a. is b. shall be c. will be d. is being
22. She looks extremely pale شاحبة. I think she
a. will faint b. is fainting
c. is going to faint d. faint
23. I think my cousin law. He is keen on defending people.
a. would study b. is going to study
c. studying d. will study
24. A: I've decided to set up a business.
B: Oh, have you? When start?
a. shall you b. do you
c. are you going to d. will you
25. I dinner today, mum. You look tired.
a. prepare b. will prepare
c. am preparing d. am going to prepare
26. A: What arrangements have you made for next week?
B: I to Alexandria with my father.
a. will travel b. am travelling
c. am going to travel d. travel
27. A: What are your personal plans for the next two years?
B: I a new house.
a. build b. will build
c. am building d. am going to build
28. Twenty years from now, I think my country a fantastic place.
a. is b. is going to be
c. will be d. shall be
29. He is going to catch the bus when it
a. arrives b. will arrive c. arrived d. arrive
30. When you arrive, me at once.
a. are going to call b. are calling
c. will call d. call
31. Don't wash the dishes if you in a hurry.
a. were b. are being c. are d. will be
32. I can't go out with you this afternoon. I the doctor at 5 pm.
a. see b. going to see c. will see d. am seeing

33. A: When are you going to leave for Rome?
 B: I _____ tomorrow on the 6:00 o'clock plane. Here is the ticket.
- a leave b am leaving
 c am going to leave d will leave
34. It is raining heavily. Don't go out or you _____ wet.
- a get b will get
 c are going to get d are getting
35. A: Make a prediction about your life ten years from now.
 B: I _____ married.
- a will be b am
 c am getting d am going to get
36. He is brave by nature. He _____ the problem.
- a face b facing
 c is going to face d will face
37. You won't leave the office until the manager _____ you.
- a called b had called c has called d call
38. After the manager has called you, you _____ the office at once.
- a will leave b won't leave c have left d left
39. In ten years' time, my father _____ even older.
- a will look b is looking c going to look d looks
40. As soon as my son _____ for school, I'll do the housework.
- a will leave b have left c leaves d had left

2 Check your understanding

41. "I won't go to bed until my father returns home." I mean that
- a I will go to bed before my father arrives home.
 b once I go to bed, my father will arrive home.
 c once my father arrives home, I will go to bed.
 d I won't go to bed after my father arrives home.
42. "Everything is arranged for my brother's wedding tomorrow." What does this mean?
- a My brother will get married tomorrow.
 b My brother gets married tomorrow.
 c My brother will be got married tomorrow.
 d My brother is getting married tomorrow.

43. "My father has made up his mind about selling the old car to the mechanic for 70,000 pounds." What does this mean?
- a My father is going to sell the old car to the mechanic.
 b My father won't sell the old car to the mechanic.
 c My father isn't selling the old car to the mechanic.
 d My father sells the car to the mechanic.
44. "I am about to leave soon." This means
- a I'm being left soon.
 b I am going to leave soon.
 c I will leave soon.
 d I leave soon.
45. "Omar has decided to redecorate his flat." This means
- a Omar will redecorate his flat.
 b Omar is going to redecorate his flat.
 c Omar is redecorating his flat.
 d Omar redecorates his flat.
46. "I'm going to look for a better job." This is a / an
- a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
47. "Karim will come first this year." This is a / an
- a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
48. "I will buy you a tablet for your birthday." This is a / an
- a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
49. "Keep calm or I'll send you out." This is a / an
- a. prediction b. threat c. intention d. promise
50. "This school will be 70 years old next year." This is a / an
- a. fact b. future fact
 c. plan d. arrangement
51. Watch out! You're going to step into a hole. This means that the addressee _____ into a hole.
- a will step b will be stepped
 c is about to step d has stepped

Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island) بالخاصة المفردات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص لطالب المناقش

تأويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية في قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم التطلع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب

تأويه

bottom(n)	أسفل / سطح - قاع	fresh(adj)	مُغشش
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	kneel down - knelt (v)	يركع / ينحني
crazy(adj)	مجنون	leader(n)	قائد
dark(n- adj)	الظلام - مُظلم	on your own	بفردك
directions(n)	اتجاهات	realise(d) (v)	يُفهم
dry(adj)	جاف / جف	sail(ed)(n - v)	شراع المركب - يبحر
explain(ed)(v)	يشرح - يُفسر	spade(n)	جاروف
fight-fought (v)	يقاتل	start(ed)(n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag(n)	علم - راية	voice(n)	صوت إنسان

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- People down when they pray. (المفرد - الشواشدة ٢٠٢٢)
- The police forces the terrorists killing some of them and arresting the rest.
- I won't help you with the cooking. You will have to do it your own.
- The new coach won the Super Cup in his first match, which was a good
- We had to lower because there was a storm.
- I asked my teacher to a maths problem to me.

- Do you want to swim in this stormy weather ? Don't be
- I city life to living in the countryside.
- Without sun cream, the sun will your skin.
- President Sadat was an intelligent
- Don't what he says. He is a big liar.

Part II

Grammatical Hints

on

للحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) مع وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وبعض الأسماء الأخرى :

on (TV, the radio, the telephone, the internet, social media, mass media, a social networking site, a website)

ex. - People share information about themselves on social networking sites.

spend + money / time

spend money on + n. / inf. + ing = spend money to + inf.

ex. - He spent a lot of money on (buying) clothes.
= He spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

spend time + n. / (inf. + ing)

ex. - She spent two days preparing for the party.

It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) ... مضبعة للوقت / المال ...

- It's a waste of money cooking all this food for two people.
- It's a waste of time watching films again and again.

verb + obj. مفعول (inf. + ing)

catch - discover - feel - hear - leave - notice - observe - see -
watch - find - overhear تنصت

ex. - The police caught him hiding the money he had stolen.
- I saw him running in the street.

• ومع أفعال أخرى يكون (inf. + ing) اختصار لـ (by + inf. + ing)

ex. - People connect to the internet by using their smartphones.
= People connect to the internet using their smartphones.

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

- يستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل السلبية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نصيحة الحفظ وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء، لم يحدث حتى الآن.**
- ex. - My father hasn't arrived yet. (I expect he will arrive.)
- يستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في الجمل الاستفهامية في المضارع التام وتأتي غالباً في نصيحة السؤال، وهي تدل على توقع حدوث شيء، لم يحدث حتى الآن.**
- ex. - Has Amira called yet? (I expect she will call.)
- يستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) بعد صفات التفضيل.**
- ex. - As a writer, this is my best book yet.
- يستخدم (yet) كإداة ربط بمعنى (وكن / و مع ذلك) وفي هذه الحالة تساوي (and) في المعنى.**
- ex. - He is very intelligent, yet too lazy to do anything.

Exercise On Language Hints

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- I haven't done the shopping
a. just b. already c. ago d. yet
 - She spent the weekend her mother.
a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps
 - They spent a lot of money their new flat.
a. on b. to c. with d. of
 - Haven't you eaten your dinner ?
a. ago b. after c. yet d. just
 - She spent a week for her birthday party.
a. preparing b. prepare c. prepares d. prepared
 - She spent all her savings a modern car.
a. buys b. buy c. to buying d. to buy
 - This is Salah's best goal
a. never b. yet c. but d. however
 - There will be better education modern technology.
a. use b. used c. to use d. using
 - It is a waste of time online for three hours.
a. chatted b. to chatting c. chatting d. a chat

- She is stupid very beautiful
a. yet b. although c. since d. as
- Listen to these people about modern technology
a. talks b. be talked c. talking d. talked
- You can find information about everything the internet.
a. of b. on c. for d. about

Part III Language Skills

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تتويه • للمزيد من التدريبات منق المهارات

Write an essay about 150 words about your plans for the future :

My plans for the future

Everyone has his / her future plans. It is a good thing to have your own future plans. These plans are the goals that you want to achieve. In this essay, I'm going to write about both my work and family plans.

My work plans are very simple. I want to have a good job which pays me enough money. My dream job is to be an accountant in a bank. Although accountants work hard for many hours, they earn a lot of money. As an accountant, I won't need to look for extra work. As soon as I leave my work, I will give the rest of the day to my family.

My family plans are very ambitious. I intend to have a small family. My wife must have a good education. I prefer that she should be a housewife, but I don't mind if she has her own job. I wish I could live in a villa, not a flat. I want my villa to have a large garden with a swimming pool.

However, plans don't achieve themselves. I must work hard to reach my dreams. Without hard work and good planning, my plans will stay in the world of dreams.

2 Translation الترجمة

تتويه • للمزيد من التدريبات منق المهارات

- Translate into Arabic :
- Egypt has achieved significant progress in various fields of industry, education and modern technology.
 - In the future, the only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still in this ever-changing world.
 - Many people now use smartphones which can connect to the internet and send emails. These phones can help you control your personal life as well as your business.

ALFwOk.com موقع التفوق

2 Translate into English :

- 1- إضاعة الوقت من أهم سلبيات استخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، فصح عليك أن تحدد الوقت الذي يمكنك أن تقضه على هذه المواقع.
- 2- يعتبر التليفون المحمول ثورة كبيرة في عالم الاتصالات، فقد جعل من الممكن التواصل مع أي إنسان في أي مكان بسرعة كبيرة.
- 3- تتيح الأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إجراء مكالمات الفيديو، كما أنها تتيح الكثير من التطبيقات التي تساعدك في دراستك أو عملك.

Vocabulary related to translation texts الثورة والاختيار على الوحدة

achievements	إنجازات	revolution	ثورة
fields	مجالات	significant	ملحوظ / بارز
industry	صناعة		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

للمتقدمين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

• هذا الجزء خاص بالطلاب المتقدمين فقط

تلويح

click

- **click (n)** نقرة - صوت طقطقة
 - With a single **click** on the mouse, you can get the information you need.
 - The door shuts with a **click**.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close -with a click يُحدث صوت نقرة عند القفل

- **click (on) (v)** ينقر - يُحدث صوت طقطقة على
 - I **clicked on** the link but it did not open.

communicate

- **communicate (with) (v)** يتواصل - يتصل مع
 - People from all over the world **communicate with** each other using emails.
- **communicate ... to** يُبلغ ... ل / ينقل ... إلى
 - The manager **communicated** the decisions **to** the secretary by email.
- **communicate (to) (v)** ينقل / ينقل مرض
 - His flu was **communicated to** all his friends.
- **communication (n)** اتصال / تواصل - القدرة على التواصل
 - Ayman's good **communication** makes him successful.

- be in communication with يكون على تواصل مع
 - a means of communication وسيلة اتصال أو تواصل
 - a lack of communication انعدام التواصل
 - poor communication علاقة أو تواصل ضعيف
 - direct communication اتصال مباشر
 - establish communication with يقيم علاقات مع
 - communication skills مهارات التواصل
- كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت والراديو والتلفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية. وهذا المعنى فهي جمع دائماً:
- Modern **communications** help us learn and work from home.

download - upload

- **download (v)** يرفع ملف (من الإنترنت) **upload (v)** يرفع ملف (على الإنترنت)
- Sama **downloaded** some educational videos from EKB. بنك المعرفة المصري.
- He has **uploaded** some files on Google Drive.

- **download (n)** ملف مرفوع على الإنترنت **upload (n)** ملف مُنزّل من الإنترنت
- I keep the **downloads** in a folder called «Internet Files».
- Some websites pay you money for your **uploads**.

- **downloading (n)** الرفع على الإنترنت **uploading (n)** تنزيل من الإنترنت
- **Downloading** files from the internet takes less time than **uploading** them.

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- download ... from ينزل من
- download to / onto ينزل إلى
- upload ... to يرفع على

hack

- **hack (into) (v)** يخترق / يقرص (يحاول سرّاً الوصول إلى أو تغيير المعلومات على أجهزة الغير)
- She was able to **hack** the password.

- **hack / hacking (n)** عملية اختراق أجهزة الكمبيوتر (تهكير)
- You need to protect your laptop against **hacks / hacking**.

- **hack (n)** سياسي مغرور / كاتب غير محترف
- The meeting was full of **hacks**.

- **hacker (n)** قرصان (هاكر)
- I don't know how the **hacker** could get into the system.

ALTFWOK.COM موقع المتفوق

the internet

• the internet (n)

- You can find all the information you need on the internet.

- on the internet
- buy ... on the internet
- surf the internet
- internet shopping
- internet banking

شبكة الإنترنت
لاحظ ضرورة استخدام (the)
ولاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
يدخل على الإنترنت - go on the internet
يشترى ... من على الإنترنت
اتصال بالإنترنت - an internet connection
التسوق عبر الإنترنت
الأعمال المصرفية على الإنترنت

link

• link (v)

- Friendship links Mr Nasser and me.

• link ... to / with (v)

- Friendship links me to / with Mr Nasser.
- This road links Cairo to Alexandria

• link ... together (v)

- Friendship links Mr Nasser and me together.

• link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)

- Friendship is the link between Mr Nasser and me.

• link (n)

- I will send you the link of my blog.

lock

• lock (v)

- I locked the front door.

• be locked in / into

- The player was locked into a three-year contract.

• lock ... in ...

- The policeman locked the criminals in a cell.

• lock ... out

- I am locked out because I have lost my keys.

• lock + up / away

- The policeman locked the criminals up
The policeman locked up the criminals

• lock + up / away

- My mother locks up/ away her jewellery in the safe.

يربط - يوصل

يربط ... بـ

يربط ... معاً

رابط / علاقة بين ... و ...

رابط (الصفحة أو موقع على الإنترنت)

يقفل - يغلّق

مقيد بـ

يحبس ... في ...

يحجز ... خارج

يسجن ...

يضع ... في مكان آمن

= My mother locks her jewellery up / away in the safe.

• lock (n)

- In hotels, there is a lock on each door.

القفل

• locked (adj)

- You can't enter the office. The door is locked.

مغلق - مغلّق

password

• password (n)

- You need to enter your password to check your email.

كلمة السر - كلمة المرور

• password-protected (n)

- All the data on the central computer are password protected.

محمي باستخدام كلمة المرور

phishing

• phishing (n)

- He was arrested for phishing.

الاحتيال أو النصب الإلكتروني (خداع الناس للاستيلاء على أموالهم)

• phisher (n)

- He was arrested because he was a phisher.

نصاب / محتال عبر الإنترنت

scam

• scam (n)

- There was no flat for sale. It was just a scam.

عملية نصب أو احتيال - غش

• scam (med) (v)

- It is easy for evil people to scam simple people.

ينصب علي - يغش

• scammer (n)

- Don't believe him. He is a scammer.

نصاب - محتال - غشاش

security

• secure (d) (v)

- The police secure citizens and their property.

يحمي - يؤمن

• secure (d) (v)

- He used his farm to secure the loan.

يضمن (يستخدم شيء كضمان)

• secure (adj) محمي / غير محمي insecure ≠ آمن - محمي

- Your money is secure in the bank.

• security (n) انعدام الأمن insecurity ≠ الأمن - التأمين

- The security forces protected the building.

software

• software (n)

- I downloaded the new software.

برنامج حاسوبي (كلمة لا تُعد)

لاحظ التعبيرات والمصطلحات اللفظية التالية:

- install software برنامج حاسوبي - anti-virus software برنامج مكافحة للفيروسات

- a piece of software برنامج حاسوبي

ALFwOk.com موقع التفوق

5

technology

التكنولوجيا الآلات والمعدات، الآليات التي تعتمد على التطور العلمي الحاسبي /
 Moslem technology has made life easy.
 ربط العبريات والملاحة، الطبقة الثالثة
 تكنولوجيا المعلومات
 Information Technology (IT)
 - advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطورة
 - digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية
 - advanced developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي
 - technologist (n) المصنئ / خبير تكنولوجيا
 - In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real technologist.
 - technological (adj) تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا
 - Life has become faster thanks to technological development.
 تطور التكنولوجيا بفضل

2 Prefixes

Prefix	Function	Examples
anti-	ضد	anti-virus antibiotic تكايف الفيروسات مضاد حيوي
cyber-	متعلق بالحواسيب وتكنولوجيا المعلومات	cyberbullying cyber-crime التسمر الإلكتروني الجريمة الإلكترونية
dis-	تكون العكس	dishonest غير أمين - متعاود
down-	أسفل	downstairs بالطابق الأسفل
down-	من الانترنت	download تحميل - يُحْمَل (من الإنترنت)
mal-	سيء - حبيس - ضار	malware البرمجيات الخبيثة
self-	ذاتي - ذاتي	self-management إدارة الذات
up-	أعلى	upstairs بالطابق العلوي
up-	إلى الإنترنت	upload الرفع - وضع (على الإنترنت)

3 Suffixes

Suffix	Function	Examples
-ing	تكون اسم / صفة	cyberbullying(n) embarrassing(adj) التسمر الإلكتروني مضرب
-ise / -ize	تكون فعل	summarise / summarize ملخص
-ive	تكون صفة	creative خلاق - خائلي
-ment	تكون اسم	management إدارة
-ology / -logy	تكون اسم له علاقة بالعلم أو التكنولوجيا	technology التكنولوجيا

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To join this club, fill in this
 a. app b. application c. malware d. bucket
- A device is a machine or tool used for a/an purpose
 a. particular b. popular c. connected d. online
- If I don't hear the of the lock, you know the door isn't locked.
 a. comment b. possibility c. post d. click
- His intelligence itself to us in everything he does.
 a. contacts b. connects c. communicates d. receives
- You are no more than a who frightens people online.
 a. cyberbullying b. cyberbully c. phishing d. scam
- is a giant digital library.
 a. An internet b. Internet c. Net d. The internet

7. Love of beauty the two writers.
 a. links b. uploads c. bullies d. provides
8. I can't leave the club. I'm in a five-year contract.
 a. connected b. linked c. locked d. communicated
9. My father refused to use the family house to my brother's loan from the bank.
 a. borrow b. lend c. secure d. endanger
10. Saudi Arabia buys military like tanks and missiles from the USA.
 a. software b. hardware c. presentation d. prediction

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	التعبير (fill in an application) يعني (ملاً طلب انضمام) ولا يمكن استخدام (app) لأنها تعني (تطبيق رقمي)
2.	a	التعبير (particular purpose) يعني (غرض مُحدّد)
3.	d	التعبير (the click of the lock) يعني (نكّة القفل)
4.	c	التعبير (communicates itself to us) يعني (يظهر لنا بوضوح)
5.	b	الضمير (who) بعد الفراغ يتطلب استخدام اسم عاقل
6.	d	لا بد أن تُستخدم أداة التعريف (the) قبل الإسم (internet) بمعنى الشبكة الدولية
7.	a	الفعل (links) هنا يعني (يربط / يجمع بين)
8.	c	التعبير (be locked in) يعني (مُلازم به / مُقيّد به)
9.	c	الفعل (secure) هنا يعني (يضمن / يُستخدَم كضمان لـ)
10.	b	الدبابات والصواريخ تعتبر مُعدات مادية (hardware)

Advanced Exercise on Language

توجيه : التدريبات التالية يندرجها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She to the park with us in the evening tomorrow. She knows all about it.
 a. goes b. will go
 c. is going to go d. is going
2. I can see you are busy, so I long.
 a. am not staying b. will stay
 c. won't stay d. am not going to stay
3. I some old friends at the club tomorrow evening.
 a. will see b. am seeing
 c. am going to be seen d. see
4. I'll try to advise her but I know she
 a. doesn't listen b. isn't listening
 c. won't listen d. isn't going to listen
5. You so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.
 a. will be b. are being
 c. are going to be d. are to be
6. Being intelligent, she first next year.
 a. comes b. is coming
 c. is going to come d. will come
7. I here until he returns to tell him the instructions.
 a. will wait b. won't wait
 c. waited d. didn't wait
8. Not until the manager calls me the office.
 a. I leave b. I have left
 c. will I leave d. did I leave

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- الذهاب إلى الحديقة أمر تم الاتفاق عليه كما يتضح من السياق
2.	c	- فرار سريع
3.	b	- لقاء الأصدقاء أمر تم الاتفاق عليه كما يتضح من السياق
4.	c	- مُجرد تنبؤ حتى لو أنه بعد (I know)
5.	b	- يمكن استخدام (be) كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة للدلالة على سلوك متعمد وغير مقبول غالباً لأنه وقتي وغير دائم
6.	d	- مُجرد تنبؤ لأن هذه الكلمة تدل على صفة شخصية (ولا تعبر عن دليل) (intelligent)
7.	a	- السياق مستقبل والمعنى يتطلب الإثبات
8.	c	- إذا بدأت الجملة بـ (Not until) فلا بد أن يتقدم فعل مساعد مناسب للزمن على الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية وهي هنا: - ... will I leave the office. - ولا يمكن استخدام (did I leave) لأن السياق مستقبل



Test on Unit 5

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



Part One



MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. "Security is maintained by the police." The word 'security' in this context is the antonym of
a. dangerous b. endanger c. danger
d. insecurity e. secure
2. 'Advantages' is to 'disadvantages' as is to
a. correct b. greedy c. funny
d. hard e. incorrect

MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

3. The company computer system was They lost a lot of money.
a. hijacked b. hacked c. kidnapped d. secured
(المتسلط عليه - ٢٢-٢٣)
4. A/An is a computer programme designed to do a specific function.
a. app b. CV c. advert d. PhD
(البرمجيات - ٢٠-٢١)
5. Implementing security at the internet gateway can block email and sites.
a. pushing b. punishing c. phishing d. pinching
(التهديد الجديدة - ٢٢-٢٣)
6. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big
a. skim b. scar c. scam d. scan
(احتيال - ٢٠-٢١)
7. Next week, she 16 years old.
a. is going to be b. going to be c. will be d. is being
(المرحلة الدراسية - ٢٢-٢٣)
8. Everything is arranged, so my father to Saudi Arabia.
a. travel b. is travelling c. travels d. will travel
(الرجوع إلى خير القلوبية بين - ٢٢-٢٣)
9. The train to Aswan at 7 a.m.
a. leaves b. leave c. is leaving d. will leave
(الرجوع إلى خير القلوبية بين - ٢٢-٢٣)
10. Amr is a very clever student. I think he the full mark.
a. is going to get b. is getting c. gets d. will get
(المرحلة الثانية - ٢٢-٢٣)
11. I will see her after she back.
a. comes b. came c. will come d. had come

- 12. We have some fantastic news. My sister a baby.
 a. will have b. is having
 c. shall have d. is going to have
- 13. you let me use your mobile?
 a. Has b. Does c. Shall d. Will
- 14. Everything has been prepared for the journey. My family and I to Alexandria tomorrow.
 a. will go b. are going to go
 c. is going d. are going
- 15. All driverless cars will be
 a. electric b. electrician c. harmful d. electrostatic
- 16. A is a secret word that you use to log into a site.
 a. passport b. crossword c. password d. passage

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الفيوم - آبشواي ٢٠٢٢)

Scientists believe that in twenty years from now we will be seeing driverless buses on the streets of major cities. This might seem unbelievable, but bus design experts are working in laboratories trying to design driverless buses. An automated means of transport would not only be reliable but also cheaper and environmentally friendly because the buses would run on electricity or biofuel.

Research has shown that nearly 60 % of the running cost of a bus is spent on the driver. Therefore, the use of a driverless bus would inevitably reduce operating costs. The vehicle is able to navigate by combining satellite technology with a special system. This system uses magnets which are positioned in the road. Driverless buses will probably make our everyday lives easier. However, we must **consider** what will happen to the bus drivers who will **eventually** find themselves without a job if this project becomes a reality.

- 17. Driverless buses will certainly operating costs.
 a. decrease b. double c. increase d. raise
- 18. When something is environmentally friendly, then it doesn't cause to the environment.
 a. mistake b. harm c. benefit d. advantage

- 19. The best meaning of the underlined word "**consider**" is
 a. think about b. remember c. forget d. ignore
- 20. What is a suitable title for the passage?
 a. The inevitable use of driverless buses
 b. The merits of driverless buses
 c. Bus drivers' future after using driverless buses
 d. The merits and demerits of driverless buses
- 21. The antonym of the word "**eventually**" is
 a. finally b. lastly c. firstly
 d. mostly e. at first
- 22. Driverless cars will run on
 a. unnatural fuel b. biofuel c. non-renewable energy
 d. nuclear energy e. electricity
- 23. Due to driverless bus, bus drivers will find themselves
 a. lazy b. jobless c. exhausted
 d. unemployed e. busy

Part Two

- 1. **Translate into Arabic :**
 Social media wastes not only time, but also destroys health. There must be strict control over the amount of time one spends on social media.
 (التصورية القلمية سنات ٢٠٢٢)
- 2. **Translate into English :**
 لقد أصبحت الهاتف الذكية خطراً كبيراً على الأطفال والشباب لما تسببه لهم من أضرار صحية، كما تُنقدهم القدرة على التراجع بشكل جيد.
 (الفيوم - آبشواي ٢٠٢٢)
- 3. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on:**
The effects of modern technology on communication

• للتدريب على أشكال مختلفة من قطع الفهم بنظام اسئلة MRQ. بنك الاسئلة

ALFwOk.com موقع المتفوق

UNIT 6

Learning from literature

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 122 : 127

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة :

Reading :

A biography on Stevenson, A poem.
The Gardener

Writing :

A short review of a poem; A book review

Listening :

A conversation about Robert Louis
Stevenson

Speaking :

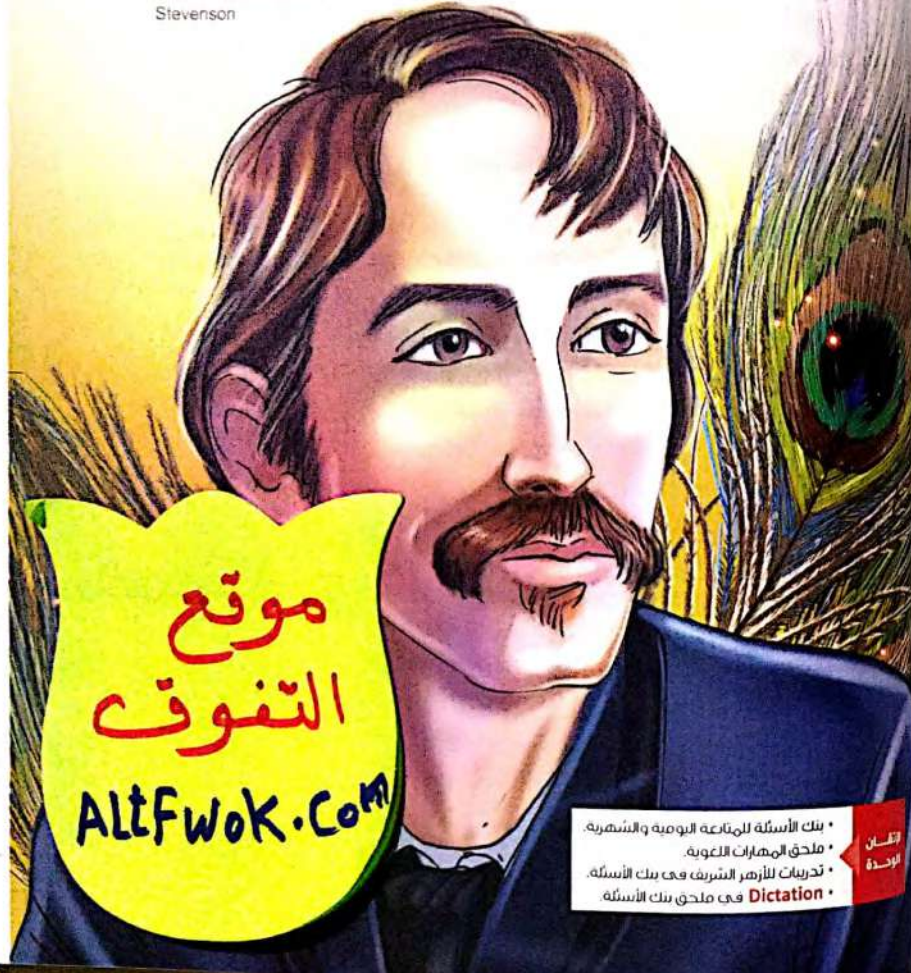
Polite requests

Language :

Verbs + infinitive or -ing form

Life skills :

Communication; Critical Thinking



PART ONE LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 122 & 123

Part I

Vocabulary

• لا بد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

تلوبه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

currant(n)	الكشمش (أحد أصناف العنب الخالي من البذر)	lock(ed) (n - v)	قفل - يقفل
row(n)	صف	novel(n)	رواية
currant row	صف من نبات الكشمش	plot(n)	قطعة أرض - جبانة (مقابر)
dig - dug (v)	يحفر - يغرس	plot(n)	الحبكة (ذروة الأحداث في القصة/الرواية)
gravel(n)	الحصى	plot (ted) (v)	يتزاظأ/ يتأمر - يخطط
walk(n)	مَشَى - مر	poem(n)	قصيدة
keep the gravel walk	يسير على الطريق الممهّد بالحصى	poet(n)	شاعر
hay(n)	تبن / قش	poetic(adj)	شعري
literature(n)	الأدب	poetry(n)	الشعر - النظم

• من المفهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

تلوبه

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adventure(n)	مغامرة	pirate(n)	قرصان
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية
case(n)	حالة - قضية	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
choice(n)	اختيار	regret(ted) (n - v)	الندم - يندم - يأنف
choose - chose - chosen (v)	يختار	request(ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	romantic(adj)	رومانسي - جالم
consider(ed) (v)	يعتبر - يفكر في	rule(d) (n - v)	قاعدة - يتحكم
discuss(ed) (v)	يناقش	sailing(n)	الإبحار
discussion(n)	مناقشة	Scottish(adj)	أسكتلندي
feed - fed(v)	يُطعم	sentence(n)	جملة
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتتبع	serious(adj)	جاد
form(n)	شكل - صيغة	strange(adj)	غريب
		suppose(d) (v)	يفترض

full-time (adj)	دوام كامل	tools (n)	أدوات
helpful (adj)	مفيد - مفيدون	treasure (n)	كنز
improve (v)	يحسن - تحسن	unwell (adj)	مرضى
island (n)	جزيرة	warm (adj)	دافئ
joy (n)	فرحة	well (adj)	صحة جيدة
Kidnap (ped) (v)	حفظ	while (n)	فترة من الوقت
lawyer (n)	محامي	wish (ed) (n - v)	أمنية - يفتنى
path (n)	طريق مشاة - سبيل		

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستخدمة - كتاب ريدا • تلاوته

Memorise	Understand
dig (v)	حفر - تحفر to break up and move earth with your hands or a machine
gravel (n)	الحصى small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
hay (n)	شعير / قشّ dried grass that people use to feed animals
lock (v)	يقفل to close something using a key
novel (n)	رواية a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary
plot (n)	قطعة أرض a small piece of land for growing things on
poem (n)	قصيدة a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme
poet (n)	شاعر someone who writes poems
poetry (n)	شعر a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir a reader's imagination or emotions
treasure (n)	كنز gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

1. The best material for the construction of the garden walks is
- a. dig b. hay c. gravel d. plot

2. My friend entered a competition and won a prize last year.
- a. poetry b. poetess c. poems d. poet
3. language is emotionally effective.
- a. Poet b. Poets c. Poems d. Poetic
4. Shakespeare was a great playwright and a
- a. poetry b. poet c. poems d. poetic
5. In addition to plays, Shakespeare wrote great which are still admired.
- a. poetry b. poet c. poems d. poetic
6. There are gravel among trees and plants in parks.
- a. walks b. rhymes c. raws d. candles
7. The cow was hungry, so the farmer found it some to eat.
- a. butter b. hay c. water d. cheese
8. I have a small in my garden where I plant some vegetables.
- a. rhyme b. farm c. field d. plot
9. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot to the front door.
- a. look b. lock c. unlock d. open
10. Novels, poems and plays are forms of
- a. science b. fashion c. dirt d. literature

2 Important Vocabulary

11. Life is full of situations which we must accept as we have no
- a. appetite b. choice c. desire d. need
12. We call a book about the life of someone a
- a. research b. biography c. novel d. poem
13. a hungry family can be very expensive.
- a. Failing b. Feeding c. Falling d. Feeling
14. In you need help, call me at once.
- a. case b. rule c. adventure d. joy
15. Some attacked the ship to steal things from it.
- a. pirates b. pilots c. parents d. pioneers
16. A group of words that start with a capital letter, end with a full stop and give some meaning is known as a
- a. word b. line c. sentence d. verse

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التتوق

موقع التفوق
AltFwok.com

- 17. "He kept the gravel walk". In this sentence, 'walk' means a
a journey b path c trip d movement
- 18. She is still the issue. She hasn't made a decision yet.
a Kidnapping b supposing c ruling d considering
- 19. Football is the most game all over the world.
a popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful
- 20. Don't yourself to others. Everyone is different.
a regret b. review c. compare d. request
- 21. Never anything good you have done to anybody.
a regret b grow c. feed d. lie
- 22. This problem needs time and collaboration to be solved.
a handy b. easy c. simple d. serious
- 23. My father has a/an job as the manager of a bank.
a part-time b. full-time c. polite d. impolite
- 24. President Sadat started to in 1970.
a Kidnap b. suppose c. rule d. consider
- 25. She is You can depend on her.
a popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful
- 26. I intend to stay with my aunt in the countryside for
a. while b. whilst c. a while d. during
- 27. He has no health problems. This means he is
a. well b. will c. sick d. bad
- 28. My grandfather's garage is full of which he uses to fix cars.
a. barrows b. gravels c. tools d. mice
- 29. I she went shopping, but I am not sure.
a. Kidnap b. suppose c. rule d. consider
- 30. I think he is because he looks pale.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful
- 31. Good citizens the rules.
a. kill b. forget c. break d. follow
- 32. To make a polite,, always say please and excuse me.
a. request b. tick c. phrase d. organisation
- 33. Giving someone a red rose usually creates a/an feeling.
a. popular b. romantic c. unwell d. helpful

- 34. He likes and often does new and risky things.
a case b. rule c. adventure d. joy
- 35. The child was by a gang of thieves who then asked his parents to pay a large sum of money.
a. kidnapped b. supposed c. ruled d. considered

3 Definitions

- 36. A person who writes poetry is called a
a. pioneer b. novelist c. poet d. poem
- 37. A row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
a. fruitless b. bad c. current d. currant
- 38. A is a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary.
a. hay b. verse c. line d. novel
- 39. A is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme.
a. poet b. poem c. poetry d. poetic
- 40. is a form of literature, or artistic writing, that attempts to stir a reader's imagination or emotions.
a. Poet b. Poem c. Poetry d. Poetic
- 41. To is to move something in or under soil using a tool.
a. lock b. swing c. uncover d. dig
- 42. is dried grass that people use to feed animals.
a. Plot b. Hay c. Treasure d. Swing
- 43. The word means gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden.
a. treasure b. money c. gemstone d. property
- 44. To is to close something using a key.
a. lock b. close c. shut d. book
- 45. A is a small piece of land for growing things on.
a. rock b. plot c. ground d. soil
- 46. is small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads etc.
a. Sand b. Stone c. Rock d. Gravel

Part II Vocabulary Study

تساعد قوامك على الترتيب وتنظيم من طريق استذكر هذا الجدول مما يتذكره من الكلمات الجديدة

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	best known for مشهور أكثر -	improve	(his) health يحسن صحته
	a job يؤدي مهمة - يقوم بعمل	keep	the gravel walk يمشي على الطريق الممهّد بالحصى (وليس على النباتات)
do	a favour يصنع معروفًا	make	a film ينتج فيلم
	something for لأجل شيء		a request يطلب
follow	rules يتبع القواعد		a surface يمهّد سطح
			preparations for يقوم باستعدادات لـ

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
lock-up	small prison سجن صغير (التخشي)
walk	route / path طريق للتزهير
well-known	famous معروف - مشهور

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يواجه
boring	مُمل	interesting, exciting	مُثيق
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - دارج
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
lock	يقفل	unlock	يفتح
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	غير شعبي
well-known	معروف - مشهور	unknown, nameless	مغمور - غير معروف

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

gravel
 gravel (n) حصى - The paths in the park are covered with gravel.
 gravelled / gravelly (adj) مُغطى بالحصى - The paths in the park are gravelled/gravelly.

lock
 lock (v) يقفل - I locked the door.
 lock (n) قفل - There's a lock on the door.
 locked (adj) مقفول - The door is locked.

poem
 poem (n) قصيدة - I wrote a poem.
 poet / poetess (n) شاعر / شاعرة - I am a poet / a poetess.
 poetry (n) الشعر - النظم - I write poetry.
 poetic (adj) شِعْريّ - I like Shawki's poetic language.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a book of facts كتاب علمي	I'm afraid I can't	يؤسفني أنني لا أستطيع
a full-time writer كاتب مُتفرغ	In particular	بالتحديد - على وجه الخصوص
a good length for a poem طول مناسب لقصيدة	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جدًا
a long time ago منذ وقت طويل	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
a piece of writing عمل كتابي	not feeling very well	شعري أنه ليس بخير
an adventure story قصة مغامرة	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
be best known for مشهور أكثر به	similar to	متشابه لـ
different from/to مختلف عن	this was where	لقد كان ذلك هو المكان الذي
faculty of arts كُلية الآداب	travel books	أدب الرحلات
for a while لفترة من الوقت	wedding party	حفلة زفاف

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

arrange ... in يُرتب ... على شكل	learn from يتعلم من
break up يُفكك	make ... into يحول ... إلى
come from يأتي من	mix with يختلط به - يتعامل مع
compare ... to يقارن ... به	put ... away يضع ... جانبًا - يترك
get away from يتبعد عن	sail from ... to ... يسافر من ... إلى ...
learn about يتعلم عن	

7 Clear the confusion **لإزالة اللبس**

row / raw

- row
 - In class, I sit in the third row.
- raw
 - People can't eat raw meat.

صف (جنا إلى جنب)
خام / غير مطهي / خام

currant / current

- currant(n)
 - There are some currant trees in the garden.
- current(adj)
 - I follow current events on the internet.

نبات الكشمش (له ثمار تشبه العنب أو الريب)
حالي / جاري

General Exercise **On Vocabulary study**

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Thank you for the you have done for me.
 - a. favour b. home c. rules
 - d. request e. job
2. You will need to make
 - a. a favour b. preparations c. reason
 - d. a request e. health
3. A person who is popular is not
 - a. small b. unknown c. adult
 - d. famous e. unpopular
4. 'Clear' is to 'pure' as 'walk' is to
 - a. route b. go c. step
 - d. path e. come
5. Giza Pyramids are well-known all over the world. The antonyms of the word "well-known" are
 - a. celebrated b. nameless c. well-built
 - d. unknown e. famous

(ادارة الشرطة - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
6. Many people left the film before the end because it was very boring. The antonyms of "boring" are
 - a. annoying b. interesting c. terrifying
 - d. exciting e. frightening

(القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٢)

7. Some types of sand are into glass.
 - a. thrown b. turned c. fallen
 - d. made e. done
8. I asked my friend to wait for until I get dressed.
 - a. good b. ever c. some time
 - d. while e. a while

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Good citizens always the rules.
 - a. break b. have c. follow d. spend
2. The fresh air of the countryside has my health.
 - a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed
3. He had offered to help even before I a request.
 - a. made b. did c. improved d. stayed
4. Formal and informal are
 - a. synonyms b. antonyms c. lines d. verses
5. "She had a full-time job." "Full" here is an antonym of
 - a. part b. empty c. little d. few
6. In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with
 - a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
7. In a park, we walk along paths which are
 - a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
8. He used a heavy hammer to break the small rock.
 - a. in b. up c. of d. into
9. Look at this shop. This is I saw you for the first time.
 - a. where b. when c. what d. who
10. Being sociable اجتماعي, he likes to mix others.
 - a. with b. by c. from d. of
11. I am very happy in my job.
 - a. currant b. current c. currency d. currently
12. Cotton is a material.
 - a. some b. same c. row d. raw

ALTFWOK.COM موقع المتوقف

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A. Robert Louis Stevenson

(SB page 62)

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years later⁽¹⁾ in Samoa, a small island⁽²⁾ in the South Pacific⁽³⁾. He was not always well⁽⁴⁾ because the weather⁽⁵⁾ in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child, he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer⁽⁶⁾ at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21, he decided to become a full-time writer.⁽⁷⁾



Check Vocabulary

- (1) فيما بعد
- (2) جزيرة
- (3) المحيط الهادي
- (4) بصحة جيدة
- (5) الطقس
- (6) محامي
- (7) كاتب متفرغ
- (8) أكثر دفئاً
- (9) يُحسِن
- (10) فترة من الوقت
- (11) برغم أن
- (12) مشهور بـ
- (13) روايات
- (14) مختطف
- (15) قضية
- (16) قصائد
- (17) كتب الرحلات
- (18) ناجح
- (19) مغامرة
- (20) قرصنة
- (21) ذو شعبية
- (22) يتحول إلى

He often travelled to warmer⁽⁸⁾ places to try to improve⁽⁹⁾ his health. For a while⁽¹⁰⁾ he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although⁽¹¹⁾ he is best known for⁽¹²⁾ his novels,⁽¹³⁾ like Kidnapped⁽¹⁴⁾ and Strange Case⁽¹⁵⁾ of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, Stevenson also wrote many poems⁽¹⁶⁾ and travel books.⁽¹⁷⁾ His first successful⁽¹⁸⁾ novel was Treasure Island – an adventure⁽¹⁹⁾ story about pirates.⁽²⁰⁾ His books are still very popular⁽²¹⁾ today and many of them have been made into⁽²²⁾ films.

B. The Gardener (SB page 63)

The gardener⁽¹⁾ does not love to talk. He makes me keep the gravel⁽²⁾ walk; And when he puts his tools⁽³⁾ away, he locks⁽⁴⁾ the door and takes the key.⁽⁵⁾



Check Vocabulary

- (1) بستاني
- (2) الحصى
- (3) أدوات
- (4) يقفل
- (5) مفتاح

Away behind the currant⁽⁶⁾ row,⁽⁷⁾ Where no one else but cook⁽⁸⁾ may go, Far in the plots,⁽⁹⁾ I see him dig.⁽¹⁰⁾ Old and serious,⁽¹¹⁾ brown and big.

He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue, Nor wishes⁽¹²⁾ to be spoken to.

He digs the flowers and cuts the hay,⁽¹³⁾ And never seems⁽¹⁴⁾ to want to play.

- (6) نبات الكشمش
- (7) صف
- (8) طباخ
- (9) قطع أرض
- (10) يحفر - يفرس
- (11) جاد
- (12) ينهي
- (13) تهرأ قش
- (14) يبدو

2 Workbook Texts

A. Poem 1 My friend's cat

Every day when I come home
I look for my friend's cat
I usually find this cat
Lying in an old hat.
What do you think of that?

Poem 2 The boy's toy

There was a small boy
Who had a wooden⁽¹⁾ toy
He loved that toy.
One day he took it to bed
And slept with it by⁽²⁾ his
head. He loved that toy.
When the boy was woken⁽³⁾
He found the toy was broken⁽⁴⁾
He loved that toy.

(WB page 124)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) خشبي
- (2) بجوار
- (3) استيقظ
- (4) مكسور

B. Sherif : Taha, could you do something for me ?

(WB page 123)

Taha : Yes, of course. What is it ?

Sherif : Can you play football with us tonight ? We need another player.

Taha : No, I am afraid I can't. I hurt my leg last week. I can't run on it.

Sherif : Ok, don't worry. I'll ask Omar.

C. Randa : Good morning. I wonder if you can help me.

Assistant : Certainly. What is it ?

Randa : I don't suppose you could tell me who the manager is ?

Assistant : Yes, of course. It's Mr. Mansour.

Randa : Could you do me a favour ?

Can you give him my CV ?

I'd really like to work here.

Assistant : No problem, I'll give it to him when I next see him.

ALTfWok.com موقع المتفوق

3 Listening Tests

Audioscript

(58 page 64)

Teacher : This week we're studying the Scottish⁽¹⁾ writer, Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular⁽²⁾ his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his work ?

Nesma : Didn't he write Treasure Island ? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring,⁽³⁾ so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it ?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure films⁽⁴⁾ and I enjoy reading adventure stories, too. I just found Treasure Island a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well, it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and Treasure Island was published⁽⁵⁾ in 1881. And Wafaa, have you read any of his books ?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic stories⁽⁶⁾ and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he finished writing Treasure Island while he was ill in bed. He continued to write more books, including a collection of poems⁽⁷⁾ called A Child's Garden of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away from⁽⁸⁾ the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma : Where did he go ?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland⁽⁹⁾ mainly⁽¹⁰⁾. In fact, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family loved sailing and they wanted to sail from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson family lived there until he died in 1894.

Now, for this week's lesson, I want you to choose a story or a poem by Stevenson and bring it to class to discuss. Then ...

- Check Vocabulary**
1. لسكتلندي الجنسية
 2. على وجه الخصوص
 3. مملة قليلا
 4. أفلام المغامرات
 5. ينشر
 6. قصص رومانسية
 7. مجموعة مختلفة من القصائد
 8. يهرب من
 9. دولة سويسرا
 10. في الغالب / إلى حد بعيد

Audioscript

(58 page 65)

Wafaa : I don't have time to go to the library this afternoon. Could you do me a favour⁽¹⁾ and go for me ?

Nesma : Yes, of course. Which books do you want me to get ?

Wafaa : Can you find A Child's Garden of Verses ? I prefer reading poetry to long stories.

Nesma : No problem. But, could you do something for me when you're in town, please ?

Wafaa : Yes, what is it ?

Nesma : I don't really enjoy reading, so can you get me a DVD of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde ? Then, I won't have to read it !

Wafaa : Nesma !

- Check Vocabulary**
1. favour / favourita

Listening WB

(WB page 125)

Lesson 4

A sailor went to sea, sea, sea.
To see what he could see, see, see.
But all that he could see, see, see.
Was the bottom of the deep blue sea, sea, sea.

Part IV Language

Verbs + infinitive / - ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

afford to	يتحمل تكاليف	manage to	يتسكن من
agree to	يوافق أن	offer to	يعرض أن
arrange to	يرتب أن	plan to	يخطط أن
choose to	يختار أن	promise to	يعهد أن
decide to	يقرر أن	refuse to	يرفض أن
expect to	يتوقع أن	threaten to	يهدد أن
fail to	يفشل في أن	want to	يريد أن
help to	يساعد في	wish to	يتسنى أن
hope to	يأمل أن	warn (not) to	يُنذِر أن / ألا
intend to	ينوي أن	would like to	يريد أن
learn to	يتعلم أن		

- Hazem is planning to go to university next year. He hopes to study medicine.

بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتي بعدها المفعول أولاً ثم (to + inf) :

- I wanted Omar to work hard.
- They expected me to come first.

في حالة النفي يمكن أن تستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- Ahmed decided not to use my tools.
(أخذ أحمد قراراً بالآلا يستخدم أدواتي - لن يستخدمها)
- Ahmed didn't decide to use my tools.
(لم يقرر أحمد أن يستخدم أدواتي - قد يقرر أن يفعل ذلك فيما بعد)

بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن تأتي بعدها حروف جر أخرى غير (to) بمعاني مختلفة. لاحظ :

- I agree with you. (أتفق معك)
- The couple agreed on a time for the wedding. (اتفقوا على)

بعض الأفعال السابقة يمكن أن يتبعها (that) ثم جملة :

- They decided that they won't sell the family house.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- I planned the weekend with my grandparents.
a. spend b. to spend c. spending d. to spending
- I promise I will be always helpful to you.
a. to b. with c. on d. that
- This player intends this year. He can play for two more seasons.
a. retire b. to retire c. not to retire d. retiring

2 Verb + [inf. + ing]

avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل / يتضمن
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
deny	ينكر	mind	يمنع
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	تستمتع	recommend	يوصي بـ / يُجِئِد
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	suggest	يقترح
imagine	يتخيل		

- You should avoid going out late at night.
- She has just finished cleaning her bedroom.

في حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة ويكون معناها مختلف عن نفي الفعل نفسه، لاحظ الفرق :

- He suggested not going to the park.
(اقترح عدم الذهاب إلى الحديقة - لا يريد أن يذهب)
 - He didn't suggest going to the park.
(لم يقترح الذهاب إلى الحديقة - ليست فكرته)
- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (subjunctive) مع الأفعال التالية :

suggest / recommend / advise / ask ... + (that) + Subject + inf. / should + inf. ...

- I suggest that Sama join the school trip. (Not : joins)
- = I suggest that Sama should join the school trip.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you enjoy a sport ?
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
- He denied me before. He said it was our first meeting.
a. seeing b. to see c. not seeing d. not to see
- I can't imagine in the city. I enjoy its excitement and noise.
a. live b. to live c. living d. not living
- She suggested that her mother another doctor.
a. seeing b. to see c. see d. will see
- Would you mind me a hand?
a. to give b. giving c. being given d. give

3 Verb + [inf. + ing] / [to + inf.]

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق في المعنى :

begin / start	يبدأ	like	يحب / يفضل
continue	يستمر	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل

- ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.
- The wind began to blow / blowing just as we arrived home from school.
- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال love / prefer / like يأتي بعدها (to + inf) غالباً :
- ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today.
- I'd love to attend your birthday party.
- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتي بعدها (to + inf) فقط :
- ex. - The weather is starting to get colder. (Not : starting getting)

① الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح في المعنى
remember, forget, stop, try, go on + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1. remember

- remember + to + inf. يتذكر أن يفعل
ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.
- remember + gerund يتذكر أنه فعل
ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

2. forget

- forget + to + inf. ينسى أن يفعل (هنا الشيء - لم يتم القيام به)
ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.
- forget + gerund ينسى أنه فعل (فعل الشيء - لكنه نسي ذلك)
ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3. stop

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف عما يفعله لكي يفعل شيء آخر
ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.
- stop + gerund يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم أو مؤقت)
ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

4. regret

- regret + (inf. + ing) يندم على شيء قد فعله
ex. - I regret wasting my time.
- regret + to + inf. ... يشعر بالأسف لأنه مضطر لعمل شيء
ex. - I regret to tell you that your arm is broken.

5. go on

- go on + (inf. + ing) يستمر في القيام بنفس العمل أو النشاط
ex. - Rodayna went on studying physics for three hours.
- go on + (to + inf.) ينتقل من عمل إلى عمل آخر
ex. - Rodayna studied physics for three hours, then she went on to study Arabic.

6. try

- try + to + inf. يحاول أن يفعل
ex. - You tried to answer the difficult question, didn't you?
- try + (inf. + ing) يجرب القيام بشيء ليرى النتيجة
ex. - Try taking an aspirin. It might work.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- It continued for three hours non-stop.
a. raining b. to raining c. to rain d. a & c
- I'd love your birthday party. Surely, I'll be there on time.
a. attending b. to attend c. to attending d. a & b
- Remember off the gas before you go out.
a. attending b. turning c. to turn d. to be turned
- I remember that man before.
a. seeing b. to see c. to seeing d. a & b
- He stopped because it affected his health badly.
a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c
- He stopped outside because other people on the bus refused to let him smoke while driving.
a. to smoking b. smoking c. to smoke d. b & c

Notes for more understanding

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would

- She can speak 3 languages.

② جميع حروف الجر يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو فعل مضاف له (ing):

- I will go on working for this company.

- I'm worried about the health of my mother.

③ يُستخدم اسم مكان بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (إلى):

- They went to Aswan.

④ يُستخدم الفعل في المصدر (inf.) بعد حرف الجر (to) عندما يكون معناه (أن - لكي):

- I hope to win the next match.

- We work hard to achieve our goals in life.

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be opposed to	يعترض على
apply to	يطبق ... على	contribute to	يساهم في
be used to	كان معتاد على	lead to	يؤدي إلى
become used to	تعود على	look forward to	ينتظر إلى
get used to	تعود على	object to	يعترض على
be accustomed to	اعتاد على	take to	يعتاد على

- Pollution leads to having health problems.
= Pollution leads to health problems.

١٠ نستخدم (to + inf.) في حالة وجود فعل بعد بعض الصفات مثل:

happy / sad / glad / ready مستعد / unwilling / unwilling / eager متحمس / pleased / lucky / amazed

- She was ready to live in Aswan after getting married there.

١١ في حالة وجود فعل بعد (know / show / learn / teach / tell) نستخدم (how to + inf.) أو (to + inf.) فقط ولكن الفعلين (know/show) لابد أن يليهما (how to + inf.):

- I don't know to use this mobile. (X)
- I don't know how to use this mobile. (✓)
- I'll show you to use this mobile. (X)
- I don't show you how to use this mobile. (✓)

١٢ في حالة وجود فعل بعد (what / how / where.....) نستخدم (to + inf.):

-He got lost; he didn't know where to go.

١٣ الأفعال و الظروف الآتية يأتي بعدها inf. فقط بدون to :
had better يفضل / would rather ينبغي /
make يدع - يسمح / let يجعل - يصنع

- She would rather stay at home.
ولكن لاحظ الفعل (make) إذا ما استخدم في صيغة المبني للمجهول يتم استخدام (to + inf.) بعده
- She was made to write the essay again.

١٤ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد الكلمات (the first / the second / the last / the next)

- Mona was the last to watch the film.

١٥ الفعل (help) يأتي بعده المصدر مع (to) أو بدونها:
- He helped me do (to do) the job.

١٦ لاحظ ما يلي : It + be + adj. صفة + (for + subj. / obj. pron.) to + inf. ...
- It was easy for me to do the job.

١٧ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise يوصي به / allow يسمح / forbid يمنع / recommend يوصي به / permit يسمح / encourage يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here.
= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

١٨ الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) ليدل على أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:

hear يسمع / see يرى / notice يلاحظ / watch يشاهد
- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

General Exercise On Language Apply

تنويه : التدريبات التالية فرنة بشكل متدرج تصاعديا حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My mother promised me to finish my school project.
a. helps b. help c. helping d. to help
أكونم امبو - أهدع ههدع هوسي بنات ٢٢-٢٠
2. She avoided her older sister while she was studying.
a. to disturb b. disturbing c. disturbed d. disturbs
الفاطمة الجديدة ٢٢-٢٠
3. Our national team is expected in the next world cup finals.
a. play b. playing c. to play d. to playing
الدورة اسبون - أهدع هه حيس المشتركة ٢٢-٢٠
4. The gardener allowed us in the park.
a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling
الاصغرية القاهرة بنات ٢٢-٢٠
5. He is very ill, so he stopped
a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoke d. smoked
الفتح الله كيرة القاهرة بنات ٢٢-٢٠
6. Do you regret not the museum when you were in Cairo?
a. to visit b. to visiting c. visit d. visiting
الفيوم - يوسه ككك ٢٢-٢٠

7. They want their new house. (الإسماعية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. to painting b. to be painted c. to paint d. painted
8. My parents suggested to the theatre yesterday. (جمع جمادي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. going b. go c. went d. gone
9. He is looking forward to his friends. (زيارة الشرفية - لغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. meet b. meets c. met d. meeting
10. I like football. (الشهيد سيد زكريا الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. to play b. playing c. play d. a & b
11. Civil engineers get used to outdoors in extreme conditions. (دائرة القصر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. have worked b. working c. works d. worked
12. Don't forget our books with you the next time you come. (دائرة الزينية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. to bring b. to bringing c. bringing d. bring
13. Since the invention of the internet, I stopped newspapers. (الإسماعية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. to buy b. to buying c. buying d. bought
14. Ali: I have got flu. Bassem: Try an aspirin. It's good. (ادفو الثانوية بين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. to take b. taking c. to be taken d. to taking
15. I tried my eyes open, but I couldn't. (غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. keep b. to keep c. kept d. keeping
16. Many people in our town objected the new bridge. (الطود - التحرير الثانوية المشتركة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. to build b. to building c. build d. building
17. I was made a fine for not wearing the seat belt. (ادفو - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. pay b. paying c. to pay d. paid
18. When I visit a foreign country, I'd rather in a good hotel. (الفيوم - إرشواي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. can stay
19. I recommend that he to English programmes. (الفيوم - إرشواي ٢٠٢٢)
 a. is listening b. was listened c. listen d. listening

توبه • ذكّر ما تم شرحه في الصفحة جيداً واستعد للتدريبات الشاملة ضمن الدرسين الثالث والرابع.



Part I Vocabulary

توبه • لابد من حفظ المفردات الرئيسية التالية جيداً ومراجعتها بانتظام (أولوية قصوى في الامتحان).

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	line(n)	سطر شعري
contrast(ed)(n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يقارن	rhyme(d)(n - v)	القافية - يُقفي / يشجع
garden(n)	بستان	rhythm(n)	إيقاع
gardener(n)	بستاني (جنايني)	variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية
hop(ped)(n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يحجل	verse(n)	فكرة شعرية
		issue(n)	قضية

توبه • من المهم حفظ المفردات التالية - خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر - ومراجعتها بانتظام.

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

activity(n)	نشاط	especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة
author(n)	مؤلف	fair(adj)	عادل
brief(adj)	مختصر	grown-ups(n)	الكبار
broken(adj)	مكسور	issue(n)	قضية
clear(adj)	صافي - واضح	hate(d)(v)	يكره
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	narrate(d)(v)	يسرد - يروي
dedicate(d)(v)	يخصص - يُكرّس	repeated(adj)	متكرر
describe(d)(v)	يصف	review(n)	عرض نقدي
determine(d)(v)	يحدد - يسم على	situation(n)	موقف
differently(adv)	بشكل مختلف	subject(n)	موضوع
dress(ed)(n - v)	فستان - يرتدي ملابس	summary(n)	تلخيص

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

3 Definitions تعريفات

تعريفات المفردات الرئيسية من نواتج التعلم المستهدفة - هام جدا **تلويح**

Memorise	Understand
hop (ped) (v) بحجل	to move by jumping on one foot
rhyme (d) (v) يتطابق في القافية	if two words or lines of poetry rhyme, they end with the same sound, including a vowel
rhythm (n) إيقاع	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc
verse (n) فقرة شعرية	lines that form one part of a poem

Exercise On Vocabulary Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Does it with sit? (العامرية الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. read b. rhyme c. write d. roll
- If you some of his early writing with his later work, you can see how much he improved. (البحيرة - رشيد ٢٠٢٠)
 a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock
- The word "blue" with "clue".
 a. pinches b. rhymes c. includes d. hides
- It was a very long poem. It had about 60
 a. verses b. rows c. rhythms d. pleasures
- I had to after the injury I had yesterday. (السواح - طما ٢٠٢٠)
 a. run b. hope c. hop d. happen
- He is interested in social
 a. issues b. hopping c. mutiny d. verse
- When the lights go out at night, we usually depend on
 a. daylight b. candlelight c. the sun d. darkness
- Children like poems and music that have strong
 a. verse b. rhyme c. rhythm d. poem

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

- We have a small in front of our house in which we plant flowers.
 a. park b. field c. garden d. villa
- The of taste, shape and colour is what makes one fruit different from another.
 a. variety b. stress c. sentence d. line
- This poem has twelve verses, four each.
 a. poems b. poets c. rhymes d. lines

2 Important Vocabulary

- She always in front of the mirror. (السرغية - الرفاعي ٢٠٢٠)
 a. dresses b. wears c. puts on d. takes
- It was not to play the final match on the other team's home town.
 a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish
- He expresses his ideas in a way.
 a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
- He expresses his ideas
 a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
- Mr Mohammed has a good style in short stories.
 a. determining b. narrating c. hating d. sailing
- As a young man, I used to ask for advice because they are wise **حكما**.
 a. teenagers b. infants c. kids d. grown-ups
- He won't play tomorrow's match because he has a arm.
 a. broken b. brief c. fair d. long-term
- As a mother, she all her time to her children.
 a. borrows b. takes c. dedicates d. receives
- His mistakes make me angry. He never seems to learn from them.
 a. pleasant b. popular c. repeated d. enjoyable
- The police haven't the cause of the accident yet.
 a. determined b. narrated c. hated d. described

موقع التفوق ALTfwoK.com

UNIT 6

22. Most managers do not like long reports. They prefer notes.
 a. broken b. brief c. fair d. Scottish

3 Definitions

23. is a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.
 a. Rhythm b. Rhyme c. Verse d. Stanza
24. If two words or lines of poetry, they end with the same sound, including a vowel.
 a. dig b. rhythm c. rhyme d. swing
25. Lines that form one part of a poem are called a
 a. poet b. verse c. rhyme d. rhythm
26. To is to move by jumping on one foot.
 a. hope b. hop c. jump d. leap

Part II Vocabulary Study

تذويه ساعد فُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء فمُسقًا بشكل جيد وطل تدريباته

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

come	home	يعود للبيت	have	a rhythm	به إيقاع
give	a reason for	يُبرز	stay	fun	يسرح / يلهو
	a rhythm	تعطي إيقاع		in bed	يلزم الفراش
spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
clear	واضح obvious, understandable, direct, uncomplicated, explicit
clear	صافي bright, cloudless
grown-ups	الكبار adults
hate	يكره loathe, detest

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
agree about	يتفق في	disagree about	يختلف في
clear	واضح	vague, unclear, ambiguous	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
dress	يرتدي ملابس - يُلبس	undress	يخلع ملابس - يُعري
fair	عادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
hate	يكره	love, like	يُحب
light	النور	dark, darkness	ظلام

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

clear	
clear(ed) (v)	يوضّح - يُقَيِّم - My teacher cleared the difficult point for me.
clearance (n)	إزالة - Clearance of forests is dangerous to the environment.
clarity (n)	وضوح - The clarity of the meaning makes it easy to understand it.
clear (adj)	واضح - It is clear that he is angry.
clearly (adv)	بوضوح - He is clearly angry.
hop	
hop(ped) (v)	يقفز - يحجل - This bird hops.
hop (n)	قفزة - This bird takes short hops.
hopping (adj)	القفز - الحجل - This is a hopping bird.
rhyme	
rhyme(d) (v)	يسجع - يُقَيِّم - 'Tin' rhymes with 'thin'
rhyme (n)	القافية - قصيدة - This poem has a nice rhyme.
variety	
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف - People vary in size and personality.
variety (n)	تشكيلة متنوعة - تنوع - There is a variety of cotton clothes in this shop.
various (adj)	متعدد - مختلف - There're various cotton clothes in this shop.
variable (adj)	متغيّر - مُتبدّل - The speed of this car is variable.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a brief summary	ملخص موجز	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
a clear conclusion	خاتمة واضحة	feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	I hated it	كُنت أكره ذلك
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
at night	في الليل	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
be outside playing	خارج اللعب	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قولها
be special about	الشيء المميز في	quite the other way	على العكس تمامًا
by candlelight	على ضوء الشمعة	stressed words	كلمات مشددة في النطق
by day	بشكل يومي	summarize the main points	تلخص النقاط الرئيسية
compare and contrast	مقارن ووضح التباين	the part I find boring is ...	الجزء الذي أراه مملاً هو
describe how I feel	صف كيف تشعر	when it is light	في النهار
each other	بعضه البعض	words that rhyme	كلمات تُقفي مع بعضها البعض
easy to remember	من السهل التذكر		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree about	اتفق في	look for	يبحث عن
disagree about	خُتلف في	rhyme with	تُقفي مع
get up	يستيقظ	stay in	يقيم / يبقى في
go past	مر -	write about	يكتب عن

7 Clear the confusion لِحظ الفرق

strong / strange

1. **strong (adj)** قوي
- He has **strong** muscles. عضلاته

2. **strange (adj)** غريب
- People don't like **strange** things.

feel different / feel differently

1. **feel different** يشعر أنه مختلف أو مميز
- His excellent skills make him **feel different**.

2. **feel differently** لديه شعور مختلف
- Everyone enjoys their time. I don't know why you **feel differently**.

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

MRQ: Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- Global warming is one of the main that must be faced and solved.
a. issues b. rules c. roles
d. problems e. reviews
- In a line of poetry, stressed words the rhythm.
a. lose b. have c. give
d. do e. spend
- "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, we can replace the verb 'hate' with
a. love b. detest c. loathe
d. admire e. disagree
- "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is an antonym for
a. vague b. obvious c. pure
d. unclear e. explicit
- 'Hate' is to 'love' as 'light' is to
a. bright b. sunny c. dark
d. darken e. darkness
- Birds are usually active day.
a. in b. by c. at
d. of e. during the
- The jobs we have to do in life sometimes make us forget our social duties.
a. daily b. every day c. everyday
d. all today e. no day

MCQ: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The doctor advised me to in bed until I am completely better.
a. make b. do c. improve d. stay

2. When your father home, I'll tell him you don't want to study your lessons.
 a. comes b. has c. follows d. spends
3. My children much fun in the park yesterday.
 a. came b. had c. followed d. spent
4. Aya a lot of time watching TV.
 a. gave b. made c. broke d. spent
5. The words "through" and "throw"
 a. lock b. rhyme c. rhythm d. bare
6. Children like listening to and reading
 a. locks b. rhymes c. rhythms d. bares
7. He expresses his ideas in a way.
 a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
8. He expresses his ideas
 a. clearness b. clarity c. clear d. clearly
9. It is nothing of your business to agree or disagree what I say.
 a. in b. for c. at d. about
10. Short lines of poetry are easy
 a. remember b. remembering c. to remember d. remembers
11. 'Lap' rhymes 'tap'.
 a. in b. on c. with d. for
12. Before electric lamps, people used to read at night candlelight.
 a. for b. from c. to d. by
13. I am not used to this place. It is to me.
 a. light b. popular c. strange d. strong
14. I know why you feel You are not used to the hot weather of Aswan.
 a. differently b. different c. clear d. row

ALTFWOK.com موقع التفوق

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

C. Bed in Summer

(SB page 66)

In winter⁽¹⁾ I get up⁽²⁾ at night and dress⁽³⁾ by yellow candlelight.⁽⁴⁾

In summer quite the other way,⁽⁵⁾ I have to go to bed by day.⁽⁶⁾ I have to go to bed and see The birds still hopping⁽⁷⁾ on the tree,

Or hear the grown-up⁽⁸⁾ people's feet⁽⁹⁾ Still going past⁽¹⁰⁾ me in the street.

And does it not seem hard⁽¹¹⁾ to you, When all the sky is clear⁽¹²⁾ and blue, And I should like so much to play. To have to go to bed by day.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) فصل الشتاء
- (2) يقوم من الفراش
- (3) يرتدي ملابس
- (4) ضوء الشمعة
- (5) على العكس تماما
- (6) نهاراً
- (7) يقفز على قدم واحدة - يخطئ
- (8) قنزل
- (9) أقدام
- (10) يمر -
- (11) صعب
- (12) صافي

D. Khaled's opinion about the poem

(SB page 66)

Khaled, 4 : 04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly⁽¹⁾ describe⁽²⁾ the situations⁽³⁾ he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject⁽⁴⁾ is very interesting because everyone feels differently⁽⁵⁾ in different seasons.⁽⁶⁾ In my opinion, poets⁽⁷⁾ should write about everyday life.⁽⁸⁾



Check Vocabulary

- (1) موضوع
- (2) يصف
- (3) المواقف
- (4) موضوع
- (5) بشكل مختلف
- (6) فصول
- (7) شعراء
- (8) الحياة اليومية

However,⁽⁹⁾ I think the second verse⁽¹⁰⁾ is too long and its rhythm⁽¹¹⁾ is too slow.⁽¹²⁾

Hamid, 5 : 36 PM

Hamid's opinion about the poem

I love the language in the poem, especially⁽¹³⁾ the way Stevenson describes the light⁽¹⁴⁾ at different times of day.⁽¹⁵⁾ I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes⁽¹⁶⁾ in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite boring⁽¹⁷⁾ because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities.⁽¹⁸⁾ I think poets should write about more exciting⁽¹⁹⁾ things.

Sara's opinion about the poem (SB page 67)

My favourite poem is Bed in Summer because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated⁽²⁰⁾ it. Like⁽²¹⁾ the author⁽²²⁾ I wanted to be outside⁽²³⁾ playing and I didn't think it was fair⁽²⁴⁾ that everyone else was outside having fun.⁽²⁵⁾

It's a good length⁽²⁶⁾ for a poem, only three verses and I like the fact⁽²⁷⁾ that the words rhyme.⁽²⁸⁾ I don't like poems which don't rhyme. The first two lines⁽²⁹⁾ rhyme, 'night' and 'light' and then the next two lines rhyme, 'way' and 'day'. This makes it easy to say and easy to remember!

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and stayed in bed a lot. That's why I think he wrote this poem.



- (9) مع ذلك
- (10) فقرة شعرية
- (11) إيقاع
- (12) بطيء
- (13) خاصة
- (14) الضوء
- (15) النهار
- (16) القوافي
- (17) مُمل
- (18) لانشطة
- (19) مثير
- (20) يكره
- (21) مثل
- (22) مؤلف
- (23) بالخارج
- (24) عادل
- (25) يمرح
- (26) طول
- (27) حقيقة
- (28) يُقفى
- (29) مسطر شعري

2 Video script section

Literature⁽¹⁾ comes in a variety⁽²⁾ of forms⁽³⁾ : poetry⁽⁴⁾, novels⁽⁵⁾, travel books and biographies⁽⁶⁾ are just a few.

Reading literature from different times helps us learn about the world we live in, about important modern issues⁽⁷⁾ and about how much society⁽⁸⁾ has changed.

When you read any piece of literature, it's helpful⁽⁹⁾ to consider⁽¹⁰⁾ your own opinion - why you like or dislike a particular⁽¹¹⁾ character or whether you have experienced something similar to what you've read in a poem. Discussing this with your friends can also help you learn more about each other and the world around you.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الألب
- (2) تنوع
- (3) أشكال / أشكال
- (4) شعر
- (5) روايات
- (6) سير ذاتية
- (7) قضايا معاصرة
- (8) المجتمع
- (9) مفيد / مساعد
- (10) تكبر عن
- (11) خاصة

اطلب من الطلاب مشاهدة الفيديو على بنك المعرفة ثم قم بإلقاء الأسئلة التالية عليهم :

1. What different forms of literature does the video name ?
2. What can reading literature from different times teach us ?
3. What should you discuss with your friends ?

Part IV Language



شاهد وتعلم

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تدريبات

General Exercise On Language

التدريبات التالية مُرتبة بشكل متدرج تصاعدياً حسب تصنيف هرم بلوم.

تدريبات

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You should something good in your free time.
 - a. does
 - b. do
 - c. did
 - d. done
2. Dr Mustafa has agreed an article about COVID-19.
 - a. to write
 - b. writing
 - c. to writing
 - d. writes

3. Have you finished the book that I gave you?
 a. to read b. from reading c. reading d. read
4. Yara hopes a job next month.
 a. finding b. to find c. finds d. find
5. You should avoid friends with such bad people.
 a. to make b. make c. to making d. making
6. I like football matches on TV.
 a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
7. I'd like football matches on TV.
 a. watching b. to watch c. to watching d. a & b
8. My uncle has offered me how to drive a car.
 a. teaching b. teach c. to teach d. taught
9. I like in London as it's a beautiful city.
 a. to living b. live c. lives d. living
10. Reem promised and she usually keeps her promises.
 a. she comes b. to come c. coming d. will come
11. Would you helping me? - No, not at all.
 a. think b. mind c. remember d. remind
12. The child started because he was hungry.
 a. crying b. cried c. is crying d. cries
13. The thief denied the money.
 a. stolen b. was stealing c. to steal d. stealing
14. We have arranged at 9 o'clock.
 a. meeting b. will meet c. to meet d. met
15. I wish a car.
 a. to have b. had c. having d. will have
16. I prefer in a swimming pool.
 a. swim b. to swim c. to swimming d. swam
17. I feel like a cold drink.
 a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
18. The little girl playing with her toys until midnight.
 a. wanted b. kept c. decided d. promised

19. One day, I'd like poems myself.
 a. to write b. writing c. to writing d. wrote
20. He hopes the test first time.
 a. passing b. to be passed c. to pass d. to passing
21. Omar has decided with his father when he finishes university.
 a. to work b. to be worked c. working d. to working
22. Our house was robbed last night since we forgot the front door.
 a. locking b. to lock c. locked d. locks
23. When you go diving, you should avoid the coral reefs.
 a. damage b. damages c. damaging d. to damage
24. The naughty boy promised the school principal well in class.
 a. behaving b. to behave c. to have behaved d. behave

2 Special cases

25. Enjy is sorry that she was unable to help her mother last night. This means she her mother last night.
 a. regrets helping b. doesn't regret to help
 c. regrets not to help d. regrets not helping
26. I regret to the cinema. It was not a very good movie.
 a. to go b. go c. going d. went
27. I regret that we can't go to the Science Museum next week. There are no more tickets.
 a. saying b. to say c. to saying d. have said
28. Salma was busy the washing up.
 a. does b. doing c. to do d. done
29. Why didn't you remember me the key? How can I open the door now?
 a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. have brought
30. I suggest that Samy the club.
 a. join b. joined c. has joined d. will join
31. Many people in our town objected the new bridge.
 a. to build b. to building c. building d. built

32. My father often me to drive his car.
 a. lets b. makes c. allows d. denies
33. The rules of the library don't allow
 a. to smoking b. smoking c. smoke d. to smoke
34. I prefer being jobless to like a slave عبد in such a company.
 a. be treated b. treating c. being treated d. treat me
35. We all recommend that book.
 a. that read b. that he read c. to read d. to reading
36. After she stopped, everyone clapped.
 a. to sing b. singing c. sang d. sung
37. I regretted her in public. It was bad for me.
 a. criticise b. criticising c. to criticise d. to criticising
38. I regret but it is the law. Tomorrow is my last day at work.
 a. to retire b. retiring c. to retiring d. retire
39. Stop You are giving me a headache.
 a. to shout b. shouted c. shouting d. to shouting
40. He found the film quite frightening, so he stopped it.
 a. to watching b. to watch c. watching d. watched
41. I stopped a shower to refresh myself. It was very hot.
 a. to take b. to taking c. taking d. being taken
42. If you want to stay healthy, you should try more exercise.
 a. did b. to doing c. to do d. do
43. Try the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.
 a. to put b. will put c. putting d. put
44. I tried some medicine but I found that the only chemist's in our area was closed.
 a. bought b. buying c. to buy d. to buying
45. I have a stomach ache, so I tried some medicine.
 a. taking b. to take c. to be taken d. to taking
46. Please, remember your books with you next time.
 a. to bring b. bring c. bringing d. brings

47. I remember the zoo every year when I was young.
 a. visiting b. to visit c. visited d. visit
48. Don't forget bread on your way home, Ashraf.
 a. buying b. bought c. to buy d. to buying
49. I don't forget my wife for the first time.
 a. seen b. I see c. to see d. to buying
50. The gardener let us in the park.
 a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. seeing
51. The gardener allowed us in the park.
 a. cycle b. to cycle c. cycling d. to cycling

3 Check your understanding

52. I heard Omar talking on his mobile. This means
 a. I heard everything he said. b. I heard part of what he said.
 c. I heard nothing he said. d. I heard everything he didn't say.
53. Try using this cream. This means
 a. I know this cream will work. b. I know this cream won't work.
 c. I want you to use it and see what will happen.
 d. I hope this cream won't work.
54. "He has stopped drinking coffee as it is unhealthy." What does this mean?
 a. He wants to drink coffee. b. He didn't drink coffee.
 c. He no longer drinks coffee. d. He stopped to drink.
55. "I remember taking an aspirin." This means
 a. I took an aspirin. b. I didn't take an aspirin.
 c. I remember to take an aspirin. d. I will take an aspirin.

ALTFWOK.com موقع التفوق



موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Part I

Vocabulary

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات الرئيسية في قصة (Treasure Island) بالإضافة للمهارات اللغوية الموجودة في الوحدة وقواعد ما بين السطور والجزء المخصص للطلاب المتأخرين

تدويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

• أهم المفردات اللغوية من قصة (Treasure Island) كما يمكنكم الاطلاع على نص القصة والمزيد من التدريبات في الجزء المخصص لذلك في نهاية الكتاب.

تدويه

advantage(n)	ميزة	fort(n)	حصن
adventure(n)	مغامرة	get to - got to (v)	وصل إلى
alive(adj)	على قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح ... ميزة
arrival(n)	وصول	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	prevent(ed)(v)	يمنع
cannon(n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact(ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل -	race(n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink- sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary(n)	مفكرة يوميات	supplies(n)	مؤن
entry(n)	مدخل مقدمة	well- defended(adj)	حصين - منيع
fire(d) at (v)	يطلق النار على	wind(n)	الرياح

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When a place is not easy to break into, we say it is well-.....
a. furnished b. dressed c. known d. defended
- Climbing Mount Everest is a/an
a. adventure b. diary c. contact d. accident
- When the wind, a lot of leaves fell from the trees.
a. sank b. stopped c. blew d. fired
- Wood does not in water.
a. sink b. blow c. defend d. give
- To the school, you need to cross the street.
a. get from b. get on c. get up d. get to

- It you an advantage to be good with a computer.
a. fires b. gives c. prevents d. puts
- A is a heavy weapon.
a. gun b. knife c. cannon d. sword
- I won't you from defending yourself. You can say why you made this mistake.
a. sink b. blow c. allow d. prevent
- The criminal fired his gun the driver.
a. at b. with c. from d. of
- It is necessary to put a flag on the top of each school.
a. off b. up c. down d. for

Part II

Grammatical Hints

home

• عند استخدام كلمة (home) ك ظرف مكان، لا تأخذ حرف الجر (to) مع أفعال الحركة التالية:

go - arrive - leave - reach - return - come

- ex. - I go home at three o'clock. (Not: go to home)
- Mum returned home and prepared lunch. (Not: return to home)

• عند استخدام كلمة (home) كاسم بعد الصفات والضمائر، فهي تأخذ حرف الجر (to):

- ex. - I go to my home at three o'clock.
- Mum returned to the family home and prepared lunch.

in addition to / as well as

جملة + بالإضافة إلى ذلك In addition

- He went to the market. In addition, he went to the zoo.

بالإضافة إلى In addition to + n. / (inf. + ing)

- ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market.

بالإضافة إلى As well as + n. / (inf. + ing)

- ex. - As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.
إذا استخدمت as well as بين فاعلين، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول من ناحية المفرد والجمع:

- ex. - I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

يمكن ان تربط as well as معولين او صفتين

ex. - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.
- Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

at the age of عُمر

At the age of + العمر = when + subject + was/were + العمر = aged + العمر

ex. - My grandmother died in 2018 at the age of 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018 when she was 92.
= My grandmother died in 2018, aged 92.

Like / Unlike

يمكن استخدام (like / unlike) كروابط:

Like - Unlike - مثل - على عكس + اسم + , + جملة

ex. - Like his father, Abdulrahman works hard.
- Unlike his friends, Ahmed doesn't play football.

that's why لهذا السبب

جملة نتيجة + so / that is why / as a result / for this reason

ex. - He didn't earn enough money. That's why he travelled abroad.
- I've been feeling tired all week, so I'm going to bed early tonight.
- It's my mother's birthday soon. For this reason, I want to buy her a present.

Exercise On Language Hints

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- 1. I feel tired. I will home.
a. go to b. go c. arrive to d. return to
- 2. football, I also play tennis.
a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to
- 3. I play football., I play tennis.
a. As b. Like c. In addition d. In addition to

- 4. Nasser his cousins likes chicken.
a. as well as b. and c. in addition d. or
- 5. As well as my mother, I did my homework.
a. helping b. help c. helps d. a help
- 6. I was so tired yesterday. I went to bed early.
a. Because b. Although c. That's why d. In addition to
- 7. her two sisters, Sama is always nervous.
a. As b. Unlike c. Because d. In addition
- 8. My grandfather died in 2000, 62.
a. since b. ago c. age d. aged
- 9. When I finish the report, I will my home.
a. return b. go c. arrive d. go to
- 10. She was very busy preparing for the party, she called me to go and help her.
a. in addition b. as well as c. so d. because
- 11. his mother, Ahmed doesn't like noise. They both can't live in a busy city.
a. Like b. Unlike c. As d. As well
- 12. I left university in 1994, the age of 22.
a. in b. at c. on d. for

ALTfwoK.com موقع التفوق

Part III Language Skills

1 Polite request الطلب المهذب

Making a Request	Reply
Formal Requests الطلب بطريقة رسمية	
1 Could you possibly + inf.? هل من الممكن أن ...?	- Certainly. بالتأكيد
2 I wonder if you could + inf. أتساءل إذا ما كان بإمكانك ...	- That's not a problem. هنا لا يمثل مشكلة.
3 I don't suppose you could + inf. أظن أنه لا يمكنك أن ...	- Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع.
4 Do you think you could + inf.? أتعتقد أنه يمكنك ...?	- No. I'm afraid I can't. لا، للأسف لا أستطيع.
Informal Requests (طلب بطريقة ودية (غير رسمية)	
1 Can you + inf.? هل يمكنك أن ...?	- Yes. What is it? نعم ، ماذا تريد؟
2 Could you do me a favour, please? هل يمكن أن تقدم لي معروفًا من فضلك؟	- No problem. لا توجد مشكلة في ذلك.
3 Could you do something for me? هل يمكن أن تفعل شيئًا لأجلي؟	- Sure. بالتأكيد.

- لاحظ الرد على هذا السؤال:
Would you mind + inf. + ing / noun ?
هل تمانع أن ?
- No, I don't. / No problem. / No, not at all. (Agreeing) موافقة
- Yes, I do. (Disagreeing) عدم موافقة

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

تلويح للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

Writing Reviews

- 1- عند كتابة مقال يتضمن عرض نقدي لعمل فني أو أدبي (قصة / رواية / مسرحية / مسلسل / فيلم)، ينبغي تكتب ببساطة ووضوح عن النقاط التالية:
ابدأ بملخص قصير (حوالي ٤٠ / ٦٠) كلمة..
- Begin with a brief summary (40-60 words)

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Learning from literature

- Determine the most important topics. / characters / plot.
حدد أهم الموضوعات / الشخصيات / الحبكة.
- Dedicate a paragraph for each idea / topic / character.
خصص فقرة لكل فكرة / موضوع / شخصية.
- Write a short clear conclusion. The conclusion summarizes the main points of the review in addition to your opinion.
اكتب خاتمة قصيرة وواضحة، وتتضمن الخاتمة النقاط الرئيسية للعرض النقدي بالإضافة لوجهة نظرك.
- The title العنوان
- The author المؤلف
- Date published تاريخ النشر
- The main idea / topic الفكرة الرئيسية / الموضوع
- What you like about it الشيء الذي يعجبك
- What you don't like about it الشيء الذي لا يعجبك
- Conclusion الخاتمة

Model review

* Write a review of about 150 words about a film or a book you like :

Welad El-Am (The Cousins)

Welad El-Am (The Cousins) is an Egyptian action film. It is a story of love and betrayal الخيانة directed by Sherif Arafa.

Salwa (Mona Zaki) realizes that her husband, Ezzat (Sherif Mounir), is really Daniel; an Israeli spy جاسوس who kidnaps her and their two children to Israel to start a new life there.

Mostafa (Karim Abdel Aziz), the Egyptian officer, has been after Daniel for a while. When Salwa asks for help from a man in the street in Israel, her story reaches the Egyptian authorities السلطات and Mostafa is sent to collect information on Daniel and rescue Salwa.

There are conflicts مراعات of interest. Mostafa's hatred of Daniel is mixed with his need to do things correctly. Salwa's desire to leave is mixed with her belief that Daniel loves her.

The plot also involves Dareen, the Palestinian suicide bomber انتحارية. There is also the Israeli woman who befriends Salwa in order to watch مراقب her.

Mona Zaki's performance as Salwa was strong. Sherif Mounir and Karim Abdel Aziz have done a great job as well.

To conclude, the film is really great. The story, the actors and the direction worked together to make this film which I see deserves watching.

3. الترجمة Translation

تلويح للمزيد من التدريبات ملحق المهارات

1 Translate into Arabic :

1. Novels and stories depend on narration and details. Poetry, on the other hand, depends on rhyme, rhythm and rhetorical phrases.
2. Nature, as it was created, was full of harmony and beauty. When man interfered stupidly with it, he destroyed everything beautiful.
3. One has to do their best at work to achieve their goals. They should also enjoy the beauties of life to ease the pressure of work.

2 Translate into English :

- 1- عندما تتساقط أوراق الأشجار في فصل الخريف وتصبح الأغصان عارية، تفقد الطبيعة جزءاً كبيراً من جمالها وجاذبيتها.
- 2- ليس هناك شك أن قراءة الأعمال الأدبية لها فوائد كثيرة، فهي تنمي ثقافتنا وتعطينا خبرات كثيرة وتجعلنا نستمع بالمواقف التي يخلقها الكاتب.
- 3- الشعر يأخذك إلى عالم خيالي مليء بالسعادة والانسجام الروحي، فهو يخاطب الشاعر الحيلة التي لا يجيد الجميع التعبير عنها.

مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة والاختبار على الوحدة Vocabulary related to translation texts

address	يخاطب	harmony	الانسجام
appealing	جذاب	interfere	يتدخل
attractiveness	الجمالية	literary	أدبي
beauty	الجمال	narration	السرود
create	يخلق	paradoxes	مفارقات
culture	الثقافة	phrase	عبارة
destroy	يهدم	pressure	الضغط
details	التفاصيل	rhetorical	بلاغتي
ease	يخفف عن	spiritual	روحي
enrich	يثرى	there's no doubt	ليس هناك شك
experience	الخبرة	undoubtedly	بلا شك
feelings	الشاعر		

Part IV Just for Advanced level

تلماتين فقط

هذا الجزء خاص بالطالب المتقدم فقط

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

verse

- verse (n) مقطع من الشعر (جزء من قصيدة يحترق على عدد من السطور الشعرية)
 - This poem has five verses. Each verse includes six lines.
- verse (n) آية (في القرآن أو الكتاب المقدس)
 - Helmi recites some verses before he starts his work in the office.
- verse (n) الشعر - النظم
 - This play is written in verse.

rhyme

- rhyme (n) الغائبة
 - Traditional poetry always has rhymes.
- rhyme (n) شعر مُقَفَّى (له قافية)
 - This poem is written in rhyme.
- rhyme (n) نشيد / قصيدة
 - I liked rhymes when I was in primary school.
- rhyme (with) (v) يسمع / يتكلم قافية مع
 - The word "night" rhymes with "white".

plot

- plot (n) قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)
 - I have a small vegetable plot.
- plot (n) مديون العائلة
 - My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.
- plot (against) (n) مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)
 - There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- plot (n) حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (ذروة الأحداث)
 - The plot of the film was exciting.
- plot (against / to) (v) يتآمر / يكيد (ضد - لكي)
 - He plotted to steal the safe of the supermarket.
 - They plotted against their manager.

walk

- walk (v) يمشي / يسير - يمشي سيراً في - يمشح (حيوان) سيراً
- She always walks to school.
- I like walking in the fields near my country house.
- She walks her dog in the afternoon.
- walk (v) يوصل (يمشي مع شخص ليطمئن أنه وصل لمكان ما بأمان)
- Don't worry, I'll walk you home.
- walk (n) طريق مشاء (خاصة للتنزه)
- The walks around the park are covered with gravel.
- walk (n) التنزه سيراً (تمشية للمساحة)
- I usually go for a walk (go walking) at weekends.

poetry

- poetry (n) الشعر
- I studied English poetry at university.
لا حظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- write poetry يكتب الشعر
- recite poetry يلقى الشعر
- a line of poetry بيت شعر
- a piece of poetry مقطوعة شعرية
- a volume / collection of poetry ديوان شعر
- poet (n) شاعر
- In Arabic, Hafez Ibrahim is my favourite poet.
- poem (n) قصيدة
- Ahmed Shawky wrote great poems.
- poetic / poetical (adj) شعري - شاعري
- My daughter has the talent of poetic expression.

literature

- literature (n) الأدب (الروايات والقصص والشعر والمسرحيات ... إلخ)
- Poetry is the oldest form of Arabic literature.
- literary (adj) أدبي (متعلق بالكتابات الأدبية)
- I used to read literary criticism. النقد

2 Important Idioms مصطلحات هامة

keep the gravel walk	to stay on the path through the garden يلزم الطريق المفروش بالحصى في السستان كي لا تغطأ قدماء النباتات
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits صف من نبات الكشمش (نبات شبيه بالعنب أو الربيب)

3 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
a-	تُكوّن صفة أو ظرف	aloud awake صوت عال مستيقظ
co-	مساعد / مصاحب	co-pilot مساعد طيار
mis-	خطأ	misunderstand يسئ فهم
re-	يعيد / يكرر	resend يعيد إرسال

4 suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ache	تعطي معنى ألم	headache صداع
-ant	تُكوّن أسماء وصفات	applicant pleasant مقدم لوظيفة سار
-ible	تُكوّن صفات	sensible عاقِل / حكيم
-ic	تُكوّن صفات	rhythmic ذو إيقاع قوي
-ical	تُكوّن صفات	rhythmical ذو إيقاع قوي
-ure	تُكوّن أسماء	pleasure سعادة

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- تلوّيه : التدرّبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح ▶
- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. A: The street is dark and empty.
B: No problem. I'll you home.
a. pinch b. walk c. plot d. lock

- The desert is the _____ of a lot of animals.
a. house b. hole c. home d. nest
- The play is written in _____. It has rhymes.
a. verse b. poem c. English d. rhythm
- The _____ each measure 20 metres by 30 metres.
a. land b. plots c. area d. ground
- A: Do you mind helping me?
B: _____. What would you like me to do?
a. Sure b. Yes, not at all c. Yes, of course d. No, not at all
- _____ what way will you pay back your debts?
a. On b. In c. With d. At
- The word 'time' rhymes with _____.
a. rhythm b. rhyme c. verse d. poet
- Our parents are to thank for the _____ they do to us.
a. harms b. favours c. damages d. vowels
- Terrorists الإرهابيون _____ against their countries.
a. bare b. hop c. profit d. plot
- "He has a pleasant character". In this sentence, 'pleasant' means _____.
a. naked b. happiness c. joy d. friendly

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- التعبير (walk you home) يعني (أرافك في الطريق إلى المنزل)
2.	c	- كلمة (home) هنا تعني (موطن)
3.	a	- التعبير (written in verse) يعني (مكتوب بصيغة الشعر)
4.	b	- وجود (each) بمعنى (كل منهم) بعد الفراغ يتطلب اسم جمع
5.	d	- الرد بالقبول على الصيغة (Do you mind ...) يتطلب صيغة النفي
6.	b	- التعبير (In what way) يعني (بأي طريقة)
7.	b	- كلمة (time) تسجع أو تُكوّن قافية مع كلمة (rhyme)
8.	b	- كلمة (favours) تعني (فضائل / أعمال طيبة) وهو ما يستوجب الشكر
9.	d	- التعبير (plot against) يعني (يتآمر ضد)
10.	d	- حسب السياق فإن كلمة (pleasant) تعني (friendly)

Advanced Exercise on Language

تدريب: التدريب التالي ينمها الحياة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- I suggested stopping him _____ that old film as it was a waste of time.
a. watching b. watches c. watched d. to watch
 - Why do you go on _____ the same lies أكاذيب again and again?
a. to tell b. telling c. to telling d. be told
 - I recommend _____ meals at home.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
 - I recommend my children _____ meals at home.
a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
 - I don't allow anyone _____ in my office.
a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to having
 - I don't allow _____ in my office.
a. smoke b. smoking c. to smoking d. to smoke
 - I _____ go out late at night.
a. wouldn't rather b. would rather to not
c. would rather didn't d. would rather not
 - I was made _____ my room before I went out.
a. to tidy b. to tidying c. to tidying d. not tidy
 - It is starting _____ again.
a. raining b. to rain c. rains d. to raining
 - Fancy _____ you here.
a. seeing b. is seeing c. was seeing d. see

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- يمكن أن يأتي بعد الفعل (stop) الصيغة (from + inf. + ing) أو (inf. + ing)
2.	b	- الفعل الإحتلافي (go on) عندما يعني (يستمر في عمل نفس الشيء) يأتي بعده (inf. + ing)
3.	c	- بعد (recommend) يأتي (inf. + ing)
4.	a	- عندما يأتي بعد (recommend) جملة فإن فعلها يكون إما مصدر أو (should + inf.)
5.	d	- بعد (allow + obj.) يأتي (to + inf.)
6.	b	- بعد (allow) دون متعول بعدها يأتي (inf. + ing)
7.	d	- التعبير (would rather) يتم فيه بوضع (not) بعده
8.	a	- الفعل المبني للمجهول (be made) يأتي بعده (to + inf.)
9.	b	- بعد (starting) يأتي (to + inf.) وليس (inf. + ing)
10.	a	- بعد (fancy) يأتي (inf. + ing)

Test on Unit 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

Part One

• MRQ : Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- "I hate that kind of person." In this sentence, the verb 'hate' is an antonym for
 a. love b. detest c. loathe
 d. admire e. disagree
- "I have expected him to recognise his tablet as the difference is clear." The adjective 'clear' in this sentence is a synonym of
 a. vague b. obvious c. pure
 d. unclear e. explicit

• MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- In a park, we walk along paths which are covered with
 a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
(كثير الشبخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٠)
- is the best literary أدبي form that expresses emotions.
 a. Poetry b. Poet c. Poems d. Poetic
- He went to the to visit his dead father.
 a. plot b. plotter c. pottery d. plotted
(سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٠)
- Please, can you the door when you leave the room ?
 a. look b. stick c. lock d. dig
- What secret did you regret someone?
 a. telling b. to telling c. tell d. to tell
(الفيوم - الشواشنة ٢٠٢٢)
- I am looking forward to in paradise.
 a. live b. living c. lived d. lives
(افتح الله كبرية الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
- Hazem is planning to university next year.
 a. goes b. going c. to go d. gone
- The manager decided the reports before he left the office.
 a. read b. reading c. to read d. reads
- Sami enjoys science fiction novels.
 a. read b. to read c. reading d. reader
- They don't allow us in the park .
 a. to cycling b. cycling c. to cycle d. cycle
- He is used up early.
 a. to getting b. getting c. to get d. get

موقع التفوق ALTfwoK.com

تلويه
يمكنك حل
الامتحان وتصويبه
الالكترونيا



- I can't afford this expensive flat.
 a. to buy b. buying c. buy d. to buying
- Animals usually sleep on
 a. straw b. stew c. attics d. tunnels
- She doesn't allow in her house.
 a. to smoke b. smoked c. smokes d. smoking

• Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

"She's coming. Hide it quickly!" The girls quickly shoved it under the table and acted as if nothing had happened. When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes. Poor Miss Farida!

They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her, but there was nothing that they could do. Miss Farida told them that she would miss them. She explained that she would give anything to stay as their teacher, but she had no choice. Her father was gravely ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him. She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighbouring country.

Looking at the list of email addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always do their best, then she got ready to leave. Our class monitor walked over to her and handed her a small package. With tears in her eyes, Miss Farida opened it. "It's from our trip to Siwa the last term. "Look at it and always remember us," said our monitor. She nodded, "Thank you. I'll frame it and put it up on the wall of my room." Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who devotes all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and tolerance.

- The best title to the passage is
 a. Miss Farida's departure
 b. The good relation between Miss Farida and her class
 c. The gift to Miss Farida
 d. Miss Farida's good qualities and her strong personality

- 18. Miss Farida was
 - a. the school headmistress
 - b. the class teacher
 - c. a good student at a secondary school
 - d. ungrateful at her parents
- 19. Miss Farida planned to keep in touch with the students by
 - a. sending letters
 - b. exchanging emails
 - c. visiting each other
 - d. meeting at the nearby
- 20. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 - a. Miss Farida's photo at school
 - b. the picture of Miss Farida's house
 - c. the picture of Miss Farida's parents
 - d. the gift for Miss Farida
- 21. The synonym of the word "devotes" is ".....".
 - a. dedicates
 - b. takes
 - c. withdraws
 - d. lets
 - e. gives
- 22. The students will remember Miss Farida because of
 - a. the gift they gave her
 - b. her wealth and happiness
 - c. her tolerance
 - d. her care of her parents
 - e. her cooperation
- 23. Miss Farida encouraged her students
 - a. not to study well
 - b. to study hard
 - c. to do their best
 - d. to frame photographs
 - e. put photographs on the wall

Part Two

1. Translate into Arabic ;
 Reading gives us the chance to enjoy the beauty of life. It helps us to learn and see the world in a different way.

2. Translate into English :

عاش بالخير لوطننا لذا يجب أن ندافع عنه ونحسه من أي اعتداء .. كما يجب أن نتسلح بالعلم والعمل بحسن
 من أجل تقدم هذا الوطن وإزدهاره

3. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words on :
Your Favourite Writer

Handwritten area for an essay on 'Your Favourite Writer'.



Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adventure(n)	مغامرة	mysterious(adj)	غامض
anti-virus (adj)	مكافحة الفيروسات	name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يذكر اسم
app(n)	تطبيق	old-fashioned(adj)	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن
care(n)	عناية / رعاية	online (adj - adv)	عبر الإنترنت - متصل
case(n)	حالة / قضية	paintings(n)	لوحات
communicate(d) (v)	يتصل - يتواصل	password(n)	كلمة المرور
communication(n)	التواصل - الاتصال	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
concerned(adj)	مهتم	perhaps(adv)	ربما
continue(d) (v)	يستمر - يدم	popular(adj)	شائع - ذو شعبية
copy(ied) (v)	ينسخ	prefer(red) (v)	يفضل
cover(ed) (n - v)	غلاف - يغطي	print(ed) (v)	يطبع
cruel(adj)	قاسي	professor(n)	أستاذ جامعي
Dark Ages(n)	عصور الظلام	real(adj)	حقيقي
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	recommend(ed) (v)	يوصي به / يركي
details(n)	تفاصيل	relaxing(adj)	مريح
difference(n)	اختلاف / فرق	reply(ied) (v)	يرد - رد
encourage(d) (v)	يشجع	rest (ed) (n - v)	باتي - راحة - يستريح
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	save(d) (v)	يحفظ - يدخر
ever(adv)	على الإطلاق - من قبل	setting(n)	مكان وزمان الأحداث
face(d) (v)	يراه	smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي
impossible(adj)	مستحيل	software(n)	برامج - برمجيات
interesting(adj)	شيق	strange(adj)	غريب
kidnapped(adj)	مخطف	surprisingly(adv)	من المفدهش
like(conj.)	مثل	technology(n)	تكنولوجيا
lose - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر	text(n)	رسالة نصية - نص
material(n)	محتويات	trick(ed) (v - n)	يخدع - خدعة

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

action(n)	حركة - حدث	maps(n)	خرائط
almost(adv)	تقريباً	message(n)	رسالة
around(adv)	حول	museum(n)	متحف
arrange(d) (v)	يرتب	situation(n)	موقف
character(n)	شخصية	still(adv)	لا يزال
dangerous(adj)	خطير	successful(adj)	ناجح
decide(d) (v)	يقرر	together(adv)	معاً
example(n)	مثال	true(adj)	صحيح
fantastic(adj)	رائع	warmer(adj)	أكثر حمية
farm(n)	مزرعة	wonderful(adj)	رائع
full(adj)	مملوء		

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

express	ideas	تعبير عن أفكار	send	a message to	يرسل
have	a penfriend	لديه صديق مراسلة		a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
make	friends with	يُصادق / يُصاحب	take	it for granted	يكون على يقين / يظن أنه من المسلم به

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

an example is	أحد الأمثلة هو	just a pen and paper will do	نفظ قلم وورقة سفيان بالفرض
and so on	وهكذا	know very well	يعرف جيداً
around the world	حول العالم	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
as far as I'm concerned	على قدر اهتمامي	make ... stressed	تجعل ... تحت ضغط
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	not my kind of book	ليس نوعي المفضل من الكتب
different from	مختلف عن	old-fashioned	ذو أسلوب قديم - موضة قديمة
each other	بعضهم البعض	on a ship	على سفينة
events of the story	أحداث القصة	online clubs	نادي / منتدى على الإنترنت
for the rest of your life	طوال ما تبقى من عمرك	really fun	متنوع فعلاً
full of action	ملى بالأحداث		
seventeen-year-old	ذو السبعة عشر عاماً		

be here to stay	استمر / لا غنى عنه	that is just the start of the Dark Ages	هذه مجرد بداية لـ عصور الظلام
in the 1930s	في ثلاثينات القرن العشرين	travel through	يسافر عبر
Information Dark Age	عصر الظلام الرقمي	you shouldn't judge a book by its cover	لا تحكم بالظاهر
it's not all good news	ليست أخبار جيدة على الإطلاق	manage to	يستطيع / يتحقق
continue to	يستمر في	move to	ينتقل
copy ... onto	نسخ ... على	send ... away	يُبعث
decide to	يقرر أن	stay with	يقيم مع
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً
escape with	يفر مع	write to	يرسل
hack into	يحترق		

Reading & Listening texts

1 Reading Texts

A. Why penfriends are history! (SB page 72)

Communication⁽¹⁾ is easy today. Many people use apps⁽²⁾ on their smartphones⁽³⁾ to talk to their friends. When we send a message⁽⁴⁾ to a friend, we take it for granted that he or she will reply⁽⁵⁾ very soon.

Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had penfriends⁽⁶⁾. These were people they did not always meet, but people they chose to write to about their lives. The letters sometimes took a long time to arrive, but penfriends were very popular⁽⁷⁾.

An example⁽⁸⁾ is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided⁽⁹⁾ to write to each other⁽¹⁰⁾ in the 1930s, and are now perhaps⁽¹¹⁾ the longest two people ever⁽¹²⁾ to be penfriends.

Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued⁽¹³⁾ to write to her. Like⁽¹⁴⁾ Nellie, Daphe lived on a farm⁽¹⁵⁾ and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. As well as⁽¹⁶⁾ letters, they sent each other black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter.

- Check Vocabulary**
- التواصل - الاتصال
 - تطبيقات
 - الهواتف الذكية
 - رسالة
 - يزد
 - اصدقاء مراسلة
 - شائع - ذو شعبية
 - مثال
 - يقرر
 - بعضهم البعض
 - ربما
 - على الإطلاق
 - يستمر
 - مثل
 - مزرعة
 - بالإضافة إلى

Nellie still⁽¹⁷⁾ prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use technology⁽¹⁸⁾ to communicate⁽¹⁹⁾. Surprisingly⁽²⁰⁾, there are now many online⁽²¹⁾ clubs for penfriends. They encourage⁽²²⁾ people to write letters to penfriends around⁽²³⁾ the world, and they are very successful⁽²⁴⁾. Many say that writing letters is relaxing⁽²⁵⁾ and a warmer⁽²⁶⁾ way to communicate than with an email or text⁽²⁷⁾. You do not need apps, passwords or anti-virus software. As Nellie says, 'Just a pen and paper will do.'

- لا يزال**
- تكنولوجيا
 - يتواصل
 - من المفضل
 - على الإنترنت
 - ويشجع
 - حول
 - ناجح
 - مريح
 - أكثر حميمية
 - رسالة نصية

B. A fantastic adventure story! (SB page 74)

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's Kidnapped⁽¹⁾ is not as great as Treasure Island or as exciting as The Strange⁽²⁾ Case⁽³⁾ of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde, but it is full⁽⁴⁾ of action⁽⁵⁾ and really fun.

I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious⁽⁶⁾ uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel⁽⁷⁾ man and he tricks⁽⁸⁾ David. He arranges⁽⁹⁾ for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to⁽¹⁰⁾ escape⁽¹¹⁾ with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures⁽¹²⁾. I recommend⁽¹³⁾ this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

- Check Vocabulary**
- المستطرف
 - غريب
 - حادثة / قضية
 - مملوء
 - حركة - حدث
 - غامض
 - قاسي
 - يخدع
 - يؤثر
 - يتمكن من
 - الهروب
 - مغامرة
 - يوصي بـ / يوصي

C. Not the best book for me (SB page 74)

As far as I'm concerned⁽¹⁾, this book is too old-fashioned⁽²⁾. The story is interesting⁽³⁾ and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters⁽⁴⁾ are very real⁽⁵⁾. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer⁽⁶⁾ to read more modern books. Kidnapped is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canada)

- Check Vocabulary**
- مهم
 - أستوفه قديم
 - شيق
 - شخصيات
 - حقيقي
 - يفضل

(SB page 74)

D. My favourite book !

Kidnapped has so much action and adventure! This really is my favourite book. David Balfour's uncle tries to send him away to America on a ship, but David escapes and makes friends with⁽¹⁾ a man called Alan Breck. Together⁽²⁾ they travel through Scotland and face⁽³⁾ many dangerous⁽⁴⁾ and exciting situations.⁽⁵⁾ I love all the details⁽⁶⁾ about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will definitely⁽⁷⁾ read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يتصادف - يُصاحِب مع
- (2) معًا
- (3) يواجه
- (4) خطير
- (5) مواقف
- (6) تفاصيل
- (7) بالتأكيد

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 73)

Interviewer : Hello, today I'm talking to Professor⁽¹⁾ Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) استاذ جامعي
- (2) صحيح
- (3) عصور الظلام
- (4) تقريبيًا
- (5) رائج
- (6) يفتد - يخسر
- (7) محتويات

Professor : That's true,⁽²⁾ although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer : What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages,⁽³⁾ because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Professor : Today we use computer technology for almost⁽⁴⁾ all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic,⁽⁵⁾ of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose⁽⁶⁾ a lot of material⁽⁷⁾ because new technology won't be able to read it.

Interviewer : But, we'll copy⁽⁸⁾ all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save,⁽⁹⁾ or we will forget the passwords⁽¹⁰⁾ to give us this information.

- (8) ونسخ
- (9) يحفظ
- (10) كلمات مرور
- (11) يطلع
- (12) متحف
- (13) رائع
- (14) لوحات
- (15) خرائط
- (16) وهكنا
- (17) عملية اوعية

Interviewer : What can we do about this?

Professor : In my opinion, we need to print⁽¹¹⁾ more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum⁽¹²⁾ and you will see wonderful⁽¹³⁾ old paintings,⁽¹⁴⁾ photographs, maps⁽¹⁵⁾ and so on.⁽¹⁶⁾ With care,⁽¹⁷⁾ these will be with us for a long time.

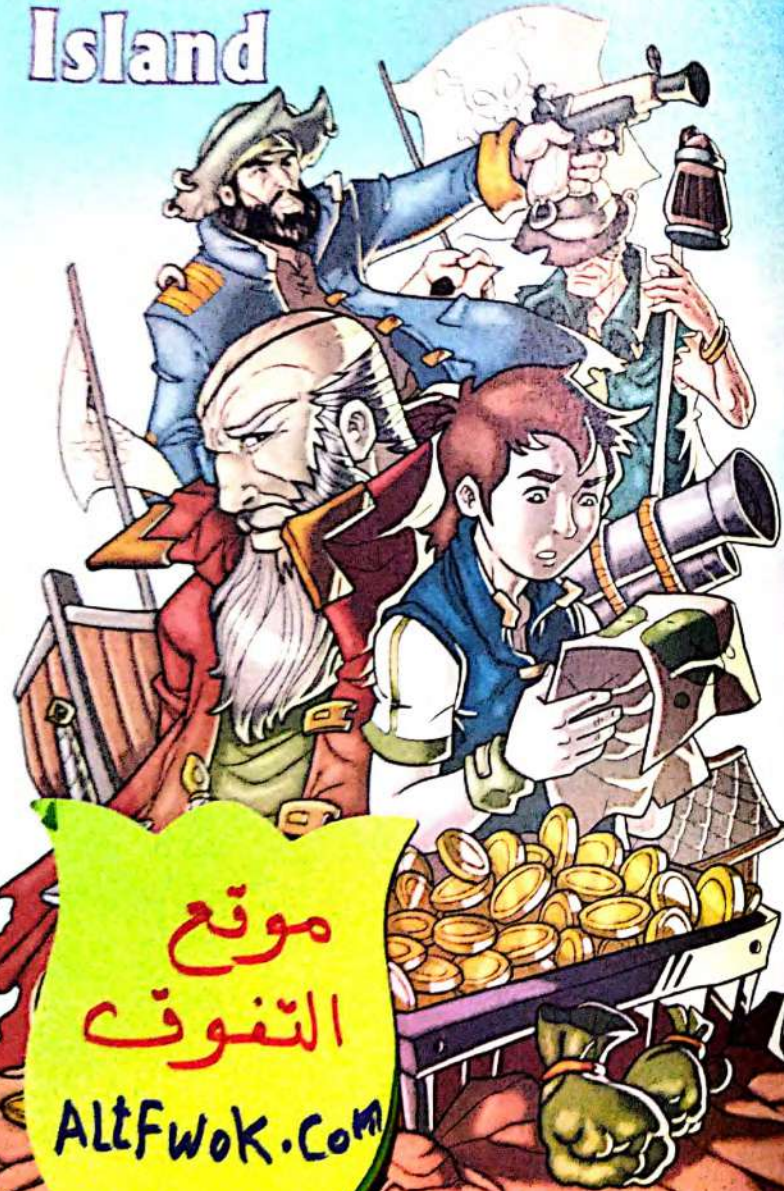
Interviewer : So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow. We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer : It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Treasure Island



موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok.com

Main Characters



Dr. Livesey



Jim Hawkins,
A young teenage boy



Captain Smollett,
the ship's captain



Mr. Trelawney

The Pirates



Billy Bones



Long John Silver



Captain Flint,
His parrot



Ben Gunn



Pew

Setting

The story takes place at The Admiral Benbow Inn in Bristol on the Hispaniola, a sailing ship on Treasure Island, an island in the Caribbean.

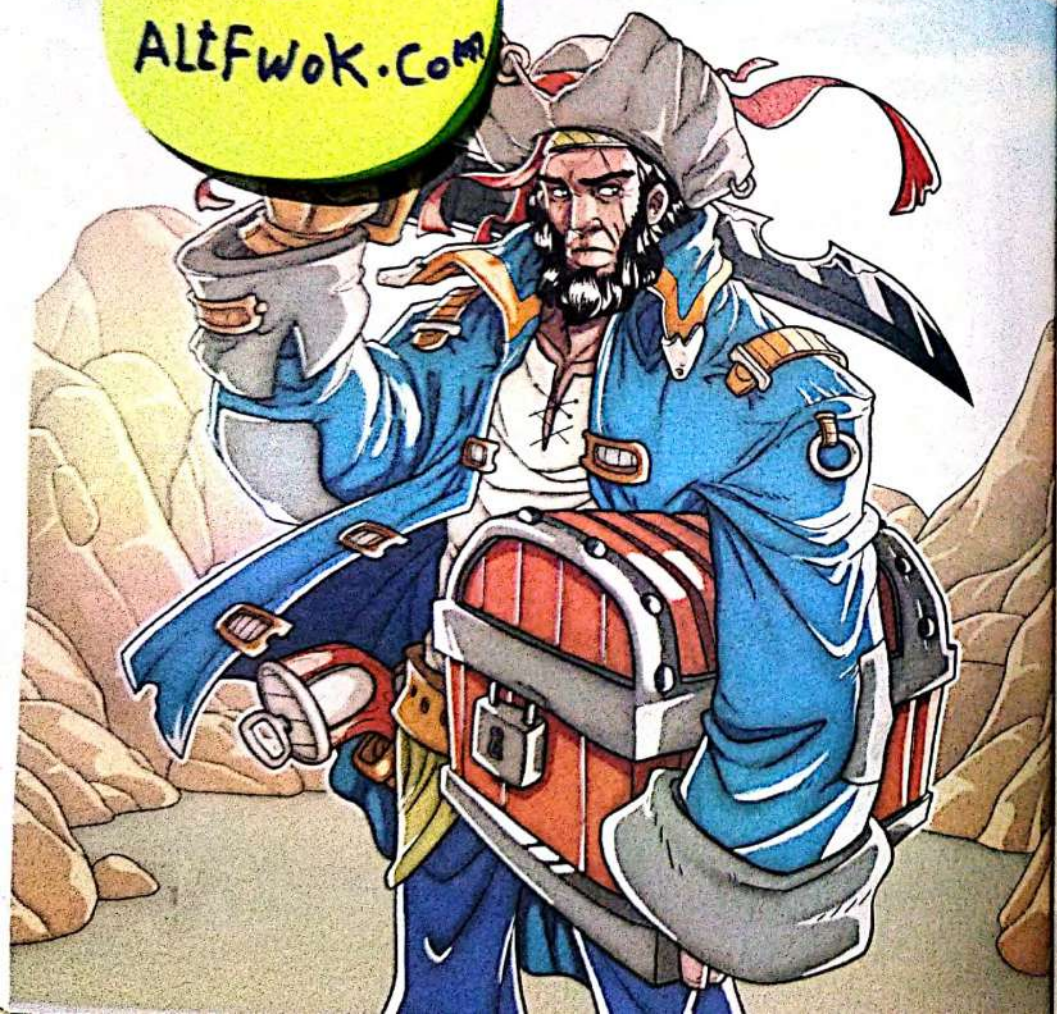


Treasure Island

By Robert Louis Stevenson

CHAPTER 1

موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok.com



Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يخفي - يخفى
blind (adj)	كفيف البصر	inn (n)	نزل (فندق صغير)
captain (n)	قبطان - قائد	owe (ed) (v)	يدين بـ ... (عليه دين)
cliff (n)	مُنحدر	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	pale (adj)	شاحب اللون
danger (n)	الخطر	papers (n)	مستندات - أوراق
dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ	scar (n)	ندبة - أثر جرح
frightened (adj)	خائف	sword (n)	سيف
grab (bed) (v)	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	terrible (adj)	فظيع
guard (ed) (n - v)	يحرس - حارس	travel (led) (n - v)	السفر - يسافر
gun (n)	بنديقية	weak (adj)	ضعيف - واهن
hand (ed) (n - v)	يُعطي (باليد) - يد		

Words and their definitions

- scar : a mark on the skin from a cut or a wound أثر جرح في الجسم
- cliff : a steep piece of land or rock منحدر
- dare : to be brave enough to do something جرئ
- pale : having a skin colour that is very white or whiter than it usually is شاحب
- sword : a weapon with a long, sharp blade سيف

Before You read

- Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?

Jim Hawkins

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned⁽¹⁾ an inn⁽²⁾ called the Admiral Benbow, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar⁽³⁾ on his face. He looked around⁽⁴⁾ him.

Check Vocabulary
(1) امتلاك
(2) نزل / فندق
(3) ندبة / أثر الجرح في الجسم
(4) نظر حوله

"This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up⁽⁵⁾ to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box.

"You can call me Captain. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins⁽⁶⁾.

The Captain was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs⁽⁷⁾. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors⁽⁸⁾ visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised⁽⁹⁾ that he didn't want any sailors to find him.

In the evenings, the Captain sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that nobody would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the Captain's stories, but I think people liked them.

The Captain stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare⁽¹⁰⁾ to ask him for more.

One morning, the Captain went for a walk⁽¹¹⁾ along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale⁽¹²⁾, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend Bill?"

I told him that I did not know Bill and said that the table was for the Captain.

"Well, my friend Bill might say that he's the Captain," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?"

"Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked.

I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the Captain to return.

- (5) ورفع ... إلى
- (6) عملات ذهبية
- (7) منحدرات
- (8) بحارة
- (9) ادرك / فهم
- (10) يجرؤ
- (11) ذهب في تمشية
- (12) شاحب

When the Captain saw the man, he looked pale and ill. "Black Dog!" the Captain said.

"That's right," he replied⁽¹³⁾. "I've found my friend Bill! We've had a lot of adventures⁽¹⁴⁾ since I lost these fingers!"

I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts⁽¹⁵⁾ and both men stood up and ran outside. The Captain had a sword⁽¹⁶⁾ and then I saw Black Dog running away with blood⁽¹⁷⁾ on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him.

The Captain walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight⁽¹⁸⁾. At that moment, the doctor arrived to see my father who was sick. "Help us, Dr Livesey! The Captain is hurt!" said my mother.

The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs⁽¹⁹⁾."

- (13) اجاب / رد
- (14) مغامرات
- (15) صرخات عالية
- (16) سيف
- (17) دم
- (18) معركة / مشاجرة
- (19) المنور العلوي
- (20) دونه



We took the Captain up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine⁽²⁰⁾. The Captain stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted. "Black Dog is not as bad as some of the other men," he said. "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!"

That evening, my father died. I felt terrible⁽²¹⁾ and forgot all about the strange things⁽²²⁾ that the Captain told me.

Then, a week later, I saw a blind man⁽²³⁾ coming down the road towards⁽²⁴⁾ the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind⁽²⁵⁾ person help me?" "You are at the Admiral Benbow Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him.

At that moment, he grabbed my hand⁽²⁶⁾.

"Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!"

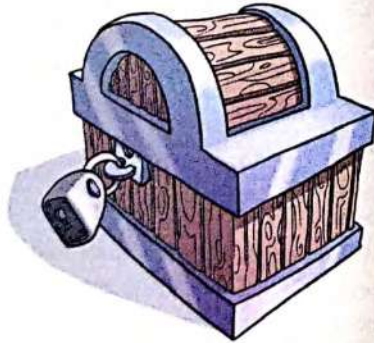
I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised⁽²⁷⁾ to see him.

"Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned around⁽²⁸⁾ and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said.

"I have time!⁽²⁹⁾"

Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and Black Dog probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to Dr Livesey, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in danger⁽³⁰⁾. We decided to go to the nearest village⁽³¹⁾ and ask our neighbours⁽³²⁾ for help guarding⁽³³⁾ the inn.

However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell Dr Livesey. Another man said that we could have his gun⁽³⁴⁾.



- (21) شعرت بالسوء
- (22) أشياء غريبة
- (23) رجل كفيف
- (24) تجاه / ناحية
- (25) طيب / عطوف
- (26) أمسك بيدي
- (27) مندهش
- (28) استدار حول
- (29) لديه وقت
- (30) في خطر
- (31) أقرب قرية
- (32) جيران
- (33) حماية
- (34) بندقية

It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the Captain's jacket. I also saw the message⁽³⁵⁾ that the blind man gave to the Captain. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.



"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return."

"I'll only take the money which the Captain owes⁽³⁶⁾ us," my mother said, opening the bag.

We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us.

"Take the money and run," said my mother. "I'm too weak⁽³⁷⁾ to continue."

I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge⁽³⁸⁾, where we could hide⁽³⁹⁾ in the dark.



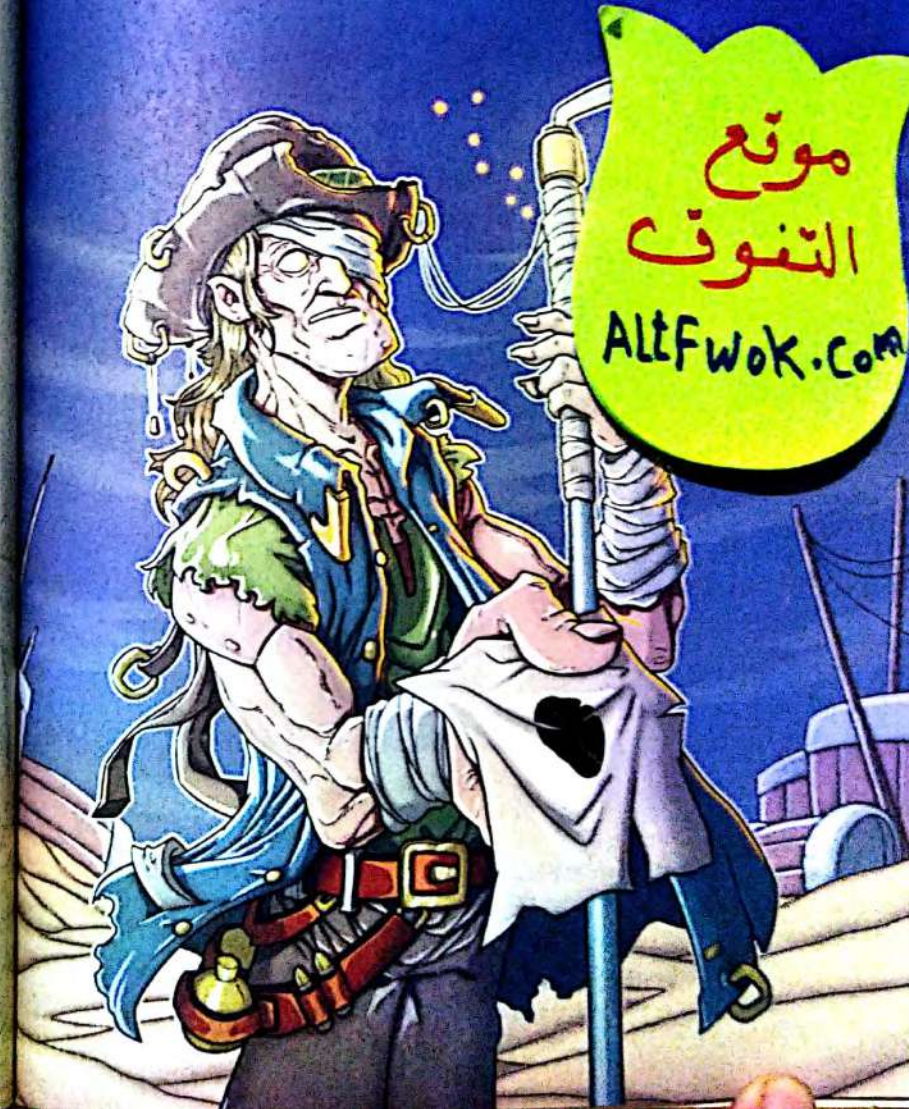
- (35) رسالة
- (36) يدين لـ
- (37) ضعيف
- (38) كوبرى
- (39) يختبئ

Check your Understanding Chapter 1

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You _____ me twenty thousand pounds. Please, I need my money back.
a. own b. owe c. possess d. have
2. The policeman _____ the criminal's arm and pushed him into the police car.
a. bit b. guarded c. released d. grabbed
3. There was a small _____ by the road where we could have a meal and spend the night.
a. beach b. inn c. prison d. pool
4. Being _____, he needs someone to help him cross the road.
a. strong b. indebted c. blind d. wealthy
5. There's a night watchman who _____ our school at night.
a. guards b. steals c. fears d. frightens
6. In ancient times, people usually carried _____ to protect themselves or fight others.
a. tanks b. submarines c. missiles d. swords
7. I wanted to ask my father for more pocket money, but I didn't _____.
a. guard b. dare c. attack d. owe
8. This wound الجرح might leave a / an _____ on your cheek.
a. scare b. scar c. inn d. guard
9. His long illness made him go _____.
a. healthy b. powerful c. pale d. strong
10. Be careful! This _____ is steep and very dangerous.
a. cliff b. plain c. lake d. tree

CHAPTER 2



Vocabulary

catch - caught (d) (v)	قبض على	island (n)	جزيرة
clue (n)	دليل / مفتاح كل اللغز	magistrate (n)	قاضى / محقق
cook (n)	طاه - طباخ	map (n)	خريطة
crew (n)	طاقم سفينة / طائرة	rich (adj)	ثري / غني
cross (n)	علامة (+ / x)	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق
dead (adj)	ميت	sail (ed) (v)	يسبح
direction (n)	اتجاه	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	servant (n)	خادم
head (n)	رئيس - قائد	the rest (n)	الباقى
include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمّن	treasure (n)	كنز

Words and their definitions

▶ clue	: an object or a piece of information that helps to solve a crime	مفتاح لحل اللغز
▶ crew	: all the people who work on a ship or a plane	طاقم سفينة / طائرة
▶ escape	: succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you	يهرب
▶ head	: the most important person in an organisation	رئيس / قائد
▶ magistrate	: someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court	قاضى / محقق
▶ rob	: steal something from a person, shop ... etc.	يسرق / يسلب
▶ servant	: someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them, such as cleaning	خادم

Before You read

- What do you think will happen next in the story?

I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man.

A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out⁽¹⁾, "Someone has opened the box!"

"Is it there?" said the blind man.

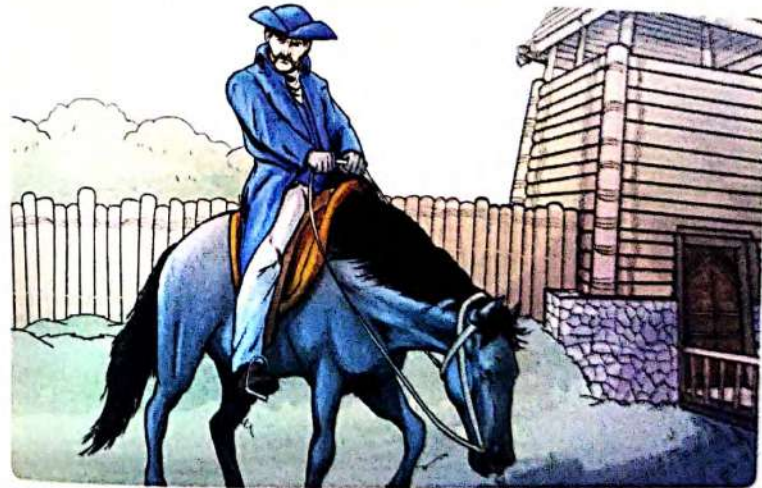
"Only the money is there," replied the man.

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house.

"If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions⁽²⁾.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesey, and the rest⁽³⁾ were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better⁽⁴⁾, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped⁽⁵⁾ on a boat.



I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.

"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head of the police⁽⁶⁾.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesey."

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تسمى
- (2) اتجاهات
- (3) البقية
- (4) شعر بتحسن
- (5) هرب
- (6) رئيس الشرطة

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate⁽⁷⁾ as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

We found that Dr Livesey was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesey the papers that the Captain had in his box.

"I think this might be a clue⁽⁸⁾ as to where Flint buried⁽⁹⁾ his treasure!"⁽¹⁰⁾ said Dr Livesey.

"That is why those men were not interested in⁽¹¹⁾ money," agreed⁽¹²⁾ Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now."



The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe⁽¹³⁾ the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed⁽¹⁴⁾ of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map⁽¹⁵⁾ of an island, with a big cross⁽¹⁶⁾ on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

- (7) رجل قضاء / محقق
- (8) دليل / مفتاح الفلز
- (9) دفن
- (10) كنز
- (11) مهتم بـ
- (12) وافق
- (13) يصف
- (14) يسلب / يسرق
- (15) خريطة
- (16) علامة (X)

"Dr Livesey, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor."

"I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave⁽¹⁷⁾ England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for⁽¹⁸⁾ the journey⁽¹⁹⁾ in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney.

It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew⁽²⁰⁾ ready to work on it. The crew included⁽²¹⁾ a man called Long John Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook⁽²²⁾. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by⁽²³⁾ the thought⁽²⁴⁾ of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news⁽²⁵⁾ of the treasure a secret⁽²⁵⁾.

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye⁽²⁶⁾ to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail⁽²⁷⁾.

- (17) مستعد للمغامرة
- (18) جهز لـ
- (19) رحلة (طويلة)
- (20) طاقم السفينة
- (21) يشمل / يتضمن
- (22) طباخ جيد
- (23) متحمس
- (24) فكرة
- (25) يحافظ على سرية الخبر
- (26) يودع
- (27) يبحر

AltFwOk.com موقع التفوق

Check your Understanding Chapter 2

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The _____ decided that the man was innocent **بأنه** and set him free.
a. pirate b. sailor c. cook d. magistrate
- It is one of the policemen's jobs to _____ criminals and send them to prison.
a. hold b. catch c. hand d. overlook
- The job of the new _____ is to clean the house and the garden.
a. master b. landlord c. servant d. captain
- Dr Zewail was the _____ of the team who discovered the femtosecond.
a. head b. hand c. lord d. owner
- The ancient Egyptians left us lots of hidden
a. islands b. crosses c. treasures d. crews
- There are signs along the roads that show us
a. treasures b. directions c. riches d. meals
- The _____ of the plane consisted of a pilot, a copilot and eight attendants.
a. passengers b. wings c. engine d. crew
- Poor is to _____ as servant is to master.
a. wealth b. wealthy c. poverty d. the rich
- The police have found a strong that helped them solve the crime.
a. clue b. cross c. island d. blind
- This is a good tourist attraction for people who like fishing, diving and sailing. Water completely surrounds it.
a. hill b. mountain c. island d. river
- He was set free **أطلق سراحه** after the had decided that he was not responsible for the crime.
a. captain b. magistrate c. pilot d. sailor

CHAPTER 3



Vocabulary

attack (ed) (n - v)	هجوم - فحرم	mutiny (n)	تمرد / عصيان
barrel (n)	برميل (خشب)	note (n)	ملاحظة - رسالة قصيرة
crutch (n)	عكاز - ركيزة	of different sizes	ذو أحجام مختلفة
destination (n)	مقصد - وجهة السفر	parrot (n)	ببغاء
empty (ied) (n - v)	فارغ - بقرغ	patient (adj - n)	صبور - مريض
finger (n)	إصبع اليد	pay - paid (for) (v)	يدفع ثمن
frightened (adj)	خائف	pirate (n)	قرصان
gang (n)	عصابة	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
harbour (n)	ميناء - ميناء	return (ed) (v)	يعود - يبعيد
helper (n)	مساعد	safe (adj)	آمن - نهي أمان
journey (n)	رحلة	sailor (n)	بحار
lose a leg	يفقد إحدى ساقيه	save (d) (v)	يؤخر - يؤخر
make me laugh	يجعلني أضحك	secret (n - adj)	سر - سري

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **harbour** : an area of water next to the land where ships can stay safely ميناء
- ▶ **mutiny** : when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge of them and take control for themselves تمرد
- ▶ **crutch** : a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk when you have hurt your leg عكاز
- ▶ **parrot** : a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak ببغاء
- ▶ **barrel** : a large container made of wood برميل
- ▶ **pirate** : a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them قرصان
- ▶ **gang** : a group of people that causes trouble عصابة
- ▶ **secret** : known about by only a few people and kept from others سر
- ▶ **patient** : able to wait calmly for a long time صبور
- ▶ **attack** : an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place هجوم

Before You read

What do you think life is like on the Hispaniola ?

The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note⁽¹⁾ to Long John Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of⁽²⁾ people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand.

"It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for⁽³⁾ his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers⁽⁴⁾. The helper ran out of the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked⁽⁵⁾ my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked."

"Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver.

We walked back along the harbour⁽⁶⁾ past boats of different sizes⁽⁷⁾, all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

We found Dr Livesey with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) ملاحظة
- (2) مليء
- (3) يدفع لـ
- (4) مساعدين
- (5) هاجم
- (6) ميناء، المرسى، المنسى
- (7) أحجام مختلفة

It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said. "Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I was told that the destination⁽⁸⁾ of the journey was a secret," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny⁽⁹⁾?" asked Dr Livesey.

"I don't like the men on the ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesey.

"It's my job to keep you safe⁽¹⁰⁾, that's all," said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesey. "That's Long John Silver and Captain Smollett."

"I know Long John Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is." I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch⁽¹¹⁾. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot⁽¹²⁾. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh⁽¹³⁾.



- (8) وجهة (السفرا)
 (9) تمرد / عصيان
 (10) يهتم على سلامتك
 (11) دعامة / عكاز
 (12) بيقاء
 (13) جعلني أضحك

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel⁽¹⁴⁾ which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty⁽¹⁵⁾. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby⁽¹⁶⁾. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.



"On that journey, Flint was the captain," he said.

"It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today."

"You won't be able to return to Bristol after this journey," said another sailor called Dick. "What will happen to your inn?"

"I've sold it," said Silver. "My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you'll have lots of money, too."

Another man joined them and said, "I'm tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?"

"You must be patient⁽¹⁷⁾," said Silver. "Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack."

- (14) برميل
 (15) فارغ
 (16) قريب / مجاور
 (17) صبور

"We shouldn't wait that long," replied another sailor.
 "You're like the others," said Silver. "You want to do things quickly. That's what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead!"

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a **pirate**, and the other crew were part of his **gang**.

"No, we wait," continued Silver. "When the time is right, I'll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out: "I can see **land**!"

It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.



(18) بيت
 (19) قرصان
 (20) جماعة
 (21) لوطى / يانعة



Check

your Understanding Chapter 3

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My daughter has a that can sing and repeat what we say.
 a. puppy b. parrot c. kitten d. hen
- What we say here is top It is not for publishing.
 a. secret b. public c. score d. tip
- The fox that and kills the birds on our farm comes from the neighbouring desert area.
 a. feeds b. returns c. attacks d. protects
- If you go on working hard, you will your goal.
 a. lose b. mistake c. fail d. reach
- A: What is your next ? B: London. I'm going there next Friday.
 a. secret b. barrel c. destination d. mutiny
- Don't be The lion is in its cage.
 a. frightened b. frightening c. tired d. tiring
- The coach depends on his to find information about other teams.
 a. sailor b. helpers c. pilot d. cook
- I asked Sama to the book she had borrowed from me.
 a. return b. take c. catch d. attack
- It is not safe to go sailing in this area because there are
 a. rescuers b. parrots c. patriots d. pirates
- One of the told his captain that he could see land in the distance.
 a. sails b. sellers c. sailors d. seals
- One of the sailors led a against the captain, but they failed to take the ship.
 a. barrel b. parrot c. crutch d. mutiny

General Exercises on Chapters 1, 2 & 3

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

موقع التفوق
ALTfwoK.com

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The people tried to catch the thief, but he
a. caught b. escaped c. arrested d. managed
- Be careful or you will fall off the ; it's very steep.
a. mountain b. hall c. well d. cliff
- We much to our great teachers.
a. take b. lend c. owe d. borrow
- Black Dog is ; he has lost his sight.
a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled
- Outside the building there are two men whose job is to and protect us.
a. guard b. attack c. prevent d. own
- The thief had a long curved on his cheek, so we could recognize him.
a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
- What a brave young man! He was the only student who to say the truth.
a. could b. dared c. refused d. disagreed
- A/An is a group of people who work against the law.
a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
- Unfortunately, the burglar the house.
a. stole b. took c. owed d. robbed
- The ship helped each other to control the situation well.
a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
- A is a bird with brightly coloured feathers that can learn to copy human speech.
a. chick b. duck c. parrot d. pirate

- The is the person who is in charge of a ship, or a plane.
a. hostess b. sailor c. driver d. captain
- I don't have a lot of money on me; only a few in my pocket.
a. wealth b. coins c. jewellery d. gold
- Strong is to as blind is to sighted.
a. power b. powerful c. weak d. terrible
- My friend went on a journey in the forest. He was looking for
a. adventure b. safety c. sleep d. technology
- Always keep away from
a. dangerous b. danger c. safety d. safe
- Afraid and are synonyms.
a. terrific b. terrifying c. frightening d. frightened
- He had a with which he could shoot the lion dead.
a. sword b. knife c. gun d. stick
- I asked the secretary to me the report in person. شخصياً
a. hand b. owe c. fear d. dare
- The escaping criminal in the fields, away from the police.
a. left b. fought c. hid d. guarded
- A : " Who this villa? B: It is my uncle's.
a. owes b. owns c. guards d. grabs
- These prove that Mr Ashraf has a villa, two blocks of flats and three modern cars.
a. pepper b. peppers c. paper d. papers
- My uncle likes He is usually away in one place or another.
a. coins b. guns c. travel d. reading
- My cousin works as a in a famous restaurant.
a. cooker b. cook c. cooking d. cooks
- The on the map shows the place where the ship sank. غرقت
a. sail b. island c. cross d. crew
- Catch is to free as is to alive.
a. dead b. death c. die d. deadly

27. A group of prisoners were able to from the police van.
 a. lock b. catch c. arrest d. escape
28. I asked my mother to hot pepper in the salad.
 a. include b. cook c. grow d. sail
29. Some students were playing football. The were sitting under the leafy trees.
 a. students b. rest c. whole d. other
30. Keep the password Never tell anyone what it is.
 a. popular b. public c. known d. secret
31. The clever captain the ship safely during the storm.
 a. sank b. flew c. sailed d. drowned
32. The police are searching for the gang who the money of the bank.
 a. robbed b. guarded c. saved d. returned
33. Google help you to know the directions.
 a. store b. maps c. cloud d. mail
34. One of the sailors led a against his captain.
 a. rescue mission b. mutiny c. murder d. mirror
35. This oil field produces two million a day.
 a. pirates b. destinations c. barrels d. parrots
36. I asked one of my secretaries to take a to the general manager.
 a. away b. rest c. meal d. note
37. After the accident that hurt his leg, Mr Nasser had to be on for three months.
 a. crutches b. prison c. charge d. crew
38. Nothing is left in the fridge. It is completely
 a. full b. filled c. empty d. stuffed
39. A learner has to be Learning takes its time.
 a. patience b. patient c. ill d. diseased
40. You have to for the drinks. They are not free.
 a. call b. drink c. take d. pay
41. Sama cried in pain when her brother shut the door on her
 a. finger b. note c. crutch d. harbour

CHAPTER 4



Vocabulary

as usual	كالمعتاد	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - مضاب
blow a whistle	نطق صافرة	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
branch (n)	فرع - أغصان	low (adj)	منخفض
climb (ed) (v)	تسلق	mark (ed) (v)	يُعلِّم - يعلِّم
climb out of	تسلق خارجاً من	marked (adj)	مُعلَّم
close (to)	قريب - لصيق	mistake (n)	خطأ
coast (n)	ساحل	organise (d) (v)	يُنظِّم
count (ed) (v)	عدّ - نحى	relax (ed) (v)	يستريح
disease (n)	مرض	rocky (adj)	صخري
excited (adj)	مُثار - سعيد	shore (n)	شاطئ
expression (n)	تعابير الوجه	shout (ed) (n - v)	صرخة - بصح
fight - fought (v)	قاتل - يتشاجر	surprised (adj)	مُدهش
forever (adv)	للأبد	thought (n)	فكرة
hill (n)	تل	trust(ed) (n - v)	يثق - الثقة
hold onto - held (v)	تشبث -	whistle(d) (n - v)	صافرة - يصفّر

Words and their definitions

- ▶ **branch** : a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk
فرع شجرة
- ▶ **disease** : an illness which affects a person, animal or plant
مرض
- ▶ **shore** : the land along the edge of a large area of water such as a sea, an ocean or a lake
شاطئ
- ▶ **trust** : to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong
يثق -
- ▶ **whistle** : a small object that produces a high whistling sound when you blow into it
صافرة

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of⁽¹⁾ the ship. We could see two low hills⁽²⁾ and one big one. The island was now very close⁽³⁾.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."

Check Vocabulary

- (1) على جانب
- (2) تلال منخفضة
- (3) قريب

"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked⁽⁴⁾ on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!"

I smiled⁽⁵⁾ at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust⁽⁶⁾ anything that he said. I soon found Dr Livesey and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news⁽⁷⁾."

Dr Livesey's expression⁽⁸⁾ did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett.

I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me. "What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney.



I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me. "Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected⁽⁹⁾. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately⁽¹⁰⁾. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long John Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesey. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops⁽¹¹⁾ of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore⁽¹²⁾. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like⁽¹³⁾ bad eggs.

"This place is only good for diseases⁽¹⁴⁾," said Silver.

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesey talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual⁽¹⁵⁾.

Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax⁽¹⁶⁾, if they wanted to.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.

All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

- (9) توقع
(10) في الحال
(11) قمم صخرية
(12) شاطئ (البحر)
(13) رائحتها مثل
(14) امراض
(15) كالمعتاد
(16) يسترخى / يستريح

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise⁽¹⁷⁾ the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake⁽¹⁸⁾?

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the branch⁽¹⁹⁾ of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

"I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you're a good sailor. I'm telling you this to save you!" said Silver.

"Silver," Tom replied, "you're a good man and you shouldn't work with these pirates. I'd prefer to lose my hand than work with them!"

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.

"What was that?" asked Tom.

Silver smiled and said "That? Oh, I think that was Alan."

"Alan!" cried Tom. "He's a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won't help you!"

- (17) ينظم
(18) خطأ
(19) فرع (شجرة)



Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife⁽²⁰⁾.

Silver now blew a whistle⁽²¹⁾ and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever⁽²²⁾.

Check Vocabulary
(20) سكين
(21) يصفر
(22) إلى الأبد



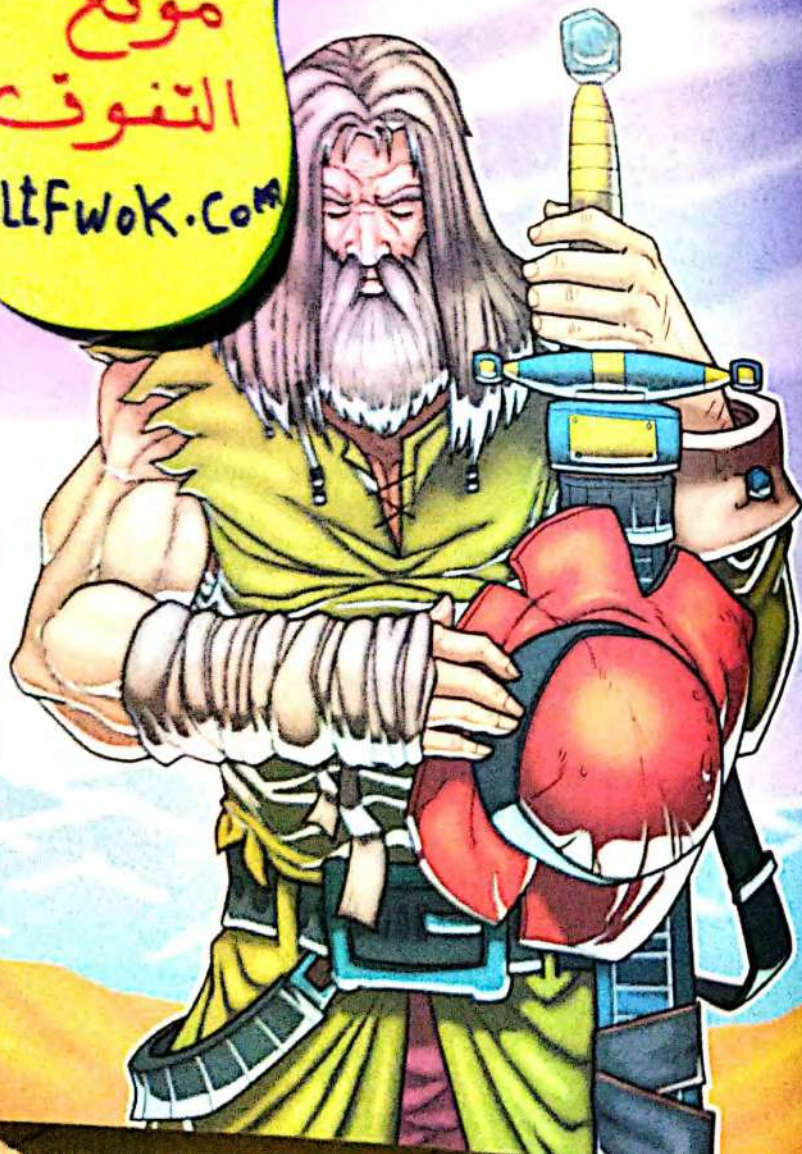
Check

your Understanding Chapter 4

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk الحذع and that has leaves أوراق and fruit growing from it.
a. leaf b. root c. branch d. seed
2. The is the area where the land meets the sea.
a. shore b. coast c. wave d. harbour
3. The is the land along the edge حافة of a large area of water such as an ocean مُحيط or lake. بحيرة
a. shore b. coast c. wave d. harbour
4. A / An is an illness which affects يؤثر على a person, animal, or plant.
a. fight b. expression c. branch d. disease
5. A is a small object شيء that produces a high sound when you blow ينفخ into it.
a. mark b. thought c. whistle d. mistake
6. To is to rest يستريح or do something that is enjoyable, especially after you have been working.
a. mark b. relax c. exert d. labour
7. To is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.
a. blow b. doubt c. lie d. trust
8. The little child held the leg of a chair to help him stand up.
a. of b. off c. onto d. into
9. The referee his whistle and ended the match.
a. blew b. said c. fed d. bit
10. When the car hit the man, he gave a loud
a. rhyme b. laugh c. smile d. shout

CHAPTER 5



Vocabulary

allow(ed) (v)	سمح بـ	interested (adj)	مُتَمَنِّع
believe (d) (v)	صَدَّقَ - يُؤْمِنُ	kneel down - knelt (v)	سَجَدَ
bottom (n)	أَسْفَل / سفح - قاع	leader (n)	قائد
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	on your own	بمفرده
crazy (adj)	مجنون	prefer (red) (v)	يُفَضِّلُ
dark (n - adj)	الظلام - مُظْلِم	realise (d) (v)	يُدْرِكُ - عَهِدَ
different (adj)	مُخْتَلِف	reply (ied) (v)	جَواب - يَجب
directions (n)	اتجاهات	sail (ed) (n - v)	شراع المركب - يبحر
dry (adj)	جاف / جشَن	skin (n)	الجلد
explain (ed) (v)	يُفَسِّرُ - يشرح	spade (n)	حاروف
fight - fought (v)	يقاتل	start (ed) (n - v)	بداية - يبدأ
flag (n)	علم - راية	voice (n)	صوت إنسان
fresh (adj)	مُتَعَشِّش	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق - يفتق

Words and their definitions

crazy	: unwell in your mind	مجنون
sail	: a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat	شراع
leader	: the person who controls other people	قائد
fight	: to hit, kick or fire guns at other people	يقاتل

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to⁽¹⁾ the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher⁽²⁾ here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer⁽³⁾. I decided to walk towards the man.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قريب من
(2) أكثر نضارة
(3) يشعر أكثر أماناً

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise⁽⁸⁾, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down⁽⁹⁾ in front of me. "Who are you?" I asked.

"Ben Gun," he said in a dry voice⁽⁶⁾. "I've not spoken to anyone for three years."

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun⁽⁷⁾. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails⁽⁵⁾.

"What happened to you?" I asked.

"I was left here by a ship," he said. "I've lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of⁽¹⁰⁾ eating good food again."

"If I can get back to my ship, I'll give you bread and cheese," I said.

He began to look worried. "If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What's to stop you?" he said. "It isn't a problem with you," I replied.

"I'm a good man," he told me. "I'm very rich, too!" he said in a quiet voice.

- (1) دهشة
(2) يركع
(3) صوت جاف
(4) محترق من الشمس
(5) أشرطة السفن
(6) يحلم بـ
(7) يصدق / يعتقد

ALTfwok.com موقع التفوق



I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him⁽¹⁰⁾.

"I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!" he said. Then he looked worried and said, "You didn't come on Flint's ship, did you?"

I realised now that this man could help me.

"No, Flint's dead, but some of Flint's crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us." I told him. "Is there a man with one leg?" he asked.

"Yes, Silver. He's the cook and their leader⁽¹¹⁾," I explained.

"If you work for Silver, I'm finished," he said.

I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

"You're a good boy," he said at the end. "Don't worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow⁽¹²⁾ me to come home on the ship if I helped him?" he asked.



"Of course," I replied. "And he'll need your help on the ship home, I'm sure."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for

about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship *on his own*⁽¹³⁾. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long John Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where the treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was *بمفرده*⁽¹³⁾ on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing. One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a *جاروف*⁽¹⁴⁾ spade'. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him. "I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!" Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"

I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions, and ran easily next to me.

We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.



Check

your Understanding Chapter 5

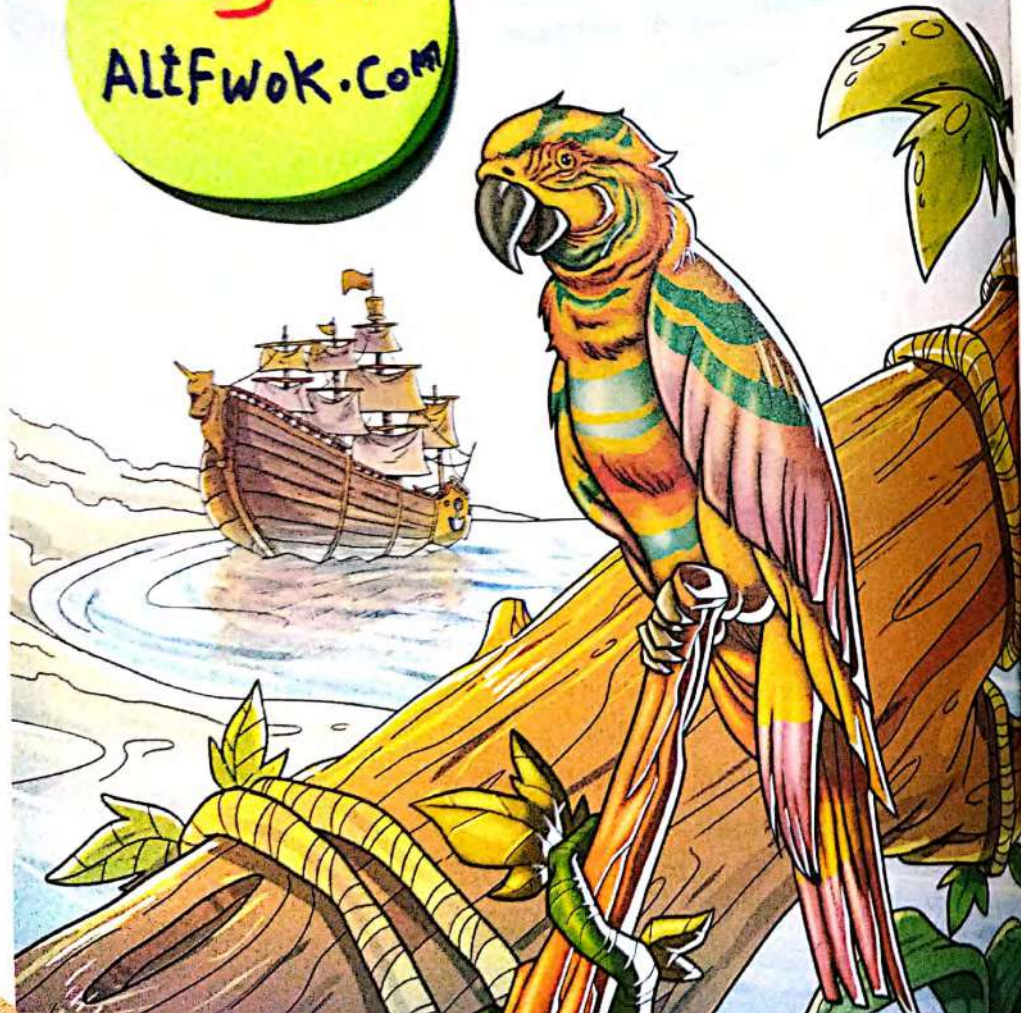
• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A / An is the person who controls other people.
a. servant b. pirate c. leader d. inn owner
2. To is to hit, kick or fire guns at other people.
a. fight b. help c. assist d. support
3. means unwell in one's mind.
a. Helpful b. Kind c. Sane d. Crazy
4. A / An is a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat.
a. sail b. row c. engine d. sailor
5. A is a tool for digging that has a long handle and a broad metal blade that you push into the ground.
a. gun b. spade c. note d. map
6. Your stops you thinking clearly and taking the right decision.
a. education b. health c. worry d. experience
7. When it is, it is difficult or impossible to see.
a. dark b. right c. light d. sunny
8. I that the man was a criminal when I saw the gun he was carrying.
a. fought b. sailed c. worried d. realised
9. Raise *رفع* your so that we can hear you.
a. head b. sound c. voice d. noise
10. I felt relaxed after the walk in the air of the countryside.
a. fresh b. poisoned c. bad d. hot
11. When the police officer fired his gun, the terrorist down to his knees and gave up.
a. led b. believed c. replied d. knelt

CHAPTER 6

موقع
التفوق

ALTFWOK.COM



Vocabulary

advantage (n)	ميزة	fort (n)	حصن
adventure (n)	مغامرة	get to - got (v)	وصل إلى
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	give ... an advantage	يمنح ميزة
arrival (n)	وصول	hit - hit (v)	يضرب - يضرب
attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم	pick(ed) up (v)	يتناول - يلتقط
blow - blew - blown (v)	تهب - ينفخ	prevent(ed) (v)	يمنع
cannon (n)	مدفع	put up a flag	يرفع علم
contact (ed) (n - v)	اتصال - يتصل بـ	race (n)	سباق
defend(ed) (v)	يدافع عن	sink - sank - sunk (v)	يغوص - يغطس
diary (n)	مفكرة يوميات	supplies (n)	مؤن
entry (n)	مدخل مقدمة	well-defended (adj)	حصين - منيع
fire (ed) a gun	يطلق النار من بندقية	wind (n)	الرياح
fire (ed) at (ed) (v)	يطلق النار على		

Words and their definitions

- cannon : a large gun with wheels
- contact : communicate with someone or something
- defend : protect someone or something from being attacked
- supplies : food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time

Dr Livesey :

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort⁽¹⁾. It was big enough for about twenty-five people and was very well defended⁽²⁾. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the Hispaniola. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan⁽³⁾. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact⁽⁴⁾ Silver, you will be dead."

They looked very surprised.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage⁽⁵⁾. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons⁽⁶⁾ into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies⁽⁷⁾ now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent⁽⁸⁾ the boat from sinking⁽⁹⁾. The wind blew⁽¹⁰⁾ from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

"We must keep in this direction⁽¹¹⁾," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive." Then his voice changed. "The cannon⁽¹²⁾!" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) حصن / قلعة
- (2) محصنة جيداً
- (3) خطة
- (4) يتصل بـ
- (5) ميزة
- (6) أسلحة
- (7) إمدادات / مؤن / مخازن
- (8) يمنع
- (9)غرق
- (10) تهب الرياح
- (11) يستمر في هذا الاتجاه
- (12) مدفع

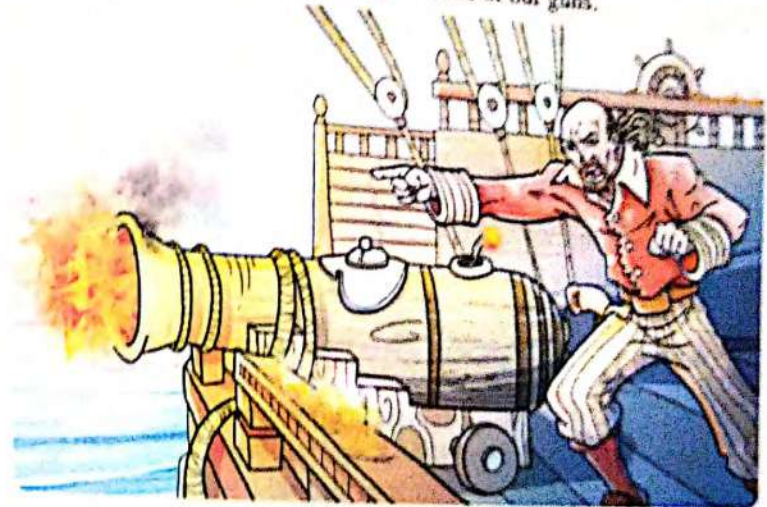
Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at⁽¹³⁾ the pirates, and one of them fell.

We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollett. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

"They are only using one boat," I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us." "It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race⁽¹⁴⁾ to get there first."

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet⁽¹⁵⁾ of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including⁽¹⁶⁾ some of our guns.



There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to⁽¹⁷⁾ the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another **gun fire**⁽¹¹⁸⁾, and poor Redruth fell down. We quickly **picked him up**⁽¹¹⁹⁾ and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good **seaman**⁽¹²⁰⁾ to him.

Captain Smollett **put up a flag**⁽¹²¹⁾ inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

- (118) إطلاق النار
(119) يلتقط
(120) خاتم
(121) يرفع العلم
(122) ينفض العلم



"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.

"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit. "They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down⁽¹²²⁾."

"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort.

Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"

I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

Check

your Understanding Chapter 6

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- To is to protect someone or something from being attacked.
a. fire b. pick c. sink d. defend
- are food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a period of time.
a. Supplies b. Communications
c. Diaries d. Entries
- To is to communicate with someone or something.
a. fire b. burn c. contact d. supply
- A is a large gun with wheels.
a. gun b. cannon c. sword d. fort
- A is a strong building or group of buildings used by soldiers or an army for defending an important place.
a. diary b. gun c. contact d. fort
- A / An is an exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual things happen.
a. adventure b. advantage c. contact d. connect
- A / An is a good or useful feature that someone or something has.
a. adventure b. advantage c. contact d. connect
- To means to arrive somewhere.
a. sail b. arrive to c. get to d. leave for
- A is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you each day.
a. dairy b. diary c. fort d. cannon
- To means to shoot bullets or bombs.
a. fire b. shout c. point d. defend

General Exercises on Chapters 4, 5 & 6

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

• ④ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People who suffer from starvation usually need food
a. supplies b. surveys c. reviews d. analysis
2. Our brave army soldiers our country against enemies.
a. offend b. defend c. attack d. fight
3. When did you to your office ?
a. stay b. reach c. arrive d. get
4. I usually my friends by using my mobile phone.
a. communicate b. connect c. contact d. control
5. A is a heavy metal weapon.
a. knife b. cannon c. pistol d. gun
6. What are the and disadvantages of the internet ?
a. advantages b. points c. sides d. demerits
7. My mother down to take the little girl into her arms.
a. broke b. fell c. knelt d. raised
8. I used to depend on myself and do the homework my own.
a. on b. of c. from d. with
9. The young man behaved foolishly, so people believed he was
a. wise b. polite c. active d. crazy
10. Captain Smollett had a to save the ship from Silver and his men.
a. plane b. plan c. plain d. pain
11. Archaeologists try to look for the of the pharaohs.
a. pleasures b. pressures c. treasures d. sessions

موقع التفوق
AltFwok.com

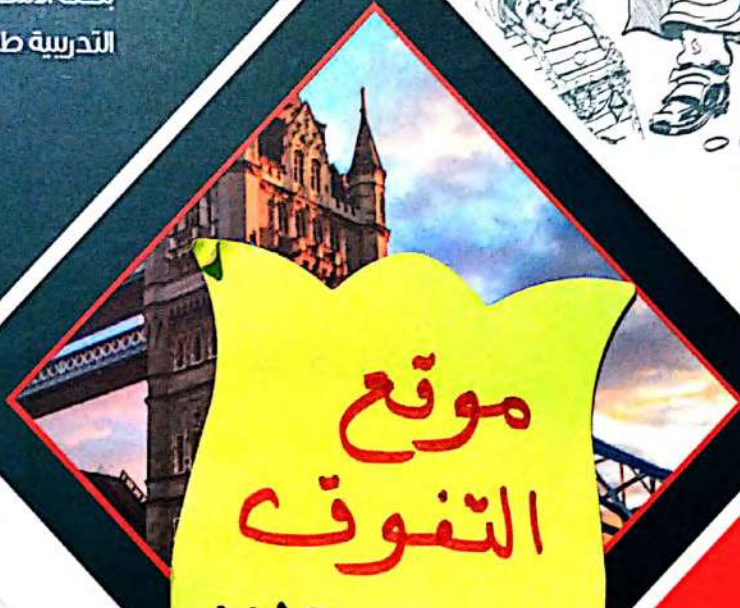
New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

Questions Bank

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات
التدريبية طبقاً لنواتج التعلم

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع
التفوق

ALTfwok.com

El-Moasser
Dictionary

داخل الملحق
قاموس المعاصر
اللغوي



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

1st
Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS



PART 1 Student's Follow-up page 3

- Follow your progress in vocabulary تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية

PART 2 Assess yourself page 10

1. Five Monthly Accumulative Assessment Model Tests on all Units (According to the New System)
١. خمس تقييمات تراكمية شهرية للتقييم على كل الوحدات طبقاً للمنظومة الجديدة
2. General Exercises collected from SB & WB Exercises
٢. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

PART 3 Model Tests & Al-Azhar Tests page 31

1. 15 Assessment Model Tests on the whole curriculum (According to the New System)
١. خمسة عشر نموذج اختبار للتقييم على المنهج بأكمله (طبقاً للمنظومة الجديدة)
2. Al Azhar Exams & Exams for students with special needs
٢. اختبارات للأزهر الشريف والدمج
3. Islamic selections
٣. مختارات إسلامية لطالب الأزهر الشريف

PART 4 El Moasser Dictionary page 90

• قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية

PART

1

Student's Follow-up

المتابعة المستمرة للطالب

موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok.com



تنويه

- Follow your progress in vocabulary

- تابع مستواك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر.

تابع مستواك أولاً
بأول إلكترونياً



Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مسؤوك في إتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام QR code للتدريب الإلكتروني المستمر

Unit 1

استخدم QR code أكثر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة



Lessons 1 & 2

.....	حماية البيئة - صيانة	isolated (adj)	marks
.....	من أضرار حماية البيئة	lean - leaned / leant (v)	.....
.....	النظم السني	material (n - adj)	.....
.....	الساحة المنيّة	spicy (adj)	.....
.....	صانع مُراعِي للبيئة	sustainable (adj)	.....
.....	تُعزِض لخطر - مُهدد بالانقراض	swell - swelled -	.....
.....	البيئة	swollen (up) (v)	.....
.....	من الناحية البيئية	trek(ked) (n - v)	.....
.....	تأثير - أثر - يؤثر	including (prep)	.....
.....	يُغزل	unique (adj)	.....

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	نشط	noisy (adj)	marks
.....	قديم - عتيق	over the moon	.....
.....	جميل	old (adj)	.....
.....	سُلم	peace (n)	.....
.....	مشغول - مزدحم	peaceful (adj)	.....
.....	هادئ - ساكن	pros and cons	.....
.....	مُزدحم	quiet (n - adj)	.....
.....	مُثير	relax(d) (v)	.....
.....	غريب / نادر - أجنبي	relaxing (adj)	.....
.....	جديد	stuck (adj)	.....

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	كفيّف - أعمى	hide - hid - hidden (v)	marks
.....	قبطان - قائد	inn (n)	.....
.....	مُتَحَدِّر صخري	owe(d) (v)	.....
.....	عملة معدنيّة	own(ed) (v)	.....
.....	يجرؤ	pale (adj)	.....
.....	خائف	papers (n)	.....
.....	يجذب بشدة - يخطف	scar (n)	.....
.....	يُحرس - حارس	sword (n)	.....
.....	بندقيّة	terrible (adj)	.....
.....	يُعطي (بلونًا)	adventure (n)	.....

Unit 2

استخدم QR code أكثر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تدريب



Lessons 1 & 2

.....	موافقة - اتفاق	iron(ed) (n - v)	marks
.....	الدم	level(n)	.....
.....	التفريغ بالدم	long-term(adj)	.....
.....	منضغط الدم	pressure(n)	.....
.....	رغبة - يرغب	prestige (n - adj)	.....
.....	يشرع	roar(ed) (n - v)	.....
.....	التفريغ	role model(n)	.....
.....	مُشَرع	model(n)	.....
.....	كريم - سخي	speed(n)	.....
.....	ذكاء	support(ed) (n - v)	.....
.....	نسبة الحديد في الدم	transplant(ed) (n - v)	.....

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	عالم أحياء	party(n)	marks
.....	الماشية	livestock(n)	.....
.....	المجتمع	monitor(ed) (v - n)	.....
.....	مشهور	organisation(n)	.....
.....	حارس	track(ed) (v - n)	.....
.....	فريق الصيد	aim (n)	.....

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	دليل	map(n)	marks
.....	خاء - طباخ	rich(adj)	.....
.....	خاقم سفينة / طائفة	rob(bed)(v)	.....
.....	علامة (+ / x)	sail(ed)(v)	.....
.....	اتجاه	secret(n-adj)	.....
.....	يهوب	servant(n)	.....
.....	رئيس - قائد	the rest(n)	.....
.....	جزيرة	treasure(n)	.....
.....	قاسى - محقق	call out	.....

موقع التفوق ALTfwoK.com

Unit 3

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تلاوة



Lessons 1 & 2

.....	مُدْبِل - رانغ جَدَا	owe(d) (v)	marks
.....	ذَيْن (مديونية)	plump(adj)	.....
.....	يَكْسِب - يَجْنِي مال	prison(n)	.....
.....	تاجر	rat(n)	.....
.....	تعيِس - باتس	terrible(adj)	.....

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	جمعيّة - اتحاد	plan(ned) (v)	marks
.....	مُجْتَمَع - جماعة	voluntary work	.....
.....	الشفاقة	youth (n)	.....
.....	بنك الطعام	youth association	.....

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	يهاجم - هجوم	make me laugh	marks
.....	برميل (خشى)	mutiny(n)	.....
.....	عُكَّاز - ركيزة	note(n)	.....
.....	مُفْعَد - وَجْهَة السفر	of different sizes	.....
.....	فارغ - يُفْرغ	parrot(n)	.....
.....	إصبع اليد	patient (adj-n)	.....
.....	خائف	pay - paid(for)(v)	.....
.....	عصابة	pirate(n)	.....
.....	مَرْتَسِي - مرفأ	save(d)(v)	.....
.....	مُسَاعِد	secret (n-adj)	.....

Unit 4

باستخدام QR code اختبر استيعابك للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالوحدة

تلاوة



Lessons 1 & 2

.....	نصيحة	noticeboard(n)	marks
.....	يَسْجَع	populate(d) (v)	.....
.....	يَتَواصَل - يتصل	population(n)	.....
.....	يَتَواصَل - اتصال	produce(d) (v)	.....
.....	يُوصَل - يربط	production(n)	.....
.....	يُربط	pronounce(d) (v)	.....
.....	ارتباط - اتصال	pronunciation(n)	.....
.....	يُخَبِّر - يُخبر	salutation(n)	.....
.....	معلومة/معلومات	take ... for granted	.....


Lessons 3 & 4

.....	يُنْبِطِح - يُبْلِطِح	nurse(n)	marks
.....	يُنْبِطِح - يُنْبِطِح	nursing(n)	.....
.....	البِطْلَجَة - التَّنْزَر	phone-in(n)	.....
.....	يُعْشَش - عُشاش	police(d) (v)	.....
.....	العش	police(n)	.....
.....	تُعْرَض - ترعى المرضي	policing(n)	.....

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	يُطْلَق صافرة	hold - held (v) (onto)	marks
.....	فُرْع - نُحْسِن	low(adj)	.....
.....	يُنْسَلِق	mark(ed) (v)	.....
.....	يُنْسَلِق خارِجًا من	marked(adj)	.....
.....	فَرَب - لَصِيق	organise(d)(v)	.....
.....	ساحل	relax(ed)(v)	.....
.....	بَعْد - نُحْصِي	rocky(adj)	.....
.....	مرض	shore(n)	.....
.....	تعبيرات الوجه	thought(n)	.....
.....	يُتَواصَل - يَتَواصَل	trust(ed)(n - v)	.....
.....	للأبد	whistle(d) (n - v)	.....

Unit 5

Assyfy fekihf feqfthf dteyghf dteyghf gctf (QR code paxsahf) 

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	.....	Internet of Things (IOT)	.....
.....	.....	link(ed) (n - v)	.....
.....	.....	security(n)	.....
.....	.....	smartphone(n)	.....
.....	.....	technology(n)	.....
.....	.....	the internet (n)	.....


Lessons 3 & 4

.....	.....	password(n)	.....
.....	.....	personal details(adj)	.....
.....	.....	phishing(n)	.....
.....	.....	post(ed) (v)	.....
.....	.....	satnav(n)	.....
.....	.....	scam(n)	.....
.....	.....	smartphone(n)	.....
.....	.....	software(n)	.....
.....	.....	upload (n)	.....
.....	.....	upload(ed) (v)	.....
.....	.....	uploading (n)	.....
.....	.....	hacking (n)	.....

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	.....	fresh(adj)	.....
.....	.....	kneel down - knelt (v)	.....
.....	.....	leader(n)	.....
.....	.....	on your own	.....
.....	.....	realise(d) (v)	.....
.....	.....	sail(ed)(n - v)	.....
.....	.....	spade(n)	.....
.....	.....	start(ed)(n - v)	.....
.....	.....	voice(n)	.....

Unit 6

Assyfy fekihf feqfthf dteyghf dteyghf gctf (QR code paxsahf) 

Lessons 1 & 2

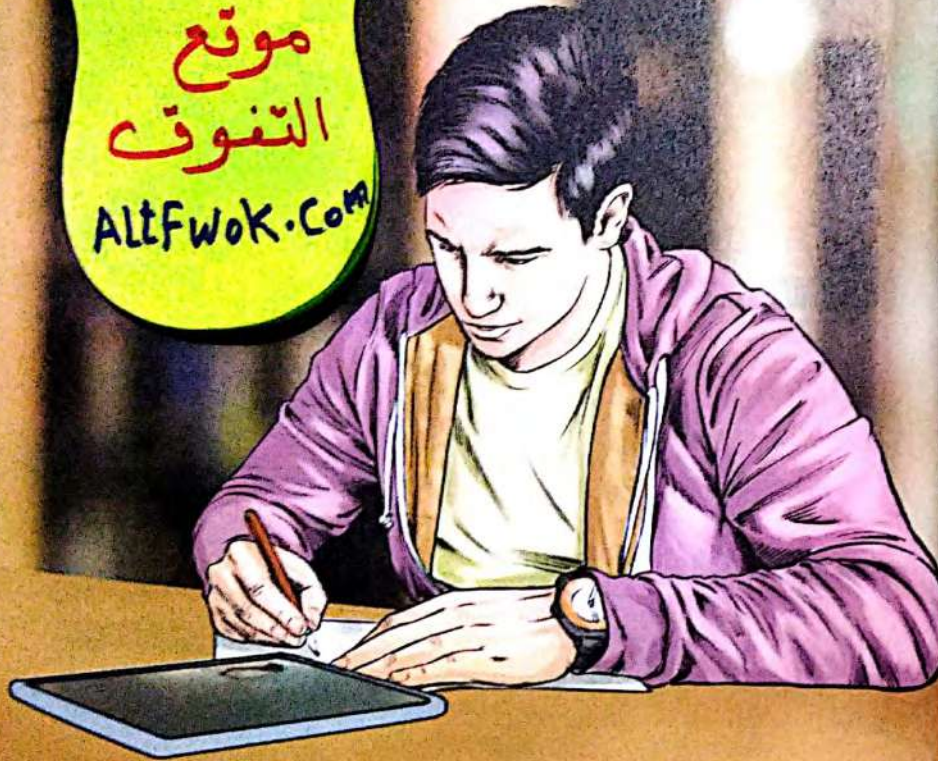
.....	.....	lock(ed) (n - v)	.....
.....	.....	novel(n)	.....
.....	.....	plot(n)	.....
.....	.....	plot (ted) (v)	.....
.....	.....	poem(n)	.....
.....	.....	poet(n)	.....
.....	.....	poetry(n)	.....
.....	.....	literature (n)	.....

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	.....	line(n)	.....
.....	.....	rhyme(d) (n - v)	.....
.....	.....	rhythm(n)	.....
.....	.....	variety(n)	.....
.....	.....	verse(n)	.....
.....	.....	issue (n)	.....

Lessons 5 & 6 Treasure Island

.....	.....	fort(n)	.....
.....	.....	get to - gott (v)	.....
.....	.....	give ... an advantage	.....
.....	.....	pick(ed) up (v)	.....
.....	.....	prevent(ed)(v)	.....
.....	.....	put up a flag	.....
.....	.....	race(n)	.....
.....	.....	sink - sank - sunk (v)	.....
.....	.....	supplies(n)	.....
.....	.....	well- defended(adj)	.....
.....	.....	wind(n)	.....



1. Five Monthly Accumulative Assessments

١. خمس تقييمات شهرية تراكمية على الوحدات

2. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

٢. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

5 Monthly Accumulative assessments

خمس تقييمات شهرية تراكمية

1 A sample test on each two units

١- اختبار على كل وحدتين

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

Test 1 based on Units 1 & 2

Part one



Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- When I was on holiday in the countryside, I sometimes
 a. went trekking b. went on a trek c. went on d. trekking e. trekked into
- The antonyms of "generous" are and
 a. helpful b. selfish c. mean d. intelligent e. stupid

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Your blood should be measured every day.
 a. pleasure b. treasure c. pressure d. donation
- Good doctors have a of duty.
 a. skill b. sense c. responsibility d. charity
- The local have started a charity to help poor children in the neighbourhood.
 a. security b. communication c. technology d. community
- We are in bad need for a/an because the patient needs blood.
 a. borer b. mower c. owner d. donor
- Winning the gold medal a good impact on him.
 a. had b. took c. did d. read
- We are all responsible for our environment.
 a. conserving b. confusing c. conversing d. commuting
- Don't leave until I you.
 a. told b. had told c. tell d. was told
- I am sure he a lot of money. He just doesn't want to lend you any.
 a. is having b. is going to have c. will have d. has
- lunch ready before the guests arrived ?
 a. Are b. Had c. Was d. Does
- I got used to in a small office.
 a. work b. working c. works d. worked
- He allowed to leave until he finished the report.
 a. didn't b. isn't c. wasn't d. hadn't
- I was watching a film and my father arrived. This means that my father arrived the film.
 a. during b. before c. while d. after

15. sleeping, I had a nightmare.
 a. While b. As c. When d. During
16. Ahmed a glass of milk every morning.
 a. always has b. always had had c. has always d. had always

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I was very interested while listening to my friend telling me the following story which he had read in a newspaper. It was a hot noon, and the few people walking along the street stood struck **dumb** gazing up a man in the air little by little falling down to the earth. His wide new garment acted as a parachute when his foot slipped off the wooden board he was standing on while painting the front of a high house.

It was funny that he fell down on his feet inside the box of a lorry that happened to be passing by at the time. When the people shouted, the lorry driver stopped and the man jumped off delighted at being saved. If the lorry had been a second later, it would have knocked him down dead, so he insisted on giving the driver a **treat**. He crossed the street to buy him a coca cola. On his way back, he was so excited that he couldn't avoid being struck down by a motorcycle running fast along the street. He fell down on the ground. The people hurried to help him rise to his feet, but they found him dead.

17. The man's garment caused him to
 a. fall down dead b. fall off the board
 c. fall down gradually d. fall down rapidly
18. The idea of the passage is
 a. a story b. an experiment
 c. fancy d. facts
19. The lorry had arrived at the place
 a. when the man's foot slipped off b. while the man was painting
 c. before the man reached the ground d. after the man reached the ground
20. The word "**treat**" in the passage most likely means
 a. behaving towards someone
 b. an unexpected gift
 c. a cure given for patients
 d. a thing that you buy to remind yourself of a place
21. The man was lucky when
 a. he fell into the lorry box b. people hurried to help him
 c. the motorcycle ran fast d. he fell down on the ground
 e. his wide garment acted as a parachute

22. The word "dumb" means people who can't
 a. listen b. see c. speak
 d. eat e. talk
23. A garment is a kind of
 a. metal b. clothes c. plastic
 d. wood e. clothing

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Tourism increases the opportunity for mutual understanding and peace among nations and it has an effect on bringing nations closer.

.....

2. Translate into English :

إن التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة، لذلك لا يُسمح للمدخنين بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة، لأنه من غير المقبول أن يتسبب المدخنون في الضرر لغيرهم كما يضرّون أنفسهم.

.....

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Egypt is proud of its distinguished scientists in all fields"

.....

Test 2 based on Units 3 & 4

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. The driver was fined because he had the traffic law.
 a. supported b. kept c. broken d. issued e. disobeyed
2. Voluntary can be antonymous with and
 a. plump b. compulsory c. obligatory d. full e. unusual

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. If something wrong with the car, call the garage.
 a. has b. does c. makes d. goes



4. You don't have to answer this question as it is _____.
- a. social b. advisory c. optional d. compulsory
5. Instructions are always put on the _____ for everyone to read.
- a. communication b. connection c. noticeboard d. forecast
6. The _____ of opinions should be respected, even if you don't like it.
- a. leader b. friendship c. diversity d. punctuation
7. The old family house is _____ by my grandparents.
- a. populated b. population c. polluted d. pollution
8. _____ isn't allowed and it is considered a crime.
- a. Polling b. Bullying c. Pulling d. Bull
9. Finally, she _____ how to use the smartphone. Now she can surf the net.
- a. learns b. has learnt c. had learnt d. was learning
10. Omar _____ wastes his time.
- a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never
11. I have had lunch _____.
- a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
12. France and Italy are _____ European countries.
- a. a b. an c. no article d. the
13. _____ there any information about the exam results?
- a. Are b. Is c. Were d. Has
14. I'm very busy. I have _____ work to do.
- a. a little b. lots of c. a lot d. a few
15. It's the first time I _____ alone.
- a. travel b. to travel
c. to travelling d. have ever travelled
16. I need _____ information.
- a. an b. few c. some d. many

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

After having an accident on the high way, a traveller wanted to describe the experience he had. "A first responder is someone who immediately tries to help with some incident that occurs. This could be a response to someone who is hurt or injured, a natural disaster or maybe your pet needs help.

The response might be at your house or in your neighbourhood. When called, the first responder is trained to come right away. A quick response is the surest way that the incident can be resolved in the shortest time and with the least amount of damage to individuals and to property.

A first responder is responsible for the protection and preservation of life, property,

evidence and the environment. They are trained in many areas like emergency management, public health, clinical care, public works and in operating equipment.

Together, they work to provide support services at the "onset" of an incident. "Onset" means at the early stages. They work to help in all response areas of prevention, response and **recovery**.

Calling for emergency is one way you can ask for help from first responders. You should know when it is appropriate to call this emergency help number. But it should be prevented in cases that are not emergencies. It wastes people's time and takes away resources needed for other emergency situations.

We **salute** those people who are first responders and thank them for their quick responses to help out in situations when needed.

17. If the first responders didn't answer the call, _____.
- a. nothing would happen b. people will go to their place
c. someone may be hurt d. neither a, b nor c
18. The first responders _____.
- a. save people in accidents b. call for emergency
c. can't help when a house is burnt down d. neither a, b nor c
19. When there is no emergency, we _____.
- a. should go and help first responders
b. should phone to know the work of first responders
c. must not phone first responders
d. should go to thank first responders
20. The first three paragraphs speak about the _____.
- a. management b. damage
c. responders d. recovery
21. The best word to replace the underlined word "**recovery**" is _____.
- a. return b. healing c. reply
d. resize e. restoration
22. The best title for the passage can be _____.
- a. Emergency b. Neighbourhood c. Protection
d. Car races e. Rescue
23. The word "salute" can have the same meaning as _____.
- a. greet b. despise c. care
d. need e. welcome

ALTFWOK.COM
موقع التمرق

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Practising activities at school is of great importance. Students should get the chance to participate effectively in such activities as they teach them cooperation, discipline and self-reliance.

2. Translate into English :

تمتلئ حياتنا اليومية بالكثير من الحوادث التي تتطلب الصبر والتعاون والعمل الجاد للتغلب عليها لتحقيق كل آمنا وأمل ورضا.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Spending free time in a positive way"

Test 3 based on Units 5 & 6

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- The word "scam" can have the same meanings as and
a. trick b. prison c. fraud d. security e. safety
- Ask people who have already bought the products. Don't believe
a. ads b. advantages c. adverts d. disadvantages e. centres

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Don't believe messages to transfer money. They are always big
a. skims b. scars c. scams d. scans
- Say and ray are two words that
a. rhyme b. verse c. poem d. synonym
- The small road between the fields is covered with
a. gravel b. gravelled c. gravelling d. gravels
- Don't the novel to the film. They are completely different.
a. contrast b. hack c. comment d. lock
- We have a small where we plant some vegetables.
a. plot b. plotter c. pottery d. plotted
- She had to after she had injured her leg.
a. run b. hope c. hop d. happen

- A: We haven't got any cheese. B: I know. I some this evening.
a. will buy b. am going to buy c. will be buying d. will have bought
- A speech in the meeting by the minister.
a. is giving b. is being given c. gives d. is going to give
- I've decided that I in it next month.
a. am going to stay b. will stay c. am staying d. have stayed
- I regret to the beach. It was very cold and windy there.
a. to go b. go c. going d. went
- I regret the school trip has been cancelled.
a. saying b. to say c. to saying d. have said
- I was busy the washing up when you called.
a. does b. doing c. to do d. done
- After doing the shopping, she home.
a. has gone b. had gone c. go d. will go
- He asked Malak lunch.
a. prepares b. prepare c. to prepare d. preparing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

What does so much technology do to a child's learning life? Are traditional forms of learning dying a slow death? Today, a teacher should be able to teach more than what Google has to offer. However, while we have technology, we have to be extra **cautious** as children are highly vulnerable to cyber crime. Students who have laptops must be only under strict vigilance. Instructions on cyber crime are organized to create awareness about the medium and its misuse.

In the 90s, grown-ups had to gradually convert to the digital age. Today, children seem born into it. Their handwriting and vocabulary have suffered. Parents complain that their child's handwriting is **deteriorating**. If students can read up everything online, they may stop going to school. If students can learn online, so why they should go to school or have teachers. It is something like self-education.

Another drawback of the net age is that students are at a loss if one doesn't understand content on the net or have a guide at hand. Technology can never replace a teacher. If pen and paper once defined school days, it's the stylus and touch screen that do so today. Perhaps the two can co-exist.

- Students still go to school because
a. technology can never replace a teacher b. they find pleasure in the school court
c. learning causes slow death d. they improve their handwriting
- What defines the net age?
a. Pen and paper b. School and teacher
c. Stylus and touch screen d. Paper and papyrus

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Should we work all the time without having a rest or entertainment ? The answer is that we cannot go on working without stopping, from time to time and at regular intervals, to have some rest and recreation . If we do so, we can make mistakes and the quality of our work might get worse.

An overcrowded person may end up by losing the ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one of the ways in which nature renews our energy. Sports and games are also essential for brain workers who stay in closed offices and do not have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Such activities as swimming and walking may do a lot of good to them. So, we should not waste our weekends. They should be made full use of and spent in the open. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and consequently on his performance.

17. The best summary to the passage is

- a. We don't have a time of entertainment
- b. Man should have a time of entertainment
- c. Entertainment is a waste of time
- d. Work hard all the time

18. Overworking results in

- a. loss of energy
- b. more energy
- c. more experience
- d. creative thinking

19. The writer suggests that brain workers

- a. should waste their weekends
- b. should spend their weekends somewhere outside
- c. should give up their weekends
- d. should spend their weekends in their workplaces

20. "Change has a magic effect on man's health", the word "magic" in the sentence means

- a. bad
- b. positive
- c. negative
- d. passive

21. The word "intervals" can have the meaning of

- a. stages
- b. periods
- c. cages
- d. classes
- e. pauses

22. Change has a great effect on man's

- a. chance
- b. apology
- c. taste
- d. performance
- e. work

23. Sports and games are for brain workers.

- a. not important
- b. important
- c. boring
- d. harmful
- e. essential

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

During my first job interview, I easily got confused and couldn't introduce myself well to the interviewer, so I hope to do better next time.

2. Translate into English :

آتد من نظير المنظمة التعليمية في مصر لكي تراكب متطلبات العصر الحديث، ولابد من تحويل التعليم من معاناة إلى متعة لكل من المتعلم والمعلم.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Your dreams for the future"

Test 5 based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Stressed words in poetry, the same rhythm.
 - a. come
 - b. have
 - c. give
 - d. cause
 - e. drive
2. The synonyms of the word clear are and
 - a. unfair
 - b. complicated
 - c. unclear
 - d. direct
 - e. obvious

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

3. We all should reject
 - a. rucksack
 - b. bullying
 - c. gravel
 - d. conservationists
4. programs can destroy the data on your computer.
 - a. Software
 - b. Malware
 - c. Security
 - d. Hardware
5. It is not polite to ask strangers questions.
 - a. scientific
 - b. legal
 - c. public
 - d. personal
6. Young men like the fast of modern music.
 - a. words
 - b. verse
 - c. rhyme
 - d. rhythm
7. and clothing a big family can be very expensive.
 - a. Failing
 - b. Feeding
 - c. Falling
 - d. Feeling
8. The attacked the ship.
 - a. pirates
 - b. pilots
 - c. parents
 - d. pioneers
9. I don't have money with me. I can't buy this blouse.
 - a. a few
 - b. many
 - c. little
 - d. much
10. If the garden had a white rose tree and a red moon, I'd prefer white one.
 - a. a
 - b. an
 - c. the
 - d. some
11. I won't go out until I lunch.
 - a. have
 - b. will have
 - c. was having
 - d. had

12. Oh, the bucket is full. I off the tap.
 a. will turn b. am going to turn c. am turning d. turn
13. We forgot the front door, so the thieves went in and robbed the house.
 a. locking b. to lock c. locked d. locks
14. Be careful while working in the garden. Avoid small plants.
 a. damage b. damages c. damaging d. to damage
15. How work do you do every day?
 a. many b. much c. often d. old
16. He was ready in Luxor after getting married there.
 a. living b. live c. to live d. of living

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Travelling is something which people do every day. It is very difficult to avoid the need to travel. It may be a trip to school, university or to work. Travelling can often take a long time, especially when great distances need to be covered. People often enjoy travelling abroad for holidays. But for some people travelling is not fun at all. Some people suffer from travel sickness. This means that they will become very unwell each time they travel. Travelling can be either affordable or **costly**. It often depends on how far you want to travel and the choice of transport.

Using a bicycle will not cost anything as you power it by using your legs. However, the use of a bicycle can be hard work and can take a lot of time to travel long distances.

Cars and motorcycles are faster modes of transport, but are more expensive to use as gasoline is needed for them to work. It can usually be assumed that the longer you wish to travel, the more expensive and time consuming it will be.

The use of a plane is necessary for people wanting to travel very long distances. A pilot will fly a plane from an airport for many thousands of miles to take people to places far away. Although traffic is rarely a problem for airplanes, it can take a lot of preparation to travel by plane. People often need to arrive at the airport three hours prior to departure.

A train is another mode of transport which is ideal for travelling long distances within the same country, or between countries which are connected by land. A train driver will stop at train stations on route to allow passengers wishing to proceed to the scheduled destination to board the train. A number of destinations can be travelled by using the sea. People often depart from a harbour in a ship which is driven by a captain. If the journey is a long distance, people may choose to sleep on the ship while they wait to arrive at their **destination**. Some people choose to go on a cruise for their holiday, which would involve stopping at many different city ports for a short amount of time. People who need to travel short distances may choose not to use any transport at all. People often rely on their legs to take them to places nearby. This is often encouraged as certain modes of transport have been said to produce harmful emissions and damage the environment.

17. Why do some people not enjoy travelling?
- a. Because they find it a waste of time b. Because it is not comfortable
 c. Because it is expensive d. Because they become unwell
18. The use of bicycles is hard work because
- a. they are easy to park b. they are small
 c. they pollute the environment d. they have to be pedalled
19. The best title to the passage is ".....".
- a. Means of transport b. Travelling
 c. Going to work is difficult d. Traffic Jam
20. The word "destination" in the passage means
- a. the place where someone is going b. your fate
 c. the place where someone was born d. your hobby
21. The word "costly" can have the meaning of
- a. cheap b. affordable c. expensive
 d. inexpensive e. pricey
22. People often depend on their legs to travel to places.
- a. far b. remote c. nearby
 d. distant e. neighbouring
23. When you travel by sea, you can depart from a
- a. harbour b. cliff c. ferry
 d. jam e. port

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Youth are considered the backbone of any nation. They are its present and future. Their country's progress is their responsibility.

.....

2. Translate into English :

إن حياة أي إنسان لها جانبين مهمين هما العمل والترفيه، فنحن لن نكون ناجحين إلا بالعمل ولن نكون سعداء إلا بوجود قدر مناسب من الترفيه.

.....

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"How to keep healthy and fit"

.....

.....

.....

ALTfwok.com موقع التفوق

General Exercises collected from SB & WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

Practice Exercises 1

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Dalia didn't have _____ friends when she started at her new school.
a. the b. some c. a d. any
- In Egypt, students in primary school have to wear _____ uniform.
a. the b. a c. an d. no article
- The teacher gave us _____ homework for the next lesson.
a. a b. many c. some d. any
- A: What do you intend to study when you join the university ?
B: I _____ engineering.
a. will study b. am going to study
c. study d. would study
- Why _____ you volunteer at the new youth club next summer ?
a. don't b. didn't c. do d. did
- Did you _____ your arm yesterday ?
a. broke b. break c. breaking d. broken
- We should _____ money to charities to help the poor.
a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
- The beach was really _____, so we couldn't find a place to sit.
a. beautiful b. exotic c. crowded d. isolated

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Next week, our school (1) _____ holding a special event to help students to (2) _____ what to do after their exams. In the morning, we're (3) _____ to watch videos about career and listen to speeches by people with different jobs. I think we (4) _____ be able to ask questions, but I'm not certain. In the afternoon, we're going (5) _____ work in groups and do some more research about the jobs we (6) _____ interested in.

3 Translate into Arabic :

- Ecotourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.
- Try to avoid mixing with bad friends who have bad habits.

4 Translate into English :

١. ذهبنا إلى الشاطئ، في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي واستمتعنا بالسباحة في البحر.

٢. هل سبق لك أن فضيت إجازة الصيف مع أصدقائك خارج القاهرة ؟

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Cyberbullying

The word cyberbullying refers to bullying on the internet or on a smartphone. Most teenagers have experienced some kind of cyberbullying, and it affects both girls and boys. One problem is getting offensive messages on social media, in texts or emails. Another problem is when bullies post personal information or pictures of someone. Sometimes it can be anonymous, and that means the victims don't know who is attacking them, which can be very stressful.

Teenagers need to know that they can talk to an adult about what is happening. It's important to report bullies on websites and the police can also help. Any kind of bullying can have serious consequences, so most schools have systems to deal with cyberbullying. It is very important to report any problems and help everyone to stay safe online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

- Cyberbullying affects
a. boys b. girls c. boys and girls
- Most teenagers have to
a. talk to adults about cyberbullying
b. have been bullies
c. experience cyberbullying
- Cyberbullying is not
a. unusual b. anonymous c. a problem
- Who needs to be safe online ?
a. Friends b. Adults c. Everyone

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What are the best ways of staying safe online ?

6. What can you do if you discover someone you know is a cyberbully ?

7. Why do some people become bullies ?

الموقع الإلكتروني
AlFwOk.com

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a three-paragraph essay about the advantages and disadvantages of living in a place which is a popular tourist destination. Include your opinion on whether it is a good or bad thing.
2. Write an email to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice Exercises 2

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Have you finished your room yet?
a. to clean b. cleaning c. clean d. cleaned
2. I forgot my calculator to school.
a. bring b. brings c. brought d. to bring
3. Basel offered me with my homework.
a. helped b. helping c. to help d. help
4. Egyptian cotton clothes all over the world.
a. are selling b. sell c. are sold d. sold
5. The is the natural world around us.
a. atmosphere b. environment c. location d. situation
6. I have a new on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages.
a. hack b. app c. connection d. scam
7. A person who writes poetry is called a
a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
8. A novel usually tells a story.
a. long b. true c. travel d. historical

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

I am always careful when I (1) my shopping online. I use different passwords for each site, and my passwords (2) usually quite complicated. This is because

I (3) a bad experience once when I (4) buying a pair of shoes online. I got a strange email from the website and I (5) know what to do with it. In the end, I opened the email and my computer turned off and on again. Some criminals (6) attacking my computer.

3 Translate into Arabic :

1. The Internet Of Things (IOT) is developing very fast in a lot of fields.
2. I'm going to buy some new clothes for the party next weekend.

4 Translate into English :

١. اضهرت أن أعيد كتابة واحب اللغة الإنجليزية لأني أحت على سؤال بطريقة خاطئة.

٢. سوف يستعمل الفندق الحدمه مراد وطاقة أمة على البينة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Tourist or Traveller ?

Some people say that a tourist visits the sights, but a traveller talks to the local people. This is because different people want different experiences when they go on holiday.

Some tourists prefer food which is familiar to them and so they often look for famous fast food restaurants, or food from their own country. They want to see the famous museums, monuments and beaches, and they will usually speak in their own language when they go abroad.

On the other hand, travellers will usually learn a few phrases in the local language, and they want to eat in typical cafés and restaurants. Sometimes they will look for places to visit that are less famous because they enjoy finding something a little different.

Today, both travellers and tourists are learning about their impact on the environment. It seems that whatever type of traveller you are, it's always good to respect the places you visit so that other people can enjoy them, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. Why do travellers go to foreign countries ?
a. To see the sights. b. To meet new people.
c. To take photographs.

2. Tourists do not usually
 - a speak English
 - b go to local restaurants
 - c visit famous monuments
3. Travellers try to
 - a speak the local language
 - b eat at fast food restaurants
 - c go to famous beaches
4. These days, tourists and travellers both
 - a visit famous monuments
 - b reduce their impact on the environment
 - c eat at local restaurants

B. Answer the following questions :

5. What type of damage can tourism cause ? Why is it important not to damage the places we visit ?
6. Which type of visitor do you think you are most similar to ? Why ?
7. Do you think that travelling to different countries changes how you see the world ? Why ? / Why not ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

1. Write a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.
2. Write an autobiography describing your life so far. Include your interests and experiences, and say what you hope to do in the future.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice Exercises 3

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. your parents usually donate blood ? - Yes, they always do so.
 - a. Do
 - b. Did
 - c. Why
 - d. When
2. When Aya visited me, I my room. So, she offered to help me.
 - a. decorate
 - b. was decorating
 - c. am decorating
 - d. decorating
3. I remember that young men last summer when I was in Sharm El-Sheikh.
 - a. to see
 - b. see
 - c. seeing
 - d. had seen

4. Sorrowfully, my uncle has been ill he was a young man.
 - a for
 - b when
 - c ago
 - d since
5. The tennis player is for doing a lot of voluntary work.
 - a admired
 - b not respected
 - c interested
 - d disliked
6. The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the animals such as the turtles which live there.
 - a unknown
 - b unique
 - c wild
 - d huge
7. The police the young man of stealing the money.
 - a excused
 - b thanked
 - c accused
 - d rewarded
8. It is taken for that bullying is a bad behaviour which we all must change.
 - a. granted
 - b. refusal
 - c. denial
 - d. decided

2 Fill in the gaps with one word :

Last year, we learnt about pollution at school, so in the summer I decided to (1) on a volunteering holiday (2) my friends. We had to clean (3) beaches along the north coast. There (4) a lot of plastic rubbish like water bottles and plates in the sand. We worked in teams, and each team cleaned a different part (5) the beach. We were careful not to damage (6) shells or wildlife.

3 Translate into Arabic :

1. I remember playing that card game when I was a child.

.....

2. Which do you prefer : reading a poem or a short story ?

.....

4 Translate into English :

١. ولد روبرت شتيفن في اسكتلندا في عام ١٨٥٠ ومات عن عمر يناهز ٤٤ عامًا.

.....

٢. لقد انتهت تريا من تناول الغداء، وسوف أحصل بك في خلال عشر دقائق.

.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Mary Shelley

In 2018, it was two hundred years since the publication of the Gothic novel Frankenstein, or the Modern Prometheus. It was written by Mary Shelley, who was born in London in 1797. She was the daughter of the famous writer, Mary Wollstonecraft, and the philosopher, William Godwin. Mary didn't go to school, but she educated herself using her father's library at home.

In 1812, Mary met the poet, Percy Bysshe, and in 1816, they got married in France. Then, in 1817, Mary wrote a travel book about the journey she took with Shelley to France and Switzerland. After her husband's death in 1822, Mary returned to England and she continued to write novels. Many people think that *The Last Man* (1826) is her best book, but *Frankenstein* is Mary Shelley's most famous novel. It tells the story of what happens when a scientist creates a human being. There have been many different films about the story. Some of them are frightening but others are comedies.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

- When was the first publication of *Frankenstein* ?
 a. 2018 b. 1818 c. 1797
- Mary Shelley was born in London and became a
 a. poet b. writer c. philosopher
- Mary Shelley's most famous book is
 a. a travel book b. *The Last Man* c. *Frankenstein*
- Frankenstein* is a
 a. Gothic novel b. comedy c. poem

B. Answer the following questions :

- Mary Shelley didn't go to school. Do you think it is easier or more difficult to educate yourself today ? Why ?
- Why do you think so many film versions of *Frankenstein* have been made ?
- What kind of stories frighten you ? Why do they frighten you ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic :

- Write about a website that you think is useful for school work. Explain what information is on the site and why it is useful for students.
- Write a blog post on the age you think children should start using the internet. Add photos if you can.

.....

.....

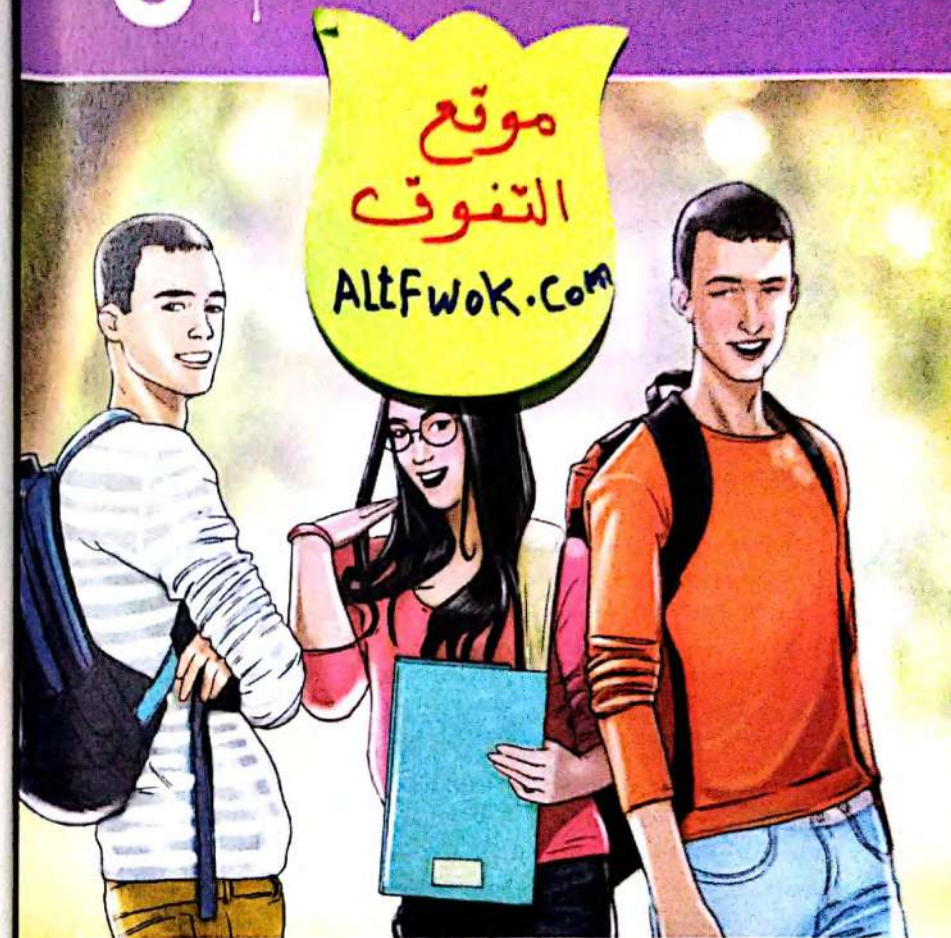
.....

.....

.....

.....

Model Tests & Al-Azhar Tests



1. 15 Assessment Model Tests

١. ١٥ اختبار على الصحيح بالكامل (يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه)

2. Al Azhar Exams & Exams for students with special needs

٢. اختبارات الأزهر الشريف والدمج

3. Islamic Selections

٣. مختارات إسلامية لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

15 Model Tests

اختبار نموذجي من 15 اختباراً

• Statement • Apply • Create

Model 1

Part one

Choose the **THREE** correct answers out of the **FIVE** options given.

1. Can you repeat your question in other words? It is not clear. The antonyms of "clear" are
 - a. ambiguous
 - b. obvious
 - c. vague
 - d. bright
 - e. cloudy
2. A good leader should have some qualities as being
 - a. extremist
 - b. fair
 - c. violent
 - d. wise
 - e. stubborn

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. This party is boring. We _____ a good time.
 - a. don't have
 - b. aren't having
 - c. didn't have
 - d. hadn't had
4. Sorry, I _____ you at the moment.
 - a. don't help
 - b. can't help
 - c. am not helping
 - d. am not helped
5. I _____ my computer very often.
 - a. am not using
 - b. am not used
 - c. doesn't use
 - d. don't use
6. There's _____ /s/ sound in the word 'city'.
 - a. a
 - b. an
 - c. the
 - d. no article
7. I was made _____ a fine for not wearing the seat belt.
 - a. pay
 - b. paying
 - c. to pay
 - d. paid
8. Have you sent all the invitations _____? That's so fast!
 - a. already
 - b. just
 - c. yet
 - d. ever
9. The teacher wrote the names of the winning students on the _____.
 - a. chat board
 - b. noticeboard
 - c. guard room
 - d. changing room
10. A/an _____ is someone who hurts or frightens someone who is smaller or less powerful than them.
 - a. bully
 - b. biologist
 - c. expert
 - d. archaeologist
11. The _____ between smoking and cancer is very clear.
 - a. connection
 - b. disconnection
 - c. donation
 - d. transplant
12. The diet he follows makes him go _____.
 - a. healthy
 - b. powerful
 - c. pale
 - d. strong

13. Do you know the most enormous animal on land? Another word for "enormous" in this question is
 - a. passive
 - b. gigantic
 - c. positive
 - d. fantastic
14. After the match, he preferred to _____ with a cup of tea.
 - a. stress
 - b. sleep
 - c. worry
 - d. relax
15. My grandpa once _____ me a present.
 - a. is giving
 - b. gives
 - c. gave
 - d. giving
16. I suggest Rodayna _____ engineering like her mother.
 - a. studies
 - b. studying
 - c. have studied
 - d. study

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He very rarely travels by bus because he has been driving his own car for many years. But it so happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to buy a fridge after he had taken out of the bank five thousand pounds that could cover the price of the set. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him.

Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces of the people around him but couldn't know which was the thief. He didn't lose his nerve and with a smile said to his friend, "A foolish thief has taken from my pocket an envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject. I am going to write an article for my paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money."

Everybody heard what he said and the man looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it. As he was anxious to count the money in it, he left the bus the next stop. He was happy to find all the five thousand pounds in the envelope.

17. The writer's friend pretended to be a _____.
 - a. bus driver
 - b. journalist
 - c. policeman
 - d. thief
18. The thief threw the envelope on the bus floor because _____.
 - a. it contained five thousand pounds
 - b. he was tricked into believing that it had no money
 - c. he was tricked into believing that it didn't have newspaper cuttings
 - d. he was afraid of being arrested
19. The writer's friend had his money back _____.
 - a. because he knew the thief at once
 - b. because he knew the thief but didn't arrest him
 - c. because he behaved wisely
 - d. because he didn't know the thief at all

20. The thief was really
 a intelligent b nervous c foolish d happy
21. The underlined sentence "He didn't lose his nerve" which is mentioned in the passage means most likely that
 a the writer's friend stayed calm
 b the writer's friend became nervous
 c the writer's friend became furious
 d the writer's friend stayed tensioned
 e the writer's friend didn't get angry
22. After the writer's friend found the envelope, he was to count the money in it.
 a wise b worried c intelligent
 d foolish e anxious
23. The word "rarely" can be replaced by
 a seldom b always c usually
 d often e scarcely

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Infectious diseases have become various and dangerous especially in winter, so we should be careful about ourselves and don't use other people's things.

.....

2. Translate into English :

تعلم الدول المتقدمة أن الاستثمار في الإنسان من خلال توفير الظروف الملائمة لإيجاد شخص متعلم متحضر قادر على الإبتاع هو أفضل استثمار.

.....

3. Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topic :

The four seasons of the year are characterized by different kinds of weather and activities. Which season is your favourite and why ?

.....

Model 2

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It is not good to avoid your problem. The opposites of "avoid" in this sentence are
 a ignore b face c follow d improve e confront
2. I didn't enjoy reading that novel. It was boring. The antonyms of "boring" are
 a interesting b tiring c annoying d amazing e exhausting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Before joining the university, I living away from my family.
 a used b didn't use to c used to d wasn't used to
4. I want to get a carpenter the front door of my house.
 a fix b fixed c to fix d be fixed
5. I know the names of all people in our street, little children.
 a include b including c includes d included
6. My sister has a flat on 2nd floor.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. A: I'm thirsty. B: Just a minute! I some cold water.
 a. will get b. am going to get c. am going d. got
8. I prefer in the New Capital as it is modern.
 a. to living b. live c. lives d. living
9. You need to work in with your team members.
 a. location b. destination c. pollution d. collaboration
10. A/An is the operation of moving an organ, piece of skin etc. from one person to another.
 a. experience b. transplant c. exploration d. transmission
11. Sometimes, a/an can be as loving as a real parent.
 a. father b. stepfather c. orphan d. attendant
12. He is nervous because he is at work.
 a. stress b. stressed c. stressful d. stresses
13. He is accused of That means trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them.
 a. phishing b. fishing c. emptying d. catching

Model 3

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

- When I read two of the poem, I liked it very much.
a. lines b. poets c. verses d. rhymes e. plots
- Global warming is one of the main that must be faced and solved.
a. rules b. reviews c. roles d. issues e. problems

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Our teacher asked us to avoid our time in useless things.
a. waste b. to waste c. wasting d. to wasting
- I can't meet you at five because I my duties.
a. won't have finished b. will be finished
c. may have finished d. had finished
- He listened to music while his car.
a. was driving b. driving c. drove d. were driving
- Many writers by Shakespeare, the great English playwright.
a. influenced b. have influenced c. were influenced d. were influencing
- A: Why have you got so much vegetables?
B: Because I a meal for ten people.
a. cook b. am going to cook c. will cook d. have cooked
- What time home last night?
a. did you get b. were you getting c. had you got d. were you got
- My parents warned me not to liars.
a. trust b. think c. connect d. distrust
- pay for the tickets but children travel for free.
a. Infants b. Adults c. The young d. The poor
- The police have found a/an that he is the thief.
a. clue b. cross c. island d. idea
- He much money from exporting vegetables abroad.
a. makes b. gives c. gains d. does
- When the little boy went back home, he asked his brother for about a science problem.
a. donation b. verse c. advice d. rhyme
- When my little brother does anything wrong, I become
a. delighted b. over the moon c. furious d. satisfied

- The moon round the earth.
a. has moved b. will move c. moves d. moved
- She for work an hour ago.
a. has left b. left c. is leaving d. will leave

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many animals in the world today are in danger. For many of them, the biggest danger is humans. People have always killed animals for their meat or their skins, others are killed because they eat crops or animals which belong to farmers. Certain animals, such as tigers and elephants, used to live in great numbers in countries like India. People have hunted them so much that there aren't many left alive. However, there are now laws to stop this.

In South America, many different birds and animals have lost their natural homes in the forests because thousands of trees have been cut down or burnt. People then used the land for farming or for building roads and towns.

We are too late to save some animals. A few are now **extinct**. This means there are none left anywhere in the world. Others are only in zoos or special parks. Zoos such as the one in Giza, are important because they can help some animals to live. It also make us able to provide **care** for animals and learn more about them in zoos.

- After the trees have been cut down, the forest land in South America is not used for
a. roads b. farms c. towns d. zoos
- According to the passage, zoos are important for animals because
a. they save animals from death b. we enjoy visiting them
c. animals can be seen there d. people can eat meat there
- The underlined word "**extinct**" in the passage means
a. active b. not active
c. existing d. no longer existing
- The best title to the passage is ".....".
a. Animal protection b. Pollution
c. Climate change d. Animals' life
- do their best to keep animals safe.
a. Conservationists b. Hunters c. Policemen
d. Farmers e. Environmentalists

22. The verb "care" can be replaced by
- a. look for b. look after c. look behind
 d. look out e. take care of
23. People used animals' land for
- a. cutting down trees b. milking cows
 c. planting crops d. building zoos
 e. building roads and towns

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Before submitting your exam answers, you should revise every item well and to be sure that you have answered all of them.

2. Translate into English :

لا تدع أطفالك يمارسوا ألعاب الكمبيوتر كثيرًا، فلقد أثبتت الدراسات الحديثة خطورة مثل هذه الألعاب على الأطفال خاصة إذا كانت ألعاب عنف.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Exploring the space"



Model 4

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. It's a long walk from my house to the club. The word "walk" can be replaced by
- a. route b. flight c. path d. destination e. voyage
2. It's better to invite them all, Adham.
- a. generally b. rarely c. loudly d. especially e. particularly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. We decided in a five-star hotel.
- a. to stay b. staying c. to staying d. stay
4. A: What would you like to start with? B: I lentil soup, please.
- a. would have b. am having c. will have d. going to have
5. I don't have friends; just three close ones.
- a. any b. lot of c. many d. a few
6. It's two months since we in Cairo.
- a. have stayed b. were staying c. stayed d. are staying
7. English all over the world.
- a. speaks b. is spoken c. is speaking d. spoke
8. If he the label, he'd know what this drink consists of.
- a. read b. reads c. is reading d. was read
9. A / An is a dishonest plan to steal money.
- a. import b. deal c. scam d. export
10. Sara's with Noha started at primary school.
- a. friendship b. diversity c. salutation d. expression
11. I know how to overcome this difficult situation as I have it before.
- a. extracted b. married c. owed d. experienced
12. People who the law must be fined.
- a. save b. obey c. follow d. break
13. The were taken to the public hospital.
- a. solutions b. victims c. spices d. adverts
14. To keep the gravel walk means to stay on the
- a. Indian Wars b. barrow c. path d. wall

15. Would you mind me to the airport ?
 a driving b to driving c of driving d to driving
16. To me, either answer acceptable.
 a are b were c is d has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The average age of the population of many countries is getting older. This means that businesses in those countries must adjust to older customers. In fact, many companies are working to respond the special needs of the elderly. One example of this is the medical industry. New medicines and technologies are being developed especially for the health problems of older people. Another business that offers services for the elderly is the tourist industry. Many travel agencies offer special trips for groups of older people. And finally, there are many different kinds of products made for the elderly. These include everything from shoes and shampoos to magazines and furniture.

In industrialized countries today, many elderly people face the **danger** of living alone and lonely. That leads to the feeling of depression. In the past, older people usually lived with other members of the family. They usually had some responsibilities around the home. For example, older women could help take care of the children or prepare meals. These days, married adults often prefer to live **on their own**, far away from other parents. Older people sometimes feel that they do not concern anyone.

17. The best summary to the passage can be ".....".
 a. Medicine industry develops special drugs b. Serving the elderly
 c. Tourist companies d. Serving the environment
18. Some elderly people feel they are cut off from the world when
 a. they can help their sons b. they can't help their sons
 c. their sons and daughters live far from them d. they face health problems
19. The idiom "**on their own**" in the passage means
 a. alone b. belonging to
 c. possess d. without help from anyone
20. Those who serve the elderly are
 a. helpful b. impatient c. evil d. unkind
21. The antonym of "**danger**" is
 a. responsibility b. safety c. opportunity
 d. depression e. security

22. Many travel agencies special trips for the elderly.
 a request b travel c offer
 d pick e suggest
23. Living alone and lonely leads to the feeling of
 a depression b confidence c hope
 d pride e sadness

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Many writers depend on their writings on real stories that they might have happened to them or to some people that they knew well.

2. Translate into English :

من الجيد أن تضع لنفسك أهدافاً تسعى لتحقيقها في فترة زمنية محددة، ولكن الأفضل أن تكون هذه الأهداف مناسبة لظروفك
 لتحقيقها بسهولة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

Everywhere we go, we use many modern inventions which help us live a better life. In your opinion, what is the most important invention in your life ?



Model 5

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- We have faced many major problems. The antonyms of "major" are
 a important b main c minor d unkind e unimportant
- Brilliant scientists new devices all the time to make life easier.
 a discover b create c explore d invite e invent

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you think that Cairo bigger in the future?
 a is b is going to be c will be d is being
- He is collecting all the paintings which his friend
 a drew b had drawn c draws d has drawn
- This playground for training.
 a used b is used c uses d is using
- "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means:
 a They help sick people b They should help sick people
 c They must be helped by sick people d They might have helped sick people
- yesterday evening?
 a What were you doing b What you were doing
 c What doing you were d What were doing you
- I want bottle of cold water.
 a a b an c the d no article
- A / An is a steep piece of land or rock.
 a scar b cliff c area d island
- The problem was discussed a lot on the
 a media b room c mid d middle
- The decided that the man was innocent برئ and set him free.
 a pirate b sailor c cook d magistrate
- conclusion, I'd like to thank you for your attendance.
 a In b At c On d About
- It's important to lock your house before going out. The antonym of "lock" is to
 a shout b separate c open d rob
- I needed help, so I asked my friend to me a favour.
 a push b take c send d do

- Try the aerial over there, it might work better.
 a to put b putting c will put d put
- Nurses after patients in hospitals. It's their job.
 a are looking b looked c look d looks

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People may be divided into two groups, winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great effect on us as we grow, we are born hopeless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes, they do their own thinking, they listen to, think of what they say and then they make their decisions.

Although they may fall at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners **overcome** their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can give it up if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers: disease, poor food, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences, these can slow down the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers don't do anything and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

- The passage is mainly about
 a winners and losers b winners
 c losers d all people
- When the winners fall at times, they
 a are afraid to try new things b keep their self-confidence
 c spend their time waiting d repeat their own mistakes
- Winners can change their own ideas by
 a using their mistakes as excuses b blaming others for mistakes
 c being in charge of their own lives d waiting for something wonderful
- The verb "overcome" can have the meaning of
 a get up b get on c get by d get over

- 14. The governor is giving a _____ in the conference.
 - a talk
 - b talks
 - c talking
 - d to talk
- 15. Yasser plans _____ about next year.
 - a to work
 - b working
 - c has worked
 - d to working
- 16. My sister _____ a baby. She is pregnant.
 - a is going to have
 - b will have
 - c is having
 - d shall have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The rules of the world, kings, presidents, politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But, the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are unhappy, and their time is arranged for them. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desires to get fame.

- 17. Famous people may appear happy
 - a. although they are not wealthy
 - b. despite being far from happiness
 - c. in spite of having time arranged for them
 - d. because their fame has gone far and wide
- 18. Famous people feel furious when
 - a. they are well known all over the world
 - b. they have fans
 - c. their private lives are talked about
 - d. their photographs are hung on the walls
- 19. The underlined sentence "their time is arranged for them" most likely means that famous people
 - a. have free time as they like
 - b. are free to do what they like
 - c. are not always busy and have spare time
 - d. aren't free to do what they like

- 20. According to the passage, the life of famous people is
 - a an easy one
 - b full of hardships and duties
 - c full of fun and pleasure
 - d an enjoyable one
- 21. The best title of the passage is ".....".
 - a Sportsmen
 - b Champions
 - c Film stars
 - d Famous people
 - e Celebrities
- 22. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they to get fame.
 - a want
 - b detest
 - c meet
 - d mistake
 - e wish
- 23. Fame is not easily but it is the result of hard work and suffering.
 - a given
 - b obtained
 - c achieved
 - d desired
 - e got

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

If you go on working without having a rest from time to time, you won't be able to continue, or you will make a lot of mistakes.

.....

2. Translate into English :

قد لا يعرف الكثير من الناس أن عدم الإهتمام بنظافة الأسنان يؤدي لمشاكل صحية عديدة في الكثير من أعضاء الجسم منها السعدي والقلب.

.....

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Staying healthy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Model 7

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She did a / an search for the good hotels in this area.
a. offline b. online c. disconnected d. connecting e. internet
2. To make sure that no one can use your mobile when you are away, it's better to have a/an
a. lock b. argument c. software d. passport e. password

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. My elder brother maths easier because he was good at it.
a. helped me learn b. helped me learning
c. helped me from learning d. helped me to learning
4. This is the most interesting novel I've read.
a. never b. yet c. ever d. since
5. The trumpet is a musical instrument that by musicians all over the world.
a. is played b. used to play c. is playing d. plays
6. He walked for a long time till he finally got his destination.
a. of b. off c. on d. to
7. I'm looking forward the new art exhibit.
a. to see b. to be seen c. seeing d. to seeing
8. He was so active that he took in different activities at his school .
a. place b. part c. after d. in
9. The author of this book is a famous man of arts. The best word to replace "author" is
a. designer b. warrior c. writer d. worker
10. Her changed once she heard of her success.
a. expression b. experiment c. disease d. coast
11. I didn't know a lot about them because we didn't get in for long.
a. conduct b. connect c. contract d. contact
12. White blood cells the body against infection.
a. defend b. defence c. offend d. offence
13. They built a to protect them against the enemy attacks.
a. forte b. fruit c. fort d. forty

14. A: Could you lend me L.E. 100? B:
a. Certain b. Certainly c. Currently d. Curtain
15. How long ago you visit your uncle ?
a. do b. does c. did d. had done
16. They plotted the new manager fail.
a. to make b. against making c. to making d. making

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Now all our free time is regulated by TV. We rush home to be in time for this or that programme. We have given up sitting at table and having an evening meal of the day together.

A sandwich will be enough to enjoy the programme to the full. The TV demands absolute silence and attention. If any member of the family dares to open his mouth during a programme, he is quickly silenced.

Whole generations are growing addicted to TV. Food is left uneaten, homework undone and sleep is lost. To keep the children quiet, mothers put their children in the living room and turn on the TV. **It doesn't matter** that the children will watch **rubbishy** programmes of crimes and violence, so long as they are quiet. Some say that TV is a waste of time. But it is said that you have the choice. If you don't like it, don't buy a set or switch it off. If you boast you don't watch TV, it's like boasting you don't read books."

17. According to the passage, while watching a programme on TV,
a. nobody can talk
b. the family are chatting to each other
c. everybody can give their opinion of the programme
d. the members of family make noise
18. Nowadays , people rush home to be
a. early enough for a TV programme b. on time for a TV programme
c. late for a TV programme d. silenced for a TV programme
19. The sentence "**It doesn't matter**" can be replaced by ".....".
a. It is not your business b. It hasn't happened
c. It is not important d. Don't care
20. The summary of the last paragraph is "....."
a. Everyone has the choice. b. We should watch TV.
c. We shouldn't watch TV. d. Don't read books.

21. The word **rubbishy** can be replaced by
- a cheap b expensive c bad
d good e worthless
22. Mothers turn TV on to keep their children
- a happy b calm c angry
d full e quiet
23. The verb "silence" means stop
- a eating b watching c talking
d dancing e speaking

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Teachers and students need to improve their abilities to be able to keep up with the new educational system in Egypt.

.....

.....

2. Translate into English :

يحب الشباب ارتداء الملابس المتماشية مع الموضة حتى لو كانت مرتفعة الثمن وبعض النظر عن الحواد العام المستخدمة في صناعتها.

.....

.....

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"An important event or competition that you have taken part in recently and what you've achieved."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Model 8

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. He told me that there is no possibility for him to attend the meeting. "Possibility" can be replaced by words as
- a responsibility b potentiality c actuality d capability e reality
2. My sister will a presentation next week, so she is worried.
- a make b save c give d take e get

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. Would you like in Aswan forever?
- a to live b living c to living d live
4. I expect the manager accept your request.
- a will b is going to c is d was
5. I think the Nile is the longest river in the world. Are there rivers longer than it?
- a a b an c the d no article
6. The injured woman to the public hospital.
- a. takes b. took c. has taken d. has been taken
7. Wait here until the manager back at the office.
- a. arrive b. arrives c. have arrived d. had arrived
8. While a cold drink, my car was being checked.
- a. had b. was having c. was had d. I was having
9. The of large cities suffer from pollution and traffic jams.
- a. resorts b. damages c. residents d. councils
10. The villagers suffer from the of lions that kill their livestock.
- a. attackers b. attacks c. attacked d. attacking
11. I have the free time needed to do work for a nearby charity.
- a. paid b. voluntary c. criminal d. disabled
12. A is a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.
- a. captain b. pirate c. crew d. lifeguard
13. He is known for his intelligence. The antonym of "intelligence" is
- a. stupid b. stupidity c. selfish d. selfishness
14. The energy of the and their desire to succeed make them the hope of the future.
- a. ancestors b. old-aged c. infants d. youth

- 15. Law does not smoking in public places الأماكن العامة
 - a. allowing
 - b. allows
 - c. allowed
 - d. allow
- 16. My reading glasses missing
 - a. had
 - b. was
 - c. is
 - d. are

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was a very dark night and extremely cold. I remember that night quite well. It was in the early eighties of the previous century. Electricity had just arrived at our little village some months earlier but on that particular night, it went off. Everybody had already entered their houses and closed their doors. Strong wind began to blow followed with a loud sound of thunder, then I heard some shots of a gun mixed with the horrible sounds of dogs barking. Being a little child, I was really frightened.

When it was early morning and we set out for dawn prayer at the little mosque of our village, we found uncle Fahmy was killed. His body lying on the dusty road by the Nile. I will never forget this scene. Uncle Fahmy used to be a very kind and humble man. I had never heard him shouting. He used to attend prayer at the mosque with us.

I was extremely sad and asked people around me, "Why was he killed?" I was told that he was killed because his grandfather once killed a member of the other family". I wondered as that wasn't uncle Fahmy's fault. Some people neglected my words, others looked at me with a sad face.

- 17. The passage is a
 - a. poem
 - b. story
 - c. real accident
 - d. scientific fact
- 18. Electricity had just arrived at the little village
 - a. in the 16th the previous century
 - b. in the 19th of the previous century
 - c. in the 18th of the previous century
 - d. in the 20th of the previous century
- 19. The weather that night was cold.
 - a. very
 - b. as
 - c. not
 - d. absolutely
- 20. The moral of the story is
 - a. we shouldn't take revenge in blood
 - b. we should be indoors during the storm
 - c. we should have memories from the past
 - d. we shouldn't care of others in our village

- 21. Some people looked at the writer with a sad face as they wanted to say that he was
 - a. right
 - b. shy
 - c. guilty
 - d. sad
 - e. correct
- 22. "Some people neglected my words" this means that they didn't my words.
 - a. speak
 - b. listen to
 - c. dare
 - d. face
 - e. care about
- 23. Uncle Fahmy was killed
 - a. without any guilt
 - b. in cold blood
 - c. without any evil
 - d. without any grudge
 - e. without any violence

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

The whole world suffers from coronavirus disease, but we should try to live with it or life will stop on this planet.

2. Translate into English :

لكل ما الحرية في اختيار هواياته المفضلة التي يرى أنها تعبر عن شخصيته، ولكن لا يجب السخرية من هوايات الآخرين.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Travelling is a useful and enjoyable hobby."



Model 9

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. El-Moasser always provides us with many questions to our skills.
a prove b avoid c improve d develop e destroy
2. You should be quiet when you an important decision.
a do b damage c take d protect e make

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. When I my friend on my way back home, he was doing shopping .
a was meeting b met c has met d had met
4. During the previous conference, he a speech.
a gives b has given c gave d had given
5. He said that he doing his maths homework after he wrote the essay .
a will finish b would finish c have finished d had finished
6. A: How is Sama getting to the airport ?
B: She said that her brother her a lift.
a would have given b should have given c was giving d is giving
7. The firefighter ordered the building at once.
a to everyone leaving b everyone to be left
c everyone to leave d leaving everyone
8. I forgot the report with me, so I had to go back to get it.
a to take b to taking c taking d take
9. He is a good captain of our team because he has a good
a person b character c family d company
10. She has done voluntary work for a charity. As a volunteer, she works for the charity for
a free b pleasure c treasure d money
11. In oil industry, a is the unit of measurement.
a bottle b ton c metre d barrel
12. A group of criminals who work together is called a
a tank b bang c gang d bank
13. The woman dressed her children quickly because she was late. The opposite of "dressed" is
a. took off b. took on c. looked up d. looked after

14. He always has a expression on his face. He never looks happy.
a miser b miserable c miserly d misread
15. We the email and replied to it.
a received b receive c have received d would receive
16. I in the chat room since five o'clock when the phone rang.
a am b was c had been d have been

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Searching for a job is not an easy task. You have to keep reading daily newspapers and magazines. Sometimes, advertisers use the most expensive way of advertising. It is the TV advertisement, so, applicants have also to follow watching television. When you reply to a job advertisement, there are some things you should put in your letter. You should show that you are interested in **current** affairs. You should write about your qualities that make you suitable for it. You also need to write the name of someone who can say that you are an honest and good worker. The person who recommends you is a referee. To be successful applicant, you should have good command of English. You should be efficient and well organized. You should also have some computing skills. General knowledge is a must. An applicant who says " Maldives in Africa " will certainly lose probable new job during his interview.

17. According to the passage, a referee
a may know the applicant
b. should know the applicant
c. should know the adviser
d. should be interested in current affairs
18. Applicants should write about
a. their qualifications and characteristics
b. their neighbours' qualities
c. why they left their current jobs
d. the person who can say that they are selfish
19. As mentioned in the passage, the applicant should English.
a provide b. eradicate c. master d neglect
20. The best title of the passage is ".....".
a. How to interview an applicant
b. How to be a good applicant
c. How to lose a job
d. What are the bad qualities of an interviewer

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التعرف

- 14. Mr Nasser is a friend of mine. He is always helpful and never stops supporting me.
 - a. true
 - b. teenager
 - c. physical
 - d. false
- 15. She gave me binoculars.
 - a. much
 - b. some
 - c. any
 - d. a
- 16. He took
 - a. smoke
 - b. to smoke
 - c. smoking
 - d. to smoking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

When a family climbs into a vehicle to go on a trip or even a short ride, it is important that everyone is as safe as possible. We know that terrible accidents can occur. That's why devices like seatbelts and airbags have been invented and put into cars, vans and trucks.

Unfortunately, devices that are meant to save lives can be a threat to life. The airbag is such a device. Airbags were designed to inflate quickly in an accident. They were designed to stop an average adult male who didn't bother to fasten his seatbelt from smashing into or through the front of a car. Therefore, they inflate at approximately 200 miles per hour. It delivers a blow that can seriously injure or kill a child or a small adult.

Children shouldn't sit in the front passenger seat of a vehicle that has a passenger side airbag. They are always safer in the center rear seat. That day will come when vehicles are equipped with smart airbags that automatically adjust their force to the size and weight of a passenger.

- 17. Airbags inflate in accidents.
 - a. manually
 - b. rapidly
 - c. gradually
 - d. slowly
- 18. Airbags save life.
 - a. a fat adult's
 - b. children's
 - c. an average adult's
 - d. a thin adult's
- 19. The main idea of the passage is that
 - a. people should take care of car safety
 - b. people should go to short rides
 - c. families should travel together
 - d. cars shouldn't be safe
- 20. The verb "bother" can be replaced by
 - a. get
 - b. treat
 - c. annoy
 - d. deal
- 21. The word "occur" can have the meaning of
 - a. happen
 - b. take place
 - c. take after
 - d. look for
 - e. resemble

- 22. According to the passage, which of the following is not true?
 - a. Airbags inflate quickly
 - b. Airbags were designed to protect travellers
 - c. Airbags don't have cons
 - d. Airbags don't cause harm at all
 - e. Airbags endanger people's lives
- 23. The passage is about
 - a. car safety
 - b. trips
 - c. families
 - d. short rides
 - e. protecting people's lives

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Do you know that the human brain is very active during the day dream time and it can solve the most difficult problems easily ?

2. Translate into English :

إن تناول وجبة غنائية متوازنة وتدريب يومي منتظم هما الطريق الأمثل لإمتلاك صحة جيدة ومظهر رائع والقدرة على الإبداع في العمل.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Lifelong learning"



Model 11

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. Nabil : Do you think Noha can do this exam alone ?

Adham : Yes, I think so because she is

- a. stubborn b. brilliant c. foolish d. tolerant e. intelligent

2. Elephants are one of the giant animals on land now. The synonyms of "giant" are

- a. tiny b. enormous c. delighted d. gigantic e. ancient

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. I think I well in the next exam .

- a. do b. am going to do c. am doing d. will do

4. Take a taxi when you to leave.

- a. want b. will want c. are going to want d. wanted

5. The bag into pieces when it fell down .

- a. tear b. was tearing c. tore d. was torn

6. He bought goods at this supermarket.

- a. little b. lot of c. lots of d. much

7. A: visited London? B: I hope I go there one day.

- a. Do you ever b. Did you ever c. Had you ever d. Have you ever

8. They many subjects since the teacher told them to write their opinion.

- a. have studied b. studied c. are studying d. were studying

9. The child's parents or must give their consent إقرار بالموافقة before she has the operation.

- a. designers b. guardians c. donors d. monitors

10. A scientist who studies the natural processes of living things is a/an

- a. actor b. physician c. activist d. biologist

11. Students need to be to continue their work readily.

- a. donated b. endangered c. encouraged d. scared

12. The police are looking for to find the real criminal.

- a. clues b. glues c. officers d. policemen

13. Thanks to your donations, the was able to continue its work.

- a. volunteer b. aid c. charity d. belief

14. The on the plane did their best to make the passengers pleased.

- a. staff b. stuff c. crew d. crew

15. The thief was seen away.
a. running b. to run c. to running d. a & b
16. I expect uncle Omar us tonight.
a. will visit b. is visiting c. is going to visit d. visited

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Horses are beautiful creatures. They can be different in colours, and can run quickly. People like to watch horses because they are strong and powerful.

Horses are mammals. The mother horse generally has one baby in the spring, and feeds the baby milk. Horses have long legs, and big eyes that can see almost all the way around them. They can walk, trot, gallop and jump.

Young horses that are one year old or younger are called foals. A young female horse is called a filly, and a young male horse is called a colt. After 4 years, a horse is considered an adult. Many people think that a pony is a young horse, but that is incorrect. A pony is a type of horse that does not grow very large.

Horses can live up to 20 or 25 years. Sometimes people can tell how old a horse is by looking at its teeth! They generally sleep standing up, so that if a killer animal approaches, they can run away quickly. Horses only need about three hours of sleep per day! Their hooves need to be taken care of.

For food, horses eat foods such as grass, hay, oats, corn, apples, and carrots. They are herbivores, meaning they do not eat other animals. Their stomachs are small, so they need small, frequent feedings.

There are wild horses, but many people have horses as pets, too. They ride the horses and may teach the horses tricks. When people first started to take horses as pets, they were just used for work. The horses would pull carriages so people could ride tractors, or ploughs so the farmers could more easily tend their fields. Horses were also used to move goods from place to place by carrying objects on their backs. Some horses now work as therapy horses. When these strong creatures are treated with care, they make wonderful companions.

17. The mother horse gives birth to a year.
a. one horse b. two horses c. no horses d. three horses
18. The best summary of the text is
a. horses are beautiful b. kinds of horses
c. horses' habitat d. mammals
19. Generally, horses sleep
a. upside down b. standing up c. sitting down d. in beds

20. A horse can be a friend when
- a you are kind to him
 - b you are cruel to him
 - c you are greedy with him
 - d you are sad with him
21. According to the passage, which of the following is correct?
- a A pony is a young horse.
 - b A pony is an old horse that doesn't work.
 - c A pony is a small type of horse.
 - d A pony is a large type of horse.
22. The best title for this passage is ".....".
- a Horses
 - b Animal life
 - c Kinds of horses
 - d Horses' food
 - e Horses are strong creatures
23. According to the passage, horses
- a cannot do anything
 - b can do many things
 - c can do one thing only
 - d cannot learn anything at all
 - e make wonderful companions if treated with care

Part two

1. **Translate into Arabic :**

To keep your youthful appearance over time, you need to have more vegetables and fruits that contain vitamins A and E regularly.

.....

.....

2. **Translate into English :**

إن ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه البشرية في الفترة الحالية؛ لأنها تؤدي لذوبان الجليد وارتفاع منسوب مياه البحر.

.....

.....

3. **Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :**

"How can all the society be helpful towards the disabled المعاقين ؟"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 12

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They all admire Mr. Tarek because he is a person.
 - a generous
 - b stingy
 - c miser
 - d rude
 - e kind
2. Farmers usually care about their They feed them well.
 - a plants
 - b cattle
 - c kettle
 - d villagers
 - e livestock

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. She has stopped some milk for the hungry baby.
 - a buying
 - b to buying
 - c to buy
 - d buys
4. He's booked his ticket. He to the USA tomorrow.
 - a is travelling
 - b is going to travel
 - c travels
 - d will travel
5. Someone who's broken leg finds it difficult to walk.
 - a a
 - b an
 - c the
 - d no article
6. He is furious as a tricycle his new car.
 - a hits
 - b was hitting
 - c has hit
 - d is hitting
7. Giraffes on meat. They are vegetarian animals.
 - a feed
 - b fed
 - c don't feed
 - d didn't feed
8. I to preparing my meals when I started to live away from my family.
 - a used
 - b got used
 - c get used
 - d become used
9. The Red Sea coast is a tourist
 - a party
 - b paradise
 - c trip
 - d flight
10. Mohammed Salah is the best in Liverpool.
 - a final
 - b football
 - c footballer
 - d cup
11. Different societies have different
 - a cultures
 - b experience
 - c prison
 - d believes
12. Mr Mohammed is always You can chat with him at any time.
 - a website
 - b blog
 - c online
 - d offline
13. To is to believe that someone is honest أمين or will not do anything bad or wrong.
 - a blow
 - b doubt
 - c lie
 - d trust
14. is something that sheep and goats can eat.
 - a Meat
 - b Iron
 - c Hay
 - d Kebab
15. The sun's energy by solar panels الخلايا الشمسية.
 - a is collected
 - b is collecting
 - c collects
 - d collected

16. I _____ Chinese. I've passed three modules so far.
 a. studied b. 'm studying c. was studying d. have studied

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people like to eat pizza, but not everyone knows how to make it. Making the perfect pizza can be **complicated**, but there are lots of ways for you to make a more basic version at home.

When you make pizza, you must begin with the crust. The crust can be hard to make. If you want to make the crust yourself, you will have to make dough using flour, water, and yeast. You will have to knead the dough with your hands. If you do not have enough time to do this, you can use a prepared crust that you buy from the store.

After you have chosen your crust, you must then add the sauce. Making your own sauce from scratch vegetables can take a long time. You have to buy tomatoes, peel them, and then cook them with spices. If this sounds like too much work, you can also **purchase** jarred sauce from the store. Many jarred sauces taste almost as good as the kind you make at home.

Now that you have your crust and your sauce, you need to add the cheese. Cheese comes from milk, which comes from cows. Do you have a cow in your backyard? Do you know how to milk the cow? Do you know how to turn that milk into cheese? If not, you might want to buy cheese from the grocery store instead of making it yourself.

When you have the crust, sauce, and cheese ready, you can add other toppings. Some people like to put meat on their pizza, while other people like to add vegetables. Some people even like to add pineapple! The best part of making a pizza at home is that you can customize it by adding your own favourite ingredients.

17. The writer's main purpose in writing this passage is to
- describe the history of pizza
 - teach a healthier way to make pizza
 - outline steps to make a basic pizza at home
 - provide tips about how to make your pizza especially delicious
18. The author asked a series of questions in paragraph four to
- support the idea that most people cannot make homemade cheese
 - reinforce the idea that most people probably live on farms
 - prove that store-bought cheese tastes better than homemade cheese
 - emphasize the superiority of homemade cheese over store-bought cheese
19. To is to mix the ingredients together using your hand.
- scratch b. purchase c. knead d. peel

20. When you make pizza, you must begin with the
- vegetables b. crust c. fruits d. meat
21. As used in paragraph one, which word means the opposite of "**complicated**" ?
- Difficult b. Simple c. Hard
 - Complex e. Easy
22. As used in paragraph three, which is the best synonym for **purchase** ?
- forget b. buy c. ask
 - cook e. shop
23. Eating at restaurants
- costs much money b. is so healthy
 - costs less money d. is as healthy as eating at home
 - isn't so healthy as eating at home

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Countries had realised that energy sources won't last forever, so they began to look for other renewable replacements as solar power.

2. Translate into English :

أثبت الباحثون أن ممارسة الرياضة تسمى من ذكاء الأفراد، فقد لوحظ أن الطلاب الذين يمارسون رياضة بانتظام أكثر ذكاءً من لا يمارسون الرياضة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Spare time is a double edged weapon سلاح ذو حدين"



Model 13

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given:

- Be careful! When you travel to any place for the first time, it is easy to so you should have a map and the important numbers of this place.
a. get promoted b. go missing c. get lost d. go snorkelling e. go losing
- The doctor asked me to monitor my grandfather because of his illness. "Monitor" can be replaced by
a. observe b. look for c. watch d. see off e. collect

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When they met their friend, he the homework his teacher gave him.
a. does b. doing c. is doing d. was doing
- It my habit to have coffee at this café when I worked there.
a. is b. was c. has been d. had been
- Going back home, I found that the window So, I went to get new glass for it.
a. broken b. was broken c. is breaking d. break
- We met our friend lately. He is still away.
a. have b. haven't c. had d. hadn't
- in the office, he received a call from his wife.
a. During b. On c. While d. After
- He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is
a. amaze b. amazing c. amazed d. amazingly
- To have a good building, you need to have a good first.
a. donor b. design c. guardian d. ecotourist
- His good company had a good on his life.
a. impact b. cause c. reason d. connection
- He doesn't know much in science. His science knowledge is
a. limit b. limiting c. limitless d. limited
- Living near the gave him the chance to sit by the sea often.
a. bleach b. peach c. beach d. cost
- A lot of rain fell and this caused to our streets from the neighbouring ones.
a. flood b. isolate c. connect d. link

- The way he tackled the problem was a / an one. No one else had had that idea before.
a. unique b. common c. ordinary d. unsuccessful
- He is HIV patient.
a. no article b. the c. an d. a
- He refused for what he had done.
a. apologise b. apologised c. apologising d. to apologise

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouse gases because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun which sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The **destruction of the big rainforests**, which **absorb** carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

What can be done to prevent this situation? Global warming is a problem that affects every country and every person in the world. First of all, all governments must agree to stop the destruction of the world's rainforests. Secondly, they must agree to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide that transport and industries emit into the atmosphere. And we can all play a part as individuals. We should all try to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide we emit into the atmosphere. This can be done by driving fuel efficient cars. The best way people can help is to use public transport as much as possible instead of their cars. And finally, we should plant more trees in the cities and on farms to give us back the air we need.

- To help, people can use
a. their private cars b. their old buses
c. private cars and bicycles d. public transport
- Trees are important because they
a. take in oxygen and produce carbon dioxide b. create infrared radiation
c. produce carbon dioxide d. take in carbon dioxide and emit oxygen
- If the amount of carbon dioxide doubles, the average temperature will
a. decrease b. reduce c. increase d. improve

20. The best title to this passage is ".....".
- a. Driving environment friendly car
 - b. Climatic changes
 - c. Effects of nature
 - d. Using public transport
21. The word "destruction" can be replaced by ".....".
- a. building
 - b. construction
 - c. damage
 - d. education
 - e. ruin
22. Carbon dioxide is considered one of the gases.
- a. atmosphere-polluting
 - b. greenhouse
 - c. increasing
 - d. rainforest
 - e. decreasing
23. The word "absorb" can have the meaning of
- a. take off
 - b. take in
 - c. indulge
 - d. melt
 - e. soak up

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Old monuments always represent the great creativity of ancient civilizations. Our role is to keep them safe for our next generations.

.....

.....

2. Translate into English :

للمتاحف أهمية كبيرة، فهي تحافظ على التراث من الضياع أو السرقة. معظم هذه المتاحف عامة تمتلكها الدولة والقليل منها خاصة يمتلكها أفراد.

.....

.....

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Recycling إعادة تصنيع الأشياء is a way to solve many problems."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Model 14

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. They were for the missing ring all the night.
- a. thanking
 - b. looking
 - c. shouting
 - d. searching
 - e. leaving
2. It's good to donate blood to save other people's lives. The antonyms of "donate" are
- a. keep
 - b. send
 - c. receive
 - d. offer
 - e. give

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. the party, I met several old friends.
- a. On
 - b. During
 - c. While
 - d. As
4. You too much sugar to my coffee. It tastes too sweet.
- a. had added
 - b. were adding
 - c. were added
 - d. have added
5. Rodayna isn't in her office. I think she home.
- a. will go
 - b. was gone
 - c. has been
 - d. has gone
6. She is carrying too
- a. many luggages
 - b. much luggages
 - c. a few luggages
 - d. luggages
7. You look very ill. I you to the doctor.
- a. take
 - b. will take
 - c. am taking
 - d. am going to take
8. We intend to spend the next weekend on the beach.
- a. to go
 - b. to be going
 - c. to going
 - d. go
9. He paid back all his because he didn't want to go to prison.
- a. skills
 - b. debts
 - c. tips
 - d. steps
10. They had a / an about the best solution to the problem of air pollution.
- a. debate
 - b. salutation
 - c. teammate
 - d. effect
11. means to be connected to the internet or available on the internet.
- a. Network
 - b. Website
 - c. Online
 - d. Offline
12. To achieve your jobs in time, you need to your time well.
- a. waste
 - b. do
 - c. make
 - d. use
13. He is known to be severe with his children. The antonym of the word "severe" is
- a. cruel
 - b. hard
 - c. gentle
 - d. violent
14. He was very young and weak, so older students him.
- a. drove
 - b. gave
 - c. bullied
 - d. went

- 15. This road _____ used anymore.
 a. didn't b. doesn't c. isn't d. is
- 16. It's two weeks _____ I last met aunt Nadia.
 a. ago b. for c. since d. as

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was the end of the weekend and Nadia was worried. She had still not done her homework. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill. She had phoned her friend Azza and asked what homework their teacher had set for the summer holiday. Azza had told her that the teacher had asked them to write a composition. Nadia had written down the title. It was "The best things in life are three".

Nadia didn't know what to write. When she thought about the best things in life, they didn't seem to be "three" at all. She thought about her parents. There were two of them. Her brothers and sisters, there were four of them. She thought about happiness, love and nature. She couldn't count these at all. On the first day at school, Nadia's teacher asked her to read her composition to the class. Nadia stood up and began. "I don't think the best things in life are three at all," she said. "I think they are things you can't count".

The other students started to laugh. "Nadia," said her teacher stopping her, "The title of the composition was: 'The best things in life are free not three.'"

- 17. The passage is
 a. scientific b. narrative
 c. imaginative d. historical
- 18. Nadia disagreed with the title of the composition because
 a. she wrote it down wrongly
 b. she couldn't count the best things in life
 c. she didn't want to write the composition
 d. she didn't have time to write the composition
- 19. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
 a. the homework title b. the book they read
 c. the summer holiday d. the telephone
- 20. Nadia's teacher was with Nadia.
 a. happy b. pleased c. angry d. worried
- 21. Nadia had missed the day of school because she had been ill.
 This means she was from school.
 a. absent b. present c. over the moon
 d. worried e. not attendant

- 22. The best title of the passage is
 a. freedom is not worthy b. freedom is not the best thing
 c. life has countless good things d. the best things in life are free
 e. freedom is worthy
- 23. The word "set" can have the meaning of
 a. determined b. dealt c. counted
 d. lived e. scheduled

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Plants, flowers and trees are necessary to breathe clean and fresh air and to have a good view. That's why, we should plant them everywhere.

2. Translate into English :

بعد انتشار حوادث السطو على المنازل في المنطقة التي نعيش بها الفترة الأخيرة، بدأنا نفكر في تركيب كاميرات مراقبة وقيام بعض المتطوعين بالحراسة.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"Without cooperation, there is no success."



Model 15

Part one

Choose the TWO correct answers out of the FIVE options given :

1. She refused to admit breaking the camera. The antonyms of "admit" are
a. deny b. conceal c. adopt d. consist e. agree
2. All the countries around the world give a great interest to the because they are the backbone of any nation.
a. disabled people b. old people c. children d. youth e. young people

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

3. The little bird by its mother till it can fly.
a. feeds b. is fed c. fed d. was fed
4. A: your work yet ? B: I'm about to finish it, sir.
a. Do you do b. You haven't done c. Have you done d. Are you doing
5. is the protection of natural life.
a. Conservation b. Reservation c. Admiration d. Organization
6. My father was delighted with my results. The word "delighted" can be replaced by
a. satisfied b. angry c. amazed d. astonished
7. While the experiment, my teacher had a severe headache.
a. did b. were doing c. are doing d. doing
8. They here since their grandfather built the house.
a. have lived b. had lived c. are living d. were living
9. I you a lot for your help.
a. own b. owe c. lend d. borrow
10. They were in the lift for an hour when electricity went off.
a. struck b. stuck c. sick d. stick
11. They had of things to do. This means they were very busy.
a. lot b. loaf c. loaves d. loads
12. They were when they won the prize. This means they were pleased.
a. over the moon b. under the moon c. in a tight corner d. out of the blue
13. Some thieves broke the old man's house yesterday.
a. on b. onto c. into d. in
14., you tell him the news? Are you able to do that?
a. Able b. Dare c. Brave d. Courageous

15. Your grandmother needs help some bags into her flat.
a. carries b. to carry c. carrying d. carried
16. We hardly heard news of him since he left the company.
a. any b. some c. many d. much

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are many reasons to use alternative energy sources. One reason is to reduce pollutants and greenhouse gases. Alternative or renewable energy sources help to reduce the amount of toxins that are a result of traditional energy use. These alternative energy sources help protect against the harmful by-products of energy use and help to preserve many of the natural resources that we currently use as energy sources.

There are many alternative energy sources. Wind power, solar power, geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples.

Wind power is the ability to **capture** the wind in a way to propel the blades of wind turbines. When the blades **rotate**, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. In older windmills, wind energy turned mechanical machinery to do the physical work like pumping water to get water. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced.

Geothermal means "earth heat". This energy captures the heat energy under the Earth. Hot rocks under the ground help to heat water to produce steam. If holes are dug in this area of the ground, then the steam shoots up and is purified and used to drive turbines, which in turn gives power to electric generators. The advantages of this type of energy is that there are no harmful by-products, it is self-sufficient, and the plants are generally small so there is no negative visual effect on the area surrounding the plant.

17. In geothermal energy, the main factor of doing the work is
a. the heat of the earth b. steam coming out
c. digging the earth d. using hard rocks
18. According to the passage wind power is
a. discovered in modern ages b. used along history
c. used only for generating electricity d. always harmful
19. The suitable title of passage is
a. alternative energy b. electricity
c. windmills d. population

20. In the future, the more pollution we get,
- a the wider ozone layer hole is
 - b the narrower ozone layer is
 - c the bigger planet is
 - d the large planet is
21. The underlined word "capture" may be replaced by ".....".
- a catch
 - b leave
 - c change
 - d fix
 - e seize
22. The word "rotate" can have the meaning of
- a turn off
 - b turn around
 - c turn on
 - d turn out
 - e spin
23. According to the passage, traditional energy use is to the environment.
- a useful
 - b harmful
 - c friendly
 - d useless
 - e toxic

Part two

1. Translate into Arabic :

Robots have become more common in many fields. During coronavirus, many countries as China used them to discover and look after infected people.

.....

.....

2. Translate into English :

يعتقد البعض أن أي قصة أو كتاب ناجح من المسكن أن يصبح فيلم ناجح، ولكن الحقيقة أنه لا يوجد دليل على ذلك.

.....

.....

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

"What's the role of the society towards old people?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمي

A. Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer :
1. James has things to do.
- a many
 - b a few
 - c a little
 - d a lot
2. James is very about visiting Egypt.
- a sad
 - b upset
 - c happy
 - d nervous

B. Vocabulary and Structures

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. While I was doing my homework, my mother dinner.
- a prepares
 - b preparing
 - c is preparing
 - d was preparing
2. I lived in London 2016.
- a for
 - b since
 - c in
 - d ago
3. school holidays are starting soon.
- a The
 - b An
 - c A
 - d. No article
4. Be careful, the car you. It's very near.
- a will hit
 - b is going to hit
 - c will be hitting
 - d hits
5. There are very few of these kinds of giraffes now, they are
- a safe
 - b isolated
 - c endangered
 - d dangerous
6. I always try to food and clothes to my local charity.
- a sell
 - b want
 - c owe
 - d donate
7. Most people take clean water for, but not all place have it.
- a granted
 - b given
 - c having
 - d done
8. The message to transfer money was fake. It was a big
- a skim
 - b scar
 - c scam
 - d scan

C. Language Function

- 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :
- Omar : I'm bored. I have nothing to do.
- Father : Well, (1)
- Omar : The club! That's good idea. Do you know what I can do there ?
- Father : Yes, (2)
- Omar : That's great and I'm good at basketball. When (3)
- Father : You can go (4)

D. Comprehension

- 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :
- Every year, more and more people are connected to the internet in Egypt. A recent survey found that around 50 million people use the internet on a computer or smartphone.

In the survey, many people said that they used the internet every day, usually for communication so they could talk to friends or family. Many used apps on their phones so they can listen to music or watch films. Other people said they never used the internet. This was usually because they did not understand the technology. Many people also said they did want to use the internet when shopping. They were worried about security and the possibility that their computer might be hacked.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do many people use the internet for ?

.....
.....

2. Why don't many people use the internet ?

.....
.....

3. Why do people use apps on their phones ?

.....
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "survey" means
 a. questionnaire b. quiz c. competition d. match
5. Many people thought that their computer might be
 a. connected b. hacked c. lost d. stolen

E. Novel (Treasure Island)

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The thief had a long curved on his face, so we could recognize him.
 a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
2. A is a large container made of wood or metal.
 a. tin b. jar c. barrel d. cup

F. writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

The good and bad things about moving to a new school in another town.

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do team sports you like.

B. Translate into English :

رغبة صلاح في مساعدة الآخرين هي أنه يريد أن يسبح الشباب فرصة للنجاح.

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المرقية - القسم العلمي

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Egypt is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment along the Red Sea
 a. Cost b. Cast c. Coast d. Course
2. Tourists are taught how to avoid the fish and keep the special coral reefs safe.
 a. staying b. preserving c. damaging d. keeping

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The of other people have to be respected.
 a. believes b. beliefs c. beliefs d. believe
2. The old family house is by my grandparents.
 a. populated b. population c. polluted d. populating
3. As a child, I always when I took my medicine.
 a. crying b. cries c. cried d. was crying
4. I have had lunch
 a. already b. yet c. just d. so far
5. My father with pride when he heard that I had come first.
 a. showed b. rose c. swelled d. puffed
6. To be a, work hard to a plan.
 a. successfully b. successful c. success d. succeed
7. is considered a crime.
 a. Uploading b. Downloading c. Phishing d. Fishing
8. I suggest that Rodayna engineering like her mother.
 a. studies b. studying c. has studied d. study

C. Language Function

3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

A customer has a problem with internet service.

Assistant : Hello, we are Customer Service, how can I help you ?

Customer : Hi, (1) ?

Assistant : I'm sorry to hear that (2) ?

Customer : My connection is dropping out and the speed is very slow.

Assistant : Let me check (3)

Customer : My phone number is 0123456789.

Assistant : Thank you . I'll send technician to your house.

Customer : Okay, (4) home then.

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

D. Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

In 1957, scientists said that nothing could live in the waters of River Thames. The river was polluted by the waste which came from hundreds of homes, waste from factories is very dangerous as some of which was full of poison, also ran into the river. Things began to change in 1990. Now the river is very clear. It is thought that about 125 kinds of fish live there today. It's a place where many animals visit including dolphins and even whales. Today the river faces a different problem. There is more and more plastic which people dump into the Thames.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why couldn't anything live in the waters of the Thames ?
2. What problem does the river face now ?
3. What should you do to keep rivers clean ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. What does the underlined word "which" refer to ?
 - a. the factories
 - b. the river
 - c. the waste from homes
 - d. the waste from factories
5. _____ in the River Thames in 1957.
 - a. Fish started to live
 - b. Nothing lived
 - c. Pollution was worst
 - d. Plastic pollution started

E. Novel (Treasure Island)

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This wound might leave _____ on your check.
 - a. scare
 - b. scar
 - c. scarp
 - d. scary
2. One of the sailors led a/an _____ against the captain.
 - a. invasion
 - b. murder
 - c. mutiny
 - d. mirror

F. Writing

6 Write an essay of not less than 80 words on :

"Tourism in Egypt and how to encourage it"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Don't fear when your enemies criticise you. Beware when they applaud.

B. Translate into English :

لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومة حلماً يسعى إليه الشباب الطرح

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبي

A. Listening

7 Listen and choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Cairo is the _____ of Egypt.
 - a. port
 - b. capital
 - c. north
 - d. airport
2. All Egyptians speak _____.
 - a. English
 - b. Spanish
 - c. Arabic
 - d. French

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When _____ you finish your work ?
 - a. are
 - b. have
 - c. has
 - d. did
2. We all _____ Mohamed Salah as he is polite and generous.
 - a. hate
 - b. respect
 - c. discourage
 - d. avoid
3. How _____ light is there in the cave ?
 - a. much
 - b. many
 - c. often
 - d. far
4. Village people build their houses with local _____.
 - a. tourists
 - b. environments
 - c. animals
 - d. materials
5. I've already booked the tickets, we _____ abroad today.
 - a. are travelling
 - b. travel
 - c. travels
 - d. travelled
6. Every year, more and more people are _____ to the internet in Egypt.
 - a. connected
 - b. connect
 - c. connection
 - d. contact
7. The police _____ the young man of stealing the money.
 - a. excused
 - b. thanked
 - c. accused
 - d. rewarded
8. A novel is a long written _____.
 - a. article
 - b. history
 - c. poem
 - d. story

AlFwOk.com موقع التفوق

C. Language Function

4 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nader is talking to Ali who has been on holiday.

Nader : Hi! Where have you been ?

Ali : (1)

Nader : How was your holiday ?

Ali : It was the best holiday in my life.

Nader : (2)

Ali : I went to the North Coast. It's fantastic.

Nader : Really! Did you go with your parents ?

Ali : (3) I went with my cousins.

Nader : (4)

Ali : Yes, I'll post them on my Facebook today. You can check them.

D. Reading comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day, Tom woke up and saw that it was snowing outside. He decided to go out. There was enough snow to go sledging. He went into the garden shed to find his sledge. He took off the old sheet his father used for covering the sledge and looked at it. His mother called to him, "Take your gloves with you in case your hands get cold". Tom took them and ran towards the big hill where all his friends were playing in the snow.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What was the weather like ?

.....

2. Why did Tom go to the garden shed ?

.....

3. How did Tom's father protect the sledge ?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Tom's mother asked him to take his

- a. sledge b. gloves c. sheet d. clothes

5. Tom was

- a. obedient b. disobedient c. rude d. lazy

E. Islamic selections

5 Choose the correct answer :

- The five pillars of Islam are
a. interested b. excited c. separated d. interrelated
- is the second pillar of Islam.
a. Prayer b. Zakat c. Pilgrimage d. Fasting

F. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"The age you think children start using the internet"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

The best way to make friends is to join clubs or do the team sport you like.

B. Translate into English :

يحب كثير من الناس رجل الأعمال لعظفه وتبرعاته الكريمة للجمعيات الخيرية في مصر.

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بني سويف - القسم الأدبي

A. Listening

1 Listen to the text then choose the correct answer :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- The discovery mentioned in the text is
a. The Femtosecond b. The Electric light
c. The radio d. Television
- All Egyptians are of Dr Ahmed Zewail.
a. pride b. proud c. paid d. pulled

B. Language Function

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue "

Sami : Excuse me. I advise you not to drink that water from that river.

Tourist : (1) I know that the water isn't very clean.

Sami : (2)

Tourist : I'm from England. I've just spent a week walking across the desert.

Sami : (3)

Tourist : No, it is not dangerous.

Sami : (4)

Tourist : I learned skills such as using the sun to find my way.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Dalia didn't have friends when she started at her new school.
a. the b. some c. a d. any
- We should money to charities to help the poor.
a. donate b. steal c. take d. refuse
- I have a new on my smart-phone which helps me practise foreign languages.
a. back b. app c. connection d. scam
- The person who writes poetry is called a
a. journalist b. novelist c. poem d. poet
- Sadly, my uncle has been ill he was a young man.
a. for b. when c. ago d. since
- It is taken for that bullying is as bad behaviour which we all must change.
a. granted b. refusal c. denial d. decided
- The local people benefit when lions
a. is protected b. isn't protected c. are protected d. protects
- The match at 10 o'clock.
a. will start b. starts c. is going to start d. is starting

D. Reading comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that their society is more complex than people previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for pregnant mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicated with each other without needing words. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? Certainly the most common argument in favour of man's superiority over them that we can kill them more easily than they can kill us is the least satisfactory. On the contrary, the more we discover about these remarkable creatures, the less we appear superior when we destroy them.

A. Answer the following questions :

- How do you think dolphins are like humans ?
.....
- What reason for man's superiority to dolphins does the writer mention ?
.....
- In what way can we be wrong about our superiority to dolphins ?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Dolphins have been sailors.
a. drowning b. saving c. sinking d. tricking
- Dolphins live in and have cooperative societies.
a. isolation b. loneliness c. families d. individuals

E. Islamic selections

5 Choose the right answer :

- What is the second pillar of Islam ?
a. Zakat b. Prayer c. Fasting d. Pilgrimage
- Muslims perform prayers times a day.
a. Two b. three c. four d. Five

F. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words on :

"Your role model"

7 A. Translate into Arabic :

Eco-tourism aims at providing holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

B. Translate into English :

بفضل التقدم الهائل في وسائل التواصل والبراميل تحول العالم إلى قرية صغيرة.

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

1 امتحان الدمج

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

- Hana and Rana are talking about last summer holiday.

Rana : (1) _____

- a. I have a passport.
- b. I went to Indonesia.
- c. I was happy.

Hana : (2) _____

- a. What was it like ?
- b. Who did you go with ?
- c. How did you go there ?

Rana : It was an enjoyable journey.

Hana : (3) _____

- a. How long did you stay there ?
- b. What's your favourite subject ?
- c. What did you see there ?

Rana : I saw orangutans in the forest.

B. Writing and Usage

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. Ecotourism doesn't the natural environment.
a. damage b. isolate c. conserve
2. Forests us with the oxygen we need.
a. respect b. dive c. provide
3. Whales are very animals that live in seas and oceans.
a. big b. small c. tiny
4. She had a/an on her knee yesterday.
a. operate b. operation c. cooperation
5. Hesham tennis at this moment.
a. play b. played c. is playing
6. I asked the chef about the of the delicious dish.
a. chemicals b. ingredients c. swimming
7. When I was young, I used to swimming.
a. go b. went c. had gone

1 Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1- Ahmed Zewail was	a- break the rules.
2- The Nile used to	b- protects people from diseases.
3- We mustn't	c- awarded the Nobel Prize.
4- The Egyptian navy	d- make the soil fertile.
5- Vaccination	e- protects Egypt's coasts.

2 امتحان الدمج

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct sentence in the following dialogue :

Ola : Do you think moving to a new school is a good or bad thing ?

Lina : (1) _____

- a. That's true. It is possible to make new friends.
- b. As far as I'm concerned, it's not a good idea.
- c. It's really difficult to make new friends.

Ali : (2) _____ ?

Salim : I'm fifteen.

- a. How old are you ?
- b. Who are you ?
- c. Hi, Salim. How are you ?

Omar : (3) _____ ?

Gamal : Yes, I did my homework yesterday.

- a. Did you do your homework ?
- b. Where did you do your homework ?
- c. When did you do your homework ?

B. Writing and Usage

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c :

1. While Noha her housework, the lights went out.
a. did b. was doing c. does
2. Don't forget to come on time when you to come for the interview.
a. ask b. are asked c. asked

ALFFWOK.COM موقع التمرين

3. As a personal trainer to the rich and famous, he over a million dollars a year.
 - a earns b wins c gains
4. I need some advice on which computer to buy. The synonym of the word "advice" is
 - a discouragement b relation c recommendation
5. You need to update your software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.
 - a antivirus b antibiotic c antibodies
6. He practices the guitar every day.
 - a to play b playing c to be played
7. I like outdoor such as hiking or climbing.
 - a activities b subjects c toys

3 Match "A" with "B" to make correct sentences :

(A)	(B)
1- A food bank is a place	a- I can go instead of him.
2- Contact your local branch	b- to arrange an appointment.
3- She discovered that the job	c- wasn't as easy as it might seem.
4- A professional sportsman is	d- the one who earns money by playing a sport.
5- If Ramy can't attend the meeting,	e- where people collect food to give to others.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the passage, then answer the questions. Put (✓) or (X) :

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the train window. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train there. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings! The train continued to Aswan. We arrived at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a wonderful journey.

- a. The train left Cairo at 9 o'clock. ()
- b. They arrived at Aswan at 10 o'clock. ()
- c. Few tourists left the train in Luxor. ()
- d. The writer's uncle met them in Aswan. ()
- e. There were lots of people from many countries on the train. ()

Islamic Selections

Chapter (1) The Five Pillars of Islam

Answer the following questions :

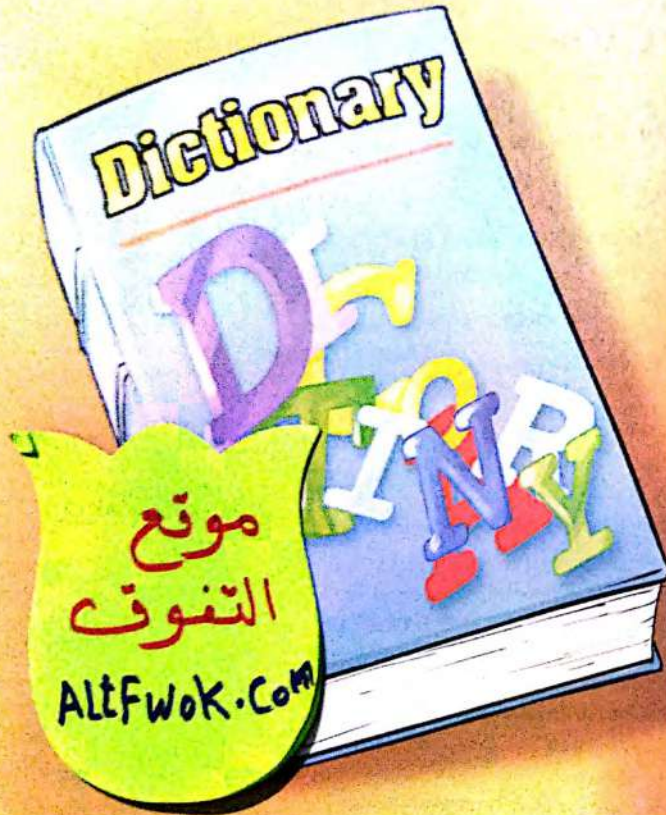
1. What do the Five Pillars of Islam form ?
.....
2. How can Muslims have their minor sins cleared ?
.....
3. What are the outcomes of Zakat ?
.....
4. What would happen if any of the Muslims was ill or on a journey during the fast ?
.....
5. How does a Muslim become a true Muslim ?
.....

Chapter (2) Prayer

Answer the following questions :

1. What happens as long as a Muslim adheres to keeping Allah in remembrance ?
.....
2. Mention the five daily prayers that a Muslim performs every day.
.....
3. What are the purpose of performing the daily prayers by Muslims ?
.....
4. What kind of fuel does a Muslim get from prayers ?
.....
5. How many are the daily prayers in reward ?
.....

ALTFWOK.COM موقع التنوير



Vocabulary - Collocations - Synonyms - Antonyms
- Expressions & Prepositions

First Term Dictionary

عزيزي الطالب :

نحن نبدأ قاموس المعاصر لتصف الأول الثانوي، والذي يتضمن كل ما يخص مفردات الفصل الدراسي الأول، وهو بمثابة مرجع تم تقسيمه الى عدة أقسام تصغير المفردات والصيغ والمترادفات والمضادات والتعريفات والمصطلحات بما في ذلك مفردات القصة (Treasure Island) والهدف من هذا القاموس هو أن تستطيعه كمرجع يذكرك الاستعانة به في البحث عن أي كلمة أثناء حل تدرجات المفردات والمراجعة حيث أنه مرادف لأحد، والله من احتفظ بهذا القاموس كمرجع لك في السنوات القادمة

1 Exam Vocabulary

تمت كتابة المفردات الأكثر أهمية بلون مختلف حتى يسهل حفظها

Aa

ability(n)	قُدرة	allowed(adj)	مسموح به
abroad(adv)	بالخارج (خارج البلاد)	already(adv)	بالفعل
accident(n)	حادث	although (conj.)	برغم أن
account(n)	حساب (مصرفي أو على النت)	amazing(adj)	مُدعبل - رائع جدًا
achievement (n)	إنجاز - نجاح	amongst(prep)	بين / وسط
action(n)	خُدت - فَعَل	ancient(n)	قديم - عتيق
active(adj)	نشط	angle(n)	زاوية - جانب
activity(n)	نشاط	angry(adj)	غاضب
actually(adv)	في الواقع / بالفعل	anti-virus (adj)	مُكافح الفيروسات
add(ed) (v)	بضف	anymore(adv)	مرة أخرى
address(ed) (v - n)	بخطب - عنوان	app = application(n)	تطبيق (رسمي)
admire(d) (v)	بُعجب به	appearance(n)	مظهر
admit (ted) (v)	بُعز به / يعترف	area (n)	منطقة
adult (n - adj)	شخص بالغ - راشد	around (adv - prep)	حول - حوالي
advantage(n)	ميزة	arrange(d) (v)	يُرتب
adventure(n)	مغامرة	article(n)	مقال
advert = advertisement (n)	إعلان	arts(n)	أدب - فنون
advice(n)	نصيحة	association (n)	جمعية - اتحاد
Africa(n)	إفريقيا	attack(ed) (n - v)	هجوم - يهاجم
again (adv)	مرة أخرى	attempt(ed) (n - v)	محاولة - يحاول
against(pre)	ضد	attractions(n)	عوامل الجذب
agreement(n)	عقد - اتفاق - موافقة	author(n)	مؤلف
aim(ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف	avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتفادى
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح به	awful(adj)	فظيع / شديد

Bb

baby sister(n)	أخت رضيعية	blood pressure(n)	ضغط الدم
balcony(n)	مكينة / شرفة	blow - blew - blown (v)	تَهَبُ - ينفخ - يُطِير
barrel(n)	برسل حشيش	board(n)	مِن مِطْبَعة أو طائِرة - لوحة
beach(n)	شاطئ	body(n)	الجزء الرئيسي - الجسم
beauty(n)	الجمال	book(ed) (v)	يُحجِر
become - became - become (v)	صَح	boring(adj)	مُبل
behave(v)	يُسلِك / يتصرف	borrow(ed) (v)	يُستعير - يَسْتَلِف
behaviour(n)	سلوك	branch(n)	فرع - غصن
belief(n)	اعتقاد	brainstorm(ed) (v)	يُستشير الفِكر
benefit(ed) (n - v)	فائدة - يستفيد	break - broke - broken (v)	يُكسر - يَتكسر
biography(n)	السيرة الذاتية	break down (phr. v)	يُتَعَطَّل
biologist(n)	عالم أحياء	brief (adj)	مُختَصِر - موجِز
biology(n)	علم الأحياء	brilliant adj	رائع - متفوق
birth(n)	ميلاد	bring - brought (v)	يُحضِر - يُجلب
bite - bit - bitten (n - v)	عَضَّة - يعض / يعضم	bully(ied) (v)	يُتَنَمَّر - يُبْلِطِج
blind(adj)	كفيف البصر	bully(n)	بلطجي - مُتَنَمَّر
blogged (n - v)	مُتَوِّد على الإنترنت - يُتَوِّد	bullying(n)	البُلطجة - التَنَمَّر
blood(n)	الدم	businesses(n)	شركات
blood donation(n)	التَّوَقُّع بالدم	buy - bought (v)	يُشترى

Cc

call(ed) (v)	يُستدعي - يَظف / يتصل به	chance(n)	فُرْصة
calm(adj)	هادئ	compassion(n)	رَأْفَة / رَحْمَة
camping(n)	الإقامة في معسكر	completed(adj)	مُكتمل
canal(n)	قناة - ترعة	concerned(adj)	مهتم - لديه اهتمام
cancer(n)	مرض السرطان	conclusion(n)	خِلاصة - خاتمة
candlelight(n)	نور الشمعة	connect(ed) (v)	يربط
cannon(n)	مدفع	connected(adj)	مُتَّصِل - مُرتَبِط
carnival(n)	احتفال / مهرجانات	connection(n)	ارتباط - اتصال
case(n)	حالة - قضية	conservation(n)	الصيانة - حماية البيئة
castle(n)	قلعة	conservationist(n)	مُحافظ على البيئة
cattle(n)	الماشية	consider(ed) (v)	يُفكر في - يَضَع في الإعتبار
cause(d) (n - v)	سبب - يُسبب	contact(ed) (v - n)	يتصل / يتواصل - يتواصل
centre(n)	مركز / وسط	contain(ed) (v)	يحتوي على

change(d) (v - n)	تُغَيِّر - يَغَيِّر - يَغَيِّر	conversation(n)	مُحادثة
character(n)	شخصية	cook(ed) (n - v)	طباخ - يَطبخ
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية - العمل الخيري	cool(adj)	عُلى العَرصَة - حَميل / حذاب
cheap(adj)	رخص الثمن	copy(ied) (n - v)	يُسخ - نُسخة
cheat(ed) (v - n)	يُغش - يَغشاش	coral reefs / corals(n)	الشعاب المرجانية
cheating(n)	الغش	council(n)	مجلس / ديوان
check(ed) (v)	يُتحقق من - يَفحص	cow(n)	بقرة
circle(d) (n - v)	دائرة - يرسم دائرة - يَحيط به	crazy(adj)	مجنون
classroom(n)	حجرة الدراسة	create(d) (v)	يُخلِق - يَبتكر - يُوجِد
cleaner(adj)	أكثر نظافة	creative(adj)	مُبدِع - مَخَلِّق
clear(d) (adj - v)	صافي - واضح - يوضِّح	credit card(n)	بطاقة ائتمان
clearly(adv)	بوضوح	crescent (n)	هلال
click(ed) (n - v)	نقرة - يقر	crew(n)	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة
cliff(n)	منحدر	crime(n)	جريمة
close (to) (adj)	قريب - مُقَرَّب	criminal (n - adj)	مجرم - إجرامي
closing (n)	إنهاء - ختام	critical(adj)	ناقد - نقدي
coast(n)	ساحل	cross(ed) (n - v)	علامة (X) أو (X) - يَشطب
collaboration(n)	تعاون / تآزر	crowded(adj)	مُزدحم
collect (ed) (v)	يُجمَع - يُجْمَع	cruise ship (n)	ياخرة سياحة
collection(n)	مجموعة	cruise(n)	تُرعة بحرية
colourful(adj)	زاهي الألوان	crutch(n)	عُكَّاز - ركيزة - دعامة
comic(n)	مجلة مصورة للأطفال	cry(ied) (v)	يُبكي
comment(ed) (n - v)	تعلين - يُتَلَق	culture(n)	الثقافة
common (adj)	عام - مُشْتَرَك - شائع	currant row	صف الكشمش / صنب
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتواصل	currant(n)	نبات الكشمش / صنب
communication(n)	تواصل - اتصال	currently(adv)	حاليا
community(n)	مُجتَمَع - جماعة	cute(adj)	جذاب - جميل
compare(d) (v)	يُقارن	cyberbully (n)	متنمر عبر الإنترنت
contractions(n)	اختصارات	cyberbullying(n)	التنمر الإلكتروني
contrast(ed) (n - v)	تباين / اختلاف - يوضِّح التباين	cycle (d) (v)	يقود دراجة

Dd

damage(d) (v - n)	يُتلف - تلف / ضرر	dig - dug (v)	يُحفر - يخرس
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	dirty(adj)	فُتِر
data(n)	بيانات	disabled (adj)	مُعاق
date(n)	تاريخ اليوم - موعد	disappear(ed) (v)	يختفي - يتلاشى
day(n)	يوم - النهار	disaster(n)	كوارث - مغبة

debate(d) (n - v)	مناقشة - يناقش	disconnected(adj)	منفصل / معزول
deb(n)	دين	discussion(n)	مناقشة / مناقش
decide(d) (v)	يقرر - يختار	disease(n)	مرض
dedicate(d) (v)	يخصص	dishonest(adj)	غير أمين - مُخادع
defended (v)	دافع عن	dive(d) (v)	يقفص / يغوص
delete(d) (v)	يحذف	diversity(n)	التنوع
describe(d) (v)	يصف	diving(n)	الغوص / العطف - رحلة غوص
description(n)	يصف	document(n)	وثيقة
deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	documentary (n - adj)	فيلم وثائقي - وثائقي
design(ed) (v - n)	تصمم - تصميم	donated(d) (v)	يتبرع
desire(d) (n - v)	رغبة - يرغب	donation(n)	التبرع
destination(n)	مقصد - وجهة سفر	donor(n)	مُتبرع
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمر	download (n)	ملف مُنزّل
details(n)	تفاصيل	download(ed) (v)	يحمل / يُنزّل (من الإنترنت)
determine(d) (v)	يحدد - يبيّن	download(ed) (v)	التحميل / التنزيل (من الإنترنت)
develop(ed) (v)	يُنمّي / يُطوّر - ينمو / يتطور	dragon(n)	تنين
device(n)	جهاز	dreamer (n)	حالم
dialogue(n)	حوار	dress(ed) (n - v)	لبستان - يرتدي ملابس
die (d) (v)	يتوفى / يموت	dried(adj)	مُجفّف
difference(n)	اختلاف - فرق	driverless(adj)	بدون سائق
differently(adv)	شكل مختلف	drop(ped) (v - n)	يُسقط - قَطْرَة
		during	خلال / أثناء

Es

each (adv - pron - deter)	كُلّ / كُلّ من	environment(n)	البيئة
earned (v)	يُكسب - يجني مال	environmentally(adv)	من الناحية البيئية
eco-hotel(n)	فندق صديق للبيئة	escape(d) (v - n)	يهرب - هروب
ecosystem(n)	النظام البيئي	especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة
ecotourism(n)	الساحة البيئية	essay(n)	مقالة
ecotourist(n)	سائح مُراعي للبيئة	estimate(d) (v)	يُقدّر - يفترض
eco-trip(n)	رحلة صديقة للبيئة	Europe(n)	قارة أوروبا
Ecuador(n)	الإكوادور	events(n)	أحداث
educate(d) (v)	يُعَلِّم	everyday (adj)	يومي
effect(n)	أثر	everywhere(adv)	في كل مكان
Egyptians(n)	المصريون	evidence(n)	دليل
electric(adj)	كهربوي	exactly(adv)	تماماً - بالتحديد
electronic(adj)	إلكتروني	excited(adj)	سعيد - مُثار

embarrassing(adj)	مُزعج	exciting(adj)	مثير
emotional connection	ارتباط عاطفي	existed (v)	يوجد / يتواجد
emotions(n)	مشاعر	exotic(adj)	غريب - أجنبي
empathy(n)	تعاطف - تفهم ظروف الآخرين	expensive(adj)	غالي الثمن
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغّل	experience (d) (n - v)	تجربة - يمر بتجربة
employer(n)	صاحب العمل - مُوظّف	expert (n - adj)	خبر
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - مُفرغ	explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضّح / يُفسّر
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجّع	explore(d) (v)	يستكشف
endangered(adj)	مُعرض للخطر	expressions(n)	تعابير
ending (v)	نهاية	extra (adj / adv)	إضافي - آخر
entertain(ed) (v)	يُرفّه	extract(ed) (n - v)	يُستَخرج / يُفصّل - يفتس
entertainment(n)	تسلية / ترفيه		يُستَخدم

Ff

face(d) (n - v)	وجه - يواجه	fly (n)	ذبابَة
fact(n)	حقيقة	follow(ed) (v)	يتبع / يلي - يتبع
factory(n)	مصنع	fondness(n)	غرام / إعجاب / حب شديد
factual(adj)	واقعي - متعلق بالحقائق	food bank	بنك الطعام
faculty(n)	كَلِيَة	foot - feet(n)	قَدَم - أقدام
fair(adj)	عادل	footballer(n)	لاعب كرة قدم
famous(adj)	مشهور	forget - forgot -	نسى
farmer(n)	فلاح / مُزارع	forgotten (v)	
Faroe Islands(n)	جزر الفارو	formal(adj)	رسمي
fascinating(adj)	جميل / مُغَلِّب	fort(n)	حصن
favourite(adj)	مُفضّل	fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
feed - fed(v)	يُغذّي	founder(n)	مؤسس - مُؤسس
feel - felt (v)	يشعر به	free(adj)	مجانبي
fewer(adj)	أقل في العدد	frequency(n)	تكرار
field (n)	مجال - حقل	friendly(adj)	ودود
fight - fought (v - n)	يقاتل / يتشاجر مع - مشاجرة	friendship(n)	الصداقة
finals(n)	النهائيات	full-time(adj)	دوام كامل
flexible(adj)	مرن	fun(n)	مرح / متعة
flight(n)	رحلة جوية	furious(adj)	ساحظ / غاضب جداً
fly - flew - flown(v)	يطير - يُطير - يُسرّع	fussy eater	منقلب المزاج بشأن الطعام

Gg

gang(n)	عصابة	grab(bed) (v)	يخطف بشدة / يخطف
garden(s)	بستان	grammar(n)	القواعد النحوية
gardener(s)	سائق الحدائق	granddad(n)	جد
gardening(n)	سنة / زراعة النباتات	grass(n)	عشب
generous(adj)	كريم - سخيا	groceries	الخبز
get along with	يحسن التعامل مع	gravelled (adj)	مغطى بالحصى
get away from	يتعدى	great(adj)	عظيم
get to - got(v)	وصل إلى	greeting(n)	تحية
giant (adj - n)	عملاق	grouped (n - v)	مجموعة - يجمع / يجمع
glad(adj)	سعيد / مسرور	grow - grew - grown (v)	يزرع - ينمو - ينمو
go - went - gone (v)	رحل / ذهب	grown-up(s)	الكبار
goats(n)	ماعز	guard(ed) (n - v)	يحمي - حارس
goal(s)	مفتاح (الفتح جمع)	guardian(n)	حارس
google (n)	تحرّك البحث حول	guide(d) (n - v)	مُرشد - يُرشد
google(d) (v)	بحث على جوجل		

Hh

habit(n)	عادة	hide - hid - hidden (v)	يُخفي - يُخفي
hacked(ed) (n - v)	خترق - تخترق	high school(n)	مدرسة ثانوية
hacking(n)	اختراق - القرصنة	highlight(ed) (n - v)	الجزء الأهم - يبرز
harbours(s)	مرفأ	historic(adj)	تاريخي
hard(adj)	hobby(n)	هواية	
harm (ed) (n - v)	ضرر - يضر	hometown(n)	مسقط رأس
hate(d) (v)	يكره	hopped (n - v)	قفزة - يقفز - يجعل
hay(n)	تبن / قش	hopping(n)	القفز - القفز
head(n)	رئيس - قائد - رأس	horrible(adj)	فظيح
header(n)	رأس الصفحة - عنوان رئيسي	host(ed) (n - v)	مُضيف - يستضيف
headquarters(n)	مركز القيادة	however (conj. - adv)	مع ذلك
healthy	صحة جيدة	hunter(n)	صياد
heating(n)	التدفئة	hunting parties	فِرَق الصيد
helpful(adj)	مفيد - مُعين	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يُصيب

Ii

idea (n)	فكرة	intelligent(adj)	ذكي
illegally(adv)	شكل غير قانوني	intention(n)	نية
image(n)	صورة	interesting(adj)	شيق - مثير للاهتمام
imaginary(adj)	خيالي / غير حقيقي	interests (n)	اهتمامات
imagination (n)	خيال	internal(adj)	داخلي

imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	Internet of Things (IOT)	إنترنت الأشياء
imposed(ed) (n - v)	أمر - يُلزم	internet(n)	الإنترنت
important (adj)	مهم	interview(ed) (n - v)	مقابلة شخصية - مقابلة
imposed(ed) (v)	يُفرض - يفرض	introduce(d) (v)	يُطرح - يُقدّم - يُعبر
imposed (d) (v)	يُفرض / يفرض	iron level(n)	نسبة الحديد في الدم
imposed(n)	وُجّه - مودّة ردي	ironed (n - v)	جديد - مكيّك - مكيّك
increase(d) (v - n)	يزيد - يزداد - يزداد	island(n)	جزيرة
Indonesia(n)	إندونيسيا	isolated(adj)	معزول - مُعزّل
informed (v)	يُعلم - يُخبر	isolation (n)	عزلة - انعزال
imposed (v)	يُفرض - يوزي	issue(n)	قضية
imposed (adj)	مُصاب / معوج	item(n)	جانب (الفتح جمع)
imposed (v)	يُقدّم - يُقدّم / يُقدّم		

Jj

job(n)	مِهنة - وظيفة	joint(ed) (v)	يضم إلى
--------	---------------	---------------	---------

Kk

keep - kept (v)	يحافظ على - يحتفظ بـ - يُرعى	kids(n)	الأطفال
keep the gravel walk	يلزم الطريق المسدّد بالحصى	killer(n)	قاتل
Kenya(n)	كينيا	kind(adj)	لطيف - ناعم
key(n)	مفتاح	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
kidnap(ed) (v)	يخطف	kneel down - knelt(v)	يركع

Ll

lady(n)	سيدة	like (prep - v)	مثلي - يحب
large(adj)	كبير - ضخم	limited(adj)	محدود
later (adv)	فما بعد	line(n)	سطر تقريبي
laugh(d) (n - v)	ضحك - يضحك	link(ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط
law(n)	القانون	list(ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يجمع في قائمة
lawyer(n)	محامي	literature(n)	الأدب
lean - leaned / leant(v)	يحن / يسيل - يتكئ	little(adj)	صغير الحجم / اليس
leader(n)	قائد	live(d) (v)	يحيى - يسكن
Lemurs(n)	قرود اللور	livestock(n)	حيوانات المزارع
length(n)	طول	loads of	الكثير من
lesson(n)	درس - حصة	local(adj)	محلي
lettuce(n)	الخس	locals(n)	السكان المحليون
level(n)	مستوي / نسبة	locate(d) (v)	يضع في مكان - يحدد موقع

library(n)	مكتبة	booked (v)	يُغلق - يُغلق
lie - lay - lain (v)	يُفد - يمتد	long (adv)	طويل المدى
life (lives) (n)	حياة (حيوانات)	lucky (adj)	مُحظوظ
light (n - adj)	الضوء - حصف اللون		
lightning (n)	الإسار		

Mm

Maasai(n)	شعب العاساي	meaning(n)	معنى
machine(n)	آلة	mesher(n)	وسائل الإعلام - وسائل التواصل
Machu Picchu(n)	حصدة ماتشويكشوي المكسد	medicine(n)	الطب - دواء
Madagascar(n)	جزيرة مدغشقر	merit(n)	يُذكر
magistrate(n)	قاضى (جُعب)	merchant(n)	تاجر
main(adj)	رئيسي / أساسي	Mexican (n - adj)	مكسيكي
mainly(adv)	أساساً	mind(n)	العقل
major(adv)	كبير	miserable(adj)	تعيس - بائس
make it clear	يوضح	miss(ed) (v)	يفقد - يفتو
maker(n)	صانع	missing(adj)	مفقود - ناقص
malware(n)	البرمجيات الخسنة	mix(ed) (v)	يختلط ب - يخلط
management(n)	إدارة	model(n)	نموذج
map(n)	خريطة	modern(adj)	حديث - مُعاصر
market(n)	سوق	monitor(ed) (v - n)	يُراقب / يرصد - جهاز عرض
marks(n)	درجات	mosquito(n)	ناموسة
master(n)	السيد	movement(n)	حركة
material (n - adj)	مادة / عُرض - مادي	moving(adj)	مُتحرك
maybe(adv)	رماً	mutiny(n)	تعد - عصيان

Nn

name(d) (n - v)	اسم - يُسمى - يذكر اسم	nickname(n)	لقب - اسم شهرة
narrate(ed) (v)	يروي / يحكي	niece(n)	ابنة الأخ أو الأخت
narrow(adj)	ضيق	noisy(adj)	مُزعج - صاحب
nasty(adj)	قبيح - ذميم	note (n)	ملاحظة
National Park(n)	الحديقة الوطنية	noticeboard(n)	لوحة الإعلانات
natural(adj)	طبيعي	novel(n)	رواية - قصة طويلة
nearby (adj/ adv)	قرب / مُجاور	nurse(d) (v)	تُعرض - ترعى المرضي
negative(adj)	سلي	nurse(n)	ممرضة
neighbour(n)	جار	nursing(n)	التريض
network(ed) (n - v)	شبكة - يتصل عن طريق الشبكة		

Oo

objective(adj)	موضوعي (مُحايد)	orangutan(n)	إسار الغابرة
offered (n - v)	عرض - يعرض	organisation(n)	مؤسسة - منظمة
once(adv)	مرة - ذات مرة	otherwise(adv)	وإلا
online (adj / adv)	مُصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	outside(adv)	بالتخارج
opportunity(n)	فرصة	over the moon	مُعيد جداً
optional(adj)	اختياري	owed (v)	يُدين - يَكور مدين

Pp

pale(adj)	شاحب اللون - باهت	police(d) (v)	يعرض الأمر والاعتصام
paper(n)	ورق - مقال	police(n)	الشرطة
paradise(n)	جنة	policing(n)	فرض الأمن والاعتصام
parrot(n)	ببغا	polite(adj)	مُردب - مهذب
partic(ular)(adj)	مُعين / مُحدّد	pollution(n)	التلوث
partner(n)	شريك - نظير / قرين	pool(n)	حمام سباحة - بركة
party(n)	فريق - جماعة - حزب	popular(adj)	ذو شعبية
pass(ed) (v)	يجتاز - يُتر - يُتَر	populate(d) (v)	يُهمر مكان
password(n)	كلمة المرور	population(n)	أعداد السكان
past(n)	الماضي	Portugal(n)	البرتغال
path(n)	طريق مشاة - ممر	positive(adj)	إيجابي
paw print	أثار أقدام الحيوان	possibility(n)	إمكانية
paws(n)	post(ed) (v - n)	يرسل - منشور	
pay - paid (v)	يدفع مال	pound(n)	جئة
peace(n)	السلام - السكينة	power station(n)	محطات الطاقة
peaceful(adj)	هادئ / ذو سكينة	practice(n)	ممارسة - تدريب
penny(n)	بنس (١/١٠٠ من الجئة)	praise(ed) (n - v)	التمجيد - يُثنى على - يمدح
perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي - يقوم ب	prediction(n)	تنبؤ
personal(adj)	شخصي	prefer(red) (v)	يُفضل
personality(n)	شخصية	preparation(n)	إعداد - تجهيز
persuade(d) (v)	يُفتح	present(n)	الحاضر - التخارج
petrol(n)	البتين	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
phishing(n)	النصب الإلكتروني	presenter(n)	مُقدم برنامج
phone-in(n)	برنامج يُشارك فيه الجمهور هاتفياً	pressure(n)	ضغط
photograph(ed) (n - v)	صورة - يلتقط صورة	prestige (n - adj)	فخرة / فبة / وجاهة - عالي العردة
physical(adj)	بدني / جسدي - مادي	prison(n)	السجن

pink (n - adj)
 present
 place (n)
 plan (n) (v - n)
 planning (n)
 play (n)
 plaza (n)
 plot (n)
 plot (n)
 plump (adj)
 poem (n)
 poet (n)
 poetry (n)
 pointed (v)

ردي اللون
 قرص
 مكان
 خطة - خطط
 خطط
 مسرحية
 مساحة - ساحة
 قطعة أرض
 الحبكة - ذروة الأحداث
 مكسر - ممثل
 قصيدة
 شاعر
 الشعر - النظم
 شبر

لشج
 إنتاج
 برنامج - برامج
 مشروع
 يخطط
 النطق
 بشكل صحيح
 مزايا وعبء
 يحمي
 يوقر - يؤدب
 ينشر
 علامات الترقيم
 غرض

Qq

quality (n)
 quantity (n)

quarter (n)
 quiet (n - adj)

رُبع
 هادئ - هادئ

Rr

rainforest (n)
 rail (n)
 read - read (v)
 reader (n)
 realize (v)
 reason (n)
 rebuild - rebuilt (v)
 recent (adj)
 recipient (n)
 recognize (v)
 reduce (v)
 regret (v)
 regular (adj)
 relationship (n)
 relaxing (adj)
 remote (adj)
 remove (v)

غابة مطيرة
 قار
 قرأ
 قارئ
 يتوعد - يتوعد

 يعيد بنا
 حدث
 منقذ - مُستلم
 يتعرف على
 يُقلل / يُخفّض
 الندم - سئم - يندف
 معنّاد / مألوف - منظم
 علاقة
 مُريح
 بعيد / نائي
 يُزيل - يُبعد

منتجع سياحي
 احترام - يحترم
 مسؤولية
 يعود - يُعيد
 يُراجع
 عرض نقدي
 يراجع - يفتح
 يُكافئ - مكافأة
 القافية - يُقنئ / يُشجع
 إيقاع
 يركب
 يرن
 يزار - زبير
 إنسان آلي
 قنوة - نموذج يُحتذى
 دور
 (العبة) تمثيل الأدوار - يُسئل

repair (v)
 repeated (adj)
 reply (v)
 requested (v)
 resilient (n)

romantic (adj)
 row (n)
 rucksack (n)
 rule (adj)
 rule (v)

رومانسي
 صف
 حقيبة الظهر
 ربيع - سبب - الأوب
 قاعدة - يُسئل

Ss

sad (adj)
 safe (adj)
 Sahara (n)
 sail (v)
 sailor (n)
 salutation (n)
 sand (n)
 satin (n)
 save (v)
 scam (n)
 scientist (n)
 score (v - n)
 Scottish (adj)
 season (n)
 section (n)
 security (n)
 seem (v)
 self (n)
 self-management (n)
 sell - sold (v)
 sense (n)
 sentence (n)
 serious (adj)
 several (adj)
 share (v)
 short story (n)
 show - showed - shown (v - n)
 sick (adj)

حزين
 آمن
 الصحراء الكبرى
 سحر - شراع
 بحار
 بحنة
 الرمل
 السجدة بالفسر الصناعي
 تُفقد - يُفقد / يوقر
 احتيال - خدع
 عالم
 يُعزف / يسجل - النقاط السجدة
 إسكتلندي
 فصل / موسم
 قسم - جزء
 الأمن
 يبدو
 النفس - الذات
 إدارة الذات
 بيع
 حاسة
 حيلة
 حزين - حاد
 العديد من
 يشارك - يشارك
 قصة قصيرة
 يُسئل / يُسئل - عرض فني
 مريض

يحل
 حديد تذكارية - تذكاري
 الفضاء
 مُسار - خاص
 سرعة
 تهجي الكلمات
 ينفق - ينفق - ينفق مال
 يُسئل (يبيع نوازل)
 يواطئ
 جريء - حاد - يسئل بالتهديدات
 ضحك
 استاد
 سرقة
 زوج الأب
 حفلات
 لا يزال
 يُسئل / يُجرب
 حجر
 قصص أحكي قصصاً
 غريب
 مُشدد / مُشدد
 مضغوط (مضغ)
 تركيب - بنا
 عائق / محزون - ملتئم
 يُدرس - يُدرك
 موضوع
 تابع
 اقتراح

PART 4

sight(n)	منظر - البصر - أحد المعالم	summarise(d) (v)	ملخص
sign(n)	علامة / إشارة / لافتة	summary(n)	ملخص
single(adj)	مفرد - أعزب	sunbathe(v)	بالغطاء حمام الشمس - يتعرض للشمس
site(n)	موقع	sunshine(n)	أشعة الشمس
situation(n)	موقف	supported(v)	بدعم - دعم
skill(n)	مهارة	supposed(v)	يتعجب
slow(adj)	بطيء	surface(n)	سطح
smartphone(n)	الهاتف الذكي	surprised(n)	مفاجأة / دهشة - مفاجئ
social media(n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	survey(n)	بحث استقصائي
socialised(v)	تواصل عبر وسائل التواصل	sustained(v)	يحافظ - يثبتي - يثبتي على
society (n)	المجتمع	sustainable(adj)	دائم - صديق للبيئة
software(n)	برامج - برمجيات	swell - swelled - swollen (up) (v)	بتورم - بتضخم - بتزايد
solution(n)	حل	system(n)	نظام

Tt

take ... for granted	يُتَّكَم ... -	together(adv)	معًا / سويًا
talk(ed) (n - v)	حدثت - تحدثت	tonight(adv)	الليلة
Tanzania(n)	تنزانيا	tools(n)	أدوات
teach - taught (v)	يُدرِّس	topic(n)	فكرة رئيسية
team sports(n)	رياضات جماعية	toy(n)	لعبة أطفال
teammates(n)	زملاء الفريق	tracked(ed) (v - n)	يرصد - يتابع - ممر
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
teenager (adj - n)	مراهق	traditionally(adv)	بشكل تقليدي
temple(n)	معبد	transplant(ed) (n - v)	نقل - زراعة أعضاء
terrible(adj)	فظيع - سيء جدًا	travel(led) (v - n)	السفر - يسافر
test(ed) (n - v)	اختبار - يختبر	traveller(n)	سافر - زحالة
text(n)	نص	treasure(n)	كنز
the Pacific(n)	المحيط الهادي	trek(ked) (v - n)	يسير لمسافة طويلة - رحلة طويلة سيرًا
the wild	الساكنة البرية	tribe(n)	قبيلة
theatre(n)	السرحة	trick(ed) (n - v)	خدعة - يخدع
thief - thieves(n)	لصوص	trouble(n)	مشكلة
thinking(n)	تفكير	true(adj)	حقيقي / صحيح - صادق
tiny(adj)	ضئيل الحجم	trust (ed) (n - v)	ثقة - يثق بـ

Dictionary

tip (n)	نصيحة	try(ied) (v)	تجرب - يعاين
tired-looking(adj)	يبدو عليه التعب	turtle(n)	سلحفاة مائية
title(n)	عنوان - لقب	twins(n)	توائم

Uu			
ugly(adj)	فجح	unwanted(adj)	غير مرغوب فيه
understand - understood (v)	يفهم - يدرك	upload (n)	ملف مرصوع
underwater (adj - adv)	تحت الماء	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع ملف
unfriendly(adj)	غير ودود	uploading (n)	رفع الملفات على الإنترنت
unique(adj)	فريد - متميز	upset(adj)	مزعج / متضايق - مضطرب
unusual(adj)	غير مأثور	use(d) (n - v)	استخدام - يستخدم

Vv			
variety(n)	تنوع - تعددية	villagers(n)	القرريين
verse(n)	فقرة شعرية	visitor(n)	زائر
victim(n)	ضحية	voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
view(n)	وجهة نظر / رأي - منظر	voluntary(adj)	تطوعي
viewers(n)	المشاهدين	volunteer(n)	متطوع
village(n)	قرية	voluntourist(n)	سائح متطوع

Ww			
wake - woke - woken (v)	يقظ - يستيقظ	while(n)	فترة من الوقت
walls(n)	اسوار / جدران	whistle(d) (n - v)	صافرة - يحفر
warm(adj)	دافئ	wild(adj)	فدوي
warmer(adj)	أكثر دفئًا	wildlife(n)	الحياة البرية
warning(n)	تحذير	wind(n)	الرياح
wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي	winter(n)	فصل الشتاء
weather(n)	الطقس	wish(ed) (n - v)	أمنية - يمني
web(n)	شبكة	wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل
website(n)	موقع على الانترنت	wooden(adj)	خشبي
welcome(d) (v)	يُرحب	World Cup(n)	كأس العالم
well(adj)	بصحة جيدة	worldwide (adj)	عالمي / دولي
well-known(adj)	مشهور	worry(ied) (n - v)	القلق - يقلق
		writer(n)	كاتب

Yy			
yet(adv)	حتى الآن - ومع ذلك	youth association	جمعية شبابية
youth (n)	الشباب		

2 Verbal Collocations

Collocations with 'do':				
do	activities	تُمارس أنشطة	do puzzles	يحل ألغاز
do	a favour	يُصنع معروفات	do research	يُجري أبحاث
do	a job	يُؤد عمل	do something to help	يفعل شئ - لمساعدة
do	a sport	تُمارس رياضة	do the homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي
do	exciting things	يُؤد أشياء مثيرة	do voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
do	extra practice	يُؤد تدريبات إضافية	do wrong	يُخطئ

Collocations with 'feel':				
feel	at home	شعر بالراحة	feel safe	يشعر بالأمان
feel	better	شعر بتحسن	feel so hard	تبدو صعبة جدًا
feel	connected to	لديه ارتباط	feel stressed	يشعر بضغط
feel	like	يرغب في / يود - شعر كأنه		

Collocations with 'give':				
give	food	تُعطى	give advice on	ينصح بخصوص
give	a chance	تُمنح فرصة	give an opinion	يعطي رأي
give	blood	يُتبرع بالدم	give information	يعطي معلومات
give	work / jobs	تُمنح	give personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصية
give	a title	يُنقَب	give a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي
give	a sense of responsibility	يعطي إحساس بالمسئولية	give a reason for	يُبرر
give	a nickname	يُنقَب - يُسَمَّى	give a rhythm	تُعطي إيقاع

Collocations with 'go':				
go	diving	تُمارس رياضة الغوص	go missing	يتوه / يضل الطريق
go	trekking	يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا (على الأقدام)	go online	يدخل على الانترنت
go	wrong	يتعطل / يُصاب بالعطب	go on a holiday	يسافر في إجازة

Collocations with 'have':				
have	a reason	لديه سبب	have common interests	لديهم اهتمامات مشتركة
have	a holiday	يحصل على إجازة	have a desire to	لديه رغبة أن
have	an impact	له أثر / تأثير	have health benefits	ذو فوائد صحية
have	a strong taste	ذو مذاق قوي	have long-term illness	يعاني من مرض مُزمن
have	a good time	يقضي وقتًا سعيدًا	have nothing to do	ليس لديه ما يقوم به

have	a child	لديه طفل - تضع مولود	have	a game	تُعبث مباراة
have	no parents	ليس لديه والدين	have	the ability to	لديه القدرة على
have	debts	تسب عليه ديون	have	skills	لديه مهارات
have	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	have	a class debate	يُطرح مناقشة بين الطلاب
have	bad news	لديه أخبار سيئة	have	an effect on	له أثر على
have	time	لديه الوقت	have	exams	لديه امتحانات
have	no opportunity	ليس لديه فرصة	have	a rhythm	به إيقاع
have	a role	له دور يقوم به	have	fun	يُضحك / يلعب
have	a happy ending	لها نهاية سعيدة	have	a vote	يُجري اقتراع / تصويت
have	a suggestion	لديه اقتراح	have	a pen friend	لديه صديق مراسلة

Collocations with 'make':					
make	money	يكسب مال - يجمع ثروة	make	a decision	يتخذ قرار
make	brief notes	يُؤد ملاحظات قصيرة	make	life better	يجعل الحياة أفضل
make	a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	make	a request	يطلب
make	a difference	يُحدث فرقًا / يصنع الفارق	make	a surface	يصنع سطح
make	friends	يُؤد صداقات	make	preparations for	يُجهز
make	sure	يُتأكد / يتحقق / يتحقق	make	notes	يؤد ملاحظات
make	movements	يقوم بحركات	make	friends with	يُصانق / يُصاحب

Collocations with 'take':					
take	a taxi	يأخذ تاكسي	take	a photo	يأخذ صورة
take	a cruise	يقوم برحلة بحرية	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار
take	to prison	يُحبس - يُسجن	take	a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
take	... for granted	يأخذ ... كأمر مُسلم به	take	practice	يتدرب

Other collocations:					
be	different to / from	يكون مختلف عن	increase	pollution	يزيد التلوث
be	not welcome here	غير مُرتبب به هنا	introduce	a law	يُقدم قانون
	right to	يكون مُحق في	join	clubs	يضم نادياً
become	ill	يُمرض	leave	school	يُغيب دراسته
	friends	يصبحون أصدقاء		heavy	تبدو ثقل
break	the law	يخالف القانون	look	like	يبدو كأنه
bring	problems	يسبب مشكلات		right	يبدو على ما يُرام

call	the police	يطلب الشرطة	owe	money to	يدين بالمال لـ
change	your opinion	تُغيّر رأياك	pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
	your understanding	تتحقق من فهمك		a role	يلعب دورًا
check	blood pressure	يقس ضغط الدم	play	a trick on	يخدع
	iron level	يقيس نسبة الحديد في الدم	protect	ecosystem	يحافظ على النظام البيئي
	satnav	يتحقق من التوجيه بالقمع الصناعي	provide	a holiday to	ينظم رحلات إلى
collect	food	يجمع الطعام	reach	the final	يصل للمباراة النهائية
come	home	يعود للبيت	run	the country	يدير البلد
create	jobs for	يوفر وظائف لـ	save	wild animals	يُقيّد الحيوانات البرية
donate	blood	يتبرع بالدم	send	a message to	يُرسل
	money	يتبرع بالمال	solve	a problem	يحل مشكلة
earn	money	يكسب مال	spend	time reading	يقضي الوقت في القراءة
express	ideas	تعبّر عن أفكار	start	university	يبدأ الدراسة الجامعية
face	a problem	يواجه مشكلة		a conversation	يبدأ حوار
fight	the bullies	يقاتل المتنمرين		a new school	ينتقل لمدسة جديدة
find	a solution to	يحد حلًا لـ	stay	safe	يُقي بأمان
	the steps	يتبع الخطوات		in bed	يلزم الفراش
follow	rules	يتبع القواعد	study	online	يلدس عبر الإنترنت
forget	your worries	تسي مخلوقك	tell	a story	يحكي قصة
	lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	try	a hobby	يجرب ممارسة هواية
	the main idea	يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية	win	a prize	يفوز بجائزة
get	a job	يحصل على عمل		a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
	good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	write	a summary	يكتب تلخيصًا
	money	يحصل على مال		a blog	يكتب منشور في ملونة
improve	his health	يُحسّن صحته			
include	information	يضمّن معلومات			

3 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (=Meaning)
a long-term illness	مرض مُزمن
admire	يُعجّب به
admit	يُقرّ به / يعترف به
	a serious illness
	praise / approve of / appreciate / respect
	confess

advert	إعلان	advertisement / ad
amazing	مذهل - رائع جدًا	very good - astonishing - awesome
ancient	قديم / عتيق	very old
app	تطبيق	application
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	giving blood
book	يحجز	reserve
cheat(ed)	يغش	deceive / trick
clear	واضح	obvious / understandable / direct / uncomplicated / explicit
clear	صافي	bright / cloudless
closing	إنهاء - ختام	conclusion / end / ending
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	widespread / usual / ordinary / customary
concerned	مهتم - لديه اهتمام	interested / involved / affected / connected
connection	ارتباط - اتصال	link / relationship / relation
conservation	حماية البيئة	preservation
cool	علي الموضة / جميل / جذاب	fashionable
crowded	مزدحم	packed - congested - full
desire	رغبة - يرغب	wish
donate	يتبرع	give
earn	يكسب - يجني مال	make (money)
endangered	مُعرض للخطر	in danger - threatened
exotic	أجنبي	foreign
exotic	مُدّهش / مُذهل (غير اعتيادي)	unusual / unconventional
famous	مشهور	well-known
generous	كريم - سخّي	giving / open-handed
giant	عملاق - ضخم	gigantic - enormous - huge
grown-ups	الكبار	adults
hate	يكره	loathe / detest
impact	أثر	effect - influence
intelligent	ذكي	clever - brilliant - bright
isolated	بعيد / ناءٍ - مُنعزل	remote - faraway
lock-up	سجن صغير (التخشيبية)	small prison

livestock	الماشية	cattle
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
material	قماش	fabric
miserable	نعيس - يائس	unhappy / depressed
monitor	يراقب / يراقب	track / observe / watch / keep an eye on
nurse(d)	تُعالج - ترمي العرضي	care for / take care of / look after
over the moon	سعيد جداً	very happy
peaceful	هادئ / ذو سكينة	serene - calm - tranquil - quiet
police(d)	بفرض الأمن والاضطاط	control / keep in order / keep under control / regulate
recent	حدث	new / modern / late
relaxing	مُريح	comforting
satnav	الملاحة بالقمر الصناعي	satellite navigation
scam	احتيال - غش	fraud - trick
search for	يبحث عن	look for
spicy	حريف - مثل البهارات	hot
sustainable	دائم - صديق للبيئة	environmentally friendly
trek	رحلة طويلة (سيراً) - سير لمسافة طويلة	hike
unique	فريد - مستر	distinctive - individual - remarkable - special
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	unpaid
walk	طريق للتمتزه سيراً	route / path

4 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (=opposite)
active	كسول - خامل
admire	يستقبح - يستنكر
admit	يُنكر
advantages	عيوب - مساوئ
against	مع
agree(d)	يرفض
amazing	عادي
ancient	حديث - جديد

angry	غاصب	contented / satisfied - pleased	رامس - سعد
avoid	يتجنب	confront	يراه
beautiful	جميل	ugly	فج
boring	مُمل	exciting - interesting	مثير - شيق
borrow	يستعير - يسلف	lend	تُقرض - تُسلف
busy	مشغول	free	أمر - غير مشغول - متفرغ
calm - quiet	هادئ	noisy	ترجع - صاحب
clear	واضح	vague / unclear	غامض
clear	صافي	cloudy	غائم
common	عام - مُشترك - شائع	unusual / rare	غير مألوف - نادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
donate	يتبرع	keep / receive	يحتفظ به / يتسلم
download	تنزيل - يُحمّل (من الانترنت)	upload	الرفع - يرفع (على الانترنت)
dress	يرتدي ملابس	undress - take off	يخلع ملابس
earn(ed)	يكسب - يجني مال	lose	يخسر
effect	أثر	cause / reason	سبب
empty	فارغ	full	ممتلئ
exciting	مثير	boring	مُمل
exotic	أجنبي	native	محلي
exotic	مُدّهل / مُدّهل (غير اعتيادي)	usual - conventional	عادي - تقليدي
fair	عادل	unfair	ظالم - جائر
forget - forgot - forgotten	ينسى	remember(ed)	يتذكر
formal	بلغة رسمية	informal	بلغة دارجة
full-time	دوام كامل	part-time	جزئي - لبعض الوقت
generous	كريم - سخّي - جواد	mean / selfish	بخيل / أناني
hate	يكره	love / like	يحب
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين - مُخادع
intelligence	الذكاء	stupidity	الغباء
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبي

5 Expressions & Idioms التلمييزات والمصطلحات

a boy of four	ولد عمره 4 سنوات	I'm afraid I can't	بمضني أنسي لا أستطيع
a cruise to remember	رحلة بحرية لا أنسى	in a few years	خلال سنوات قليلة
a form of writing	أحد أنواع الكتابة	in a friendly way	بطريقة ودية
a full-time writer	كاتب مُتفرغ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
a mind map	خريطة ذهنية	in groups	في مجموعات
a new way to travel	طريقة جديدة للسفر	in my opinion	من وجهة نظري
a radio phone-in	برنامج إذاعي يشارك فيه الجمهور تليفونيا	in order to	لكي
a sense of responsibility	الإحساس بالمسئولية	in progress	مسير
a serious problem	مشكلة خطيرة	in trouble	في مأزق
a victim of its own beauty	ضحية جمالها	informal English	الإنجليزية الدارجة
address ... by title	يخاطب ... بالأسم	instead of	بدلاً من
address ... by name	يخاطب ... باللقب	its rhythm is too slow	إيقاعه بطيء جداً
all over	في كل أنحاء	keep ... as a souvenir	يحفظ به ... كتذكار
all without	كل ذلك بدون	keep ... safe	يُتقي ... في أمان
an adventure story	قصة مغامرة	key information	المعلومات الرئيسة
an advert for	إعلان عن	kill animals for sport	بعضاد الحيوانات كرياضة
an example of	مثال علي	leave busy city life behind	يتعد عن ضغوط حياة المدينة
angry with	غاضب من	lines that rhyme	سطور شعرية ذات قافية
any more	مرة أخرى	local population	السكان المحليين
around the world	حول العالم	long-term illness	مرض مُزمن
as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي	made him give it back	جعلهُ يُعيدها
as much as	بنفس الكَم	make it easy to say	يجعل من السهل قراتها
as often as I can	كثيراً لأقصى حد ممكن	make life worse for	يجعل الحياة أسوأ لـ
ask someone to your house	يطلب من شخص أن	make us all laugh	يجعلنا جميعاً نضحك
at a certain time	في وقت معين	my job was to	كانت وظيفتي هي أن
at breaktime	في الفسحة	no longer	لم يَعد
at night	في الليل	none of them	لا أحد منهم
at the end of	في نهاية	not ... any more	لن ... مرة أخرى
at this age	في هذا السن	nursing people	تريض الناس

isolated	مُعزول / وحيد	sociable	اجتماعي
kind	طُيب - عطوف	unkind - cruel	سيء / قاسي
light	النور	dark - darkness	ظلام
lock	يقفل	unlock - open	يُفتح
long-term	طويل الأمد	short-term / temporary	قصير الأمد - مؤقت
major	كبير - هام - رئيسي	minor - little - unimportant	صغير - غير هام
miserable	تعيس - بائس	happy - contented	سعيد - راضٍ
online	متصل بالإنترنت - على الإنترنت	offline	غير مُتصل بالإنترنت - ليس على الإنترنت
optional	اختياري	compulsory	إجباري
peaceful	هادئ / ذو سَكينة	noisy - agitated - hostile	صاخب - عدائي
personal	شخصي / خاص	public	عام
plump	مكتنر - ممتلئ قليلاً	thin / slender / skinny	نحيف
popular	ذو شعبية	unpopular	مغمور - غير معروف
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبى
regular	معتاد / مأروف - منتظم	irregular	غير مأروف - غير منتظم
relaxing	مريح	stressful - tiring	مُجهد - مُتعب
right	صواب - صحيح	wrong	خطأ
save(d)	يُفَقِد	endanger(ed)	يُعرِّض للخطر
save(d)	يُخَر / يوفِّر	waste(d)	يُهدِر - يُبدِّد
security	الأمن	danger / insecurity	الخطر / انعدام الأمن
send	يُرسل	receive	يستقبل
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف
sustainable	دائم	unsustainable	غير دائم
unique	فريد - مُستَيز	common - ordinary	عادي - شائع
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	compulsory / obligatory / paid	إجباري - مدفوع الأجر
wild	بري	domestic / tame	أليف / مستأنس
with	ب - ذو	without	بدون

away on holiday	تُسافر في إجازة	on all our flights	على جميع رحلاتنا الجوية
be a role model to	يكون قدوة لـ	on board = aboard	على متن سفينة أو طائرة
be able to	يكون قادر على	on his way home	في طريق عودته للمنزل
be admired for	يُحظى بالإعجاب بسبب	on my own	بمفردي
be arranged in	مُرتَّب على شكل	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
be badly injured	يُصاب بشدة	on the balcony	في البلكونة
be based on guesswork	قائم على الظن	on the computer / smartphone	على الكمبيوتر / الهاتف الذكي
be best known for	مشهور أكثر بـ	on the islands	في الجزر
be connected to	يكون مُصلب أو مُرتبط بـ	on the moon	على القمر
be interested in	يهتم بـ	on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى
be known as	معروف كـ	on the way there	وفي الطريق إلى هناك
be outside playing	يلعب بالخارج	over the moon	سعيد جداً
be praised for	يُتال التناء بسبب	physical abilities	قدرات بدنية
be special about	الشيء المُستَيز في	pieces of advice	نصائح
be stressed about	مضغوط بسبب	quite the other way	على العكس تماماً
be tired of	يُجِل من	radio show	برنامج إذاعي
busy (with) + (inf. + ing)	مشغول بـ	read aloud	يقرأ بصوت عال
by candlelight	على ضوء الشمعة	Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
by day	نهاراً	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
careful about	حرص على	revise for exams	يُراجع للامتحانات
click on the link	يقر على الرابط	riding on boats	ركوب المراكب
close to	لصيق بـ	say unkind things about	يتحدث بسوء عن
compare and contrast	يقارن ويوضح التباين	seem hard to	يبدو صعباً بالنسبة لـ
continue (up) to	يستمر حتى	send Egypt to the World Cup finals	بعده بمصر لنهائيات كأس العالم
daily life	الحياة اليومية	show the reason for	يوضِّح السبب لـ
date published	تاريخ النشر	similar to you	يشبهك
decision making	صناعة القرار - اتخاذ القرار	Social Media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
difference in meaning	فرق في المعنى	stay abroad	يُبقى خارج البلاد
different from / to	مختلف عن	stop it working	يجعله يتوقف عن العمل
disabled children	الأطفال المُعاقمين	stressed words	كلمات يرتفع فيها الصوت
disadvantages to	مساوئ لـ	such a remote place	باله من مكان ناء

early life	مرحلة صكرة من العمر	summarize the main points	يُلخِّص النقاط الرئيسة
easy to remember	من السهل تذكُّرها	take part in	يشارك في
environmentally-friendly	صديق للبيئة	talking to one another	يتحدثون الي بعضهم البعض
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	thanks to	بفضل
except for	فما عدا	that's all for now	هذا كل ما لدي الآن
expert at / on / in	خبير في	the details of the story	تفاصيل القصة
Faculty of Arts	كُفَّة الآداب	the local council	المجلس المحلي
famous for	مشهور بـ	the poor law	قانون الفقراء - القانون السيء
feel differently	لديه شعور مختلف	the reason for	سبب لـ
find advice for	يُجد نصيحة لـ	the space provided	الفراغ المُتاح
find him a good job	يُجد له وظيفة جيدة	the World Blood Donor Day	اليوم العالمي لتبرع بالدم
first of all	قبل كل شيء	there should be	يجب أن يكون هناك
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	there's nothing to do	لا يوجد ما عمله
for example,	على سبيل المثال	this was where...	هذا كان حيث ...
for no money = for free	مجاناً	to conclude/ in conclusion	والخلاصة هي
for the first time	لأول مرة	tourist destinations	أماكن يفتسدها السائح
a piece of writing	عمل كتابي	tourist industry	النشاط السياحي
free time	وقت فراغ	travel books	أدب الرحلات
from all around the world	من كل أرجاء العالم	true for you	صحيحة بالنسبة لك
from different angles	من زوايا مختلفة	wedding party	حفل زفاف
giving blood	التبرع بالدم	what kind of person	أي نوع من الأشخاص
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	when it is light	في النهار
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	where to go	أين يذهب
go travelling	يذهب في رحلة	who else	من أَيْها
good to hear from you	إنه لشيء جيد أن أتواصل معك	with his mouth open	وكان فمه مفتوحاً
happiness maker	صانع السعادة	words that rhyme	كلمات تُفقي مع بعضها البعض
health problem	مشكلة صحية	working together	العمل معاً
Here's some advice	ها هي بعض النصائح	worldwide web	الشبكة الدولية

historic buildings	مباني تاريخية	write in clear simple words	يكتب مستخدماً كلمات بسيطة وواضحة
How about ... ?	ما رأيك في ... ?	young people	الشباب
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر	need help with	يحتاج مساعدة في
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	negative advice	نصيحة سلبية
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	no longer able to	لم يعد قادراً على
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	normal breathing	التنفس الطبيعي
bad for	ضار بـ	old-fashioned	عفا عليه الزمن - عتيق
badly designed	سيء التصميم	on a flat surface	على سطح مستو
banner adverts	لافتات الإعلانات	on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
be addicted to	مُدمن على	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
be aware of	على وعي بـ	on the island	على الجزيرة
be careful about	بحرص على	on the menu	في القائمة
be careful with	بحرص على	on the side of	على جانب
be curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص	on their phones	على هواتفهم المحمولة
be distracted with / by	مُشتت بـ	on top of	فوق
be friendly with	ودود مع	on your profile	على حالتك (صفحتك الشخصية)
be friends with	يُكون صداقات مع	one question at a time	سؤالاً واحداً في كل مرة
be happy about	يسعد بـ	open spaces	أماكن مفتوحة
be interested in	مهتم بـ	personally	شخصياً
be known for	مشهور بـ	plant life	الحياة النباتية
be late for	متأخر على	poor soil	التربة الرديئة
be right to	يكون محقاً في	positive advice	نصيحة إيجابية
be unkind to	بقسو على	possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
be upset with	غضبان من	rather than	بدلاً من - أفضل من
become a pioneer in	يصبح رائداً في	reliable sources	مصادر موثوقة
become known as	يصبح معروفاً كـ	see you later	أراك لاحقاً
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠	severe injury	إصابة شديدة

call for help	يطلب المساعدة	share food from one plate	يأكلون من نفس الطبق
climate change	التغير المناخي	since = ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
come very close to	يقترب جداً من	small changes to	تغييرات صغيرة في
different from / to	مختلف عن	small enough to	صغير بما يكفي لكي
distant past events	أحداث من الماضي البعيد	so far	حتى الآن
due to the fact that	يرجع ذلك إلى أن	So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟
each other	بعضهم البعض	social media behaviour	سلوك على مواقع التواصل
eager to	منهف لـ	solutions to	حلول لـ
easy to understand	يسهل فهمه	sound great	يبدو رائعاً
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ	soup with noodles	حساء المكرونة
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ	South-East Asia	جنوب شرق آسيا
face to face	وجهاً لوجه	spelling mistakes	أخطاء هجائية
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	spend money on	ينفق مالاً على
fact-checking	توثيق الحقائق	spicy food	طعام متبل
far away	بعيد	stay fit	يظل لائقاً بدنياً
farming techniques	أساليب الزراعة	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة	such as	مثل
find it hard	يجد من الصعب أن	sudden death	الموت المفاجئ
find us ready to	يجد أننا مستعدين لـ	sun cream	كريم واقي من الشمس
first aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	sustainable solutions	حلول مُستدامة
food production	إنتاج الغذاء	take an interest in	يُظهر اهتماماً بـ
food products	منتجات غذائية	take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة
for ages	لمدة طويلة	targeted advertising	الإعلان الموجه
for many years to come	لسنوات عديدة قادمة	text messaging	التواصل عن طريق الرسائل النصية
for me	لأجلي	the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية
for most people	بالنسبة لمعظم الناس	the flow of water	تدفق المياه

form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل	the latest software update	أحدث إصدارات البرامج
formal English	اللغة الإنجليزية الرسمية	the main idea	الفكرة الرئيسية
free ... for	... مجاناً لـ	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
get cut down	يتم قطعها	the original text	النص الأصلي
get ill more often	حرض كثيراً	the other day	مؤخراً
get sick from	يصاب بالآحسان من	the reason why	السبب في أن
get something ready	يجهز شيئاً ما	the rest of	بقية
go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	the whole text	النص بالكامل
go past	يعبر	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
good for	مفيد لـ	this is why	لهذا السبب
green space	مساحة خضراء	to conclude	الخلاصة أن ...
growing world	العالم المتزايد	to do with	لها علاقة بـ
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	treat ... badly	يعامل ... بشكل سيء
healthy hearts	قلوب بصحة جيدة	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان
here he / she is	ها هو / هي	upload ... to a website	يرفع ... على موقع
I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر	urban farming	الزراعة في المدن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع أو الصفحة)
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي	use ... positively	يستخدم ... بشكل إيجابي
in a particular situation	في موقف معين	use first and third person	يستخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين
in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن	visit ... for Thanksgiving	يزور ... في عيد الشكر
in an unfriendly tone	بشرة عدائية	welcome to	أهلاً بكم في
in contact with	على اتصال بـ	well-written essay	مقال مكتوب جيداً
in different colours	بألوان مختلفة	What's up?	ماذا لديك؟ / ما الجديد؟
in difficult situations	في المواقف الصعبة	whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا
In fact,	في الحقيقة	with clear meanings	ذو معاني واضحة
in general,	بصفة عامة	with help from	بمساعدة من

in response to	رداً على	worried about	قلق على
in the first place	في المقام الأول	wrong with	الخطأ في

6 Verb + Prepositions

add to	يضيف إلى	hear from	يتلقى أخبار
address ... by	يخاطب ... بـ	hear of	يسمع بـ / يعرف عن
admire ... for	يُعجب بـ ... بسبب	help ... with	يساعد ... في
agree about	يتفق في	know (...) about	يعرف (...) عن
arrange ... in	يُرتب ... على شكل	lean ... on / against	يسند ... على
arrange to	يرتب أن	learn about	يتعلم عن
ask for	يطلب	learn from	يتعلم من
be based in	مقرّه في (مكان)	learn to	يتعلم أن
be based on	مقرّه في (الفكرة)	live in	يعيش في
benefit from	يستفيد من	live with	يعيش مع
blow ... off	يُفكّ - يُفكّر - يفتّر ... من	make ... into	يُحوّل ... إلى
break into	يتحمم	match ... to	يوصل ... بـ
break up	يُفكّ	mix with	يختلط بـ - يتعامل مع
bring ... into / to	يُخبر ... إلى	move to	ينتقل إلى
care for	يهتم بـ	owe ... to	يدين بـ ... لـ ...
check for	يُفحص للوصول لـ	pay back	يرد الدين - يُسدد
choose ... to	يختار ... لـ	play for	يلعب لـ (نادي مثلاً)
choose from	يختار من بين	point at / to / towards	يُشير إلى
click on	ينقر على	praise ... for	يمدح ... بسبب
come from	يأتي من	put ... away	يضع ... جانباً
come out	يخرج - تُضلّر	remove ... from	يُزيل ... من
communicate with	يتصل بـ / يتواصل مع	reply to	يرد على
compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ	rhyme with	يُفقي مع
complete (...) with	يُكْمِل (...) بـ	run away	يهرب
connect ... to	يربط ... بـ	run past	يجري متجاوزاً
connect with	يرتبط بـ	say ... about	يقول ... عن
cycle across	يقود الدراجة عبر		
deal with	يتعامل مع / يواجه		

decide to	يقرر أن	search for	يبحث عن
disagree about	يختلف في	send (...) to	يُرسل (...) إلى / يُهمل (...) ل
disappear from	يختفي من	send away	يُطرده
donate ... for / to	يُضرب ... ل	stay with	يقيم مع
drive ... to	يُرسل ... بالسَّيْرَة إلى	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
encourage ... to	يُشجّع ... لكي	stop at	يتوقف في
escape from	يهرب من	take ... away	يأخذ ... بعيداً
escape to	يهرب إلى	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
find out about	يكشف - يعرف (عن)	talk about	يتحدث عن
focus on	يتركز على	talk to	يتحدث إلى
get to	يصل إلى	teach ... (how) to	يُعلِّم ... كيف
get up	يستيقظ	think of	يفكر في
go away	يبتعد - يسافر	trek across / through	يسير مسافة طويلة عبر
go down	ينحط - ينزل - يُغْرِب الشمس	trek into / in	يسير مسافة طويلة إلى داخل / في
go out	يخرج	turn from ... to	يتحول من ... إلى ...
go past	يمر بـ	work for	يعمل لدي
grow up	يكبر - يتوَعَّر	work in	يعمل في
hack into	يخترق - يُخْرِص	work with	يعمل مع / في
happen to	يحدث لـ	worry about	يقلق على
hear (...) about	يسمع (...) عن	write about	يكتب عن
adapt ... to	يُكَيِّف ... مع	heat ... up	يُشخِّن - يُشخِّن
add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	help with	يساعد في
addict to	يُدمِّن على	increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة
advise ... to / not to	ينصح ... أن / ألا	invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى
agree with	يتفق مع	learn about	يتعلم عن
allow ... to	يدع / يترك - يسمح لـ	learn from	يتعلم من
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	live on	يعيش على / في
argue with	يتجادل مع	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
ask ... for	يطلب ... من	look around	يبحث في المكان المحيط
ask ... to / not to	يطلب من ... أن / ألا	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
belong to	يخص	look for	يبحث عن

care about	يهتم بـ	look forward to + (inf. + ing)	يُنظِّع إلى
catch up with	ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق بـ	lose up to	يفقد ما يقرب من
change ... into	يعبر ... إلى	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... أن / ألا
change to	يتحول إلى	pay ... for	يدفع ثمن
chat to / with	يتحدث مع	pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ
check ... against / with	يراجع ... على	persuade ... to	يقنع ... أن
choose from	يختار من بين	pick up	يتناول - يلتقط
choose to	يختار أن	place ... on	يضع ... على
come / go back	يعود	plan to	يخطط أن
come into	يدخل	press down	يضعف لأسفل
communicate with	يتواصل مع	protect ... from / against	يحمي ... من
connect to	يُدخل على	pull ... out	يرفع - يترج / يخلع
continue (to+ inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في أن	put ... down	يترك
continue to	يستمر في	put up	يضع - يرفع
cut down	يقطع / يجهت - يقلل	refer back to	يشير إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	relate to	يتعلق بـ
decide on	يختار / يحدد	remember to	يتذكر أن
decide to	يقرر أن	remove ... from	يزيل ... من
dig out of	يحفر ليستخرجه من	reply to	يرد على
disagree about	يختلف على	rise up	يرتفع - يهتو
encourage ... to / not to	يُشجّع ... أن / ألا	run off	انطلق
expect ... to	يتوقع من ... أن	seem to	يبدو أن
explain ... to	يشرح ... لـ	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
fall down	يسقط / يقع	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to	يتحدث إلى
fight against	يُكافح / يُقاتل ضد	start with	يبدأ بـ
fill in	يملأ (الاستمارة مثلاً)	stay up	يسهر
		take ... away	يُجِد

Listening Al Azhar tests

١. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الجيزة - القسم العلمى

1. James finished studying his term two days ago. He has too much free time as he is on his mid-year holiday. James decided to visit Egypt because he has good and happy memories there.

٢. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية - القسم العلمى

2. The Red Sea Coast is developing eco-tourism to protect the environment in Egypt. Tourists are taught to preserve the environment and avoid damaging the sea wealth and keeping coral reefs safe.

٣. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الشرقية - القسم الأدبى

3. Egypt is a great country. It has a lot of interesting places. Egypt's capital is Cairo. All people are kind. The formal language in Egypt is Arabic.

٤. الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة بنى سويف - القسم الأدبى

4. Ahmed Zewail was a great and famous Egyptian scientist. He discovered the Femtosecond. All the Egyptians are proud of Dr Zewail.



New
Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

Master
Your Skills

الصف الأول الثانوي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



موقع
التفوق

AltFwok.com



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

1st
Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM

Preface

Dear Colleagues & Students

It's a pleasure to introduce this guide to cope with the latest trend in our educational system which adopts the assessment process that is based on measuring higher thinking skills (comprehension - application - analysis - synthesis - evaluation). This requires implementing new learning and teaching strategies.

This guide aims at helping teachers to :

- Promote student's abilities through learning in an enjoyable, safe and cooperative setting.
- Enforce students' language skills which prepare them for the employment market.
- Foster students' learning skills to pass tests confidently all the academic year around.

Therefore, this guide is considered a comprehensive resource presenting language skills fundamentals which have already been taught in primary and preparatory stages. Besides, it covers all language skills according to curriculum national standards for the secondary stage.

This guide consists of :

- A comprehensive presentation of structures.
- Reading comprehension passages with higher thinking skills questions.
- Pieces of creative writing, writing skills and how to write essays, letters, e-mails, and short stories.

Finally, a part deals with the principles of translation from English into Arabic and vice versa, in addition to useful language expressions.

We hope you find this guide not only beneficial, but interesting as well.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

إِنَّ الدِّينَ أَمْسُوا وَعَمَلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ

اعزائنا المعلمين والطلاب

يسعدنا أن نقدم لحضراتكم هذا الدليل الذي يواكب التطور الذي تشهده العملية التعليمية في السنوات الأخيرة، وما تتميز به من نظام التقويم الذي يهدف إلى قياس مهارات التفكير العليا (الفهم - التطبيق - التحليل - التركيب - التقييم) ومخرجات التعلم. ولتحقيق ذلك، كان لزاماً استخدام طرق تدريس حديثة تعتمد على الفهم والتحليل والاستقصاء وتنمية المهارات الحياتية وليس على أسلوب الحفظ والتلقين.

ويقدم هذا الدليل الإرشادات وطرق التدريس الحديثة للمعلم التي تمكنه من :

- مساعدة الطلاب على تنمية مهاراتهم اللغوية بشكل عملي داخل بيئة تعليمية تتسم بروح التعاون والإيجابية.
- تحفيز الطلاب على التعلم المستمر باستغلال مهارات التعلم الذاتي ومهارات التواصل التي تؤهله لسوق العمل.
- تدريب الطلاب على مختلف أنواع أسئلة مهارات التفكير العليا ليكون دائماً مستعداً لاجتياز الاختبارات بثقة على مدار العام الدراسي بكفاءة.

ويتكون هذا الدليل من عدة أجزاء هي :

- عرض شامل لكل القواعد اللغوية التي تم تدريسها في المرحلة الابتدائية والإعدادية وأيضاً الثانوية.
- فصل كامل يقدم عديد من قطع الفهم وأسئلة تختبر مهارات التفكير العليا.
- فصل كامل يشرح مهارات الكتابة وأنواع الكتابة (المقالات - الخطابات - رسائل البريد الإلكتروني - والقصص القصيرة)
- وأخيراً جزء يتناول مبادئ الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية والعكس بالإضافة إلى تعبيرات لغوية مفيدة.

نأمل أن يكون هذا الدليل ليس فقط مفيداً ولكن أيضاً ممتعاً.

CONTENTS

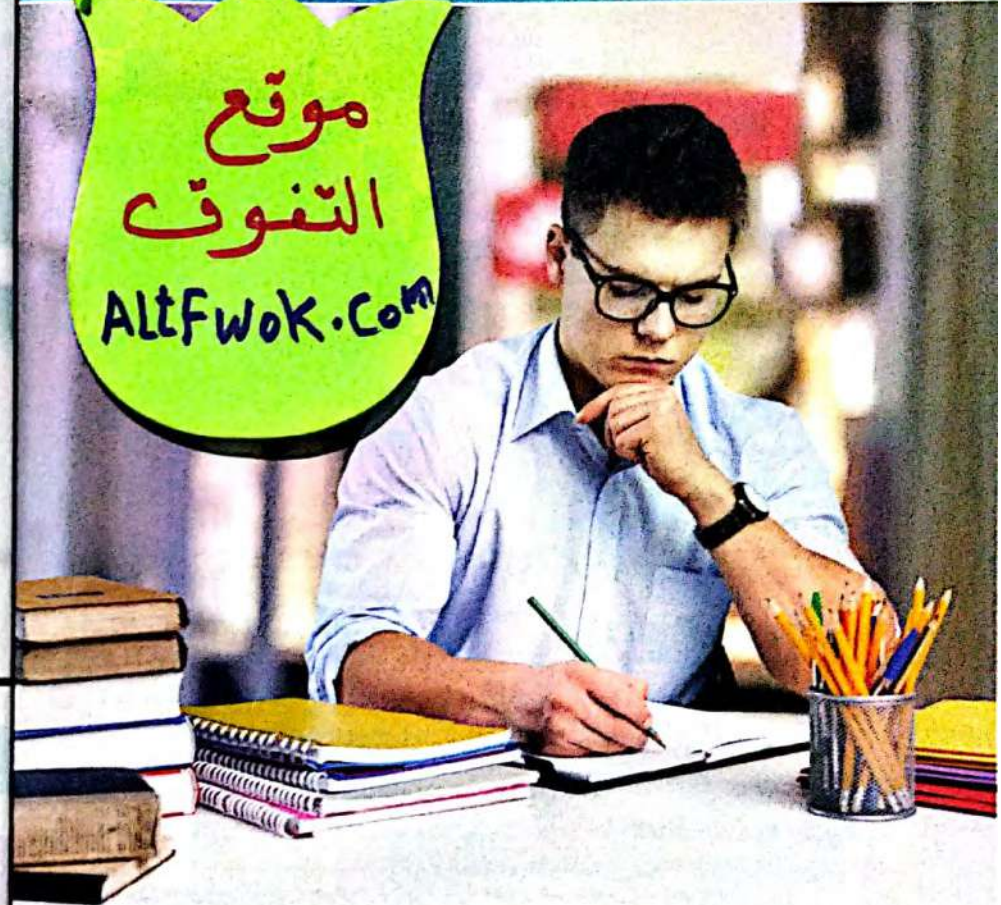
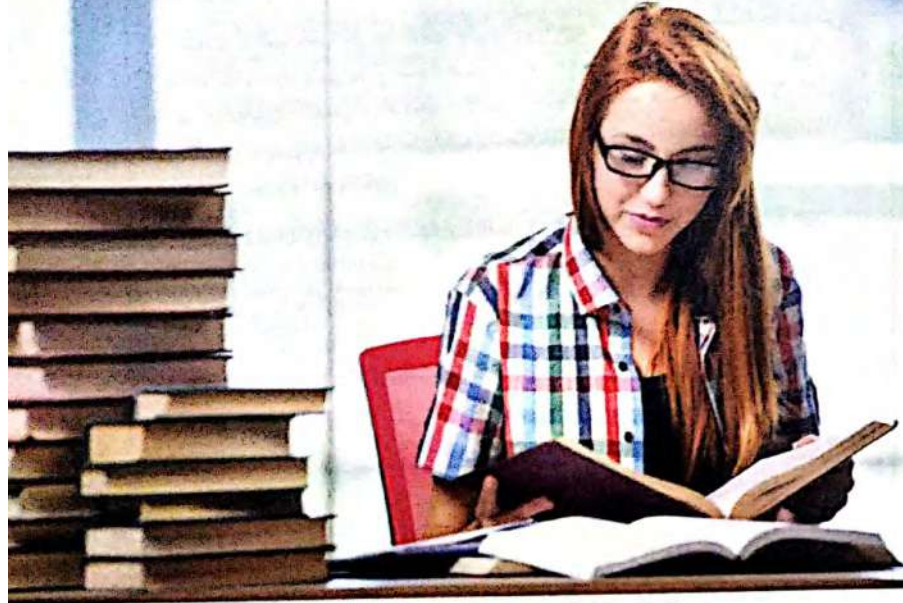
PART

1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

موقع
التفوق
ALTfwok.com



PART

1

Grammar

القواعد اللغوية

PART

2

Skills

المهارات



تنويه

استخدام ملحق المهارات
بصفة مستمرة أثناء العام الدراسي
لتنمى من تنمية مهاراتك اللغوية

- 1- The Structure of the Simple Sentence
- 2- Parts of Speech
- 3- Tenses
- 4- Kinds of Sentences

١. بناء الجملة البسيطة
٢. أقسام الكلام
٣. الأزمنة
٤. الجمل بأنواعها

تنويه

تابع مستواك أولاً
بأول إلكترونياً



1 The Structure of the Simple Sentence بناء الجملة البسيطة

في هذا الجزء ستراجع كيف تكتب الجملة، وهذا الموضوع مهم جداً لكي :

1. تفهم ما يقوله الآخرون (مهارة الاستماع).
2. تُعبر عن أفكارك وانطباعاتك وما تريد (مهارة التحدث).
3. تقرأ وتفهم وتحلل وتستنتج (مهارة القراءة والتفكير النقدي).
4. تُنمي القدرة على التعبير الإبداعي (مهارة الكتابة: مقال - بريد الكتروني - قصة... إلخ).
5. تُتقن نقل الأفكار (المعنى المراد) من لغة لأخرى (فن الترجمة).

أولاً : الجملة المبينة للمعلوم.

- تتكون الجملة الخبرية البسيطة المبينة للمعلوم من :



- المكونات الرئيسية الثلاثة للجملة البسيطة :

1 Subject الفاعل

1 الفاعل هو الذي يقوم بالفعل :

e.g. :- Ali ate a sandwich. - My horse won the race.

2 يمكن أن يكون الفاعل هو موضوع الجملة (يقابله المبتدأ في اللغة العربية) :

e.g. :- Mariam is tall. - Sports make us fit.

3 قد يكون الفاعل اسم إنسان / حيوان / مكان / شيء معنوي غير ملموس ... إلخ :

e.g. :- Rodayna studies medicine at university. (اسم إنسان)

- The cat caught a rat. (اسم حيوان)
- Our house is in Aswan. (اسم مكان)
- Cooperation makes people happy. (اسم معنوي)

4 قد يكون الفاعل اسم مفرد أو جمع [انظر الجزء الخاص بالأسماء (Nouns)] :

e.g. :- My sister is at home. - My sisters are at home.

5 تحل ضمائر الفاعل التالية محل فاعل الجملة :

I - you - he - she - it - we - they

e.g. :- Omar is clever. = He is clever.
 - Nada is beautiful. = She is beautiful.
 - Esraa and Doaa are sisters. = They are sisters.
 - The lion and the tiger are strong. = They are strong.

6 تُستخدم صفات الإشارة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- this هذا / هذه (للمفرد القريب) - these هؤلاء (للمجمع القريب)
 - that ذلك / تلك (للمفرد البعيد) - those أولئك (للمجمع البعيد)

e.g. :- This is my friend. - These are my friends.
 - That was a good present. - Those were good presents.

- وتُستخدم صفات الإشارة أيضاً قبل فاعل الجملة :

e.g. :- This boy got high marks. - These boys got high marks.
 - That dog chased a cat. - Those dogs chased a cat.

7 قد تُستخدم الضمائر غير المحددة التالية كفاعل للجملة :

- someone - somebody - something - somewhere
 - anyone - anybody - anything - anywhere
 - everyone - everybody - everything - everywhere
 - no one - nobody - nothing - nowhere

e.g. :- Someone took my tablet. - No one is at home.
 - Everyone wants you to succeed. - Anything can change your opinion.

8 يمكن استخدام (One) بمعنى (المرء / الفرد) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. :- One must help other people.

9 تُستخدم (it) أحياناً كفاعل وظيفي أو مُبَيِّن في بعض الجمل :

e.g. :- It has been hot today. (It = The weather)
 - It is nine o'clock. (It = The time)
 - It was kind of you to help me. (It = The action itself)

11 تُستخدم (There) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هناك / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ... للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - There is a fish restaurant on the corner.
- There goes Omar on his bike.

12 تُستخدم (Here) كفاعل في بعض الجمل بمعنى (هنا / إلى هنا / ها هو / ها هي / ها هم ... للإشارة إلى الفاعل الأصلي الموجود بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - Here's my camera.
- Here comes Ranya with her husband.

13 وقد يكون الفاعل عبارة اسمية :

e.g. : - The manager of the school wants all students to be clever.
- Some men and women attended the meeting.
- Everyone in our company works hard.

14 يمكن استخدام صفة أو أكثر قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - A tall man welcomed us.
- A small car stopped in front of my shop.
- A clever young man wants to marry my sister.

15 يمكن استخدام الأرقام والأعداد الترتيبية كصفات قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Five students got the full marks in the exam.
- The first computer was very big.

16 يمكن استخدام صفات الملكية التالية قبل الفاعل :

my - your - his - her - its - our - their

e.g. : - Our grandfather built the family house in 1970.

17 يمكن عطف فاعل على فاعل آخر باستخدام الروابط التالية :

لا ... ولا ... neither ... nor / إما ... أو ... or / and / or / not / either ... or / as well as = along with = in addition to إلى ... etc.

e.g. : - Ahmed and Abdu are friends.
- My cousins, as well as my uncle, are having lunch with us tomorrow.

18 يمكن استخدام ضمائر الملكية التالية كفاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

mine - yours - his - hers - ours - theirs

e.g. : - That isn't your bike. Yours is blue. (Yours = Your bike)
- This house is small. Mine is bigger. (Mine = My house)

19 يمكن استخدام الكلمات الأتية كضمائر فاعل في بداية الجملة الثانية :

some / any / a lot / many / much / several / each / every / all / both / one / two / three ... etc.

e.g. : - Not all people liked the film. Some said it was boring.
(Some = Some people)

- I didn't talk to Ayman or Ashraf. Both were very busy.
(Both = Both Ayman and Ashraf).

- You can give students an electronic exam. Each has a tablet.
(Each = Each student)

20 يمكن استخدام تعبيرات الكمية والتجزئة التالية قبل الفاعل :

some / any / no / part / a lot of / lots of / plenty of / many / much / (a) little / (a) few / several / عديد ... etc.

e.g. : - A lot of people visited my uncle in hospital.

21 يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل الرئيسي :

جملة رئيسية + ... + that + جملة رئيسية
جملة رئيسية + ... + that + جملة رئيسية

e.g. : - People say that Omar has a lot of money.
- It is said that Omar has a lot of money.

22 يمكن استخدام بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وبعض التعبيرات الأخرى في بداية الجملة قبل الفاعل :

e.g. : - Every day, I go to the gym.
- On my way to school, I stopped to buy a sandwich.
- Unfortunately, I lost my mobile.

23 وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To + inf.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمعلوم) :

e.g. : - To succeed is the dream of all students.

24 وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (To be + p.p.) كفاعل للجملة (المبنى للمجهول) :

e.g. : - To be thanked makes some people happy.

25 وقد تُستخدم الصيغة (Being + p.p. / adj.) كفاعل للجملة :

e.g. : - Being clever is the dream of everyone. (معلوم)
- Being hurt, he called for a doctor. (مجهول)

2 Verb الفعل

يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل :

e.g. : - Magdi ate a sandwich.

- We will go shopping.

يحدد الفعل زمن الجملة :

Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He plays football.	إثبات	Present Simple	مضارع بسيط
He doesn't play football.	نفي		
He is playing football.	إثبات	Present Cont.	مضارع مستمر
He isn't playing football.	نفي		
He has played football.	إثبات	Present Perfect	مضارع تام
He hasn't played football.	نفي		
He has been playing football.	إثبات	Present Perfect Cont.	مضارع تام مستمر
He hasn't been playing football.	نفي		
He played football.	إثبات	Past Simple	ماضي بسيط
He didn't play football.	نفي		
He was playing football.	إثبات	Past Cont.	ماضي مستمر
He wasn't playing football.	نفي		
He had played football.	إثبات	Past Perfect	ماضي تام
He hadn't played football.	نفي		
He had been playing football.	إثبات	Past Perfect Cont.	ماضي تام مستمر
He hadn't been playing football.	نفي		
He will play football.	إثبات	Future Simple	مستقبل بسيط
He won't play football.	نفي		
He will be playing football.	إثبات	Future Cont.	مستقبل مستمر
He won't be playing football.	نفي		
He will have played football.	إثبات	Future Perfect	مستقبل تام
He won't have played football.	نفي		
He will have been playing football.	إثبات	Future Perfect Cont.	مستقبل تام مستمر
He won't have been playing football.	نفي		

هناك أفعال لازمة (intransitive) بمعنى أنها لا تأخذ مفعول به مثل :

be - go - sleep - smile - cry - look = sound = seem = appear يبدو ... etc.

e.g. : - She smiled when she saw her son.

- He looks happy.

هناك أفعال مُتَعَدِّية (transitive) بمعنى أنها تأخذ مفعول به أو أكثر مثل :

eat - play - visit - choose - take - give - like - see ...etc.

e.g. : - We saw a lion under a tree.

- She gave me some food.

الأفعال الناقصة (Modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

will - would - can - could - may - might - shall - should - must - needn't

e.g. : - Noha can drive a car.

- I will buy this T-shirt.

- You needn't go out now.

- You mustn't smoke here.

الأفعال شبه الناقصة (Semi-modals) التالية يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر :

have to - has to - had to - used to - need to - be going to - be able to

- be supposed to من المفترض أن - be to من المفترض أن ...etc.

e.g. : - Amir has to arrive at school at seven.

- I used to live in the countryside.

قد تحتوي الجملة على أكثر من فعل مساعد :

e.g. : - I have been sleeping for eight hours now.

- I will have finished my university course by next month.

هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) وهناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً له (ing) أو اسم :

e.g. : - She wants to work in a tourist company.

- He suggested having lunch outdoors.

الفاعل المفرد يأخذ فعل مفرد والفاعل الجمع يأخذ فعل جمع :

e.g. : - She is clever.

- They are clever.

- Omar works hard.

- Omar and Karim work hard.

1 هناك أفعال تُسمى أفعال المطاوعة (ergative verbs) وهي الأفعال التي يمكن أن تُستخدم مفعولها كفاعل لها بنفس المعنى، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

bake	بخبز - يحف بفعل الحرارة	melt	يذوب - يذوب
boil	يغلي	move	يُحرَك - يتحرك
break	يُكسر - ينكسر	open	يفتح - يفتح
burst	يُفجر - ينفجر	run	يُدير - يجري
cook	يطبخ - يضع (استوى)	sail	يقود السفينة - تُبحر
drive	يقود - ينطلق - يوصل	shake	يُرجِّح - بهتز / يرتعش
fly	يُطير - يسافر جواً	tear	يُمزق - يتمزق
form	يُكون - يتكون	transform	يُحوّل - يتحول
grow	يزرع - ينمو	turn	يلف - يدور من تلقاء نفسه
heal	يُعالج الجرح - يلتئم	walk	يمشي - يأخذ ... للتمشية

- e.g. : - The hot weather **melted** the ice. (أذاب)
 The ice **melted** in the hot weather. (ذاب)
 - Farmers **grow** a lot of plants. (يزرع)
 A lot of trees **grow** in the forest. (تنمو)
 - I **walked** with my wife by the Nile. (يسير)
 I **walked** my wife by the Nile. (أخذ ... للتمشية)

11 لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل نستخدم ظروف الكيفية، ويأتي الظرف بعد الفعل أو في نهاية الجملة :
 e.g. : - I **walk carefully** in this busy street.
 - I **walk in this busy street carefully**.

12 تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة :
 أحياناً sometimes - غالباً often - عادة usually - دائماً always
 ... etc. - أبداً never - نادراً rarely = scarcely = seldom - بين الحين والآخر occasionally

e.g. : - She **always** gets up early.
 - He **is always** careful.

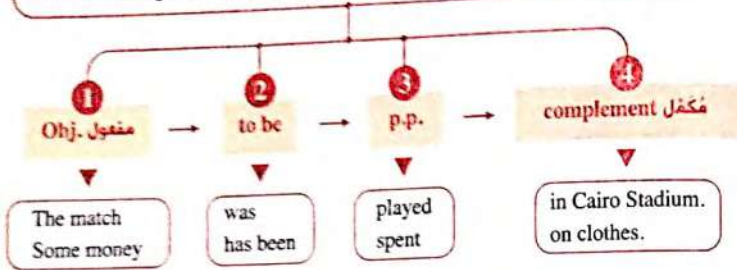
3 Complement (الكلمة الجملة) المُكْمَل

- 1 المقصود بالمُكْمَل هو باقى الجملة الذي يأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل :
 e.g. : - I bought some fruit yesterday.
- 2 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل صفة (أو صفة بعدها اسم) نصف الفاعل وتأتي بعد أفعال الربط مثل :
 be [am, is, are, was, were, has / have been, being, might have been, etc.]
 become = get = grow = turn يصبح - seem = appear = sound = look يبدو -
 يكون ذو مذاق taste - يكون ذو رائحة smell - يشعر / يكون ذو ملمس feel - يبقى / يظل remain
- e.g. : - She is tired. - Amr looks happy.
 - My mother **grew** old. - Sama got angry.
- 3 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل اسم يُعرّف الفاعل أو بصفه :
 e.g. : - Alaa is a doctor. - Alaa is a clever doctor.
- 4 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل مفعول (اسم / صفة يتبعها اسم / عبارة اسمية ... إلخ) :
 e.g. : - I bought a car.
 - I bought a new car.
 - I bought a large new car.
- 5 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل أحد ضمائر المفعول التالية :
 me - him - her - it - you - us - them - one
- e.g. : - An old friend called me.
 - My friends have arrived. I'll welcome them.
- 6 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل جار ومجرور (حرف جر + اسم) :
 e.g. : - Mr Mohammed lives in Aswan.
 - Abdulrahman plans to get married next year.
 - Bassem works as a police officer.
- 7 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل ظرف زمان أو مكان :
 e.g. : - I have always lived here.
 - She arrived yesterday.
- 8 يمكن أن يكون المُكْمَل ظرف كيفية (بدل على طريقة وقوع الفعل) :
 e.g. : - This old man walks slowly.
 - She didn't sleep well.
 - Karim studies hard.

ليس بالضرورة أن يكون هناك مُكْمَل مع الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به):
 e.g. : - The baby has slept.
 - Mr Ashraf didn't arrive.

ثانياً : الجملة المبنيّة للمجهول.

الجملة البسيطة في صيغة المبني للمجهول



Sentence	الجملة	Tense	الزمن
He sells vegetables.	معلوم	Present Simple	مضارع بسيط
Vegetables are sold (by him).	مجهول		
He is selling vegetables.	معلوم	Present Cont.	مضارع مستمر
Vegetables are being sold (by him).	مجهول		
He has sold vegetables.	معلوم	Present Perfect	مضارع تام
Vegetables have been sold (by him).	مجهول		
He sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Simple	ماضي بسيط
Vegetables were sold (by him).	مجهول		
He was selling vegetables.	معلوم	Past Cont.	ماضي مستمر
Vegetables were being sold (by him).	مجهول		
He had sold vegetables.	معلوم	Past Perfect	ماضي تام
Vegetables had been sold (by him).	مجهول		
He will sell vegetables.	معلوم	Future Simple	مستقبل بسيط
Vegetables will be sold (by him).	مجهول		
He will have sold vegetables.	معلوم	Future Perfect	مستقبل تام
Vegetables will have been sold (by him).	مجهول		

2 Parts of Speech اقسام الكلام



- وفيما يلي شرح شامل لكل هذه الأجزاء :

1 Nouns الأسماء

People : man – woman – girl – boy – uncle – Sama – Omar...etc.
Animals : whale – dog – bird – lion – cat – snake ... etc.
Things : plant – tree – rock – sea – love – beauty... etc.
Place : Paris – Asia – Space – Kitchen – Europe – Egypt ... etc

Countable and Uncountable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

A Countable Nouns الأسماء المعدودة

1 الأسماء التي تعد بكون لها مفرد وجمع وهي تجمع بإضافة (s/es/ies) مثل :

- a girl → girls
 - an egg → eggs
 - a bus → buses
 - a library → libraries

2 هناك جمع غير منتظم مثل :

Singular	مفرد	Plural	جمع
child	طفل	children	أطفال
crisis	أزمة	crises	أزمات
datum	معلومة	data	معلومات
foot	قدم	feet	أقدام
goose	وزة	geese	أوز
man	رجل	men	رجال
medium	وسيلة اعلامية	media	وسائل الإعلام
mouse	فأر	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	oases	واحات

ALFwOk.com موقع التفوق

ox	ثور	oxen	ثيران
phenomenon	ظاهرة	phenomena	ظواهر
tooth	سنة	teeth	أسنان
woman	امرأة	women	نساء

2 قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

a / an	- My father bought a car. - I've just seen an accident.
One	- One student got the full marks.
Every / Each	- Every player in the team trains hard. - Each tourist has a camera.
This / That	- This girl is my daughter. - That motorbike belongs to me.

3 قبل الأسماء الجمع يمكن أن نستخدم الآتي :

these / those أولئك / هؤلاء / a few / many كثير / أي / some بعض / two / three / several / عدد / a lot of كثير من / lots of كثير من

e.g. : - I met several friends in the party.
- I have a few books in my bag.
- These boys are my cousins.
- Five nurses are helping the surgeon.

8 Uncountable Nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

1 الأسماء غير المعدودة لا يوجد لها صيغة جمع، وتشمل ما يلي :

1. Liquids السوائل
water - juice - tea - coffee - oil - milk - soup - blood ... etc.
2. Gases الغازات
oxygen - hydrogen - nitrogen - carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون ... etc.
3. Meals الوجبات
breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper

4. School subjects المواد الدراسية

history - mathematics - physics - biology - الفيزياء - etc.

5. Languages اللغات

English - Arabic - French - German ... etc.

6. Different activities الأنشطة المختلفة

reading - smoking - writing - studying - shopping - eating ... etc.

7. Sports الرياضات

football - volleyball - basketball - swimming... etc.

8. Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام

coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime حامض الليمون - stone - sand - soil - sugar - tea - wood ... etc.

9. Natural phenomena الظواهر الطبيعية

lightning البرق - heat - snow - thunder الرعد - light - rain

10. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة

honesty أمانة - hope - beauty - help - love - hatred كراهية
- confidence ثقة - courage شجاعة - experience خبرة - progress تقدم
- evidence دليل - patience الصبر - peace السلام - poverty الفقر etc.

11. Other nouns أسماء أخرى

jewellery مجوهرات - money - laughter ضحك - rubbish
- equipment المعدات - furniture اثاث - cash نقدية - work
- clothing الملابس - electricity - traffic مرور - baggage حقائب
- luggage أمتعة - machinery - news - information - advice - money
- music - bread - cloth.... etc.

ALTfWOK.com موقع التفوق

١ تستخدم هذه الكلمات مع الاسم الذي لا يعد :

a lot of - lots of - much - a little / little - some - any - all - most - none - no - this - that..... etc.

e.g. : - I'd like to have a little juice. (Not : a few juice)
- How much money do you need? (Not : How many)

٢ لا يمكن استخدام (these - those - one - a - an) قبل الاسم غير المحدود :

e.g. : - This equipment is very necessary. (Not : These equipment)
- I bought bread at the baker's. (Not : a bread)

٣ يمكن استخدام (a - an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تُعد إذا سبقها صفة مثل :

e.g. : - I spent an enjoyable time in the countryside.
- He had a good education at Oxford.

2 Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	-----	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
One	one	one's	one's	oneself

1 Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

e.g. : - I bought a car last month. - Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.
- Aya (She) studies hard. - A lion (It) eats meat.
- You came to school late. - Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.
- Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.
- Cats (They) eat fish.
- One can achieve a goal by working hard.

2 Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول

- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتي بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضًا :

e.g. : - Menna helped me with my homework.
- We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.
- My father bought a bike for Leen (her).
- Rahma chased the rat (it). - We won't help you.
- They invited Rodayna and me (us). - She doesn't like goats (them).
- He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).

3 Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية

- صفات الملكية تأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك :

e.g. : - My sister is a teacher. - I think it is his coat.
- Hanan decorated her flat. - An animal cleans its skin.
- Never waste your time. - We sold our old car.
- They renewed their visa. - Birds cooperate to look after their young.

4 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

- ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

e.g. : - The blue bike is mine. - He used my pen and saved his.
- My bag is small, but hers is big. - That house isn't yours; it's ours.
- They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.

- لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ضمير ملكية
e.g. : - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.
2. ضمير ملكية + of + اسم جمع
e.g. : - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية و عند الإشارة إليها بضمير تستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكور وضمير مفرد يعود على المؤنث مربوطين بكلمة (of) :

(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

- e.g. : - Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.
= Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.
= Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

e.g. : - Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.
- الضمير (It) يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفي حالة الجمع تستخدم (They) للفاعل و (them) للمفعول :

- e.g. : - The cat (It) eats fish. - Lions (They) eat meat.
- Amal fed the cat (it). - I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (It) للتعبير عن الزمن والمسافة والطقس :

- e.g. : - It is half past nine. - It is a long way to school.
- It is quite cold today.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية ويأتي بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

- e.g. : - The fox moved its long tail. - The dog ate its food.

- أما (It's) تكون اختصار (It is / It has) :

- It's (It is) a new car. - It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

It + (be) + object pronoun ضمير مفعول

- e.g. : A : Who opened the door ? B : It's me.

It is + subject / object pronoun ضمير مفعول / ضمير فاعل + relative pronoun ضمير وصل

- e.g. : - It's I (me) who opened the door.
- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى «المرء» وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلاً منها :

- e.g. : - One (You) should eat healthy food.

- وفي حالة الملكية نستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلاً منها :

- e.g. : - It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

5 Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

- e.g. : - Ali hurt himself.
- I bought myself a cold drink.
- She saw herself in the mirror.
- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد عندما يأتي بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

- e.g. : - I myself polished the shoes. = I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بفرد» أو «بدون مساعدة» :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

- e.g. : - I went shopping on my own. (alone).
- He lives on his own. (alone / by himself).
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

- يمكن أن تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر on / for / after :

- e.g. : - The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.
- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :

on his own = alone / without help

e.g. : - I live on my own. = I live alone.
- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل على الملكية

e.g. : - I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)
- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون معنى «مع» ولكن تستخدم
ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us) :

e.g. : - I went with herself. (X)

- I went with her. (✓)

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن تستخدم
ضمائر المفعول :

e.g. : - She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.

- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء، يذهبها الإنسان بنفسه) مثل :

approach	يقرب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يحتق	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

e.g. : - He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself (to). = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite /Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We think that those stories are
a. ours b. us c. we d. our
- The film wasn't very good, but I liked the music.
a. itself b. himself c. herself d. it
- These books belong to
a. their b. they c. them d. theirs
- The dog barked on seeing in a mirror.
a. its b. it's c. itself d. it
- A: Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?
B: Yes, we did. But I cut on a piece of glass.
a. mine b. myself c. ourselves d. me
- Make a cup of tea.
a. you b. your c. themselves d. yourself
- A: Is this your sister's bedroom?
B: No, it's my bedroom. is downstairs.
a. Herself b. She c. Hers d. Her
- A: Who repaired your bicycle for you ?
B: Nobody. I repaired it
a. my b. mine c. me d. myself
- We got out of the water and dried
a. us b. we c. ourselves d. themselves
- The girl is feeling faint. Take to hospital.
a. herself b. her c. hers d. yourself
- The door of this room sometimes opens
a. themselves b. by itself c. oneself d. himself
- Are you going to do this exercise?
a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. himself
- My wife and I have just bought a new flat. is near to where
we live now.
a. Its b. We c. Itself d. It

14. Our house is not as modern as
 a. their b. her c. hers d. your
15. Children sometimes hurt when they are playing.
 a. them b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself
16. Your garden is bigger than
 a. we b. us c. ours d. our
17. Did you both hurt?
 a. yourself b. yourselves c. themselves d. herself
18. We wanted to buy the table, but surface was damaged.
 a. itself b. it's c. it d. its
19. Take an umbrella with in case it rains.
 a. yourself b. you c. yours d. your
20. These books aren't They are ours.
 a. theirs b. they c. them d. there's
21. I and dressed in ten minutes.
 a. showered myself b. showered with myself
 c. showered by myself d. showered to myself

3 Verbs الأفعال

في الجزء التالي، يتم شرح الأفعال (verbs) من خلال تقطين رئيسيتين هما :



- تنقسم الأفعال المساعدة إلى ثلاثة أنواع رئيسية :

Part I Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة



Verb to "be"

1 لاحظ تصريف فعل (to be) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p. p.
be	am - is - are	was - were	been

2 لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to be) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I	am / 'm / am not	was / was not / wasn't
He / She / It	is = 's / / is not / isn't	was / was not / wasn't
You / We / They	are = 're / aren't / are not	were / were not / weren't

3 يُستخدم فعل (to be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون / يوجد) :

- e.g. : - I am tired.
 - She is not / isn't clever.
 - They are / They're at school.

4 تُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يكون) بعد (to) :

- e.g. : - She wants to be a doctor.

5 يُستخدم (be) كفعل أساسي أو مساعد بعد الأفعال الناقصة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)

- e.g. : - Omar will be 17 tomorrow. (فعل أساسي)
 - Your eyes must be examined. (فعل مساعد)

ALFFWOK.COM موقع المتفوق

- ٦ يُستخدم كلاً من (am - is - are) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين المضارع المستمر والمبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)
 e.g. : - Rodayna is having lunch now. (مضارع مستمر)
 - The boys are taken to school by their mother. (مضارع بسيط مبني للمجهول)
- ٧ يُستخدم كلاً من (was - were) كأفعال مساعدة لتكوين الماضي المستمر والمبني للمجهول في الماضي البسيط والمستمر : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)
 e.g. : - Sama was watching TV. (ماضي مستمر)
 - A new school was built in our street last year. (ماضي بسيط مبني للمجهول)
- ٨ تُستخدم (being) بعد (am - is - are - was - were) كفعال مساعد ثان لتكوين المضارع المستمر والماضي المستمر المبني للمجهول : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالأزمنة)
 e.g. : - The house is being cleaned. (مضارع مستمر مبني للمجهول)
 - TV was being watched by Sama. (ماضي مستمر مبني للمجهول)
- ٩ تُستخدم (been) في تكوين الأزمنة التامة والمبني للمجهول :
 e.g. : - Omar has been ill recently. (مضارع تام المعلوم)
 - The player had been sent out before scoring any goals. (ماضي تام مبني للمجهول)
- ١٠ تُستخدم الصيغة (being + adj.) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة : (راجع الجزء الخاص بالروابط)
 e.g. : - Because he was tired, he went to bed early.
 = Being tired, he went to bed early.
- ١١ تُستخدم الصيغة (be to + inf.) للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات الرسمية أو إعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات :
 e.g. : - The manager is to meet some important businessmen today.
 - You are to write an essay about tourism.

Verb to "do"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to do) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
do	do - does	did	done

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to do) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	do ≠ do not = don't	did ≠ did not = didn't
He / She / It	does ≠ does not = doesn't	did ≠ did not = didn't

- ٢ يُستخدم فعل (to do) كفعال أساسي بمعنى (يفعل / يقوم بـ) :
 e.g. : - She does / did her homework.
 - I do / did the shopping once a week.
- ٤ يُستخدم كلاً من (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال في المضارع البسيط :
 e.g. : - He does not (doesn't) like fish.
 - Does he like fish ?
 - What does he like ?
 - They do not (don't) go out late at night.
 - Do they go out late at night ?
 - When do they go out ?
- ٥ تُستخدم (did) كفعال مساعد في النفي والسؤال في الماضي البسيط :
 e.g. : - We did not (didn't) see what happened.
 - Did you see what happened ?
 - What did you see ?
- ٦ تُستخدم (do - does - did + inf.) بشكل بلاغي في الجمل المثبتة للتركيد :
 e.g. : - I do know who took the money.
 - You did hear what I said.

Verb to "have"

١ لاحظ تصريف فعل (to have) في الأزمنة المختلفة :

المصدر Inf.	التصريف الأول First Form	التصريف الثاني Second Form	التصريف الثالث p.p.
have	have - has	had	had

٢ لاحظ توزيع تصريفات فعل (to have) مع الفاعل :

الضمير Pronoun	المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I / You / We / They	have = 've ≠ have not = haven't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't
He / She / It	has = 's ≠ has not = hasn't	had = 'd ≠ had not = hadn't

٢ يُستخدم فعل (to have) كفعل أساسي بمعنى (يملك / يتناول / يعاني من... إلخ) :

eg. : - I have / had a headache.
- She has / had a lot of money.

٤ لاحظ أن نفي (have / has) كأفعال أساسية في المضارع البسيط هو (don't / doesn't + have) :

eg. : - He doesn't have meals outdoors. (Not : he hasn't)
- I don't have tea or coffee at night. (Not : I haven't)

٥ لاحظ أن نفي (had) كفعل أساسي في الماضي البسيط هو (didn't + have) :

eg. : - Aya didn't have a nice time. (Not: he hadn't)

٦ يُستخدم كل من (have - has) كأفعال مساعدة في المضارع التام :

eg. : - He has bought a car. = He's bought a car.
- They have won the match. = They've won the match.

٧ تُستخدم (had) كفعل مساعد في الماضي التام :

eg. : - He had taken a rest before going out.

Modals الأفعال الناقصة

١ الأفعال الناقصة هي أفعال لا تؤدي معنى بمفردها وتحتاج إلى فعل في المصدر (inf.) معناها :

eg. : - I can English well. (×) - I can speak English well. (✓)
- You should your lessons hard. (×) - You should study your lessons hard. (✓)

٢ هناك أفعال ناقصة رئيسية هي :

can - could - will - would - may - might - shall - should - must

eg. : - I will go home. - She might be late. - Shall we leave now ?

للمزيد حول استخدام الأفعال الناقصة يمكن الرجوع إلى الأجزاء المخصصة للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام والقدرة :

Semi-modals الأفعال والتعبيرات شبه الناقصة

١ هناك أفعال وتعبيرات شبه ناقصة (Semi-modals) مثل :

• ought to - used to - be going to + inf.

eg. : - You ought to (should) be more careful.
- I used to go to the fields when I was young.
- Sama is going to join university.

• have to (has to / had to / will have to) من اللازم / من الضروري / يجب

eg. : - I had / have / will have to follow the rules.

- Omar has / had/ will have to renew his passport.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have to / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

eg. : - He hasn't to get up early. (×)

- He doesn't have to get up early. (✓)

- She hadn't to go to work yesterday. (×)

- She didn't have to go to work yesterday. (✓)

• have got to / has got to من اللازم / من الضروري

eg. : - I have got to leave now.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has + got to) هو (haven't / hasn't + got to) :

- I don't have got to leave now. (×)

- I haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي من (have / has + got to) هي (had to) :

eg. : - She had got to look after her baby sister. (×)

- She had to look after her baby sister. (✓)

• need / needs / needed to - needn't + inf.

• dare (to) يستطيع / يجرؤ - daren't + inf.

eg. : - You need to see a doctor.

- No one dares (to) argue with this manager.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (daren't / needn't) :

eg. : - I needn't to buy a new tablet. (×)

- I needn't buy a new tablet. (✓)

- I don't need to buy a new tablet. (✓)

• had ('d) better + inf. / would ('d) rather + inf.

eg. : - You'd better find another job. - I'd rather go to the park.

- لاحظ أن نفي (had better - would rather) هو ('d better not - 'd rather not) :

- I wouldn't rather have lunch outdoors. (×)

- I would rather not have lunch outdoors. (✓)

Part II Principal verbs الأفعال الأساسية

Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

1 Verb forms أشكال الأفعال

Inf. المصدر	First Form التصريف الأول	Second Form التصريف الثاني	p.p. التصريف الثالث	Present Participle اسم الفعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being
do	do - does	did	done	doing
have	have - has	had	had	having
visit	visit - visits	visited	visited	visiting
go	go - goes	went	gone	going
try	try - tries	tried	tried	trying

- وفيما يلي شرح تفصيلي لكل هذه الأشكال الخاصة بالفعل :

Infinitive مصدر الفعل

1 يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الناقصة مثل :

can - could - will - would - shall - should - may - might - must - dare - had better - would rather ... + inf.

e.g. : - I can drive a car.
- Omar will arrive soon. - You had better take a rest.

2 يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة المنفية (don't / doesn't / didn't) :

e.g. : - She doesn't like fish.
- He didn't go out.
- I don't know who broke the glass window.

لاحظ أنه يستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد الأفعال المساعدة (do / does / did) في الجمل المثبتة للتأكيد

- Hani does smoke.
- They do know what I mean.
- I did break the vase.

2 يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد حرف الجر (to) لأغراض مختلفة :

e.g. : - I want to buy a car. (verb + to + inf.)
- She studies hard to get high marks. (لكي)
- To work hard is a good thing. (استخدام الصيغة المصدرية كفاعل)

3 يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في الصيغة التالفة :

let / make / see / hear / watch / notice + ضمير مفعول / اسم + inf. ...

e.g. : - My father let us go to the park.
- I saw Ahmed cross the street.

4 يُستخدم مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة لتكون الأمر المثبت :

e.g. : - Open your books, please.
- Study your lessons before going out.

5 يُستخدم مصدر الفعل بعد أداة الاستفهام (Why) لتقديم اقتراحات :

Why + inf. ...? لِمَ ؟ - Why not + inf. ...? لِمَ لا ؟

e.g. : - Why walk when we can go by bus?
- Why not buy a cold drink?

First form التصريف الأول

1 يستخدم التصريف الأول للفعل لتكون زمن المضارع البسيط، و يضاف له (s - es - ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد (He - She - It) :

e.g. : - Ahmed plays tennis in the club every Saturday.
- Ahmed and Karim play tennis.
- A lion eats meat.
- Lions eat meat.

2 لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (be) هي (am / is / are) :

e.g. : - I am busy. - He / She / It is old.
- You / We / They are hungry

3 لاحظ أن صيغة المضارع البسيط من الفعل (have) هي (have / has) :

e.g. : - He / She / It has a big family.
- I / You / We / They have some friends.

Second form (past tense)

يستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل لتكوين زمن الماضي البسيط :

- e.g. : - She **went** to the library with her friends.
- They **watched** the match in the stadium.

Third form (p.p.) التصريف الثالث للمضارع

ويستخدم التصريف الثالث للفعل في الحالات التالية :

١ بعد (have / has / had) لتكوين المضارع التام والماضي التام :

- e.g. : - He **has gone** shopping.
- Mum **had prepared** lunch before we arrived home.

٢ بعد الأفعال المساعدة لتكوين المبني للمجهول :

- e.g. : - The window **was broken** by him.
- The film **is shown** on this channel every month.
- Our flat **will be decorated** soon.
- The old man **has been helped** by his daughter.

٣ يُستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - **Polluted air** causes a lot of diseases.
- I have some **written work** to do.

٤ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الرسل في صيغة المبني للمجهول. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

- e.g. : - The trees **which were grown** by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.
= The trees **grown** by my uncle produce a lot of fruit.
- The criminal **who was arrested** last night is very dangerous.
= The criminal **arrested** last night is very dangerous.

"ing" Form (present participle) اسم الفعل

تُستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

١ تُستخدم كفعل بعد (be / am / is / are / was / were / been) لتكوين الأزمنة المستمرة :

- e.g. : - He **may be sleeping** at home. - He **is watching** TV.
- They **were having** lunch. - She **has been revising** her lessons.

٢ تُستخدم بعد أفعال المكان والحركة مثل (go / lie / come / be busy ...):

- e.g. : - We **went fishing** last Friday.
- I **lay looking** at the stars in the dark sky.

٣ تُستخدم بعد أفعال الإدراك التالية للدلالة على متابعة جزء من الحدث :

see / hear / watch / notice + اسم / ضمير + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - I **heard** someone **crying**.
- He **saw** his friends **playing** in the park.
- I **watched** the rabbits **eating** some carrots.

٤ تُستخدم في الصيغ التالية :

spend / waste + time / money + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - Don't waste your money (on) **buying** clothes!
- I've spent three hours **shopping**.

find / catch + ضمير / اسم + (inf. + ing) ...

- e.g. : - His father **caught** him **playing** in the street.
- They **found** their teachers **sitting** in the garden.

٥ تُستخدم كصفة :

- e.g. : - It was an **interesting** story.
- I sat on the beach to watch the **setting** sun.

٦ تُستخدم كاختصار لعبارة الرسل في صيغة المبني للمعلوم. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

- e.g. : - The dog **which is sleeping** under the tree belongs to our neighbours.
= The dog **sleeping** under the tree belongs to our neighbours.
- The boy **who is wearing** a white shirt is my son.
= The boy **wearing** a white shirt is my son.

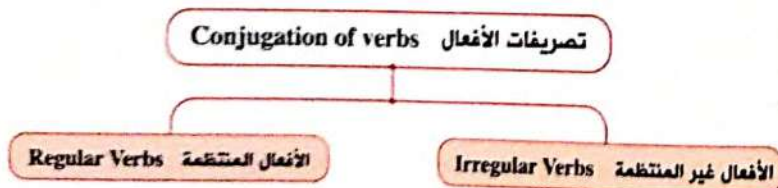
٧ تُستخدم في عبارة اسم الفعل (present participle clause) كبديل للعبارة السببية والزمنية. لاحظ الأمثلة التالية جيداً :

- e.g. : - After he **had put** on his coat, he left the house.
= **Putting** on his coat, he left the house.
- While I **was watching** the match at home, I fell asleep.
= **Watching** the match at home, I fell asleep.
- Because he **felt** very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.
= **Feeling** very hungry, he went to the nearest restaurant.

كيفية تكوين اسم الفعل :

- 1 مع معظم الأفعال، يُضاف المقطع (ing) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :
e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting
- 2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e ساكن الا ينطق) فإنه يحذف قبل إضافة (ing) :
e.g. : - write → writing - make → making
- ويشذ عن ذلك أفعال مثل :
e.g. : - dye → dyeing - singe → singeing
- 3 يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف ساكن واحد مسبق بحرف متحرك مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :
e.g. : - run → running - swim → swimming
- stop → stopping
- 4 يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المتكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :
e.g. : - regret → regretting - begin → beginning
- 5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فإنهما يتحولان إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing) :
e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying
- 6 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ing) :
e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

2 Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال



1 Conjugation of Regular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

- 1 بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل :
e.g. : - visit → visited - watch → watched - land → landed
- 2 إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :
e.g. : - like → liked - change → changed - bake → baked
- 3 يتضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ed) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد :
e.g. : - stop → stopped - ban → banned
- يتضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير المسبق بحرف متحرك واحد مع الكلمات المتكونة من أكثر من مقطع قبل إضافة (ed) بشرط أن يكون المقطع الأخير مشدداً في النطق (stressed) :
e.g. : - deter → deterred - regret → regretted
- 4 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) مسبق بحرف ساكن فإنه يتحول إلى (i) قبل إضافة (ed) :
e.g. : - study → studied - dry → dried - try → tried
- 5 إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل إضافة (ed) :
e.g. : - panic → panicked - picnic → picnicked

2 Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

تنويه: الطالب غير مُلزم بحفظ كل الأفعال غير المنتظمة، لكن هذا التصنيف يُعتبر مُرَجح لكل دارس. يواجه مُعظم الطلاب مشكلة في حفظ تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة (الشاذة)، ولتسهيل حفظ هذه الأفعال، سنقوم بتقسيم هذه الأفعال إلى مجموعات حسب طريقة تصريفها :

1 أفعال لا تتغير عند تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bet (s) يراهن	bet	bet
broadcast (s) يبذع / يبث	broadcast	broadcast
burst (s) ينفجر	burst	burst
cost (s) يُكَلِّف	cost	cost
cut (s) يقطع	cut	cut

hit (s)	ضرب	hit	hit
hurt (s)	أذى / يؤذي	hurt	hurt
let (s)	دع / يسمح	let	let
put (s)	ضع	put	put
quit (s)	ترك / يُترك	quit	quit
read (s)	قرأ	read	read
set (s)	بعد / يضبط	set	set
shut (s)	أغلق	shut	shut

٢ أفعال يتغير فيها حرف واحد : فقط يتحول حرف (d) إلى (t) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bend (s)	بَنَى / ينحن	bent
build (s)	بَنَى	built
lend (s)	أقرض	lent
send (s)	رَاسَلَ	sent
spend (s)	بَقَضَى وقت / ينفق	spent

٣ أفعال يتغير فيها (ay) إلى (aid) في نهاية الكلمة :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
lay (s)	بَعَدَ / تبيض	laid
pay (s)	يُدْفَع (مالاً)	paid
say (s)	يَقُول	said

٤ أفعال يُضاف حرف (t) لنهايتها (يُستثنى الفعل hear) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
deal (s)	تَوَارَعَ / يتعامل	dealt
dream (s)	يَحْلُم	dreamt
hear (s)	يَسْمَع	heard

lean (s)	انميل / يتحنى	leant	leant
leap (s)	يقفز	leapt	leapt
mean (s)	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant

٥ أفعال يتحول فيها (ell) إلى (old) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
sell (s)	بيع	sold
tell (s)	أخبر	told

٦ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (ou) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bind (s)	رَبَطَ	bound
find (s)	وجد	found
grind (s)	نَطَخَنَ / شَحَذَ / بَسَنَ	ground
wind (s)	بَقَعَ / بَتَجَرَجَ	wound

٧ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ee) أو (ea) إلى (e) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bleed (s)	بَنَفَ	bled
feed (s)	طَعَّمَ	fed
flee (s)	بَنَى / يَخْلِي	fled
lead (s)	يَهْدِي / يَهْدِي إِلَى / يَعِش (بِطَرِيقَةِ مُعَيَّنَةٍ)	led
speed (s)	تَسْرَع	sped

موقع التفوق ALTFWOK.com

٨ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (u) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
begin (s) بدأ	began	begun
drink (s) شرب	drank	drunk
shrink (s) انكمش	shrank	shrunk
sing (s) غنى	sang	sung
sink (s) غرق (للأشياء) / غوص	sank	sunk
spring (s) قفز / برز	sprang	sprung
swim (s) سبح	swam	swum

٩ أفعال ينتهي تصريفها به (ought / aught) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bring (s) يجلب / يُحضِر	brought	brought
buy (s) يشتري	bought	bought
fight (s) يقاتل / يواجه	fought	fought
seek (s) يسعى	sought	sought
think (s) يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
catch (s) يسك / يقبض على / يصطاد	caught	caught
teach (es) يُعَلِّم / يُشْرَح	taught	taught

١٠ أفعال بها (ee) يتم فيها حذف حرف (e) مع إضافة حرف (t) لنهاية الفعل ما لم يكن موجودا (تستثنى الفعل feed) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
creep (s) يتسلل / يزحف	crept	crept
feed (s) يُطعم	fed	fed
feel (s) يشعر	felt	felt
keep (s) يحتفظ به / يظل / يربى	kept	kept

kneel (s) ركع على ركبتيه	knelt	knelt
meet (s) يقابل	met	met
sleep (s) ينام	slept	slept
sweep (s) يُكسِّس / يُنْذِف / يُجْرِّ	swept	swept
weep (s) يبكي	wept	wept

١١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير الحرف المتحرك إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، ثم يُضاف إليه (en) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
awake (s) يستيقظ / يوقظ	awoke / awaked	awoken / awaked
break (s) يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
choose (s) يختار	chose	chosen
freeze (s) يتجمد / يُجمد	froze	frozen
speak (s) يتحدث	spoke	spoken
steal (s) يسرق	stole	stolen
wake (s) يستيقظ	woke / waked	woken / waked
weave (s) ينسج	wove	woven

١٢ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير المتحرك (i) إلى (o) لتكوين التصريف الثاني، وينتهي التصريف الثالث به (en) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
arise (s) ينشأ	arose	arisen
drive (s) يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
rise (s) يرتفع / يزداد / تشرق	rose	risen
ride (s) يركب	rode	ridden
write (s) يكتب	wrote	written

١٣ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (eat) إلى (ore) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (orn) لتكوين التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bear (s)	bore	borne / born
swear (s)	swore	sworn
tear (s)	tore	torn
wear (s)	wore	worn

١٤ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (ow) إلى (ew) لتكوين التصريف الثاني ، و إلى (own) لتكوين التصريف الثالث (يُسْتثنى الفعل draw) :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
blow (s)	blew	blown
draw (s)	drew	drawn
grow (s)	grew	grown
know (s)	knew	known
throw (s)	threw	thrown
fly (ies)	flew	flown

١٥ أفعال يتم تصريفها بتغيير (i) إلى (a) أو (u) لتكوين التصريفين الثاني والثالث ، و يتم حذف حرف (e) من نهاية الفعل إن وُجد :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
dig (s)	dug	dug
spin (s)	spun / span	spun
stick (s)	stuck	stuck
sting (s)	stung	stung
strike (s)	struck	struck

swing (s)	بَتَّارَجِعْ	swung	swung
-----------	--------------	-------	-------

١٦ أفعال يتشابه فيها التصريف الأول مع التصريف الثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
become (s)	became	become
come (s)	came	come
run (s)	ran	run

١٧ أفعال يتشابه تصريفها الثاني والثالث :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
babysit (s)	babysat	babysat
hold (s)	held	held
leave (s)	left	left
lose (s)	lost	lost
sit (s)	sat	sat
slide (s)	slid	slid
stand (s)	stood	stood
understand (s)	understood	understood
win (s)	won	won
shoot (s)	shot	shot

١٨ أفعال متنوعة في طريقة تصريفها :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
be (am / is / are)	was / were	been
do (es)	did	done
have / has	had	had
go	went	gone

١٩ أفعال متقاربة في نمط التصريف :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
beat (s) <small>غرب / ضرب</small>	beat	beaten
bite (s) <small>عض / غصم</small>	bite	bitten
hide (s) <small>خفى</small>	hid	hidden
eat (s) <small>أكل</small>	ate	eaten
fall (s) <small>سقط / غم</small>	fell	fallen
forbid (s) <small>منع</small>	forbad / forbade	forbidden
forget (s) <small>نسيت</small>	forgot	forgotten
get (s) <small>حصل على</small>	got	got / gotten
forgive (s) <small>سامح</small>	forgave	forgiven
give (s) <small>عطى</small>	gave	given
see (s) <small>رى</small>	saw	seen
shake (s) <small>هز / رج / صالط</small>	shook	shaken
take (s) <small>أخذ</small>	took	taken

٢٠ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين دون اختلاف في المعنى :

inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P
awake (s) <small>استيقظ</small>	awoke / awaked	awoke / awaked
bear (s) <small>تد / تحمل</small>	bore	borne / born
burn (s) <small>حرق</small>	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
dream (s) <small>حلم</small>	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed
dwell (s) <small>تقرب / سكن</small>	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
forbid (s) <small>منع</small>	forbad / forbade	forbidden
kneel (s) <small>يخضع على</small>	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
lean (s) <small>يتمسك</small>	leant / leaned	leant / leaned
learn (s) <small>تعلم</small>	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light (s) <small>يشعل / سير</small>	lighted / lit	lighted / lit

mow (s) <small>بجر العشب</small>	mowed	mowed / mown
sew (s) <small>يخط</small>	sewed	sewed / sewn
show (s) <small>يعرض</small>	showed	showed / shown
smell (s) <small>يشم</small>	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
sow (s) <small>تزرع</small>	sowed	sowed / sown
speed (s) <small>تسرع</small>	speeded / sped	speeded / sped
spell (s) <small>ينمحي</small>	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spill (s) <small>يسكب</small>	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
spoil (s) <small>تلف</small>	spoilt / spoiled	spoilt / spoiled
swell (s) <small>يتورم</small>	swelled	swelled / swollen
wake (s) <small>يستيقظ</small>	woke / waked	woke / waked

٢١ أفعال يتم تصريفها بطريقتين أو أكثر مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى :

Inf. / Present Simple	Past Simple	P.P.
bid <small>يعرض</small>	bid	bid
bid (s) <small>يأمر / يودع</small>	bade	bidden
dive (s) <small>يقفز إلى الماء برأسه أولاً</small>	dove	dived
dive (s) <small>يعرض سمعات</small>	dived	dived
fit (s) <small>يناسب في الحجم</small>	fit	fit
fit (s) <small>يُعدّل مقاس / يُركب</small>	fitted	fitted
hang (s) <small>يُعلق</small>	hung	hung
hang (s) <small>يعدم / يشنق</small>	hanged / hung	hanged / hung
lay (s) <small>يُعد / يبيض</small>	laid	laid
lie (s) <small>يكذب</small>	lied	lied
lie (s) <small>يقعد / يستلقي</small>	lay	lain
shine (s) <small>يُلمع / ينطق</small>	shone	shone
shine (s) <small>يُسلط الضوء على</small>	shone / shined	shone / shined
shine (s) <small>يُلمع / يندلق</small>	shined	shined

4 Adjectives الصفات

Adjective :

الصفة

- الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم وتأتي غالبًا قبله :
e.g. : - Rodayna bought an **expensive** mobile yesterday.

- I saw a **frightening** animal in the fields.
- يمكن أن تأتي الصفة وبعدها الموصوف أو بدونها بعد فعل verb to be وأفعال أخرى مثل :
(look / seem / appear / taste / feel / sound / smell)

e.g. : - Leen **felt** cold. - Ahmed **looks** happy.
- Mum's food **smells** delicious. - Ali is **clever**.

- الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقًا ولكن تستخدم بعد verb to be وأفعال مثل seem / look / feel (أفعال الحواس):

لا يزال على قيد الحياة / alive / غائب / absent / مشتعل / alight / alone / asleep / zwake / afraid

e.g. : - Roaa feels **afraid** when she is left alone.
- We were **happy** that he was **alive**.

1 Similarity التشابه

- هناك أكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه أو تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي:

الطرف الثاني + **as** + الصفة + **as** + **be** + الطرف الأول
الطرف الثاني + **as** + الاسم من الصفة + **has / have + the same** + الطرف الأول
الاسم من الصفة + **have + the same** + **and** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأول
الاسم من الصفة + **be + of the same** + **and** + الطرف الثاني + **and** + الطرف الأول
الصفة + **be** + الطرف الثاني، الطرف الأول + **Like**

e.g. : - Aya is **as beautiful as** Mariam.
= Aya has the **same beauty as** Mona.
= Aya and Mariam **have the same beauty**.
= Aya and Mariam **are of the same beauty**.
= **Like** Aya, Mariam **is beautiful**.

- لاحظ عند النفي نستخدم (not as/so + صفة + as) :

e.g. : - Nabil is taller than Samy.
= Samy isn't as (so) tall as Nabil.

- لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية :

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
big / small	size	wide	width
old / young	age	long	length
far / near	distance	high / tall	height
strong	strength	heavy / light	weight

e.g. : - This house is as high as yours.
= This house has the same height as yours.
- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.
= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما :

e.g. : - Malak is **taller than** Rodayna.
- A car is **fast**, but a train is **faster**.
- Films are **more exciting than** novels.
- Chicken is **less expensive than** meat.

تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة والطويلة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم :
* تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة :

① بخاف (er) لنهاية الصفة :
e.g. : - quiet → quieter - cheap → cheaper - narrow → narrower
② إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) نضيف في المقارنة (r) فقط :
e.g. : - wide → wider - nice → nicer
- large → larger - simple → simpler

- ٢ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ier) :
- e.g. : - lucky → luckier - healthy → healthier - easy → easier
- ٣ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا جاء قبله حرف متحرك واحد بشرط أن تكون الكلمة مقطع واحد :
- e.g. : - hot → hotter - fat → fatter - thin → thinner
- * تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة :

more / less + adj. + the + than

- e.g. : - more / less expensive than - more / less terrifying than
- more / less exciting than - more / less dangerous than

ملحوظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

- يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفات القصيرة :
- e.g. : - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. = Ali is less strong than Ahmed.
- يمكن استخدام (even / much / a lot / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإعطاء قوة لمعنى الصفة :
- e.g. : - Travelling by train is **much** slower than travelling by plane.
- يمكن استخدام (slightly / a bit / a little...) قبل صفات المقارنة لإضعاف معنى الصفة :
- e.g. : - I had to drive **a bit** faster.
- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في شيء :
- e.g. : - It's become **more and more** difficult to find a flat.
- لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يكون "ضمير فاعل" إذا كان بعده فعل و "ضمير مفعول" في حالة عدم وجود فعل) :
- e.g. : - He is taller **than** I am.
= He is taller **than** me.
- We earn more money **than** they do.
= We earn more money **than** them.
- يمكن استخدام المقارنة للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة (كلما كلما) :
- جملة النتيجة + صفة مقارنة + the + جملة السبب + صفة مقارنة + The
- e.g. : - **The harder** you study, **the higher** marks you get.

3 Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين أكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم (تمييز فرد عن مجموعة) :
- e.g. : - Omar is the **cleverest** student in class.
- The plane is the **fastest** means of transport.
- Football is the **most** exciting sport.
- Fish is the **least** expensive protein source.

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات قصيرة المقطع :

١ توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - old → the **oldest** - strong → the **strongest**
- tall → the **tallest**

٢ إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) (لا ينطق) و قبلها حرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - nice → the **nicest** - wide → the **widest**
- simple → the **simplest**

٣ الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) إلى (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - lazy → the **laziest** - heavy → the **heaviest**
- noisy → the **noisiest**

٤ إذا انتهت الصفة قصيرة المقطع بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوقة بحرف متحرك واحد تضاعف الحرف الأخير مع إضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) في نهاية الصفة :

- e.g. : - big → the **biggest** - thin → the **thinnest**
- hot → the **hottest**

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من صفات طويلة المقطع :

طويلة المقطع. the most / the least + adj.

- e.g. : - dangerous → the **most / the least** dangerous
- interesting → the **most / the least** interesting

ملحوظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

- يمكن استخدام (most) بدون (the) وفي هذه الحالة نسوي في المعنى (very) :

most + adj. (without the) = very

e.g. : - The information I've just heard is **most** important. = very important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الاعداد الترتيبية (first / second / third / fourth...etc)

e.g. : - Cairo is the **first** largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية او (') الملكية قبل الصفة :

e.g. : - The femto-second is Zewail's **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- The femto-second is his **biggest** achievement in Chemistry.

- استخدام (No) بدلاً من أسلوب التفضيل :

باقي الجملة + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل
 طرف المقارنة + **than** + صيغة التفضيل أو المقارنة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

باقي الجملة طرف المقارنة + **as** + **adj.** صفة + "verb to be" + فاعل + No

e.g. : - Omar was the **most** courageous man in the city.

= No man in the city is **more** courageous than Omar.

No man in the city is **as** courageous **as** Omar.

- The Nile is **the longest river**. = No river is **longer than** the Nile.

- Water is the **most** important liquid.

= No liquid is **more** important than water.

- المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام ever - never :

+ فاعل ثاني + التمييز + صيغة تفضيل + "verb to be" + الفاعل الاول
 "have / has" ever + p.p. ...

+ الفاعل الثاني + "have - has" never + p.p. ... + a / an

فاعل اول + like + تمييز + صفة بدون اضافات

- نلاحظ أن الصفة في جملة (ever) في صيغة التفضيل أما الصفة في جملة (never) صفة من الدرجة

الأولى (بدون إضافات) :

e.g. : - Ali is the **cleverest** boy I have ever seen.

= I have never seen a **clever** man like Ali.

- I have never watched a **funny** film like that.

= This is the **funniest** film I have ever seen.

- Zewail is the **most** important person I have ever met.

= I have never met an **important** person like Zewail.

- نلاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which تستخدم عند السؤال للمفاضلة بين شيئين في صفة معينة (نستخدم صفة من الدرجة الثانية) :

e.g. : - Which is faster; the train or the plane ?

- Which is more exciting; the pyramid or the tower ?

- لاحظ أن أداة الاستفهام which يمكن أن تستخدم للمفاضلة بين أكثر من شيئين (صفة من الدرجة الثالثة).

- Which is the **most** expensive car ? - The red car.

Irregular adjectives

صفات غير منتظمة

Adj. / adv.	comparative	superlative
bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther (further) than	the farthest (furthest)
fore	former than	the first
good / well / right	better than	the best
late	latter than / later than	the last / the latest
little	less than	the least
many / much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest
real	more real	the most real

Test Yourself

⊕ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A chair is comfortable than a sofa.

- a. less b. the least c. little d. least

2. This is company in the world.

- a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest

3. English is than any other language.

- a. easy b. easier c. more easy d. the easiest

ALFFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

4. You look much _____ than yesterday.
 a. happy b. happier c. happiest d. the happiest
5. Football is _____ popular game in Egypt.
 a. more b. most c. less d. the most
6. This is _____ picture I've ever seen.
 a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
7. This computer is not _____ expensive as the one that I bought yesterday.
 a. more b. less c. as d. most
8. The _____ tree in the world is in Sweden.
 a. old b. older c. eldest d. oldest
9. This is the _____ test I've ever taken.
 a. hard b. harder c. less hard d. hardest
10. He is not _____ reliable as his friend.
 a. so b. more c. less d. most
11. The food is not nearly so _____ as it was in the past.
 a. good b. better c. worse d. the best
12. Alaa is a _____ doctor than Omar.
 a. good b. better c. best d. the best
13. Water is the _____ expensive of all liquids.
 a. much b. least c. less d. more
14. An elephant is _____ as a tiger.
 a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. not as fast
15. Nobody in our company is _____ Peter.
 a. efficient b. as efficient as
 c. most efficient than d. as efficient
16. It was _____ of her to waste all her money.
 a. more foolish than b. less foolish
 c. foolish d. least foolish
17. Laptops are becoming _____ popular nowadays.
 a. less and more b. more and less
 c. much and more d. more and more
18. Climbing is the _____ dangerous sport in the world.
 a. more b. most c. less d. as
19. Mr Ali has _____ friends than me.
 a. many b. most c. the least d. more

20. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even
 a. pretty b. prettiest c. prettier d. most pretty
21. Today is hotter than yesterday.
 a. least b. little c. less d. most
22. My flat is than yours.
 a. more big b. less big c. bigger d. the biggest
23. I don't read as books as you do.
 a. much b. more c. most d. many

5 Adverb الظرف

- هناك خمسة أنواع من الظروف هي :

Types of adverbs أنواع الظروف

- **Frequency التكرار** - I **often** get up early.
- **Degree الدرجة** - She was **very** happy yesterday.
- **Manner الكيفية** - He ran **quickly**.
- **Place المكان** - She travelled **abroad**.
- **Time الزمان** - He went to the park **yesterday**.

- وفيما يلي شرح مبسط لأنواع الظروف المختلفة :

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

١. تدل ظروف التكرار كما يتضح من اسمها على تكرار الحدث :
 e.g. - I go to Alexandria every summer. - She goes to the cinema once a month.
٢. ظروف التكرار التالية مُشتقة من كلمات زمنية، وتدل على تكرار الحدث كل فترة معينة :
- daily - weekly - monthly - yearly / annually = every (day - week - month - year) = once a (day - week - month - year)

Adverbs of degree

ظروف الدرجة

أهم ظروف الدرجة في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

a bit	قليلًا	nearly	تقريبًا
absolutely	بشكل تطلق	pretty	بالتفصيل / حقًا
almost	تقريبًا	quite	إلى حد ما
completely	تمامًا	rather	إلى حد ما
enough	كاف / بما يكفي	really	بالتفصيل / حقًا
entirely	كُلًّا	scarcely	نادرًا / قليلًا
extremely	لتعبارة	too	جدًا / أكثر من اللازم
hardly	بالكاد	utterly	كُلًّا
just	فحسب / تروا	very	جدًا
little	قليلًا / قليلًا		

تستخدم ظروف الدرجة في الحالات التالية :

- قبل الصفات :

e.g. : - Mr Omar is very tall.
- I'm a bit tired.

- قبل الظروف :

e.g. : - He speaks quite loudly.
- She walks very slowly.

- قبل الأفعال :

e.g. : - Aya has nearly prepared lunch.
- She just smiled and went away.

تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات العادية :

little / a bit - rather / quite - very - really - extremely

e.g. : - The water is very hot. - I'm extremely tired.

تستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية :

absolutely - utterly / entirely - completely

e.g. : - This engine is absolutely excellent.
- The temple is utterly ancient.

e.g. : - We pay the taxes **yearly**.
= We pay the taxes **every year**.
= We pay the taxes **once a year**.

ظروف التكرار التالية تأتي في نهاية أو نهاية الجملة :

every + (عدد) + (day - night - week - month - summer - year ...)

e.g. : - I visit my aunt **every month** = **Every month**, I visit my aunt.
- She calls her mother **every three days**.
= **Every three days**, she calls her mother.

ظروف التكرار التالية تدل على تكرار الحدث عدة محدد من المرات كل فترة زمنية، وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : - **once** / مرة واحدة / **twice** / مرتين / **three times ... + a / an / every** + كلمة زمنية
- I go to the club **twice a week**.
= **Twice a week**, I go to the club.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد (to be) والأفعال المساعدة :

بانتظام regularly - عادة usually / normally - بشكل ثابت constantly - دائمًا always
- بين حين وآخر occasionally - أحيانًا sometimes - غالبًا often / frequently
- مطلقًا never - بالكاد hardly ever - نادرًا rarely / seldom - قليلًا little

e.g. : - I **sometimes** go to the club.
- Tom is **often** late for work.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم ظروف التكرار هذه في بداية أو نهاية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الظرف :

e.g. : - **Sometimes**, I play football.
= I play football **sometimes**.

الظروف التالية تدل على النفي، وعند استخدامها في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل :

فاعل + فعل مساعد + Scarcely / Rarely / Seldom / Hardly / Little / Never

e.g. : - **We never waste our time**.
= **Never do we waste our time**.
- **My mum rarely goes out**.
= **Rarely does my mum go out**.

٥ يمكن أن تُستخدم (really / pretty) مع كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة :

e.g. : - He is really angry / furious.

٦ تُعطي (enough) معنى إيجابى وتُستخدم قبل الاسم أو بعد الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - He has enough money. (enough + noun)

- He is old enough to depend on himself. (adj. + enough)

- She works hard enough to pass the exam. (adv. + enough)

٧ تُعطي (too ... to) معنى سلبى وتُستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف :

e.g. : - The tea is too sweet to drink. (too + adj.)

Adverbs of manner ظروف الكيفية

١ ظرف الكيفية يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل و يجيب عن السؤال بـ (How) :

e.g. : - A : How does Omar walk? B : He walks quickly.

- A : How do they work? B : They work hard.

٢ يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :

e.g. : - Sama walks slowly. - Ali shouted at me angrily.

٣ تأتي الظروف التالية قبل الفعل وليس بعده :

usually – probably – possibly – definitely – surely – certainly

e.g. : - It is probable he will buy a car. = He will probably buy a car.

- He prays as usual. = He usually prays.

٤ يتكون ظرف الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة :

١. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

e.g. : - slow → slowly - quick → quickly

٢. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة تنتهية بحرف (l) :

e.g. : - careful → carefully - beautiful → beautifully

٣. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

e.g. : - possible → possibly - probable → probably

٤. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily) :

e.g. : - easy → easily - happy → happily

٥. الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام : (in a way / manner) :

e.g. : - friendly way – ودود

- cowardly way – جبان

- Bassem is a good swimmer = Bassem swims well.

٦. هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل :

e.g. : - good → well - fast → fast - hard → hard

- late → late - early → early

- He smiled in a fatherly manner (way).

٥. هناك بعض الظروف لها شكلين ومعنيين مختلفين :

deep	بعمق / عميقاً	deeply	بشدة
free	مجاناً	freely	بحرية
hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بالكاد / تقريباً لا
high	عالياً	highly	بدرجة كبيرة
late	متأخراً	lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً
most	الأكثر	mostly	أساساً / في الغالب
near	بقرب	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	prettily	بشكل جميل

e.g. : - The ship sank deep in the ocean.

- I was deeply affected by your advice.

٦. يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :

more أكثر / less أقل + adv. + than

e.g. : - Rodayna draws more beautifully than Ahmed.

- Mr Ayman drives less fast than Mr Ashraf.

Adverbs of place ظروف المكان

١. أهم ظروف المكان في اللغة الإنجليزية هي :

above	فوق / أعلي	eastwards	شرقاً
abroad	خارج البلاد	everywhere	في كل مكان

across	عبر	far	بعيداً
ahead	للأمام	here	هنا
around	حول	homeward	باتجاه البيت
away	بعيداً	in	بالداخل
back	للخلف	indoors	بالداخل
backwards	للخلف	inside	بالداخل
below	أسفل	nearby	قريب / مجاور
between	بين	outside	بالخارج
beyond	وراء / بعد	overseas	خارج البلاد
down	أسفل	there	هناك
downwards	لأسفل	west	في / باتجاه الغرب

٢ تُستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان حدوث الفعل :

e.g. : - We are meeting **here** next October.

٣ توضع ظروف المكان عادة بعد المفعول أو بعد الفعل :

e.g. : - I will wait for them **outside**.

- I will wait **outside** for them.

٤ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الاتجاه :

e.g. : - He went **north** to enjoy the good weather in Alexandria.

٥ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى المسافة :

e.g. : - There's a gym **nearby**.

٦ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى مكان شيء بالنسبة لأشياء أخرى :

e.g. : - The horse is **under** the tree.

٧ قد تُشير ظروف المكان إلى الحركة :

e.g. : - The boat moved **backwards**.

Adverbs of time

ظروف الزمان

١ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

yesterday - tomorrow - today - now - last week - later - etc. فيما بعد

e.g. : - I'll call you **later**. - I'm busy studying **now**.

- يُمكن استخدام هذه الظروف في بداية الجملة للتركيز على معنى الطرف :

e.g. : - **Later**, I'll call you. - **Now**, I'm busy studying.

٢ ظروف الزمان التي تشير إلى وقت وقوع الحدث تأتي غالباً في نهاية الجملة :

e.g. : for + مدة / since + توقيت + مدة + all

- I have been waiting here for ten minutes.

- She has had this mobile since 2017.

٣ تُستخدم (yet) بمعنى (حتى الآن) في نهاية الجملة أو بعد (not) لتدل على شيء لم يحدث بعد

وإن كان يُنتظر حدوثه :

e.g. : - Have they arrived **yet** ? - We haven't decided **yet**.

- A: Have you finished ? - B: Not **yet**.

٤ تُستخدم (still) بمعنى (لا يزال)، وتوضع قبل الفعل الأصلي وبعد الفعل المساعد :

e.g. : - He is **still** waiting for his friends.

- Do you **still** live in Aswan?

- عندما يكون (be) فعلاً أساسياً فإن (still) تُستخدم بعده :

٥ عندما يكون هناك أكثر من ظرف زمان يكون الترتيب كالتالي :

التوقيت + when + التكرار + how often + المدة + how long

e.g. : - I worked for five hours.

- I have worked for five hours **every** day.

- I worked for five hours **every** day last year.

موقع التفوق ALTfwok.com

Test Yourself

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He has no money. He is poor.
 - a. very
 - b. fairly
 - c. quite
 - d. extremely
2. You shouldn't climb the stairs
 - a. careful
 - b. care
 - c. carelessly
 - d. careless
3. My sister is a good student, she studies her lessons
 - a. well
 - b. good
 - c. goodly
 - d. willingly
4. My father ran very and caught a thief.
 - a. fastly
 - b. fast
 - c. fastness
 - d. fasten
5. I sometimes get up and miss the school bus.
 - a. late
 - b. lately
 - c. later
 - d. lateness
6. The team played the match very, so they lost it.
 - a. bad
 - b. badly
 - c. badness
 - d. good
7. This girl behaves
 - a. friendly
 - b. friend
 - c. in a friendly way
 - d. friendliness
8. He couldn't buy the suit because it was expensive.
 - a. rather
 - b. quite
 - c. never
 - d. hardly
9. I had an ordinary childhood.
 - a. quite
 - b. quiet
 - c. quit
 - d. quickly
10. We like our English teacher. He is a good person.
 - a. quite
 - b. never
 - c. lately
 - d. hardly
11. It is raining
 - a. heavy
 - b. heavily
 - c. heaviness
 - d. heavenly
12. Dalia does her work She is efficient.
 - a. good
 - b. well
 - c. proper
 - d. prepare
13. Samy was exhausted when he finished the race.
 - a. utterly
 - b. very
 - c. quite
 - d. rather
14. Bassam doesn't leave his office before he finishes his work. He is quite a worker.
 - a. harder
 - b. hardly
 - c. hardest
 - d. hard

15. Noha was after she had cleaned the house all day. She slept for 12 hours after that.
 - a. absolutely exhausted
 - b. absolutely tired
 - c. very exhausted
 - d. not tired
16. Today, car engines burn petrol more than in the past.
 - a. efficient
 - b. efficiently
 - c. efficiency
 - d. inefficient
17. She's a bad writer. She writes English
 - a. badly
 - b. worse
 - c. worst
 - d. bad
18. She works
 - a. hardly
 - b. more hardly
 - c. hard
 - d. hardness
19. Don't behave to be popular with people.
 - a. rudely
 - b. rude
 - c. rudeness
 - d. rudest
20. She answered the questions
 - a. accurate
 - b. more accurate
 - c. accuracy
 - d. accurately



3 Tenses

الزمن

Part 1 Present Tenses

الجزء الأول : الزمن المضارع

1 The Present Continuous Tense

Formation : التكوين

- تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر من:

- في الجمل المثبتة: Subject + am / is / are + (inf. + ing)

e.g. : - I am running fast.
- Aya and Heba are cooking lunch.

- في الجمل المنفية :

Subject + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + inf. + ing.
e.g. : - Ali is not (isn't) reading a story.
- I am not running fast.
- Aya and Heba are not (aren't) cooking lunch.

• inf. المصدر + ing:

e.g. : - read → reading - visit → visiting

(١) إذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فانه يحذف قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - write → writing - make → making
- ويشذ عن ذلك الفعلين dye / singe :
e.g. : - dye → dyeing - singe → singeing

(٢) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد او اكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الاخير مشدداً في النطق فانه يضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - run → running - begin → beginning
- stop → stopping - regret → regretting
- swim → swimming

(٣) إذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فانهما يتحولان الي (y) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - die → dying - tie → tying

(٤) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ing) :

e.g. : - panic → panicking - picnic → picnicking

- السؤال المبسوود بفعل مساعد معناه هل :

Am / Is / Are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing) ?

e.g. : - Is Ali reading a story ? - Yes, he is . / No, he isn't.
- Are you running fast? - Yes, I am.

- السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word أداة استفهام + am / is / are + subject فاعل + (inf. + ing).... ?

e.g. : - What is Ali doing ?
- Who is running fast ?

- المضارع المستمر في صيغة البنى للمجهول :

Object منفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p.

e.g. : - Ali is reading a story. (active)
- A story is being read by Ali. (passive)
- She is watering the plants. (active)
- The plants are being watered by her. (passive)

Usage : الاستخدام

1 To express actions that are happening now : التعبير عن احدات تقع الآن :
e.g. : - I am revising for my test. - They are watching Tom and Jerry.

2 To express actions that are taking place around the present :
التعبير عن احدات تقع حول الوقت الحاضر وليس بالضرورة الآن :
e.g. : - We are taking exams these days.
- I'm reading a story for Naguib Mahfouz.

3 To express future arrangements :
يعبر عن حدث في المستقبل كامل الترتيبات (الموعد معروف والأطراف المشتركة في الحدث تعلم ذلك) :
e.g. : - Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning.
- They are travelling on Monday.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل :

Key words :

now - at the moment - at present - still ما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out! انتبه etc.

- لاحظ : لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع افعال الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التملك بل يأتي معهم زمن المضارع البسيط مثل :

PART 1

astonish	دهش	hate	يكره	need	يحتاج
see	يرى	believe	يصدق	hear	يسمع
owe	يدين	seem	يبدو	belong	يخص
know	يعرف	own	يمتلك	smell	يشم
concern	يهتم به/يتعلق به	lack	ينقص	possess	يمتلك
suppose	يفترض	consist	يتكون	like	يحب
prefer	يفضل	surprise	يفاجئ	contain	يحتوي على
love	يحب	realize	يدرك	taste	يتذوق
depend	يعتمد	matter	يهم	recognise	يتعرف على
understand	يفهم	deserve	يستحق	mean	يعنى
remember	يتذكر	want	يريد	have	يملك

لا يستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى "يملك" في المضارع المستمر ولكن يضاف له (ing) إذا استخدم بمعنى غير المعنى الأساسي (يملك) :

- e.g. : - I have a shower.
 - I'm having a shower.
 - I'm having my breakfast now.

2 The Present Perfect Continuous زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Formation : التكوين

Subject + have / has + been + inf. + ing

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل على الاستمرار:

since... / for... / for... now / all +

- e.g. : - He has been working there ever since he graduated.
 - It has been raining for three days now.
 - I have been playing football for about ten years.

- لاحظ صيغة النفي:

Subject + hasn't / haven't + been + inf. + ing ...

- e.g. : - They haven't been sleeping all night.
 - Rodayna hasn't been learning English for this long time.

Have / Has + subject + been + inf. + ing ... ?
 - لاحظ صيغتي السؤال:

- e.g. : - Have you been playing tennis for an hour?
 Yes, we have (been playing tennis for an hour).
 - Has Rodayna been learning English for this long time?
 No, she hasn't (been learning English for this long time).

Question word + أداة استفهام + have / has + subject + been + (inf. + ing) ... ?

- e.g. : - How long have you been playing tennis?
 - What has Rodayna been learning for this long time?

Usage : الاستخدام

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن:
 - حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرا حتى الوقت الحاضر:
 e.g. : - He's been training really hard since the last Olympic Games.
 - I have been learning English since I was eight years old.
 - He has been working for them for about two years.
 - حدث تم بانتظام حيث بدأ في الماضي وأستمر حتى الآن:
 e.g. : - For the last few months, I've been playing squash regularly.

- حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي وله اثر على الحاضر (تفسير لموقف في الحاضر):
 A : You look tired. What have you been doing?
 B : I have been serving customers all day.

- يستخدم هذا الزمن مع الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتا طويلا وتدل على الاستمرارية:
 study, teach, learn, read, write, play, run, paint, sit,
 stand, lie, sleep, cook, wait, rain,

- e.g. : - It has been raining since I woke up.
 - يُستخدم المضارع التام وليس المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:
 - عند بناء جملة المضارع التام المستمر للمجهول تتحول إلى المضارع التام:

Object + have / has + been + p.p.

- e.g. : - I have been studying English since I was in primary one. (active)
 - English has been studied (by me) since I was in primary one. (passive)

الجملة بالاعتماد
Kinds of Sentences

A Linking words (Conjunctions)

1 Conjunctions that express contrast
أدوات ربط تدل على التناقض

1 تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض وتضع هذه الروابط صلة الفاعل - فعل ...

although - though - even though - even if - but - yet - however + subject + verb

- e.g. : - Although Sami is upset, he keeps smiling.
- Even if this car is expensive, I am going to buy it.
- Ali was born in London, yet he can't speak English well.
- It is hot. However, I won't turn the fan on.

1 تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على التناقض. وتضع هذه الروابط (noun or gerund)

In spite of - Despite - Regardless of + (gerund or noun)

- e.g. : - In spite of her old age, she isn't married yet.
- Regardless of his wealth, he isn't satisfied with his life.
- Despite being wealthy, he isn't satisfied with his life.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (Whatever, However) في بداية الجملة كالتالي :

However + ظرف / صفة + فاعل + فعل + ...

- e.g. : - However tall he is, he can't play basketball.
- However hard he works, he doesn't get a promotion.

Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل + ...

- e.g. : - Whatever the wealth he has, he is sad.
- لاحظ أنه يمكن التعبير عن التناقض باستخدام (as) كالتالي :

as + فاعل + فعل + صفة / ظرف

- e.g. : - Short as he is, he can jump so high.
- Well as he plays, he doesn't win the match.

In spite of / Despite + the fact that + subject + فعل + verb + ...

- e.g. : - Despite the fact that he is ill, he can work hard.

2 Conjunctions that express cause
روابط تدل على السبب

1 للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويضعها صلة (فاعل + فعل + ...) :

(because - as - since) + subject + verb

- e.g. : - She won the competition because she worked hard.

Because
As
Since

because
as
since

- Soha has a heart problem, she can't do sport.

1 للتعبير عن السبب تستخدم الروابط التالية ويضعها (noun أو gerund)

because of - due to - owing to - on account of - thanks to - through - for + noun / (inf. + ing)

- e.g. : - My grandpa died due to a heart attack.
- Owing to his intelligence, he can do any difficult sum.
- Because of being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (Being + adj) بمعنى (كونه / كونها / كونهم) للتعبير عن السبب :

- e.g. : - Being ill, he went to hospital.

- لاحظ أن هذه التعبيرات يمكن أن تأتي بعدها جملة كاملة :

Because of
Owing to
Due to
Thanks to
On account of

the fact that + subject + verb

- e.g. : - The teacher punished him because of being rude / because of the fact that he was rude.

ALTFWOK.COM
 موقع التمرين

3 Conjunctions that express result روابط تدل على النتيجة

تستخدم الروابط التالية لتدل على النتيجة :
so - that is why - therefore - consequently - As a result of - Hence - thus

e.g. : - He was wet so he had a severe cold.
- Nada was born with a phobia of dogs therefore she can't stand seeing a dog in the street.

كذلك يمكن استخدام جملة
so (adj. / adv.) that
such (adj. + noun) that
لتعبر عن النتيجة :

e.g. : - The book was so successful that it was sold like sweet.
- It was such a successful book that it was sold like sweet.

4 Conjunctions that express time روابط زمنية تدل على الزمن / الوقت

تستخدم الروابط الزمنية التالية لتدل على علاقة زمنية بين حدثين ويأتي بعدها جملة افعل - فعلا :

When - While - As (Just as) - After - Before
- By the time - till - until - As soon as

e.g. : - While it was raining, I fell down.
- After the train had left, Sally arrived at the station.
- By the time he got the prize, he had expected it.
- She didn't do the shopping till she had had her salary.
- We won't leave home until we have permission.
- As soon as Ali arrives, we will leave.

- لاحظ العلاقة بين الحدثين في الجمل السابقة.

- لاحظ أنه عند حذف الفاعل يستخدم (inf. + ing) بعد بعض هذه الروابط :

e.g. : - While raining, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام (During) بدلاً من (While) وتبعها (noun) :

e.g. : - I fell asleep during the film.

- لاحظ أنه تستخدم (On) بمعنى (When) وتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun).

e.g. : - When she got the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On getting the prize, she felt extremely excited.

- On his arrival, we started the party.

e.g. : - When reading the new novel written by Tom, he felt shocked.

5 Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

Present Simple → Present Simple
• If زمن المضارع البسيط ، زمن المضارع البسيط (Zero conditional)

e.g. : - If you put wood in water, it floats.

Present Simple → will + inf.
• If زمن المضارع البسيط ، زمن المستقبل البسيط (First conditional)

e.g. : - If I remember her address, I will tell you.

Past Simple → would + inf. / could / might + inf.
• If زمن الماضي البسيط (Second conditional)

e.g. : If I lost Ahmed's CD, I would buy him another one.

Past perfect → would have + p.p. / could / might + have + p.p.
• If زمن الماضي التام (Third conditional)

e.g. : If I had been more careful, I wouldn't have lost my book.

- يمكن استخدام "Were" مكان "If" في الحالة الثانية :

- If she were a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.

Were she a tour guide, she would tell him about the monuments.

- If he played well, he would win the game.

Were he to play well, he would win the game.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) مكان (If) في الاثبات ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

e.g. : If Ali worked hard, he wouldn't be fired.

In case of working hard, Ali wouldn't be fired.

- يمكن استخدام (But for / Without) مكان (If) في النفي أو بدلاً من (Unless) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو (int. + ing) :

e.g. : - If Samia didn't eat vegetables, she wouldn't be healthy.
Without eating vegetables, Samia wouldn't be healthy.

6 Conjunctions that express purpose روابط تعبير عن الغرض

1 Subject + present → so that
in order that
in the hope that من أجل / لكي
+ فاعل + can / will / may + inf.
e.g. : - We save money in the hope that we will buy a car.

2 Subject + past → so that
in order that
in the hope that + فاعل + could / would / might + inf.
e.g. : - Ali went to the market so that he could buy some vegetables.

3 Subject + verb + to / so as to / in order to لكي + inf. المصدر
e.g. : - She went there in order to enjoy the fine weather.
- I study hard to reach my goal.

4 Subject + verb + not to / in order not to / so as not to + inf. لكي لا
e.g. : - I go to bed early in order not to be late for school.

5 Subject + verb + in the hope of + inf. + ing
e.g. : - I went home quickly in the hope of laying with my children before they slept.

6 Subject + verb + lest أن خشية + فاعل + inf. / should + inf.
e.g. : - She turned away from the window lest any one see / should see her.

7 Conjunctions that express addition روابط العطف والإضافة

1 and تُستخدم "and" لربط جملتين بإضافة شيء إلى شيء آخر (تربط بين جملتين)
e.g. : - We played tennis and went home,
- Ahmed is studying and Rodayna is cooking.

2 Besides + noun or (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - Besides doing homework, she helped her mother.
- She helped her mother besides doing homework.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك (جملة) : Besides that + subject + فاعل + inf.
e.g. : - She did her homework. Besides that she helped her mother.

3 in addition to + noun / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - In addition to doing homework, she helped her mother.
- She helped her mother in addition to doing homework.

4 In addition + جملة بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- نستخدم in addition في أول الجملة أو في وسطها :
e.g. : - In addition she did homework, she helped her mother.
- She did homework. In addition, she helped her mother.

5 As well as + (inf. + ing). إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد بالإضافة إلى

e.g. : - We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
- As well as going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- إذا كان الفاعلان مختلفين بالجملتين فإن الفعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى في حالة الربط بـ as well as كالتالي :

فعل يتبع فاعل الجملة الأولى ... + فاعل ثاني + as well as + فاعل أول

e.g. : - I as well as Ali have a car.
- Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.

6 not only but also (as well) ليس هنا فقط ولكن أيضًا

e.g. : - She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
- She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

- لاحظ : عند استخدام Not only في بداية الجملة نستخدم الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل :
e.g. : - Not only did she arrive late, but she also forgot her books.

ALFFWOK.COM موقع التفوق

Both ... and كلا من

e.g. : - Mr Ahmed is a doctor. His wife is a doctor.

- Both Mr Ahmed and his wife are doctors.

- لاحظ : عند الربط به both ... and يكون الفعل في حالة الجمع

- يأتي بعد "Both of" ضمير مفعول جمع (you, us, them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو مفعول للجملة

e.g. : - Both of the girls are polite.

- My aunt visited both of us yesterday.

Neither ... nor لا ... ولا

- تُستخدم neither ... nor لربط جملتين في حالة النفي

e.g. : - Rodayna isn't at home. Her brother isn't at home.

- Neither Rodayna nor her brother is at home.

- لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني كالآتي :

e.g. : - Malak isn't lazy. Her sisters aren't lazy.

- Neither Malak nor her sisters are lazy.

- عند استخدام Neither في أول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل

e.g. : - I neither watched nor tried to watch the film.

- Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

Test Yourself

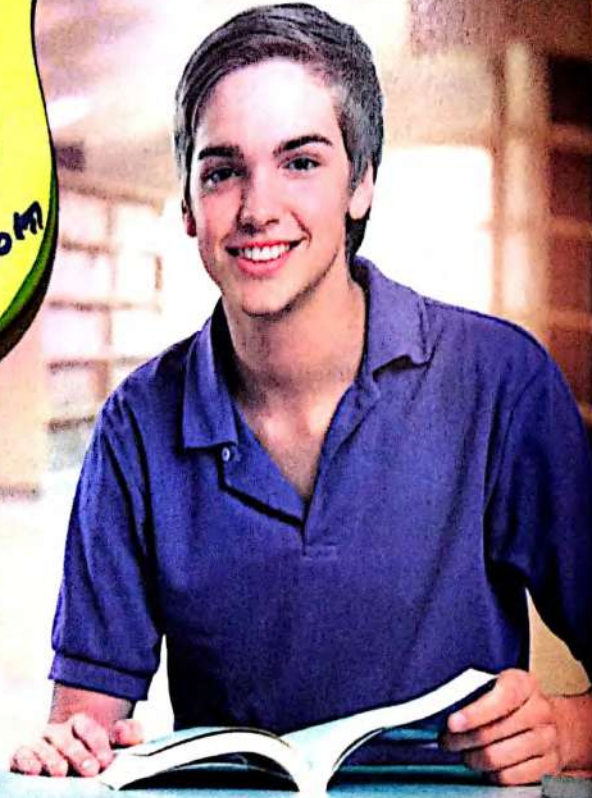
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.
a. Although b. If c. Because d. While
- They were accused of stealing money they were innocent.
a. despite b. although c. in spite of d. as
- He failed the exam his intelligence.
a. although b. however c. despite d. even though
- Cheap the car was, I refused to buy it.
a. however b. despite c. though d. as

- They couldn't continue the race the bad storm.
a. owing to b. because c. since d. as
- He'd like to join the sports club he can get fit.
a. so as to b. as c. so that d. in order
- We visited Ahmed yesterday congratulate him on his success.
a. so that b. in order to c. so as d. because
- did he get full marks but he was chosen as the ideal student as well.
a. As well as b. Not only c. Beside d. In addition to
- he was in debt, we decided to help him.
a. Since b. Because of c. Owing to d. In spite of
- cleaning the house, she did the shopping.
a. In addition b. As well as c. However d. Also
- you say, I'll never believe you.
a. Despite b. However c. Whatever d. In spite
- swimming makes me fit, I don't like it.
a. Although b. Despite c. In spite d. Because
- I, as well as my friend, to leave at once.
a. am b. is c. are d. were
- Not only my brothers but also my sister going to Alexandria.
a. are b. is c. were d. have been
- Neither the library nor the bookshops that book.
a. has b. have c. is having d. are having



موقع
التفوق
ALTFwok.com



- 1- Reading Skill
- 2- Writing Skill
- 3- Translation

١. مهارة القراءة
٢. مهارة الكتابة
٣. الترجمة

تأنيبه

تابع مستواك أولاً
بأول إلكترونياً



1

Reading Skill

EL-MONASSER Reading Skill

مهارة القراءة

How to answer a comprehension :

- * كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم :
- قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة (تبدأ بأدوات استفهام) :
- لا بد أن تقيس أسئلة قطعة الفهم المهارات التالية :

1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Topic الموضوع

- The topic / main idea of the passage is
- = The text is mainly about
- موضوع النص هو / الفكرة الرئيسية للنص هي
- = What is the topic / main idea of the passage?
- = ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟
- Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?
- أي من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص؟

Source المصدر

- This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from
- هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من

Title العنوان

- Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?
- أي مما يلي يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

Reference

- The underlined word / pronoun refers to
- الكلمة / الضمير الذي تحته خط يشير إلى

2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تخمين معاني مفردة لغوية في النص
وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Synonym المرادف / المصنوف

- In line the word is closest in meaning to
- في سطر رقم ، كلمة أقرب ما يكون في المعنى لـ
- The underlined word gives the meaning of
- الكلمة التي تحتها خط تعطي معنى
- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to ?
- أي مما يلي مرادف في المعنى لـ ؟
- The word in the passage gives the synonym of
- كلمة في النص تعطي مرادف

Antonym التضاد / العكس

- In the paragraph, the word is the antonym of
- في الفقرة رقم ، كلمة مضاد لـ
- The word in the passage gives the opposite of
- كلمة في النص تعطي عكس
- Which of the following gives the antonym of ?
- أي مما يلي مضاد في المعنى لـ ؟
- The word has two meanings in the passage. Explain.
- كلمة لها معنيين في النص. وضح

3 Understanding details and extracting information

EL PROFESSOR Reading Skill

فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

Yes / No questions

Wh-questions

- أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد

- أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

- أدوات وتعابير استفهامية هامة :

about whom	عن من	since when	منذ متى
for how long	لكم من الوقت	to what extent	إلى أي مدى
for whom	لأجل من	to whom	إلى من
from where	من أين	what	ما / ماذا
how	كيف	what ... for = for what	لماذا
how come	لماذا	what colour	ما لون
how far	كم بعد / لأى مدى	what size	ما حجم
how high	كم ارتفاع	what time	ما وقت
how long	كم طول المدة / المسافة	when	متى
how many	كم عدد	where	أين
how many times	كم مرة	where ... to	إلى أين
how much	كم كمية / كم ثمن	which	أي
how often	كم مرة	who	من (فاعل أو متعول غائب)
how old	كم عمر	whom	من (متعول غائب)
how tall	كم طول	whose	لن / ملك من
in / at which	في أي	why	لماذا
in what way	بأي طريقة	with whom	مع من

ونماذج أخرى مثل :

True / Correct صحیح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا
- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about ?
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ صحيحاً تماماً ؟

False / incorrect خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT
- حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي خطأ ما عدا
- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about ?
- حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعدُّ غير صحيح تماماً ؟

4 مهارة التفكير النقدي Critical Thinking Skill

عن أسئلة التفكير النقدي المرتبطة بقطع الفهم :

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأي / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لا بد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدي كما يلي :
١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال. * مستقنة أو عقلانية * صححة عن الناحية التعبيرية.

- نماذج من أسئلة التفكير النقدي :

1 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على الرأي الشخصي للطلاب بخصوص الكاتب أو الأفكار الموجودة بالنص مثل :

- Do you think this passage was written by a young man or an old person? What showed this to you?
- هل تظن أن كاتب هذا النص شاب أم شخص كبير في السن؟ ما الذي أوضح لك بذلك؟
- What job do you think the writer of this passage is? How do you know?
- في رأيك، ما وظيفة كاتب هذا النص؟ كيف تعرف ذلك؟

Reading Skill

1 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على قياس القدرة على التعبير عن اتفاق أو اختلاف مع ما ورد في النص مع ذكر السبب :

Do you agree with the ideas the writer has introduced / raised? Why / Why not?

- هل تتفق مع الأفكار التي طرحها الكاتب؟ لم / لم لا ؟
- Does the writer's idea make sense to you? Why / Why not?
- هل فكرة الكاتب مفهومة لديك؟ لم / لم لا ؟

2 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على طلب أمثلة من عند الطالب لإثبات صحة أو خطأ ما ورد بالنص :

What do you think of what the writer has said? Give examples of your own that can prove / disprove that.

- ما رأيك فيما قاله الكاتب؟ اذكر أمثلة من عندك تثبت صحة أو خطأ ذلك.
- How would you put into your own words?

كيف يمكنك صياغة بأسلوبك؟

What do you think would be an example of ?

ماذا تعتقد أنه مثالاً لـ ؟

= Give an example of = Illustrate

اذكر مثالاً لـ / وضح

3 تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على أن يفترض الطالب أنه في موقف معين وكيف سيكون رد فعله :

If you were the writer, would you have the same point of view? Give your reason(s).

لو كنت مكان الكاتب، هل كنت ستبني نفس الرأي؟ اذكر السبب / الأسباب.

What would you (do) if you were in the writer's position? Explain why.
- ما الذي كنت (ستفعله) لو أنك في مكان الكاتب؟ وضح السبب.

If hadn't, what do you think would have happened?
- لو لم يكن ، ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث ؟

٥) تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تقييم عرض الكاتب للموضوع وهل هو مناسب أم لا :

• Has the writer succeeded in making his ideas clear? Explain your opinion in detail.

- هل نجح الكاتب في توضيح أفكاره؟ وضع وجهة نظرك بالتفصيل.

• Is the writer's style suitable for the topic? How did he develop his ideas?

- هل أسلوب الكاتب مناسب للموضوع؟ كيف طوّر أفكاره؟

٦) تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على تخيل ردود أفعال فئات معينة من الناس تجاه الأفكار الواردة بالنص :

• How do you think poor people / patients would view these? Illustrate.

- في رأيك، كيف سيكون رأى الفقراء / المرضى تجاه ذلك؟ وضع.

• How would people who differ in age or gender react to?

- كيف سيكون رد فعل الناس الذين يختلفون في العمر أو الجنس تجاه؟

٧) تركز بعض أسئلة التفكير النقدي على التعبير عن المغزى أو الدروس المستفادة أو القيم الموجودة بالنص :

• How can you make use of (benefit from)?

- كيف يمكنك أن تستفيد من؟

• How could be put into practice?

- كيف يمكن تطبيق؟

• What is the moral of the story?

- ما المغزى الأخلاقي للقصة؟

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Vocabulary used in Reading comprehension questions :

مفردات شائعة الاستخدام في الأسئلة المرتبطة بخطط الفهم

- لا بد من مراجعة المفردات التالية، فستساعدك على فهم الأسئلة الواردة على نص القراءة :

abbreviation	اختصار	lead to	يؤدي إلى
according to	طبقاً لـ	lesson	درس
advantages	مزايا	line	سطر
analyse	يحلل	main idea	فكرة رئيسية
analysis	تحليل	make a comment	يعلق
antonym	مضاد / عكس	make clear	يوضح
apply to	ينطبق على	meaning	معنى
article	مقال	mention	يذكر
author	مؤلف	merits = advantages	مزايا
back with evidence	يدعم بالدليل	moral	مغزى أخلاقي
based on	قائم على	morality	قيم أخلاقية
be against	يعارض	opinion	رأى
be for	يؤيد	opposite	عكس
bold	بارز	other than	بخلاف / غير ذلك
case	قضية	paragraph	فقرة
choice	اختيار	paraphrase	بعد صياغة
claim	يدعى / يزعم	passage	قطعة القراءة
classification	تصنيف	perspective	منظور
classify	يُصنّف	point of view	رأى / وجهة نظر
comment	يعلق / تعليق	practical	عملي

core	جوهر / لب	predict	يتنبأ
demerits = disadvantages	عيوب	principle	مبدأ
discuss	ناقش	pros and cons	مزايا و عيوب
effect	أثر / تأثير	quality	سمة / ميزة
equal	متساوي	rather than	بدلاً من
equivalent	مرادف	reject	يعارض / يرفض
essay	مقال	result in	يؤدي إلى
essence	جوهر / لب	short for	اختصار لـ
example	مثال	simplify	يُبسِّط
explain	شرح / يفسر	state	يذكر
express	يعبر عن	summarise	يُلخِّص
extra	إضافي / آخر	support	يدعم
impact	انطباع / أثر	synonym	مرادف
impression	انطباع / تأثير	underlined	تحت خط
introduce	يُطرح / يقدم	value	قيمة
		writer	كاتب

Read and learn

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

All the different plants and animals in a natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other and with their non-living surrounding. An example of a natural community is woodland, and woodland is usually dominated by a particular species but there are also many other plants.

ALTfWok.com موقع التفوق

The plants of a community are the producers : they use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant eating animals (herbivores) which are in turn eaten by the flesh-eating animals (carnivores). Thus, plants produce the basic food supply for all animals of the community. The animals themselves are the consumers, and are either herbivores or carnivores in a woodland community.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice, and snails, and insects, such as aphids and caterpillars. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes.

Some carnivores feed on herbivores and some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains or food webs. All food chains start with plants. The links of the chains are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are some organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top : for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

Another important section of the community is made up of the decomposers. They include the bacteria and fungi that live in the soil and feed on dead animals and plants. By doing this, they break down the tissues of the dead organisms and release mineral salts into the soil.

Understanding details & extracting information فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Decomposers soil for plants.
a. disturb b. enrich c. kill d. spoil
- The sun is nutrition in plants.
a. catalyst b. an element
c. responsible for d. secondary for
- According to the passage, a natural community comprises
a. living organisms b. non-living organisms
c. neither of them d. both of them

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

4. The underlined word "caterpillars" in the passage is similar in size to _____.
- a. forests b. mice c. moth d. snails

Critical thinking skill

B. Answer the following questions :

5. According to the passage, what do you think the writer's message to man?
- a. Man should interact with the elements of nature to benefit from them.
- b. Man should interact with the elements of nature to damage them.
- c. Man should be indifferent.
- d. Man should leave the earth.
6. What are the three components of a food chain mentioned in the passage ?
- a. Pasta, chili & meat.
- b. Vegetable, carrots & parsley.
- c. Plants, herbivores & carnivores.
- d. Peas, fungi & mushrooms.
7. From your view point, what is meant by the balance in the passage?
- a. balance between man and woman.
- b. balance between companies and producers.
- c. balance between herbivores and carnivores.
- d. balance between elements of nature.
8. Woodland has _____ species of plants.
- a. particular b. common c. surrounding d. interacting
9. Woodland _____ are of all sizes.
- a. herbivores b. carnivores c. reptiles d. mammals
10. All food Chains start with _____.
- a. meat b. plants c. men d. organisms

موقع التفوق
ALTfWok.com

Practise by yourself

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two types, winners and losers. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking. They listen to others and evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds.

Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers : disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang onto them and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel **anxious**, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When the winners fail at times, they _____.
- a. always keep their self-confidence
- b. are afraid to try new things
- c. always repeat their own mistakes
- d. spend their time waiting
2. Losers are people who _____.
- a. try to change
- b. blame others for their mistakes
- c. overcome their bad mistakes
- d. learn to take responsibility
3. The opposite of "hang onto situations" in the last paragraph is _____.
- a. give them up
- b. delay them
- c. dream of them
- d. be independent
4. The underlined phrase "on the other hand" means _____.
- a. however b. because c. as d. so

5. Winners are
 a. responsible b. dependent c. careless d. lazy
6. Losers need to
 a. change their ideas about others
 b. stay losers forever
 c. hate winners
 d. fight winners
7. Which of the following is correct ?
 a. People should turn failure into success.
 b. People can't succeed.
 c. People can't challenge to win.
 d. People should be careless.
8. The word "anxious" has the same meaning of
 a. brave b. responsible c. dependent d. worried
9. Losers are afraid to new things .
 a. give b. try c. repeat d. stay
10. One of the causes of being a loser is
 a. good nutrition b. kindness
 c. bad nutrition d. good relationships



2 Writing Skill

REVISION Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

Forms of composition you have to master for the exam
 الصيغ المختلفة للكتابة يجب أن تجيد كتابتها للامتحان

عزيزي الطالب / عزيزتي الطالبة :
 - لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية في نظام التقييم الجديد، وعلى الطالب أن ينمي هذه المهارة
 لتصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعداً للكتابة عن أي موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة
 جميع الصيغ التالية :

- 1 A narrative essay /short story
- 2 A descriptive essay
- 3 A comparative/argumentative essay

مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة
 مقال وصفي

مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء - لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف) / مقال جدلي

• Different forms like : formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation cards, a book review or brochure.

جميع مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسالة وغير الرسمية - وصف الوظائف - وصفات الطهي -
 الخطابات - بطاقات الدعوة - عرض نقدي لكتاب - نشرة ... إلخ

ما المتوقع منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائي؟

- كتابة حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ (مقال - قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم مسابقة رأس الموضوع على شكل:
 - عبارة قد تحتوي على العنوان المطلوب مباشرة
 - حكاية أو قول مأثور يتخذ الطالب محوراً أساسياً لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائي
 - سؤال مباشر

أمثلة :

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics :

- An essay or short story about the statement: "For every joy, there is a price to pay."

- An essay or short story about the statement: "Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition."
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

- وفيما يلي سيتم عرض مخطط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهي:

1 Essay writing

كتابة المقال

2 Short story writing

كتابة القصة القصيرة

1 Essay Writing

كتابة المقال

- ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بمفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة بوحدة متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُغضَّل أن يحتوى المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

- إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال.

- عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

- من حيث الشكل Form

- تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
- ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريباً) في بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
- لا بد أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف (Capital).
- وضع نقطة (.) في نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- من حيث المضمون Content

- يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التي تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
- من المهم جداً أن تلتزم بالحدث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بوضوح وسلاسة.
- ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أي جملة رئيسية تحتوى على الفكرة التي تناقشها الفقرة.
- لا بد من تنوع بدايات الجمل.
- استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
- استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع في أخطاء أنت من غنى عنها.

The Form of the Essay الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان

Education and Technology

→ It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

Introduction المقدمة

→ Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This in turn will make the education process more enjoyable and effective.

Body الجسم الأساسي

→ Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. Most exams will be done online. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

Conclusion الخاتمة

→ To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

المسافة البادئة في أول كل فقرة

الجزء الرئيسية للمقال The main parts of the essay

المقدمة

(1) Introduction :

- هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع. وكيف سيتم تسلسل و عرض الأفكار.

- بالنسبة للطلاب الذي يجيد الكتابة، هناك أساليب مختلفة يمكن أن يبدأ بها فقرة المقدمة مثل :

1) جملة عامة تعبر بها عن الفكرة التي يدور حولها الموضوع.

- مثال : عند كتابة موضوع عن دور المعلم "The role of teachers" يمكن أن تبدأ كالتالي:

- No one can deny that teachers play a very important role in both students' education and their personal lives.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن المعلمين يلعبون دوراً هاماً في تعليم الطلاب وحياتهم الخاصة على السواء.

Or :

- We all owe much to our teachers and the important influence they have on our lives.

- جميعنا ندين بالكثير للمعلمين وتأثيرهم المهم في حياتنا.

2) حكمة أو مثل :

- A good teacher can inspire hope, ignite the imagination, and instill a love of learning.

- يمكن للمعلم الجيد أن يلهم الأمل وشعل الخيال ويغرس حب التعلم.

3) جملة تتضمن تعريف بالموضوع :

- A good teacher is not that person who gives the answers out to students but understands their needs and challenges and gives them tools of success.

- المعلم الجيد ليس مجرد شخص يقدم الإجابات للطلاب، ولكنه يفهم احتياجاتهم وتحدياتهم ويوفر أدوات لمساعدتهم على النجاح.

1) سؤال عام يتم طرحه في البداية لإثارة الموضوع :

- What role do teachers play in shaping the future of the nation?

- ما الدور الذي يلعبه المعلمون في صياغة مستقبل الأمة؟

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية

- بالنسبة للطلاب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعدك مثل :

• We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

- نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

• We all admit the importance and necessity of ... in our life.

- كلنا نقر بأهمية وضرورة... في حياتنا.

• No wonder if we say that ... has (have) its (their) good and positive effects on us.

- لا عجب إذا قلنا أن ... له آثار طيبة وإيجابية علينا جميعاً.

• We all agree that is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

- كلنا نتفق أن ... ضروري جداً ويلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• We should put into consideration that ... has (have) become one (some) of the most important things in everyone's life.

- يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار أن ... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.

• In my opinion, ... is really important and necessary nowadays. It may have good and positive effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring all the good to our society.

- في رأيي ... هو حقاً مهم وضروري هذه الأيام وقد يكون له الأثر الطيب والإيجابي علينا جميعاً وإنني أعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يعود بالنفع على مجتمعتنا.

• No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

• There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

- لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً بالغا علينا.

• لاحظ أنه إذا كان الموضوع اسم جمع يراعى استخدام أفعال تناسب الفاعل.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تعلم لوضعها الفقرات السطحية

• In my opinion, ... is serious and harmful nowadays. It may have bad and negative effects on all of us. I think so because ... may bring evils to our society.

- من وجهة نظري ... خطير وخار هذه الأيام، وقد يكون له آثار سلبية وسلبية علينا جميعاً. وأسى اعتقد ذلك لأن ... قد يجلب الشرور إلى مجتمعنا

• There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

- مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له الأثر السلبى والسلبى في وقتنا هذا

• Frankly speaking, ... is one of the worst things in our life. Thus, our state spares no effort to fight it.

- بصراحة أقول أن ... واحداً من أسوأ الأشياء في حياتنا. وعلى هذا فإن دولتنا لا تحترحهما لكي تكافح وتقاوم هذا الشيء.

(2) Body :

مثل الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسى)

- لكي يكون المقال الذى تكتبه معبراً ومفهوماً وموزناً، عليك مراعاة ما يلى :

1. اقرأ عناوين الموضوعات حذراً واحذر أفضلهم وأسهلهم بالنسبة لك.
2. تأكد أنك تكتب عن الموضوع المطلوب.
3. لا بد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار.
4. تحدث عن كل فكرة فى فقرة مستقلة.
5. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.
6. تجنب الكتابة بضمير المتكلم (إلا إذا كنت تتحدث عن شيء يخصك مثل هواياتك أو عاداتك أو شيء مفضل لديك ... إلخ).
7. يجب تنوع بدايات الجمل، ولتحقيق هذا الهدف يمكنك أن تستخدم ما يناسب من العبارات التالية فى بدايات الجمل :

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| - Everyone knows that + جملة | - يعرف الجميع أن ... |
| - I don't exaggerate when I say that + جملة | - لست أبالغ عندما أقول أن ... |
| - I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة | - لا أفشى سرا عندما أقول أن ... |
| - It can't be denied that + جملة | - لا أحد يمكنه أن ينكر أن ... |
| - It goes without saying that + جملة | - غنى عن البيان أن ... |

- It is crystal clear that + جملة
 - It is known that + جملة
 - It is taken for granted that + جملة
 - There is no doubt that + جملة
- من الواضح تماماً أن ...
من المعروف أن ...
من المسلم به أن ...
مما لا شك فيه ...
8. عند التعبير عن رأيك الخاص يمكن أن تبدأ جملتك بأحد التعبيرات التالية :
- I think / believe that ... أعتقد أن ...
- In my opinion, ... من وجهة نظري ...
- As far as I am concerned, ... على حد علمي ...
9. عندما تريد أن تعض مثالاً ابداً جملتك بـ :
- For example, ... / For instance, ... على سبيل المثال ...

(3) Conclusion :

الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

- غالباً ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصاً (summary) للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها.
- هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأى أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها فى الفقرات الختامية للمقال

- Finally, it is quite clear that ... (الموضوع) ... is really ... (صفة).
- أخيراً، من الواضح أن ... فعلاً ...
- I can end my speech saying that...
- يمكننى أن أنهى حديثى بالقول أن ...
- In brief, I think that ... is really ...
- باختصار، أعتقد أن ... يكون حقاً ...
- In the end, I hope I had pointed out all the aspects of this subject and made it clear. في الختام، أتمنى أن أكون قد تطرقت إلى كل جوانب الموضوع وجعلته واضحاً.
- To conclude, I hope my words were enough to illuminate the most vital sides of this subject.
- ختاماً، أتمنى أن تكون كلماتى كانت كافية لإلقاء الضوء على أكثر جوانب هذا الموضوع أهمية.
- To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...
- الخلاصة، يمكن للمرء أن يقول أن ... يكون فعلاً ...

2 Short Story writing كتابة القصة القصيرة

- ما الفرق بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن عرض أو نقاش لفكرة رئيسة عن طريق تقسيمها لمجموعة أفكار جريئة. ويكون العرض موضوعي ومباشر.
- القصة القصيرة (Short story) عبارة عن وصف لموقف معين أو سرد لأحداث معينة.
- للقصة عناصر معينة مثل : الحكمة - الشخصيات - المكان والزمان - الحوار - المعنى الأخلاقي ... الخ.

- ما أوجه التشابه بين المقال (Essay) والقصة القصيرة (Short story) ؟

- التشابه فقط يكون في استخدام اللغة، فالقصة مثل المقال تنقسم إلى فقرات (Paragraphs) يتناول كل منها فكرة معينة.
- القصة المطلوبة في نفس حجم المقال حوالي (١٥٠) كلمة.
- لا بد من استخدام لغة بسيطة واضحة.
- يجب مراعاة التسلسل الزمني للأحداث.
- لا بد من مراعاة علامات الترقيم.

إرشادات هامة لكتابة القصة القصيرة :

- عند كتابة كل قصة قصيرة، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج القصة بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون :

- (1) Plot حبكة القصة (الأحداث) وهي الأسلوب المُحكَّم الذي يتم به عرض الأحداث وتصاعدها وصولاً لقروة السوقف حتى الوصول للنهاية .
- (2) Setting المكان والزمان لا بد من تحديد المدى الزمني والمكان الذي تدور فيه الأحداث.
- (3) Characters الشخصيات يجب الاهتمام بعرض وتطوير الشخصيات حتى تبدو حقيقية بالنسبة للقارئ، فالشخصيات هي التي تقوم بالأحداث في القصة ولا بد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث.
- (4) Narrating السرد يجب الاهتمام بأسلوب الكتابة، واستخدام الجمل القصيرة بعضى تشويقاً ويجعل تسلسل الأحداث أكثر وضوحاً.
- (5) Moral المعنى الأخلاقي لا بد أن يكون للقصة مغزى أخلاقي أو درس مستفاد يخرج به القارئ.

Short Story Model

نموذج للقصة القصيرة

A situation of great fear

I lived in a small village where most farmers kept dogs to guard their animals and farms. They regarded dogs as a kind of danger alarm at night because dogs barked when they saw strangers in the streets. When farmers heard dogs' barking at night, they got ready to face the expected danger.

I was a young boy of about five when this situation took place. My uncle, who was a young man then, asked me to go with him to the farm. My father didn't want me to go but when I started to cry, he allowed me to go.

There on the farm, my uncle was busy doing some jobs here and there. I wandered around the field. I didn't realise that I had gone far away from my uncle.

Suddenly, I found myself face to face with a party of five large dogs. They all looked at me in a frightening way, their mouths were open and their tongues were hanging out.

I turned around and started to run. Fear made my legs weak. I was breathless and had no power to run. In seconds I was on the ground and the dogs surrounded me. I felt it was the end.

I was saved by a farmer who was in a nearby field. He carried me home where he told my father what had happened. I have never liked dogs since then.

موقع التفوق AltFwok.com

Follow your progress in writing skill

UNIT 1

1. Write an essay of about (150) words on eco-tourism.

UNIT 2

2. Write an essay of about (150) words on a famous person.

UNIT 3

3. Write an essay of about (150) words on describing a character from a book, film or TV who is similar to you.

UNIT 4

4. Write an essay of about (150) words on to a friend telling him about a place you would like to visit on holiday. Include reasons why you want to go there, what you would do there and what time of year you would like to go.

UNIT 5

5. Write an essay of about (150) words on the internet, possible advantages, disadvantages and how to protect yourself online.

UNIT 6

6. Write an essay of about (150) words on a summary of a story you read and enjoyed.

3 Translation

الترجمة

السادة معلمي اللغة الإنجليزية، أبنائنا وبناتنا طلبة وطالعات المرحلة الثانوية؛
تقدم لكم هذا الجهد المتواضع "El-Moasser Translation Guide" كإسهام بسيط منا للفضا.
نهائياً على مشكلة الترجمة بالنسبة لأبنائنا في المرحلة الثانوية، وذلك باستخدام أسلوب السؤال والإجابة
الواقعية المتسلسلة البسيطة في عرض المادة العلمية الخاصة بكيفية الترجمة، وقد تم تقسيم المادة العلمية في
هذا الدليل إلى عدد من المحاور، وفي كل حصة نناقش حزمة محددة ثم نعملها بتدريبات متعلقة بما تم
عرضه في الحصة.
نتمنى أن كل محاضرة تدريبات بنوعها جدول مرتب أجددنا للمفردات الهامة للطلاب، كما يوجد جدول لبعض
التعريفات الهامة في نهاية هذا الجزء.

Introduction Expressing the sense of (words or text) ترجمة المعنى

السؤال: هل المقصود بالترجمة ترجمة الكلمات الموجودة بالجملة حرفياً؟
جواباً لا، فالترجمة تعني نقل المعنى من لغة إلى أخرى دون التقيد بالألفاظ، لاحظ ترجمة الجملة التالية:
- Diamond cuts diamond
الاساس يقطع الاساس.
هذه ترجمة حرفية ولا تؤدي معنى المقولة الإنجليزية، لكن إذا أردنا أن نترجم بشكل صحيح فنقول لا يقل
الحديد إلا الحديد.

- It's raining cats and dogs.
إنها تنظر بغزارة.
وتنكي تترجم بشكل صحيح عليك بمراعاة ما يلي:
(أ) اقرأ النص الذي تريد أن تترجمه بالكامل لكي تفهم الفكرة العامة له.
(ب) اقرأ النص من جديد قراءة جيدة لتعرف ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب وكيف كان إحساسه حين قال هذا الكلام،
فتسائل كيف تترجم الجملة التالية؟

- Ahmed is always listening to loud music.
أعتقد أنك ستترجمها كالتالي: يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى موسيقى صاخبة.
وتلك بالطبع ترجمة غير سليمة، حيث أن استخدام "always" مع المضارع المستمر "is listening"
يوحي بحسب وضعر المتحدث، لذلك فإنه من الدقة أن تترجم الجملة كما يلي: يستمع أحمد دائماً إلى
تلد الموسيقى الصاخبة.

لاحظ أننا استخدمنا صيغة السؤال وعلامة استفهام رغم أن الجملة الأصلية ليست كذلك، فالأهم هو نقل
المعنى بالإحساس الموجود في النص الأصلي.
(ج) لا تترجم الكلمات كمعاني مستقلة، لكن حسب استخدامها في السياق، لاحظ كيف تترجم الجملة التالية:
- The teacher asks me to use my right hand to draw a right angle right now.
لاحظ تكرار كلمة "right" ثلاث مرات بثلاث معانٍ مختلفة:

الآن على الفور - right now - زاوية قائمة - right angle - اليد اليمنى - right hand
ومعنا تكون ترجمة الجملة كالتالي: يطلب مني المعلم أن أستخدم يدي اليمنى لأرسم زاوية قائمة الآن
على الفور.

(د) اقرأ النص الذي لمت بترجمته ، هل فهمت نفس المعنى الذي فهمته من النص الأصلي؟ هل وصل إليك من النص المترجم نفس الإحساس الذي يصل من النص الأصلي؟ إذا لم يصل إليك نفس المعنى نفس الإحساس ، فالترجمة غير سليمة.

Part 1 Translation from Arabic into English

الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى الإنجليزية

1 كيفية بدء الجملة الإنجليزية Starting the English Sentence

السؤال : كيف تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية في الترجمة ؟

(1) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمعلوم فهي تبدأ بالفاعل:

مثال : اكتشف الدكتور فاروق الباز المياه الجوفية تحت الصحراء الغربية.

- Dr Farouk El-Baz discovered underground water under the Western Desert.

(ب) إذا كانت جملة خبرية مبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول الذي يتوب عن الفاعل.

مثال : بُني السد العالي لتخزين مياه النيل.

- The High Dam was built to store the water of the Nile.

(ج) إذا كانت جملة أمر تكون الترجمة كالتالي :

يتكون الأمر المشبب في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة + مفعول + الفعل في المصدر + Inf.

مثال : اعمل بجد واحصل علي قدر كاف من النوم.

- Work hard and get enough sleep.

- يمكن أن توضع "always" في بداية جملة الأمر المشبب لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : دومًا ساعد الآخرين وقت الحاجة.

- Always help others in need.

- يتكون الأمر المنفي (النهى) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

تكملة + مفعول + الفعل في المصدر + Don't + inf.

مثال : لا تأخذ أي أدوية دون استشارة الطبيب.

- Don't take any medicines without consulting the doctor.

- يمكن أن تستخدم "Never" بدلًا من "Don't" في بداية جملة النهي لتقوية المعنى :

مثال : إياك أن تُصادق الأشرار.

- Never make friends with evil people.

(د) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً به "هل" :

ابدأ بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة التالية حسب الزمن:
- Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had
- Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought /
Need / Dare

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فاعل إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمعلوم :
مثال : هل سبق أن قرأت رواية لنشارلز ديكنز؟ (لاحظ الفعل في زمن المضارع التام)

- Have you ever read a Charles Dickens Novel?

مثال : أنتمارس الرياضة بشكل يومي؟ / هل أنت معتاد على ممارسة الرياضة يوميًا؟ (لاحظ أن الفعل في صيغة المضارع)

- Do you practise sport every day?

- يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد أو الناقص مفعول إذا كان السؤال مبنياً للمجهول :

مثال : هل شُرح لك هذا الدرس بالأمس؟

- Was this lesson explained to you yesterday?

مثال : هل جرت العادة أن تنظف حجرتك كل صباح؟

- Is your room cleaned every morning?

- إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بـ (أليس / ألا) تبدأ الترجمة بالفعل المساعد الصفي:

مثال : أليست تتع نظامًا غذائيًا؟ / أليس من عاداتك اتباع نظامًا غذائيًا؟

- Don't you follow a diet?

مثال : ألا تهتم بشاهدة الأفلام؟ (عاديات في الحاضر)

- Aren't you interested in watching films?

(هـ) إذا كنت تترجم سؤالاً بأداة استفهام ابدأ بأحد أدوات الإستفهام التالية ثم أحد الأفعال المساعدة حسب الزمن:

What	ما / ماذا	Which	أى
Where	أين	When	متى
Why	لماذا	Who	من
Whose	لمن	How	كـ / كيف

مثال : ما الذي يجب أن تفعله لتحمي البيئة من التلوث؟

- What should you do to protect the environment from pollution?

مثال : كيف لنا أن نواجه ظاهرة الغش في الامتحانات؟

- How can we fight exam cheating phenomenon ?

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. تعمل اختي مضيفة طيران وترتدي زياً خاصاً بالشركة التي تعمل بها.

٢. تُستخدم الأقمار الصناعية في اكتشاف المياه الجوفية والمعادن والبترول.

٣. في كل عام يأتي السياح إلى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل في الشتاء.

٤. تُبني المدارس والجامعات في كل المحافظات لتوفر تعليم مناسب لجميع المصريين.

٥. تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم إلى العيش معاً في حب وسلام.

٦. ساعد والدك واعمك بجد.

٧. لا تُكثِر من الطعام ولا تنسى ممارسة الرياضة.

٨. اصنع ما شئت ، لكن لا تؤذي الآخرين.

٩. لا تتأخر على مدرستك ، ولا تضيع وقتك.

١٠. ألا تساعد أصدقائك وقت الحاجة؟

١١. هل تقوم بأعمال مفيدة في وقت فراغك؟

١٢. أفضل أسنانك بالفرشاة مرتين يومياً؟

١٣. كيف تمكّن قداماء المصريين من بناء الأهرامات؟

١٤. لماذا تضيع وقتك فيما لا يفيد؟

١٥. كم مرة تمارس الرياضة أسبوعياً؟

Related Vocabulary

air hostess	مضيفة طيران	minerals	المعادن
brush	يفسّل بالفرشاة	peoples	شعوب
governorates	محافظات	special	خاص
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	waste	يضيع
manage to	يتمكن		

2 أزمنة الجمل Tenses of Sentences

السؤال : في اللغة العربية هناك زمنى المضارع و الماضي ، و يتم التعبير عن المستقبل بـ « سوف / س + الفعل المضارع » ، لكن في اللغة الإنجليزية يوجد حوالي إثني عشرة زمناً ، فكيف يتم ترجمة الأزمنة؟
- تحتاج إجابة هذا السؤال إلى دراسة الأزمنة و معرفة استخدامات كل زمن و هذا متروك لدروس القواعد اللغوية ، لكن هنا سنتكلم في بعض العموميات التي قد تفيد إلى حد كبير في الترجمة:

(أ) الجملة التي تدل على حقائق ثابتة أو عادات متكررة يُوضع فعلها في صيغة زمن المضارع البسيط (inf. / inf. + s, es, ies)

مثال : المخ البشرى يتحكم في كل شيء . نقوم به.

- The human brain controls everything we do.

مثال : يتسلم الكُتّاب والعلماء جوائز قيّمة كل عام.

- Writers and scientists receive valuable prizes every year.

مثال : التعليم ليس غاية في حد ذاته ، إنما وسيلة تؤدي إلى غاية.

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

(ب) الجملة التي تدل على حدث مستمر في الوقت الحالي يُوضع فعلها في صيغة زمن المضارع مستمر (am / is / are + inf. + ing)

مثال : في الوقت الحالي ، تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتحسين الصحة التعليم.

- Nowadays, the government is exerting great efforts to improve health and education.

(ج) الجملة التي تدل على خبرات أو أحداث إنتهت للتو أو أحداث ماضية لها تأثير على الحاضر تُترجم إلى مضارع تام (have / has + p.p.) بشرط عدم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين حتى الآن.

- Ahmed has won two gold medals so far.

- أما إذا تم ذكر توقيت حدوث الفعل فنستخدم الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) :

مثال : فاز أحمد بميداليتين ذهبيتين العام الماضي.

- Ahmed won two gold medals last year.

(د) عادات الماضي يتم التعبير عنها كالتالي :
 - always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / never التصريف الثاني

مثال : كان جدي أحياناً يأخذنا لزيارة أقرابنا في الريف.
 - My grandfather sometimes took us to visit our relatives in the countryside.
 (هـ) عادات الماضي التي تنوقف في الحاضر :

- used to + inf. - be + used to + ing
 مثال : اعتدت الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية بدراجتي الصغيرة.
 - I used to go to primary school on my small bike.
 مثال : كانت جدتي معتادة علي عمل الخبز في المنزل.
 - My grandmother was used to making bread at home.

(و) الجملة التي تعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي غالبا تحتوي على كلمة « كان » فعل مضارع » (ترجم إلى ماضي مستمر (was / were + inf. + ing) :
 مثال : كان أحمد يلعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائه عندما انكسرت ساقه.
 - Ahmed was playing football with his friends when his leg broke.

(ز) الجملة التي تدل على حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي نستخدم ماضي تام (had + p.p.) :
 مثال : انتهى المعلم من شرح الدرس قبل أن يعطى لنا بعض التمرينات.
 - The teacher had finished explaining the lesson before he gave us some exercises.

(ح) الجمل التي تدل على المستقبل (سأفعل / سوف أفعل / لن أفعل) تُترجم إلى الصيغة المناسبة من المستقبل (will + inf. / be going to + inf. / be + inf. + ing) :
 مثال : ستحتفل هدى بعيد ميلادها الخامس الشهر القادم.
 - Huda is celebrating her fifth birthday next month.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

- يتم إنشاء المكتبات العامة في كل مكان لتشجيع أفراد الأسرة على القراءة.
- يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين لأنه السبب في كثير من الأمراض.
- لم ينجح العلماء حتى يومنا هذا في إيجاد علاج لبعض الأمراض.

- أصبح تعلم اللغات والحاسب الآلي هاما للحصول على وظيفة.
- في القريب ، سوف تساعدنا التكنولوجيا على قيادة السيارات بأمان أكثر.
- في بعض المنازل الحديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية في تسخين المياه.
- قد قام السد العالي بحماية مصر من الفيضانات ووفر المياه لوقت الحاجة.
- لن نتحقق أهدافك دون أن نعمل بجد.
- كنت غائبا من المدرسة عندما قابلت عمتي في الشارع.
- اعتادت جدتي أن تحكي لنا قصصا شيقة.
- أحاول جاهدا أن أحل هذه المسألة الصعبة.

Related Vocabulary

do my best	أحاول جاهداً	aims	أهداف
come true	تتحقق	smoking	التدخين
floods	الفيضانات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
problem	مسألة / مشكلة	try hard	بأحاول جاهداً
public	عام	warn (ed)	يحذر
set up	ينشئ	diseases	أمراض
cure	علاج	achieve	يحقق

3 Translating Adjectives and Adverbs كيفية ترجمة الصفات والظروف

السؤال : كيف أترجم الصفة إلى اللغة الإنجليزية وما هو موقع الصفة بالنسبة للموصوف ؟
 (1) تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف على عكس اللغة العربية ، لاحظ:
 ولد ماهر a clever boy - فتاة جميلة a beautiful girl - قصص شيقة interesting stories
 مثال : العمل الجاد والخلق الحسن من سمات الإنسان الناجح.
 - Hard work and good manners are some qualities of a successful person.
 (ب) على غير العادة ، تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف و ليس قبله إذا كانت تصف أي من الكلمات التالية :

- something / anything / everything / nothing - someone / anyone
 / everyone / none - somebody / anybody / everybody / nobody -
 somewhere / anywhere / everywhere / nowhere

- someone evil شخص ما شرير
- something important شيء ما مهم
- Ahmed put something small in his bag. مثال : وضع أحمد شيء ما صغير الحجم في حقيبته
- (ج) تأتي الصفة بعدها موصوف أو بدون موصوف عند أفعال مثل : يبدو sound - له رائحة smell - له مذاق taste - يشعر feel - يصبح become - يصبح be - get يبدو seem - look
- مثال : لقد أصبح عموزا / لقد أصبح رجلا عموزا.
- He became old. / He became an old man.
- (د) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط تبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة. لاحظ : رجل ثرى مشهور. سيدة شابة ذكية.
- a famous rich man
- an intelligent young lady
- مثال : الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة تساعد أطفال الشوارع المشردين.
- Different charitable organisations help homeless street children.
- (هـ) إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان وبينهما أداة ربط فإننا في الغالب نكتب الصفة الأولى أولا ثم الثانية. لاحظ : رجل ثرى ومشهور. سيدة شابة وذكية.
- a rich and famous man
- a young and beautiful lady
- مثال : العمل الجاد والمستمر هو الخطوة الأولى نحو تحقيق هدفك في الحياة.
- Hard and continuous work is the first step towards achieving your goal in life.
- (و) إذا وضعنا قبل الصفة "the" ولم يتبع الصفة اسم فنقص ذلك كل من يتصرف بهذه الصفة.
- The blind - رجال مكفوفين - blind men - رجل كفيف - a blind man
- مثال : ينبغي على الأغنياء مساعدة الفقراء.
- Rich people should help poor people.
- = The rich should help the poor.
- السؤال : وماذا عن الطرف؟ كيف تُرجم إلى الإنجليزية وأين يكون موقعه في الجملة ؟
- (1) ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (be) وسنذكر أن يأتي بعضها في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :
- always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / rarely / scarcely / seldom / hardly / never
- مثال : تحاول أمي دائما الحفاظ علي بيتنا نظيفاً و مُرتباً.
- My mother always tries to keep our house clean and tidy.

- Always my mother tries to keep our house clean and tidy.
- مثال : دائما ما أكون في عملي في الموعد المحدد.
- I am usually at my work in time.
- (ب) ظروف الكيفية التي تدل على كصفة أو طريقة حدوث الفعل تأتي بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول :
- I walk quickly to my school.
- مثال : أسير إلى مدرستي مسرعا.
- It is your right to express your opinion freely.
- مثال : من حقك أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية.
- (ج) ظروف الدرجة الثالثة تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة ، وتوضع قبل الصفة مباشرة :
- extremely / completely / utterly / absolutely / للغاية
- really / very / so / quite / إلى حد ما
- مثال : إنسى في الحقيقة غاصب جدا من ذلك الجار السيء.
- I'm really angry with that bad neighbour.
- (د) في اللغة الإنجليزية يُفضل ان يكون ظرف الزمان أو المكان إما في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها وذلك حسب المعنى :
- مثال : أسافر إلى أوروبا مرتين كل صيف.
- I travel to Europe twice every summer.
- Every summer, I travel to Europe twice.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد حان وقت العمل الجاد من أجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.
٢. العلم الحديث والنخبط الجهد ضروريان من أجل حياة أفضل.
٣. هبة تتعجب إلى الفراش مبكراً.
٤. يستخدم الطلاب المتحمسين أجهزة الحاسب الآلي في مدارسهم.
٥. يقدم العنساء شيء ما جديد كل يوم لخدمته البشرية.
٦. كان الجو حاراً للغاية طوال الأسبوع الماضي.
٧. يجب أن تقود السيارة بحرص حتى تبقى بأمان.

٨. أحياناً أعمل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

٩. المكفوفون يمكنهم التعلم والعمل.

١٠. الوجبات الصغيرة الخفيفة مفيدة للصحة.

١١. حصلت علي درجات مرتفعة بسبب العمل الجاد والمستمر.

١٢. يبدو هذا اللاعب غاضباً بعد خسارة المباراة.

Related Vocabulary

home / homeland	الوطن	marks	درجات
light	خفيف	meals	وجبات
look / seem	يبدو	modern	حديث
losing	خسارة	planning	التخطيط
mankind	البشرية	humanity	البشرية

4 Special Cases (1) حالات خاصة (1)

السؤال : كيف أقوم بترجمة الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم، وكذلك الفعل (يُعتبر / يُعد) المبنى للمجهول؟

(1) يُترجم الفعل (يعتبر) المبنى للمعلوم كالتالي :

- جملة + that + (حسب الزمن) consider + فاعل Subj.
- as + noun + مفعول Obj. + (حسب الزمن) regard + فاعل Subj.

مثال : تعتبر الحكومة التعليم استثماراً في مستقبل مصر.

- The government considers that education is an investment in the future of the country.
- The government regards education as an investment in the future of the country.

(ب) يُترجم الفعل (يُعتبر) المبنى للمجهول كالتالي :

- considered + (حسب الزمن) be + مفعول Obj.
- regarded + as + noun + (حسب الزمن) be + فاعل Subj.

مثال : يُعتبر التعليم استثماراً في مستقبل مصر.

- Education is considered an investment in the future of Egypt.
- Education is regarded as an investment in the future of Egypt.

السؤال : أحياناً يكون من الصعب ترجمة الأفعال (يعمل / يقوم / يتم)، فكيف أترجم الجملة حينئذ ؟
هذا يحدث عندما لا تكون هذه الأفعال هي الأفعال الأساسية للجملة، وفي هذه الحالة يتم استبدالها بفعل مناسب للمعنى أو الاستغناء عنها والاعتماد على الفعل الأصلي :

مثال : تعمل جميع الدول على إيجاد حل لمشكلة التلوث.

هنا كلمة (تعمل) تؤدي معنى (تحاول)، فتترجم الجملة كالتالي :
- All nations try to solve the problem of pollution.

مثال : يقوم مُعلمو اللغة الإنجليزية بمدربتنا بشرح الدروس جيداً.

- هنا كلمة (يقوم) لا تؤدي أي معنى فيتم حذفها واستخدام فعل مشتق من الجملة (يشرح) ، وتُترجم الجملة كالتالي :

- The teachers of English in our school explain lessons well.

مثال : يتم حل المشكلات التي تواجه الطلاب لمساعدتهم علي التعلم بشكل جيد.

هنا كلمة (يتم) لا تؤدي معنى ، فنحذفها و نترجم الجملة مبنية للمجهول كالتالي :

- The problems which face students are solved to help them learn well.
السؤال : ماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة عربية ليس بها فعل إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
(1) هناك الجمل الاسمية التي ليس فيها فعل و نستخدم (be) عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية :

مثال : العمل الجاد طريقك إلى النجاح.

- Hard work is your way to success.

(ب) هناك الجمل الاسمية عند ترجمتها للإنجليزية نستخدم (be) كترجمة لـ (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن) :

مثال : الطعام الصحي والرياضة هما مفتاحي الصحة الجيدة والسعادة.

- Healthy food and sport are the keys to good health and happiness.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يعتبر المصريون نهر النيل مصدر الحياة لهم.

٢. يتم بناء طرق جديدة لحل مشكلة الازدحام المروري.

٣. يُعد السد العالي أفضل إنجاز للرئيس عبد الناصر.

٤. العمل هو سر الحياة ، و النجاح في العمل هو السعادة.

٥. يعتبر أبي مشاهدة المباريات علي التلفاز مضيعة للوقت.

٦. تقوم الحكومة بتوفير التعليم لكل المواطنين
٧. التعليم هو الطريق الحقيقي لمستقبل أفضل.
٨. يُعتبر الدكتور الباز رمز من رموز العلم في كل أنحاء العالم.
٩. إن الإنترنت أضخم مكتبة في التاريخ.
١٠. يقوم أبي بزيارة جدى في الريف كل شهر.
١١. إن زراعة الصحراء شيء ضرورى لتوفير الغذاء.
١٢. تقوم الحواس بإرسال رسائل إلى المخ.

Related Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز	source	مصدر
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	symbol	رمز
president	الرئيس	traffic jam	الازدحام المرورى

5 Special Cases (2) حالات خاصة (2)

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة بها (لدى / لديه / لديها / عندى / عنده / عندنا / لها / لهم ... إلخ) وليس بها فعل؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب الجدول التالى مع مراعاة زمن الجملة :

I have	عندى - لدى - لى - أملك	You have	عندكم - لديكم - لكم - تملكون
He has	عنده - لديه - له - يملك	We have	عندنا - لدينا - لنا - نملك
She has	عندها - لديها - لها - تملك	They have	عندهم - لديهم - لهم - يملكون
It has	لديه - لديها - له - لها	One has	للرء - لدى الرء - يمتلك الرء
You have	عندك - لديك - لك - تملك		

مثال : لدينا الكثير من الاهتمامات في وقت فراغنا.

- We have a lot of interests in our free time.

مثال : كان لأبى دور كبير في نجاحى.

- My father had a great role in my success.

مثال : سيكون للشباب دور كبير في تقدم الوطن.
- Youth will have a great role in the progress of the country.

السؤال : كيف أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (عليه / عليها / عليك / لابد / حتما / يجب / ينبغي ... إلخ) ؟

تُترجم مثل هذه الجمل حسب القاعدة التالية :
- Subj. فاعل + must / should / ought to / have to / has to / had to + inf

مثال : علينا أن نحافظ على البيئة نظيفة.
- We should keep the environment clean.

مثال : لابد أن نُطيع والديك و تحترم مُعلميك.
- You must obey your parents and respect your teachers.

مثال : كان على أن أراجع دروسى جيدا لأجتاز الإمتحان.
- I had to revise my lessons well to pass the exam.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الكلمات (عسى / لعل / ليت) ؟

(1) إذا جاء بعد هذه الكلمات فعل مضارع فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I hope / I wish + to + inf.
- I hope + subj. + will + inf.
- I hope + subj. + inf. + (s / es / ies)

مثال : ليتنى أقدر أن أساعدك.

- I hope / wish to be able to help you.
- I hope I will be able to help you.
- I hope I am able to help you.

(ب) إذا جاء بعد (لعل / ليت) فعل ماضي فإنها تُترجم في الغالب إلى :

- I wish + subj. + had + p.p. ...
- I regret not + inf. + ing ...

مثال : ليتنى ذاكرت جيدا العام الماضي.

- I wish I had studied hard last year.
- I regret not studying hard last year.

السؤال : وكيف أترجم المضاف والمضاف إليه ؟

(1) نضع (of) بين المضاف والمضاف إليه أو نبدأ بالمضاف إليه ثم نضع المضاف بدون (of) :

- standard of living	- living standard	مستوى المعيشة
- pollution of the air	- air pollution	تلوث الهواء
- the rate of birth	- birth rate	معدل المواليد

(ب) تستخدم ('s) الملكية غالبًا عندما يكون المضاف إليه عاقل أو اسم حيوان :

- My mother's house. ('s) ملكية مفرد
- My parents' house. (s') ملكية جمع
- The parrot's tail is very long.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. يجب أن نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا.

٢. تعمل الدولة على رعاية الشباب وتنمية مواهبهم.

٣. يجب أن ننشئ الأطفال على حب الوطن واحترام الوالدين.

٤. علينا ان نشارك بإيجابية في تقدم وطننا.

٥. علينا أن نداولم على تحسين ظروف حياتنا.

٦. يجب استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في التعليم.

٧. من الضروري أن ننمي الإهتمام بالعلم لدى الصغار لإعداد جيل من العلماء.

٨. للعلماء دور هام في إيجاد حلول لمشكلات المجتمع.

٩. ليتني لم أنفق كل مالي في شراء هذه السيارة.

١٠. للتليفزيون دور مؤثر في ثقافة وسلوك المواطنين.

Related Vocabulary

bringing up
conditions
culture
effective
generation
interest

تربية
ظروف
ثقافة
مؤثر
جيل
اهتمام

positively
progress
share
society
solutions
talents

إيجابية
تقدم
نشارك
المجتمع
حلول
مواهب

6 Special Cases (3) حالات خاصة (٣)

السؤال : كيف أترجم كلمة (لقد) ؟

(1) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن المضارع التام في حالة عدم وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي امتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.
- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي البسيط في حالة وجود كلمة دالة على الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي.
- My brother passed the driving test last week.

(ج) تُترجم جملة (لقد) إلى زمن الماضي التام مع الحدث الأول في حالة وجود حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي :

مثال : لقد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة الأسبوع الماضي قبل أن يقوم أبي بشراء سيارة له بالأمس.
- My brother had passed the driving test last week before my father bought him a car yesterday.

السؤال : حسنًا ... فكيف أترجم كلمة (قد) ؟
لا توجد ترجمة للكلمة (قد) ، فهي تُحذف وتستخدم بدلًا منها زمن الماضي البسيط ويمكن المضارع التام :

(1) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل ماضي) مثل (لقد) :

مثال : قد اجتاز أخي إمتحان القيادة مؤخرًا.

- My brother has passed the driving test recently.

(ب) تُترجم جملة (قد + فعل مضارع) إلى (may / might + inf.) :

مثال : قد يسافر أبي إلى أسوان غداً.

- My father may / might travel to Aswan tomorrow.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بحرف التوكيد (إن) ؟

- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية غالبًا ما تبدأ بـ (noun / inf. + ing) في اللغة الإنجليزية ويكون فعل الجملة مضارع بسيط :

مثال : إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية والحاسب الآلي ضروري في الوقت الحالي.

- Learning foreign languages and the computer is necessary at present.

السؤال : وماذا أفعل عندما أترجم جملة تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) وبعد الأفعال الناقصة؟

(1) الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (أن + فعل مضارع) في اللغة العربية تبدأ بـ (To + inf.) في اللغة الإنجليزية :

مثال : أن تساعد في الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فهذا شيء جيد.

- To help keep the environment clean is a good thing.

(ب) كلمة (أن) بعد الأفعال الناقصة لا تُترجم :

مثال : يجب أن نجد حلولاً لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

- We should find solutions to our economic and social problems.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. لقد فاز فريق كرة القدم بمباراة هامة.

٢. لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحية والظنن الرائع

٣. إن تحقيق التقدم لا يمكن أن يحدث إلا بتعاون الأفراد مع الحكومة.

٤. لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياة أطول.

٥. إن هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص الخيالية ولعب التنس.

٦. لقد أصبح ضروريا البدء في إنشاء مدن جديدة في الصحراء.

٧. إن إهدار مياة النيل جريمة في حق الوطن.

٨. إن مهارات الحاسوب لا غني عنها للحصول علي وظيفة جيدة في الوقت الحالي.

٩. إن البحث العلمي وسيلة هامة لتحديد شكل مستقبل أي أمة.

١٠. إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديدة يحل الكثير من المشاكل الاقتصادية والاجتماعية.

١١. إن زيادة الانتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان.

١٢. لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعية.

١٣. إن سيناء جزء هام من أرض مصر يجب الاهتمام بتنميتها ورعاية أهلها.

Related Vocabulary

against	في حق / ضد	nation	أمة
co-operation	تعاون	national	وطني / غرومي
crime	جريمة	production	إنتاج
duty	واجب	research	بحث
fictional	خيالي	resources	موارد
grant (ed)	يهب	skills	مهارات
increasing	زيادة	wasting	إهدار
means	وسيلة		

7 Special Cases (4) حالات خاصة (4)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (يوجد / كان يوجد / هناك / كان هناك / سيكون هناك
أنتج إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟
تترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- There + is / are / was / were / have been / has been / had been /
will be / can be / must be + noun اسم

مثال : يوجد الكثير من الطرق لتجنب الأمراض.

- There are a lot of ways to avoid diseases.

مثال : كان هناك مشكلة في محرك السيارة.

- There was a problem with the car engine.

مثال : سيكون هناك بدائل للترول في المستقبل.

- There will be replacements for oil in the future.

مثال : لابد أن يكون هناك حل لمشكلة تلوث الهواء.

- There must be a solution to the problem of air pollution.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الجمل التي بها (كلمة ... كلما) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

تترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :

- The + subj. + verb + صفة مقارنة + the + subj. + verb + صفة مقارنة +

مثال : كلما تدرنت أكثر كلما أصبحت أكثر لياقة.

- The more you exercise, the fitter you get / become.

مثال : كلما تكون أكثر طولاً كلما تستطيع أن تجري أسرع.

- The taller you are, the faster you can run.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل بفعل ؟

(1) ضمير الفاعل المتصل بفعل يترجم ضمير فاعل (I - he - she - it - you - we - they) لاحظ :

كُنْتُ I wrote - كُنْتُ She wrote - كُنْتُ We wrote

مثال : أوت جدتي مع أخي واشترينا لها هدية

- I and my brother visited my grandmother and bought her a present.

(ب) ضمير المفعول المتصل بفاعل أو حرف جر يُترجم ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them)

مثال : سمعته يقول بعض المعلومات الهامة فاستمعت إليه بحرص.

- I heard him say something important, so I listened to him carefully.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الضمير المتصل باسم ؟

الضمير المتصل بالاسم يُترجم إلى صفة ملكية (أ - لا - their - your - our - its - her - his - my) لاحظ

كتابي my book - كتابها her book - كتابنا our book

مثال : يذل جميع المواطنين ما يوسعهم من أجل وطنهم.

- All citizens do their best for their home.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. توجد بعض قواعد النظافة الشخصية التي يجب اتباعها لتجنب الأمراض.

٢. علمتني الحياة ألا أحزن على ما ضاع مني لأنه ليس لي.

٣. كلما ساعدت الناس وقت الحاجة كلما شعرت بالسعادة.

٤. كان هناك حادثاً مروعاً على الطريق الصحراوي إلى أسوان.

٥. تحتاج الدولة جهودنا نحن الشباب لتحقيق التقدم.

٦. أعتقد أن الناس سوف تستمر في قراءة الكتب من أجل التمتع.

٧. كلما زاد العمل والإنتاج كلما ارتفع مستوى المعيشة.

٨. لا يوجد دين يدعو إلى القتل وترويع الناس.

٩. ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه لنا من إنجازات.

١٠. أفكر جدياً في دراسة الطب في الجامعة.

١١. تعطينا الشمس الحرارة والضوء، وهي مصدر للطاقة النظيفة.

١٢. نعيش الآن عصر الاتصالات الذي جعل العالم عالماً مفتوحاً.

موقع التقويم
ALTAWOOL.COM

Related Vocabulary

achievements
age
for fun

إنجازات
عصر
من أجل المتعة

in need
owe
standard of living

وقت الحاجة
يدين
مستوى المعيشة

8 Special Cases (5)

حالات خاصة (5)

السؤال : وكيف أترجم الحمل الذي نبدأ به (من + صفة) إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلى :
It is + adj. + صفة + (for + ضمير مفعول + to + inf.

مثال : من الحمد أن تقضي وقت فراغك بشكل مفيد.

- It is good (for you) to spend your free time in a useful way.

مثال : من الضروري أن يشارك الطلاب في الأنشطة المدرسية.

- It is necessary for students to take part in school activities.

السؤال : كيف أترجم المفعول المطلق إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ؟

- بصيغة عامة يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية.

مثال : تتأثر الصحة تأثراً كبيراً بالتدخين.

- Health is greatly affected by smoking.

السؤال : هناك أياً الأعداد، هل تُترجم أرقاماً حسابية أم حروفاً ؟

(١) الأعداد من (1 - 9) تكتب هجائياً دائماً، أما إذا زاد عن ذلك فيكتب أرقاماً حسابية :

مثال : أرسلت دعوات الحفل لخمسين صديقاً لكن لم يحضره منهم إلا ثمانية.

- I sent the invitations of the party to 50 friends, but only eight of them attended it.

(ب) عندما تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بذكر العدد فإنه يكتب هجائياً دائماً :

مثال : وصل ثلاثين مسافراً إلى المحطة بعد أن غادر القطار.

- Thirty passengers arrived at the station after the train had left.

السؤال : وماذا عن حروف الجر ؟

- لحروف الجر استخدامات يعرفها الطالب بالتدرج من خلال دراسته للغة، والمهم هنا أن هناك بعض الأفعال التي لا تأخذ حرف جر مثل :

admire
affect
arrest
avoid

يعجب به
يؤثر على
يلقبض على
ينجنب

include
join
obtain
owe

يشتمل على
يلتحق به
يحصل على
يدين به

celebrate	يحتفل به	pass	ينجح / يجتاز / يمر على
enjoy	يتمتع به	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognise	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر به	sacrifice	يضحى به

مثال : يؤثر التدخين على الصحة بشدة. - Smoking affects health badly.

Now, test yourself

Translate into English :

١. من الضروري أن نهتم أكثر بالتعليم والصحة.
٢. من الطبيعي أن يكون لمصر جيش قوى يحمي حدودها وشرطة قوية تحمي أمنها الداخلي.
٣. من المتوقع أن تكون الحروب القادمة بين الدول هي حروب للسيطرة على مصادر المياه.
٤. تلعب مصر دورًا كبيرًا في منطقة الشرق الأوسط.
٥. تتأثر السياحة تأثرًا كبيرًا بالأحداث الجارية في العالم.
٦. يحذر الأطباء الناس تحذيرًا شديدًا من التدخين.
٧. تتطلع مصر تطلعًا كبيرًا لتحسين مستوى معيشة مواطنيها.
٨. تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم مزايا قيمة.
٩. تولى الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالأطفال لأنهم قادة المستقبل.
١٠. من الحكمة ألا تتخذ قرارًا إلا بعد تفكير عميق.

Related Vocabulary

current events	الأحداث الجارية	pay attention	تولى اهتمامًا
deep thought	تفكير عميق	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
It is wise	من الحكمة		

Part II Translation from English into Arabic

الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية :

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية أمر سهل وبسيط، ولقد تم تناول معظم الملاحظات التي قد تفيدك فيها ضمن الملاحظات الخاصة بالترجمة من اللغة العربية للغة الإنجليزية ولم يتبقى سوى بعض الملاحظات البسيطة سنتناولها فيما يلي :

السؤال : ما الذي يتطلبه ترجمة نص من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية ؟

(1) قراءة وفهم النص الإنجليزي لمعرفة الفكرة العامة للموضوع.

(ب) قراءة النص مرة أخرى بعناية للوقوف على الكلمات والتراكيب الصعبة.

(ج) تخمين معنى الكلمات الصعبة من سياق الجملة فالمطلوب هو استنتاج المعنى.

(د) بعد الانتهاء من الترجمة، اقرأ الترجمة العربية لتتأكد من أنها مكتوبة بأسلوب عربي سليم مع تجنب الترجمة الحرفية والأخطاء النحوية.

السؤال : كيف أترجم الفعل (be) عندما يكون فعلًا أساسيًا ؟

هناك طرق مختلفة لترجمة هذا الفعل حسب استخدامه في الجملة الإنجليزية، منها :

(1) المعنى الأساسي للفعل (be) في اللغة العربية وهو (يكون / يوجد) :

e.g. - My life was difficult when I was abroad, away from home.

كانت حياتي صعبة عندما كنت بالخارج بعيدًا عن الوطن.

(ب) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بفعل آخر في اللغة العربية غير (يكون / يوجد) حسب المعنى العام للنص :

e.g. - The wedding was last week.

- تم الزفاف الأسبوع الماضي.

- A knife is for cutting food.

- تستخدم السكين لتقطيع الطعام.

(ج) يمكن ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير شخصي مثل (هو / هي / هما / هم / هن) في اللغة العربية مثل :

e.g. - My mother is everything to me.

- إن أمي هي كل شيء بالنسبة لي.

- Our children are the joy of our life.

- أطفالنا هم بهجة حياتنا.

(د) يمكن إسقاط الفعل (be) نهائيًا من الترجمة العربية للجملة :

e.g. - Ahmed is a hard-working student.

- أحمد طالب جاد في العمل.

- My house is in a quiet part of the city.

- يقع منزلي في جزء هادئ من المدينة.

السؤال : قالوا لي أن الفعل (have) متعدد المعاني، فكيف أتوجه إلى العربية ؟

- هذا كلام صحيح، فهذا الفعل يستخدم بمعاني كثيرة منها :
- (1) المعنى الأصلي للفعل (have) هو (يملك / عنده / لديه) حسب الزمن :
- لدى / عندي / أملك منزلاً ذو حديقة صغيرة. - I have a house with a small garden.
- (ب) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (تناول طعاماً أو شراباً) :
- تناولت بعض اللحم والأرز في العشاء أمس. - I had some meat and rice for lunch yesterday.
- (ج) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (أقيم / بعقد / يحضر) :
- سأقيم حفلاً كبيراً بمناسبة نجاح ابنتي. - I will have a big party on the occasion of my daughter's success.
- (د) يمكن أن يُستخدم (have) حسب الزمن بمعنى (يعاني / لديه معاناة) :
- لقد عانت من صداع شديد بعد الحفل. - She had a bad headache after the party.

السؤال : هل بالفعل كلمة (only) تحتاج لمعاملة خاصة في الترجمة ؟

- نعم بالفعل، ولكني أترجم بشكل سليم لا بد أن نتذكر دائماً أن هذا الفعل يقصر الكلمة التي تأتي بعده مباشرة :
- Only my mother helped me with my homework.
- أمي فقط هي من ساعدتني في واجبي المنزلي.
- My mother only helped me with my homework.
- لم تقم أمي إلا بمساعدتي في واجبي المنزلي.
- My mother helped only me with my homework.
- ساعدتني أمي أنا فقط في واجبي المنزلي.
- My mother helped me with only my homework.
- ساعدتني أمي في واجبي المنزلي فقط.

السؤال : ماذا أفعل إذا كان فعل الجملة الإنجليزية مبنياً للمجهول ؟

- (1) يفضل تحويل الجملة الإنجليزية المبنية للمجهول إلى المبني للمعلوم عند الترجمة للغة العربية طالما كان الفاعل معروفاً :
- The operation was performed by a well-known surgeon.
- لقد أجرى العملية جراح مشهور. / أجريت العملية الجراحية عن طريق جراح مشهور.
- (ب) من الممكن استخدام الفعل (تم) بليبه الاسم من الفعل الأصلي مثل :
- e.g. - The task was carried out on time. - تم تنفيذ المهمة في الوقت المحدد.

Now, test yourself

Translate into Arabic :

1. A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life.
2. Always do right. This will please some people and astonish the rest.
3. Awareness should be spread among citizens to make great efforts to reduce pollution.
4. Be free and respect others' freedom.
5. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilised behaviour.
6. Children learn good habits by imitating of their elders.
7. Creative thinking is essential for success in life.
8. Currently, there're major powers trying to dominate the whole world through technology.
9. Don't cry over spilt milk.
10. Eat less, exercise more, and fill your eyes with sleep.
11. Egypt is one of the earliest cradles of human civilisation.
12. Everyone has the right to express their opinion freely and take part in the social life.
13. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2050.
14. Good citizens are ready to sacrifice their lives when their country is in danger.
15. Great efforts have been made for the equality between men and women.
16. Growing older is a natural process that we cannot stop.
17. Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood.
18. Has technology made the world a better place to live in?
19. If an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it.
20. If you risk nothing, then you risk everything.
21. In order to be successful, you should have courage, ambition, self-confidence and self-dependence.
22. In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up.
23. In the third world countries, the number of smokers is increasing, mainly due to ignorance.
24. Inside their homes, children get their first lessons in behaving towards others.

El Moasser's Glossary for Translation Vocabulary

- قاموس المعاصر للمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالترجمة

Economy and work الاقتصاد والعمل

ambitions	تطلعات / طموحات	low income	دخل منخفض
bargains	صفقات	manufacture	يُصنَع
budget	ميزانية	manufacturer	مُصنِّع
capital	رأس المال	marketing	تسويق
capitalism	رأسمالية	monopolist	محتكر
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
commercial	تجاري	national duty	واجب وطني
compete	تنافس	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
congestion	التكدس / الزحام	national income	الدخل القومي
consume	ستهلك	nationalization	تأميم
consumer	مستهلك	nationalize	يؤمم
consumption	استهلاك	necessitate	يستلزم
cost of living	تكاليف المعيشة	overpopulation	الانفجار السكاني
creation	خَلق / إيجاد	price control	ضبط الأسعار
crime	الجريمة	priorities	أولويات
current stage	المرحلة الراهنة	products	منتجات
dealer	وكيل	profits	أرباح
development	تطوير / تنمية	promote	يُرقي / يُرْجِع
discount	تخفيض / خصم	prosperity	ازدهار
dissatisfaction	عدم إشباع	rate	مُعدَّل
due care	الاهتمام اللازم	rationalise	يضبط / يُرشد
economic	اقتصادي	rationalization	ترشيد
economic	الأزمة الاقتصادية	reclaim	يستصلح
crisis	موقر / اقتصادي	reclamation	استصلاح
economical	علم الاقتصاد	recycling	إعادة تصنيع
economics	خبير اقتصادي	reduction	تخفيض
economist	مشروع / منشأة	reform	إصلاح
enterprise	نفقات	renaissance	نهضة
expenses	مواجهه / مواجهة	resources	موارد
facing	مواجهة	revenue	عائد
famine	مواجهة	risky	خطير
finance	مال / بئول	sales / discounts	مبيعات / تخفيضات
financial	مالي	shares	اسهم
food shortage	نقص الطعام	short-term	قصير الأجل
		slogan	شعار
		slums / squatters	العشوائيات

foreign aids	معونات خارجية	long-term	طويل الأجل
funds	مدخرات	spread	انتشار / منتشر
goods/commodities	السلع / البضائع	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
grant(ed)	هب / منح	statistics	إحصائيات
greed	جشع / طمع	stock market	بورصة
growth	نمو	strict measures	معايير صارمة
handmade	صناعة يدوية	strict procedures	إجراءات صارمة
hard currency	عملة صعبة	subsidy	الدمج
high income	دخل مرتفع	tax	ضريبة
humour	الفكاهة / المرح	trade	تجارة
in turn	بدوره	trader	تاجر
inflation	التضخم	unemployment	البطالة
inhabitants	سكان	unrest	اضطراب
inject	يضخ	vast	كبير / شامل
insurance	تأمين	via	من خلال / شتر
investment	استثمار	violence	العنف
investor	مستثمر	welfare	رفاهية
job opportunities	فرص عمل	youth	الشباب
labour force	القوى العاملة		

The Nile and saving water النيل وتوفير المياه

a matter of life or death	مسألة حياة أو موت	improve relationships	تحسن العلاقات
artery of life	شريان الحياة	International Treaty	معاهدة دولية
civilisation	الحضارة	lack of water	نقص المياه
constructive dialogue	الحوار البناء	majority	معظم / أغلبية
cradle	مهد	must	ضرورة
dam	سد	national security	الأمن القومي
date back to	يعود تاريخه إلى	Nile Basin	حوض النيل
demand for	الطلب على	Renaissance Dam	سد النهضة
downstream countries	دول المنصب	shortage	نقص
drought	جفاف/ قحط	supplies	موارد
Egypt's share	حصة مصر	main source	المصدر الرئيسي
emergency meeting	اجتماع طارئ	thirst	الظأ
essential	ضروري	tributaries	روافد
generate	يُولد	upstream countries	دول المنبع
company	شُعبة	water security	الأمن المائي

consequently	لذلك	noncommunicable	غير ساري
contributions	إسهامات	noninfectious	غير معدى
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	nuclear	نووي
creativity	الأماع	nuclear waste	النفايات النووية
creatures	مخلوقات	observatory	مرصد
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	owe	يدين
destructive	مدمر	pathology	علم امراض الدم
developed countries	دول متقدمة	pharmaceutical	خاص بالصيدلة
developing countries	دول نامية	philosophy	الفلسفة
deviation	انحراف	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئي
diabetes	مرض السكر	physical illness	مرض بدني
diagnose	يُشخص	physiology	علم وظائف الأعضاء
diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض	physiotherapy	العلاج الطبيعي
disaster	كارثة	pillars	ركائز
disastrous	مدمر / كارثي	positive	بُناء / إيجابي
distance learning	تعلم عن بُعد	potentials	قدرات
donation	تبرع	power plant	محطة توليد طاقة
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	preservation	صيانة
eagle	صقر	prevention	وقاية
ecology	علم البيئة	properly	بشكل صحيح
Egyptology	علم المصريات	proportional to	متناسب مع
end / target / goal	غاية / هدف	psychiatrist	طبيب نفسى
endanger	يُعرض لخطر	psychologist	عالم نفسى
epidemic	وباء	psychology	علم النفس
erosion	تآكل / تعرية	public opinion	الرأي العام
evergreen	دائم الخضرة	radiation	إشعاع
evils	شرور	rare species	فصيلة نادرة
existence	وجود	reactor	مفاعل
extinction	إندثار / إنقراض	reform	إصلاح
females	إناث	regional	إقليمي
fever	حمى	remarkable progress	تقدم ملحوظ
		remedy	علاج

field	مجال	respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي
fragile	هش / ضعيف	restoration	ترميم
frustration	إحباط	scales	قشور / موازين
generation	جيل / توليد (طاقة)	scientific research	البحث العلمي
genetic engineering	الهندسة الوراثية	seabed	قاع البحر
global warming	الإحتباس الحراري	self	الذات / الذات
harness	يُسخر	set up	يُنشئ
herbal medicines	الأدوية العشبية	sociology	علم الاجتماع
heritage	تراث	sooner or later	عاجلاً أم آجلاً
hibernation	بيات شتوي	sterilization	تعقيم
humidity	رطوبة	stubborn	عنيد
hurricane	إعصار	support	بدعم / دعم
ideal solution	حل مثالي	surgery	جراحة
immune system	جهاز المناعة	symptoms	أعراض
impact	أثر	tame	أليف
incurable	لا علاج له	techniques	تقنيات
indigestion	عسر الهضم	thanks to	بفضل
individual	الفرد	therapist	معالج
infection	عدوى	therapy	علاج
infectious	معدى	thinkers	مفكرين
injection	حقن	tide	المد والجزر
innovation	الابتكار	tornado	إعصار
insomnia	أرق	transfusion	نقل دم
instinct	غريزة / فطرة	tropical	إستوائي
intensive care	عناية مركزة	tumor	ورم
issue	قضية	vaccine	مصل / لقاح
kidneys	كليتين	vegetarian	إنسان نباتي
knowledge	المعرفة	vehicle	مركبة
limit	يُحد من / يقلل	waterfalls	شلالات
lungs	رئتين	wheel of production	عجلة الإنتاج
		zoology	علم الحيوان

Literature & Different Arts الأدب والفنون المختلفة

ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	kindergarten (KG)	حضانة
aware	واع	loyalty	ولاء
awesome	مدهش / رهيب	manners	سلوكيات
barriers	حواجز	manuscripts	مخطوطات
borders	حدود	masterpieces	روائع
brain drain	هجرة العقول	merely	فقط
bringing up	تربية	motives	دوافع
bullying	مظاهرة	nobility	نبيل
copyright	حقوق	non-verbal	غير لفظي
coherence	ترابط / تماسك	nutrition	تغذية
commemorate	يحيى ذكرى	objective	موضوعي
cope with	يجري / يتأقلم	obstacle	عقبة
core	لب / جوهر	peer	نظير / ند
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	personal interests	مصالح شخصية
craftsmen	أصحاب الحرف	personify	يُجسد
creative	مبدع	playwright	كاتب مسرحي
cultural	ثقافي	potentials	قدرات
curriculum	منهاج	pre-historic	يخص ما قبل التاريخ
descendants	ذرية / نسل	principles	مبادئ
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	procedures	إجراءات
edition	نسخة / طبعة	producer	مُنتج
elegance	إتقان	professional	مهني
enrich	يُثري	public library	مكتبة عامة
exceed	يتجاوز	public opinion	الرأي العام
faithfulness	إخلاص	reference	مرجع
fashion designer	مصمم أزياء	science fiction	خيال علمي
fashion houses	بيوت الموضة	spiritual	روحي
fashion show	عرض أزياء	sponsor	راعٍ
fine arts	فنون جميلة	sponsorship	رعاية
for entertainment	من أجل التمتعة	storyteller	قصص
		strategy	خطة

fortification	تحصين	sufficiency	إكفاء
fortress	حصن	suspense	تسويق
glory	مجد	talented	موهوب
graphics	فن الجرافيك	tastes	أذواق
heritage	تراث	timid	متحفظ / خجول
hero	بطل	traditions	تقاليد
heroine	بطلة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
honest	صادق	unique	فريد
imagination	خيال	values	قيم
immigrants	مهاجرين	verbal	لفظي
immortal	خالد	vision	رؤية
incidents	أحداث	warmth	دفء
inspiration	الهام	weave	نسيج
invaders	غزاة	willingness	إستعداد
justice	العدالة	wonders	عجائب

Politics & Society السياسة والمجتمع

activist	ناشط	military	حربي / عسكري
administrative capital	العاصمة الإدارية	military secrets	أسرار عسكرية
ambassador	سفير	miracles	المعجزات
armed forces	قوات مسلحة	Muslims	المسلمين
assassinate	بغتيال	nation	أمة
assassination	إغتيال	national security	الامن القومي
belonging	الإلتزام	national unity	وحدة وطنية
betray home	يخون الوطن	nationalism	القومية
bomb	قنبلة / ب قنبلة	negotiate	يتفاوض
carry out	يُنفذ	negotiation	التفاوض
citizen	مواطن	obstacles	عقبات
citizenship	المواطنة	parliament	برلمان
civilian	مدني	partner	شريك
civilized	متحضر	party	حزب
commitment to	الإلتزام بـ	peace	السلام
conflict	صراع		

congested	متكدس	peace makers	صناع السلام
conspiracy	مؤامرة	policy	سياسة
constitution	دستور	politician	سياسي (شخص)
contribute to	يساهم في	politics	علم السياسة
cooperation	التعاون	pray	يدعو / يصلي
Copts	الأنباط	president	رئيس
crossroad	مفصل	prevail	يسود / ينتشر
democracy	ديموقراطية	prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
democratic	ديموقراطي	principles	المبادئ
devote	يكرس	progress	التقدم
dictatorship	ديكتاتورية	protective	واقفي
difficulty	صعوبة - مأزق	rebel	يتمرد
diplomacy	دبلوماسية	rebellion	تمرد / مترد
domination	هيمنة / سيطرة	refugee	لاجئ
efforts	جهود	regime	نظام حكم
eliminate	يلغي	rejecting	رفض - نهد
emigration	الهجرة	require	يتطلب
equality	مساواة	resistance	مقاومة
exert	يذل	restrictions	القيود - الضوابط
extremism	تطرف	revolutions	الثورات
extremist	متطرف	rights	حقوق
fatal	قاتل / خطير	sacrifice	بضحي - تضحية
flourish	يزدهر	secret agent	عميل سري
formal request	طلب رسمي	security forces	اجهزة الامن
freedom	حرية	service	خدمة
government bodies	المؤسسات الحكومية	shield	درع
governorate	محافظة	spy	جاسوس
heavenly religions	الديانات السماوية	spying	تخاير
housing	الإسكان	stability	استقرار
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	strictness	الحزم
human values	القيم الإنسانية	subjects	رعابا
ignorance	الجهل	tendency	توجه
illegal	غير شرعي		

illiteracy	الأمية	terrorism	الإرهاب
impose	يفرض	terrorist	إرهابي
independence	استقلال	the state	الدولة
injustice	الظلم	tolerance	التسامح
intelligence	المخابرات	transitional stage	مرحلة إنتقالية
leak secrets	سرب أسرار	treason	خيانة عظمى
legal	شرعي / قانوني	treaty	معاهدة
lethal	قاتل	truce	هدنة
liberation	تحرير	tyranny	طغيان
loyalty	اتناء	victim	ضحية
major	كبير - رئيسي	violate	يتسكك
martyr	شهيد	violation	انتهاك
		weapons	أسلحة

Various Issues قضايا متنوعة

accommodation	إقامة	intimacy	ألفة - حمودة
acquire	يكتسب	journalism	صحافة
amateur	هواة	local tourism	ساحة داخلية
amuse	يسنع / يسلي	magical	ساحر - حلال
ancient / long-standing	عريق	major powers	قوى عظمى
annually	سنويا	manufacturer	صانع
athlete	لاعب ألعاب قوي	mass tourism	ساحة جماعية
attractions	أماكن جذب	miss the record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
audience	جمهور	monuments	أثار
ban	يحظر	motivate	يحث / يثب
bear	يحمل	mountaineers	متسلقو الجبال
broaden	يوسع	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
champion	بطل رياضي	news agency	وكالة انباء
championship	بطولة رياضية	Olympic games	الالعاب الاولمبية
coach/ trainer	مدرب	outlet	مفتش - مخرج
competition	منافسة	pay	راتب / أجر
competitors	منافسين	pharaohs	فراعنة
conference tourism	سياحة المؤتمرات	physical fitness	لياقة بدنية
critical	نقدي / حرج	professional	محترف
criticism	نقد	prohibition	حظر - منع
criticize	ينقد		

cultural tourism
current events
decisive
deprive
deviation
dignity
disasters
disputes
dominance
dominate
earner
eco-tourism
enrich
equality
erosion
fair play
farming
finals
flourish
flow of traffic
free press
migration
friendship
gallantry
generous
glory
grateful
greed
hard currency
homesickness
honour
hospitality
humour
hurricanes
ideal
ignorance
impression
instruct
interpret
interpreter

سياحة ثقافية
الأحداث الجارية
حازم / حاسم
بُحْرَم
الإنحراف
كرامة
كوارث
النزاعات
هيمنة / سيطرة
يهيمن / يسيطر علي
مصدر دخل
سياحة صديقة للبيئة
يُثْرَى
المساواة
التعرية
اللعب النظيف
الزراعة
نهائيات
يزدهر
انسياب المرور
صحافة حرة
هجرة
الصدقة
الشهامة
كريم
المجد
شاكِر / ممتن
جشع / طمع
عملة صعبة
حنين للوطن
شرف / يكرم
كرم الضيافة
فكاهة
أعاصير
مثالي
الجهل
إنطباع
يُعلَم
يترجم فوري
مترجم فوري

propaganda
public relations
public transport
purity
rapprochement
rare
recreational tourism
reinforce
relationship
resort
rights
risk
rumour
satisfy
security
seek
self-confidence
self-dependence
selfishness
set a record
set an example
settlement
sightseeing
silver
source
stamina
stream
surroundings
take drugs
teamwork
therapeutic tourism
tourist site
tournament
traffic regulations
transition
travel agency
unite peoples
unselfishness
vacations
victory
virtues

الدعاية
علاقات عامة
المواصلات العامة
نقاء
التقارب
نادر
سياحة ترفيهية
يعزز - يدعم
العلاقة
منتجع
الحقوق
خطر
إشاعة
يُرضى / يُشبع
أمن
يسعى / يرغب في
الثقة بالنفس
الإعتماد علي النفس
الأنانية
يسجل رقما قياسيا
يعطي قدوة
تسوية / حل
زيارة المعالم
الفضة / فضي
مصدر
قوة الاحتمال
التيار
الأشياء المحيطة
يتعاطى المخدرات
العمل الجماعي
سياحة علاجية
موقع سياحي
دورة
قواعد المرور
تحوّل
وكالة سفريات
توحد الشعوب
الإيثار
عطلات / اجازات
نصر
الفضائل